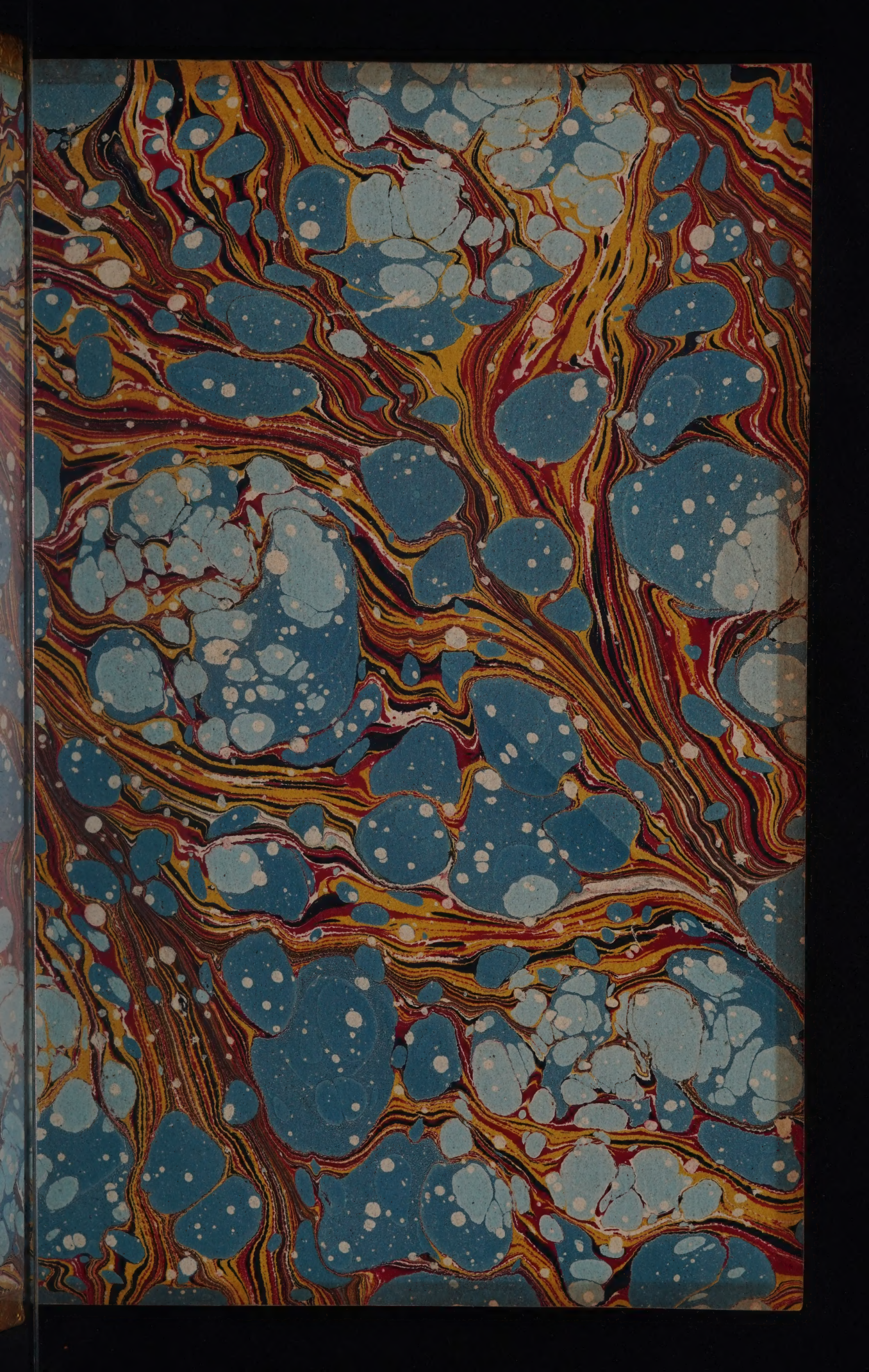
LEO

HISTORIE OF AFRICA

1600

Hugh A. Wyndham.



BOUND BY LLOYD

Wordsworth Case D

4/4

X

3729 (2)

S. T. C. 15481

43581

A GEOGRAPHICAL HISTORIE of AFRICA,

Written in Arabicke and Italian

by IOHN LEO a More, borne *in Granada, and brought vp* in Barbarie.

Wherein he hath at large described, not onely the qualities, situations, and true distances of the regions, cities, townes, mountaines, riuers, and other places throughout all the north and principall partes of Africa; but also the descents and families of their kings, the causes and euents of their warres, with their manners, customes, religions, and ciuile gouernment, and many other memorable matters: gathered partly out of his owne diligent obseruations, and partly out of the ancient records and Chronicles of the Arabians and Mores.

Before which, out of the best ancient and moderne writers, is prefixed a generall description of Africa, and also a particular treatise of all the maine lands and Iles vndescribed by *Iohn Leo.*

And after the same is annexed a relation of the great Princes, and the manifold religions in that part of the world.

Translated and collected by IOHN PORY, lately of Gonevill and Caius College in Cambridge.

LONDINI,

Impensis Georg. Bishop.

1600

TO THE RIGHT HONORA-
ble sir ROBERT CECIL Knight, principall *Secretarie to her Maiestie, Master of the* Court of Wardes and Liueries, and one *of her Highnes most Honorable priuie Counsell.*

O heere the first fruits, or rather the tender buddes and blossomes of my labours. Which least in this their winterly sprouting they might perhaps by some bitter blasts of censure be frost-nipped, I humbly recommend to your Honorable protection.

Most due they are onely to your selfe, being for the greatest part nothing else, but a large illustration of certaine southern voiages of the English, alreadie dedicated to your Honour. And at this time especially I thought they would prooue the more acceptable: in that the Marocan ambassadour (whose Kings dominions are heere most amplie and particularly described) hath so lately treated with your Honour concerning matters of that estate.

Vouchsafe therefore (right Honorable) according to your accustomed humanitie towards learning, to accept of this Geographicall historie, in like manner as it pleased your Honour not long since most fauourablie to take in good part those commendable indeuours of my reuerend friend M. *Richard Hakluyt*: who out of his mature iudgement in these studies, knowing the excellencie of this storie aboue all others in the same kinde, was the onely man that mooued me to translate it.

At London this three and fortieth most ioifull Coronation-day of her sacred Maiestie.

1600.

Your Honors alwaies most readie to be commanded

IOHN PORY.

To the Reader.

Iue me leaue (gentle Readers) if not to preſent vnto your knowledge, becauſe ſome perhaps may aſwel be informed as my ſelfe; yet, to call to your remembrance, ſome fewe particulars, concerning this Geographicall Hiſtorie, *and* Iohn Leo *the author thereof.*

Who albeit by birth a More, *and by religion for many yeeres a* Mahumetan: *yet if you conſider his* Parentage, Witte, Education, Learning, Emploiments, Trauels, and his conuerſion to Chriſtianitie; *you ſhall finde him not altogither vnfit to vndertake ſuch an enterprize; nor vnworthy to be regarded.*

Firſt therefore his Parentage *ſeemeth not to haue bin ignoble: ſeeing (as in his ſecond booke himſelfe teſtifieth) an Vncle of his was ſo Honorable a perſon, and ſo excellent an Oratour and Poet; that he was ſent as a principall Ambaſſadour, from the king of* Fez, *to the king of* Tombuto.

And whether this our Author were borne at Granada in Spaine, (as it is moſt likely) or in ſome part of Africa; certaine it is, that in naturall ſharpenes and viuacitie of Wit, *he moſt liuely reſembled thoſe great and claſsicall authours,* Pomponius Mela, Iuſtinus Hiſtoricus, Columella, Seneca, Quintilian, Oroſius, Prudentius, Martial, Iuuenal, Auicen, *&c. reputed all for Spaniſh writers; as likewiſe* Terentius Afer, Tertullian, Saint Auguſtine, Victor, Optatus, &c. *knowen to be writers of Africa. But amongſt great varietie which are to be found in the proceſſe of this notable diſcourſe, I will heere lay before your view one onely patterne of his ſurpaſsing wit. In his ſecond booke therefore, if you peruſe the deſcription of* Mount Tenueues, *you ſhall there finde the learned and ſweete* Arabian *verſes of* Iohn Leo, *not being then fully ſixteene yeeres of age, ſo highly eſteemed by the Prince of the ſame mountaine, that in recompence thereof, after bountifull entertainment, he diſmiſſed him with gifts of great value.*

Neither wanted he the beſt Education *that all* Barbarie *could affoord. For being euen from his tender yeeres trained vp at the Vniuerſitie of* Fez, *in* Grammar, Poetrie, Rhetorick, Philoſophie, Hiſtorie, Cabala, Aſtronomie, *and other ingenuous ſciences, and hauing ſo great acquaintance and conuerſation in the kings court: how could he chooſe but prooue in his kinde a moſt accompliſhed and abſolute man? So as I may iuſtly ſay (if the compariſon be tolerable) that as* Moſes *was learned in all the wiſedome of the* Egyptians; *ſo likewiſe was* Leo *in that of the* Arabians *and* Mores.

And that he was not meanely, but extraordinarily learned; let me keepe ſilence, that the admirable fruits of his rare Learning, *and this Geographicall Hiſtorie among the reſt may beare record. Beſides which, he wrote an* Arabian Grammar,

Grammar, *highly commended by a great Linguist of* Italie, *who had the sight and examination thereof; as likewise a booke of the liues of the* Arabian *Philosophers; and a discourse of the religion of* Mahumet; *with diuers excellent Poems, and other monuments of his industrie, which are not come to light.*

Now as concerning his Emploiments, *were they not such as might well beseeme a man of good woorth? For (to omit how many courts and campes of princes he had frequented) did not he, as himselfe in his third booke witnesseth, personally serue king* Mahumet *of* Fez *in his wars against* Arzilla? *And was he not at another time, as appeereth out of his second Booke, in seruice and honorable place vnder the same king of* Fez, *and sent ambassadour by him to the king of* Maroco? *Yea, how often in regard of his singular knowledge and iudgement in the lawes of those countries, was he appointed, and sometimes constrained at diuers strange cities and townes through which he trauelled, to become a iudge and arbiter in matters of greatest moment?*

Moreouer as touching his exceeding great Trauels, *had he not at the first beene a* More *and a* Mahumetan *in religion, and most skilfull in the languages and customes of the* Arabians *and* Africans, *and for the most part trauelled in* Carouans, *or vnder the authoritie, safe conduct, and commendation of great princes: I maruell much how euer he should haue escaped so manie thousands of imminent dangers. And (all the former notwithstanding) I maruel much more, how euer he escaped them. For how many desolate cold mountaines, and huge drie, and barren deserts passed he? How often was he in hazard to haue beene captiued, or to haue had his throte cut by the prouling* Arabians, *and wilde Mores? And how hardly manie times escaped he the Lyons greedie mouth, and the deuouring iawes of the Crocodile? But if you will needes haue a briefe iournall of his trauels: you may see in the end of his eight booke, what he writeth for himselfe.* Wherefore (saith he) if it shall please God to vouchsafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the regions of Asia which I haue trauelled: to wit, Arabia Deserta, Arabia Petrea, Arabia Felix, the Asian part of Egypt, Armenia, and some part of Tartaria; all which countries I sawe and passed through in the time of my youth. Likewise I will describe my last voiages from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence vnto Italy, &c. *Besides all which places he had also beene at* Tauris *in* Persia: *and of his owne countrey, and other* African *regions adioining and remote, he was so diligent a trauseller; that there was no kingdome, prouince, signorie, or citie; nor scarcelie any towne, village, mountaine, valley, riuer, or forrest, &c. which he left vnuisited. And so much the more credite and commendation deserueth this woorthy Historie of his; in that it is (except the antiquities, and certaine other incidents) nothing else but a large* Itinerarium *or* Iournal *of his* African *voiages: neither describeth he almost any one particular place, where himselfe had not sometime beene an eie-witnes.*

But, not to forget His conuersion to Christianitie, *amidst all these his busie and dangerous trauels, it pleased the diuine prouidence, for the discouery and manifestation of Gods woonderfull works, and of his dreadfull and iust iudgements performed*

performed in Africa *(which before the time of* Iohn Leo, *were either vtterly concealed, or vnperfectly and fabulously reported both by ancient and late writers) to deliuer this author of ours, and this present Geographicall Historie, into the hands of certaine* Italian *Pirates, about the isle of* Gerbi, *situate in the gulfe of* Capes, *betweene the cities of* Tunis *and* Tripolis *in* Barbarie. *Being thus taken, the Pirates presented him and his Booke vnto* Pope Leo the tenth: *who esteeming of him as of a most rich and inualuable prize, greatly reioiced at his arriuall, and gaue him most kinde entertainement and liberall maintenance, till such time as he had woone him to be baptized in the name of* Christ, *and to be called* Iohn Leo, *after the Popes owne name. And so during his abode in* Italy, *learning the* Italian *toong, he translated this booke thereinto, being before written in* Arabick. *Thus much of* Iohn Leo.

Now let vs acquaint you with the Historie it selfe. First therefore from so woorthy an author, how could an historie proceed but of speciall woorth and consequence? For proofe whereof, I appeale vnto the translations thereof into Latine, Italian, Spanish, French, English, *and (if I be not deceiued) into some other languages; which argue a generall approbation of the same. I appeale also to the grand and most iudiciall Cosmographer * Master* Iohn Baptista Ramusius, *sometime Secretarie to the state of* Venice, *who in the Preface to his first volume of voiages, so highly commendeth it to learned* Fracastoro, *and placeth it euery word in the very forefront of his discourses, as the principal & most praise-woorthy of the̅ all. And were renoumed* Ortelius *aliue, I would vnder correction report me to him; whether his map of* Barbarie *and* Biledulgerid, *as also in his last* Additament *that of the kingdomes of* Maroco *and* Fez, *were not particularly and from point to point framed out of this present relation, which he also in two places at the least preferreth farre before all other histories written of* Africa. *But to leaue the testimonies of others, and to come neerer to the matter it selfe; like as our prime and peereless English Antiquarie master* William Camden *in his learned* Britannia, *hath exactly described* England, Scotland, Ireland, *and the isles adiacent (the which by* Leander *for* Italie, *by* Damianus a Goez *briefly for* Spaine, *by* Belforest *for* France, *by* Munster *for vpper* Germanie, *by* Guiccardini *for the* Netherlandes, *and by others for other countries hath beene performed) so likewise this our author* Iohn Leo *in the historie ensuing hath so largely, particularly, and methodically deciphered the countries of* Barbarie, Numidia, Libya, The land of Negros, *and the hither part of* Egypt, *as (I take it) neuer any writer either before or since his time hath done. For if you shall throughly consider him, what kingdome, prouince, citie, towne, village, mountaine, vallie, riuer; yea, what temple, college, hospitall, bath-stoue, Inne; or what other memorable matter doth he omit? So doth he most iudicially describe the temperature of the climate, and the nature of the soile, as also the dispositions, manners, rites, customes, and most ancient pedigrees of the inhabitants, together with the alterations of religion and estate, the conquests and ouerthrowes of the* Romaines, Goths, *and* Arabians, *and other things (by the way) right woorthie the obseruation. So that the*

* Read pag. 58. of places vnderscribed by Iohn

Africans

Africans *may iustly say to him, and the* Englisſh *to maſter* Camden, *as the prince of* Roman *oratours did vnto* Marcus Varro *the learnedſt of his nation.* Nos in patria noſtra peregrinantes erranteſque tanquam hoſpites, tui libri quaſi domum deduxerunt, vt poſſemus aliquando, qui & vbi eſſemus, agnoſcere. Tu ætatem patriæ, tu deſcriptiones temporum, tu ſacrorum iura, tu domeſticam, tu bellicam diſciplinam, tu ſedem regionum & locorum, &c. *Which may thus be rudely Engliſhed.* Wandring vp and downe like Pilgrimes in our owne natiue ſoile, thy bookes haue as it were led vs the right way home; that we might at length acknowledge both who and where we are. Thou haſt reuealed the antiquitie of our nation, the order of times, the rites of our religion, our manner of gouernment both in peace and warre, yea thou haſt deſcribed the ſituations of countries and places, &c. Tull. Acad. quæſt. lib.

Now as concerning the additions before and after this Geographicall Hiſtorie; *hauing had ſome ſpare-howers ſince it came firſt vnder the preſſe; I thought good (both for the Readers ſatisfaction, and that* Iohn Leo *might not appeere too ſolitarie vpon the ſtage) to beſtowe a part of them in collecting and digeſting the ſame. The chiefe ſcope of this my enterprize is, to make a briefe and curſorie deſcription of all thoſe maine lands and iſles of* Africa, *which mine author in his nine bookes hath omitted. For he in very deed leaueth vntouched all thoſe parts of the* African *continent which lie to the ſouth of the fifteene kingdomes of* Negros, *and to the eaſt of* Nilus. *For the manifeſtation whereof, I haue (as truely as I could coniecture) in the mappe adioined to this booke, cauſed a liſt or border of ſmall prickes to be engrauen; which running weſtward from the mouth of* Nilus *to* The ſtreights of Gibraltar, *and from thence ſouthward to the coaſt of* Guinie, *and then eaſtward to the banks of* Nilus, *and ſo northward to the place where it began; doth with aduantage include all places treated of by* Leo, *and excludeth the reſidue which by way of Preface we haue deſcribed before the beginning of his* African *hiſtorie. Likewiſe at the latter end I haue put downe certaine relations of the great Princes of* Africa, *and of the* Chriſtian, Iewiſh, Mahumetan, *and* Gentiliſh *religions there profeſſed. The Princes of greateſt account either inhabiting or at leaſt poſſeſſing large territories there, are firſt The grand* Neguz *or Chriſtian Emperour of* Abaſſia *or the higher Ethiopia, commonly called* Presbyter Iohn, *or (as* Zagazabo *his owne ambaſſadour would haue him)* Pretious Iohn; *but bicauſe throughout all the* Ethiopick *relation of* Francis Aluarez, *being the beſt that euer was written of thoſe parts, he is continually named* Prete Ianni, *in imitation of him I alſo moſt commonly call him by that name. And ſo likewiſe though* Zagazabo (*for the more magnificent reputation of his prince*) *will haue his dominions called* Ethiopia; *yet with the conſent of ſome approoued authors, and alſo to diſtinguiſh the country of this emperour from many other regions ſituate both in the higher* Ethiopia, *and in the lower; I haue ſet it downe in my mappe, and in my diſcourſes do moſt vſually ſpeake thereof vnder the name of* Abaſſia. *The other great Princes intreated of in the ſaid relations, are* The K. of Spaine, *The* Turkiſh Emperour, *The* * Xarifo *otherwiſe called The* Miramonin, *or the king of* Maroco

The varietie of this emperours names read in a marginall note Pag. 12. of places vndeſcribed by Iohn Leo.

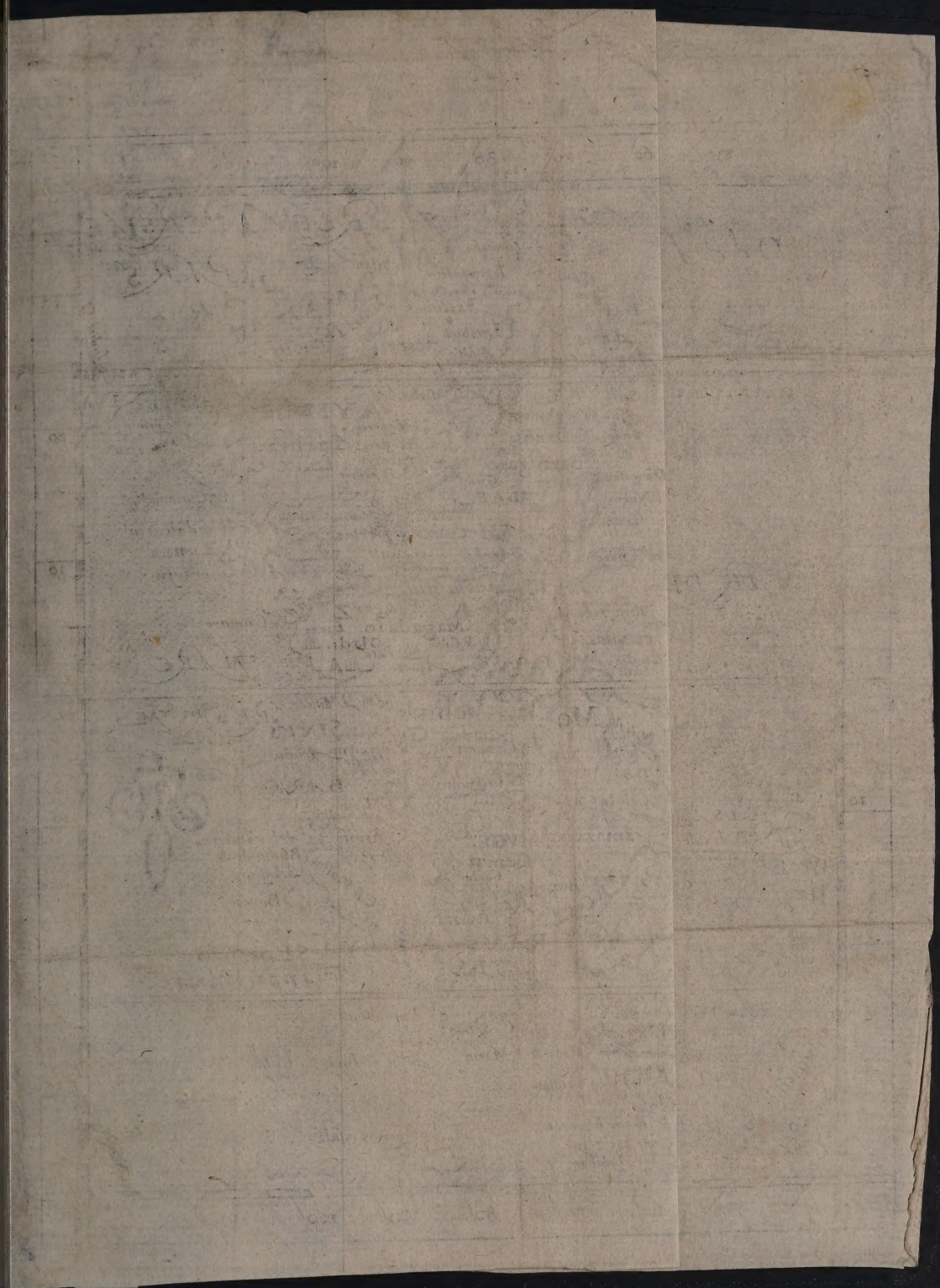
* Or Xerifo, or Serifo.

Maroco Sus *and* Fez, *and the emperour of* Monomotapa.

My methode in the discourse before Leo *is, after a generall preface of* Africa, *to begin at the* Red sea, *where* Leo *endeth; and thence (as well in the description of the maine lands, as of the isles by him vntouched) to proceed on southerly to the cape of* Buena esperança; *from which cape we returne toward the north, describing all along the westerne countries and isles of* Africa, *till we haue brought our whole descriptions to an end vpon the most southwesterly parts of* Barbarie, *where our author* Iohn Leo *beginneth his.*

Et quoniam (*as one saith*) turpe non est, per quos profeceris, agnoscere: *my principall authors out of whom I haue gathered this store, are, of the ancienter note,* Ptolemey, Strabo, Plinie, Diodorus Siculus, &c. *and amongst later writers, I haue helped my selfe out of sundrie discourses in the first* Italian *volume of* Baptista Ramusio, *as likewise out of* Iohn Barros, Castanneda, Ortelius, Osorius de reb. gest. Eman. Matthew Dresserus, Quadus, Isolario del mundo, Iohn Huighen van Linschoten, *& out of the* Hollanders *late voiages to the* east Indies, *and to* San Tomé: *but I am much more beholding to the history of* Philippo Pigafetta, *to the* Ethiopick *relations of* Francis Aluarez, *& of* Damianus a Goez, *and beyond all comparison (both for matter and method) most of all, to the learned Astronomer and Geographer* Antonius Maginus of Padua, *and to the vniuersall relations written in* Italian *by G. B. B.*

And heere, before I surcease, I must admonish the Reader of certaine faults escaped in some copies: as namely in the description of the isles in the Barbarian bay, Açotatado, *for* Açotado; *in a marginall note ouer against the description of Tombuto in the seuenth booke of* Iohn Leo, Money *for* Gold; *in the relation of the Christianitie of Egypt,* Hypostasis *twise togither, in stead of* Hypostases; *and in the discourse of the Christianitie of Congo,* Paulo Aquitino, *for* Panso Aquitimo. *Other literall faults (if there be any) will not be hard for the Reader himselfe to amend.*



AFRICA

OCEANVS ATLANTICVS
Mare Mediterra neum
ASIAE PARS
REGNI PERSIAE
Sinus Persicus
Mar Rubrum
Arabia felix
AYMAN
Nigritarum Libiae deserta
Tombuto
Gualata
Gago
Guber
MELLI
NVBIA
Zanfara
Amazen
Barnagaso
Magadaso
Fungarz
Oladi
MAR DEL NORT
GUINEA
Benin
Biafar
Medra
Maitagasi
Angola
Quizama
Matama
Amazones
MVGE
Monomotapa
Cafates
Sofala
Manica
Madagascar
Y de S Lorenzo
OCEANVS AETHIOPICVS
TROPICVS CANCRI
AEQVINOCTIALIS CIRCVLVS
CAPRICORNI
Rio de la Plata
Tibiquiri
Pars Brasiliæ
Baia real
Capo Frio
Baia hermosa
Los Romeros insulæ
C de Buena Esperança
C das Agulhas
C de las vacas
Turnubaia
y de Iuan de Lisboa
y de Tristan de acunna
y de Gonçalo Alluares
Soldanha
Cabo de Catrina
Santa Croce
La Ascension
La Trinita
S Maria
S Matheo
Damut
Melinde
Zanzibar
Mozambique
Sofala
Barcha deser.
Egipt deser.
Arabia deserta
Sinus Persicus
Mar Rubrum
Abbadalcuria
Zocotora
Guardafu
Curiamuria
Mazira
Aden
Mecha
Sida
Magora
Zerzen
Cubit
Zibit
Xael
Dancali
Gazelle
Fungar
Magadaso
Oladi
Lamon
Cumare
Melinde
Pemba
Monsa de arena
Galero
Franc
Michel
Ambar
Badia de S Sebastian
Baixos
Praecel
Corrimentes
Ponta de S Maria
Ponta Primera
Baia hermosa
Los Romeros insulæ
Turnubaia
y de Iuan de Lisboa
C de Buena Esperança
C das Agulhas
C de las vacas
y de Tristan de acunna
y de Gonçalo Alluares
Soldanha
Cabo de Catrina
Santa Croce
La Ascension
La Trinita
S Maria
S Matheo
Damut
Angola
Quizama
Matama
Amazones
MVGE
Monomotapa
Cafates
Sofala
Manica
Madagascar
Y de S Lorenzo
CAPRICORNI
Rio de la Plata
Tibiquiri
Pars Brasiliæ
Baia real
Capo Frio
Baia hermosa
Los Romeros insulæ
C de Buena Esperança
C das Agulhas
C de las vacas
Turnubaia
y de Iuan de Lisboa

A generall description of all Africa, togither with a comparison of the ancient and new names of all the principall countries and prouinces therein.

THat part of inhabited lande extending southward, which we call Africa, and the Greeks Libya, is one of the three generall parts of the world knowen vnto our ancestors; which in very deed was not throughly by them discouered, both bicause the Inlands coulde not be trauailed in regard of huge deserts full of dangerous sands, which being driuen with the winde, put trauailers in extreme hazard of their liues; and also by reason of the long and perilous nauigation vpon the African coasts, for which cause it was by very few of ancient times compassed by nauigation, much lesse searched or intirely known. Of which few, the principall were *Hanno* a Carthaginian captaine sent by the gouernours of that commonwelth for discouerie of the saide lande, and one *Eudoxus* that fled from *Ptolemæus Lathyrus*, the king of Alexandria. Howbeit in these latter times it hath beene often * by the Portugals sailed round about, and diligently searched, especially along the shore, euen from the streights of Gibraltar to the enterance of the red sea: *but the first Portugall that euer doubled the cape of Buena esperança, and coasted the south and southeast parts of Africa, in former times vnknowne, was *Vasco da Gama*, in the yeere 1497. who from hence sailed to Calicut in the east Indies, to the vnspeakeable gaine of the Portugals.

Africa otherwise called Libya.

The greater part of Africa vnknowen in former ages.

When Africa was sailed round about.

* *And since also by the English, French, and Dutch.*

* *Bartholomew Dias doubled the cape before; but returned fearefully without proceeding any farther.*

To omit *Iohn Leo* his etymologies of this name Africa; *Festus* will haue it to be deriued from the Greeke worde φρίκη, which signifieth horror or colde, and from ἀ the particle priuatiue, as who shoulde say, Africa is a place free from all horror and extremitie of colde, bicause it lieth open to the heauens, and is sandie, drie, and desert. Others say that it is called Africa *quasi Aprica*, that is exposed and subiect to the scorching beames of the sunne, the most part thereof lying betweene the Tropicks. *Iosephus* wil haue it so called from *Afer* one of the posteritie of *Abraham*, and others from *Afer* sonne to *Hercules* of Libya. But it was by the Greekes called Libya, bicause it was in old time conquered by *Libs* the king of Mauritania. In the holie Scriptures it is called Chamesis, by the Arabians and Ethiopians Alkebulam, and by the Indians Besecath.

The etymologie or deriuation of this worde Africa.

Why Africa was called Libya.

In situation & shape this land of Africa is almost an isle, being by a very small and narrowe neckland (passing betweene the Mediterran sea and the gulfe of Arabia, *alias* the red sea) conioined to Asia, and in extension of

The situation and shape of Africa.

ground being almoſt twiſe as bigge as Europe, albeit for inhabitants it is not halfe ſo populous. Wherefore though in longitude from weſt to eaſt Africa be ſhorter then Europe in ſome places, yet extendeth it ſo farre vnto the ſouth, that Europe in that reſpect is nothing comparable vnto it: for Africa containeth almoſt ſeuentie degrees in latitude, whereas Europe ſtretcheth but fiue and thirtie degrees: moreouer Africa is more vniforme and ſpacious; but Europe is of a more diſtracted and manifolde ſhape, being in ſundry places diſperſed & reſtrained by the ſea. Howbeit notwithſtanding Africa hath farre greater extenſion of ground then Europe, yet is it not ſo populous, nor ſo commodious to inhabite: for the lande of Africa is in many places vnhabitable; the principall cauſes whereof are, the ſcarcitie of water, the barrennes of the ſoile, being either couered with vnprotfiable ſande, duſt, or aſhes, or elſe being ſubiect to extreme heate of the ſunne: alſo there are certaine dangerous heapes of ſande, which being raiſed by the winde, are driuen vp and downe like the waues of a tempeſtuous ſea: In briefe, there are ſuch abundance of venemous and hurtfull creatures, that for feare of them the land in ſome places can very hardly, & in others by no meanes be manured or inhabited, be it neuer ſo fruitfull. Wherefore in diuers parts this region lieth waſte and vnpeopled: howbeit where it is inhabited, it is exceeding fertile, and that eſpecially in the north parts thereof, lying ouer againſt Europe, where (according to the report of many hiſtoriographers, and coſmographers) it was in ancient times abundantly furniſhed with inhabitants: ſo likewiſe all the weſterne coaſt betweene Cabo de buena eſperança, and Cabo Negro ſituate about nineteene degrees of ſoutherly latitude, containeth many plaines, hils, vallies, and other places moſt fruitfull and pleaſant, it being there a continuall ſpring, and elſewhere alſo it is verie fertile, as it ſhall be declared more at large in the particular deſcriptions of each region.

A compariſon betweene Africa and Europe.

The cauſes why Africa is ſo ſlenderly inhabited.

Sandie ſeas in Africa.

The Equinoctiall circle doth in a manner diuide Africa in the verie midſt thereof; from whence it ſtretcheth not onely to each tropique, but alſo twelue degrees almoſt beyond them both: wherefore the greater part is comprized betweene the ſaide Tropiques vnder the Torrid or burnt Zone, for which onely cauſe the ancient writers ſuppoſed it to be vnhabitable and deſert in ſo many places: which indeed is much rather to be aſcribed to the waſte wilderneſſe, the barren and ſandie ſoile, and the ſcarcitie of waters and fountaines. It comprehendeth therefore fully and perfecty the three firſt northerly climates, and ſo many and the like climates ſoutherly; for it is ſituate betweene the eleuenth north Parallele, and the eleuenth Antiparallele, or ſouth Parallele, both which are equally diſtant from the Equinoctiall on either ſide. But about either of the foreſaid extremes, the longeſt day conſiſteth of fowerteene howers and one fourth part, and about the midſt, of twelue howers exactly. Likewiſe as touching the longitude, Africa ſtretcheth from the Meridian vnder fower degrees to the Meridian vnder fower-ſcore and two degrees of longitude, to wit, from Cabo Roxo, or the

The poſition of Africa, according to the heauens.

Red

Red cape on the west, to Cape Guardafu on the east side, betweene which two capes is the greatest bredth of Africa.

The boundes of Africa.

Africa hath too narrowe boundes allotted vnto it by *Iohn Leo* and certaine others, for they disioine the greater part of Egypt and all Ethiopia there-from. Wherefore it is more conuenient in this behalfe to follow *Ptolemey*, and the late writers, limiting the same on the north with the Mediterran sea, and the streights of Gibraltar; on the east with the Red sea or the Arabian gulfe, and the small neckland of Asia passing betweene the Mediterran sea, and the said gulfe; on the south (at the cape of Buena esperança, where it endeth in forme of a wedge) with the maine Ocean partly called the Ethiopian sea, as being neere vnto the land of Ethiopian; and on the west, from the hither side of the Equinoctiall line, with the Atlantike Ocean, (called by *Ptolemey Mare Occiduum*, by *Dionysius Hesperium*, and part thereof by the Spaniards Mar del Norte) but beyond the Equinoctiall line it is bounded westward with the Ethiopian sea.

The mountaines of Africa. Mount Atlas.

Africa hath very many and most exceeding great mountaines, the principal wherof is Mount-Atlas, whose tops of incredible height rising out of the midst of sandy desertes, exalt themselues aboue the cloudes. This mountaine beginneth westward at that place, where it distinguitheth the Ocean by the name of Atlanticus: from whence by a perpetuall ridge, after many windings and turnings, it extendeth east toward the confines of Egypt: moreouer it is in most places rounde, hard to ascend, craggie, steepe, impassable, cold, barren, shadie, and euery where full of woods and fountaines, with cloudes alwaies houering about the tops thereof, being forlorn and desolate toward the Ocean, but ouer against* Africa minor, most fertile, and abounding with plentie of corne and of thick woods which are clad with a kinde of mosse no whit inferior to silke.

** The prouinces of Temizen, Alger, Bugia, Constantina, and Tunis.*

The tops of this mountaine are couered with deepe snowes euen in the midst of sommer: and sometimes when the North winds blow any thing sharpe, the snow falleth in such abundance, that it hideth the trees growing vpon the sides therof, and is deadly both to man and beast.

Extreme cold fountaines.

Moreouer the fountaines which are here found, are so extreame cold in the hottest of sommer, as if a man should dip his hand therein but for a short space, it would loose both life, sence, and motion. Besides Mount Atlas those mountaines likewise are very famous, which being situate on the south part of Africa, are called by the Portugales Os Picos fragosos: for by reason of their surpassing height and craggie cliffes it is impossible to skale them, and they are bare, forlorne, and destitute of all relefe.

Mountaines called Os Picos fragosos: that is to say, sharpe pointed. Iohn Barros: Dec. 1. lib. 8. cap. 4.

Likewise the cape commonly called Sierra Leona is as it were framed out of an exceeding high mountaine, which may be kenned a mightie distance off: the top of this mountaine is continuallie ouershadowed with cloudes, which often send forth dreadfull thunder and lightening: whereupon some think it to haue bin called by Ptolemey, and by Hanno of Carthage, The chariot of the gods.

Lunæ montes. The mountaines of the moone alſo, knowen of old, and ſituate vnder the Tropique of Capricorne, being very high and craggie, are inhabited by barbarous and ſauage people, nere vnto which are valleis of ſuch exceeding depth, as if they reached to the center of the earth. Likewiſe there are certain mountaines in Angola called Cabambe containing moſt rich ſiluermines, &c.

The lake of Zembre, which by ſome others is placed vnder the Equinoctiall. Alſo in Africa are certaine mightie lakes, which for their extenſion ſeem rather to be ſeas, the principal wherof called by ſome Zembre, being ſituate by a number of huge mountaines, and diſtant from the Equinoctial eleuen or twelue degrees to the ſouth, containeth about fiue hundred leagues in compaſſe, out of which lake doe ſpring the famous riuers of Nilus, Zaire, and Cuama, and ſome affirme very ſtrange ſea-monſters to be therein.

The riuers of Africa. Africa likewiſe hath many exceeding great riuers, as namely Nilus, Niger, Senaga, Gambra, Zaire, Abagni, Tagaſſi, Coluez, Coauo, Cuama, and Maniche, or Rio del ſpirito ſanto, all which are in a manner of the ſame qualitie and diſpoſition; for with their yeerlie inundations they doe moſt wonderfullie fatten and enrich the ſoile of the territories adioyning. *Nilus.* Nilus the moſt famous riuer of the world, diuiding Egypt in the midſt, and with his ouerflowes making it moſt fruitefull, continueth in his yeerely increaſe fortie daies, and forty daies in decreaſe; to wit, from the ſeuenteenth of Iune to the ſixt of October: and this riuer after a mightie long courſe through Ethiopia and Egypt, diſchargeth his ſtreames into the Mediterran ſea. *Niger.* The riuer of Niger, running through the land of Negros, called of old (as Solinus ſuppoſed) by the naturall inhabitants Aſtabus, and (according to Marmolius) Hued Nijar in the Arabian toung, is now eſteemed by Paulus Iouius to be Gambra, and by Cadamoſta the riuer of Senaga; but that both of them are deceiued, it is euident out of the deſcription of Sanutus, who putteth downe the two foreſaid riuers ſeuerallie, and thinketh Niger to be that which is now called Rio grande. This riuer taketh his beginning, as ſome thinke, out of a certain deſert to the eaſt, called Seu, or ſpringeth rather out of a lake, and after a long race, falleth at length into the weſtern Ocean. It increaſeth alſo, for the ſpace of fortie daies like Nilus, and is for ſo long ſpace decreaſing about the verie ſame time; by which inundation it bringeth ſuch fruitfulnes vnto all the land of Negros (certain mountaines onely excepted) as no place in the world can be imagined more fertile. Senaga or Canaga, a moſt notable riuer, called, as ſome thinke, Baratis by Ptolemey, and for the length therof, and manifold ſtrange creatures therein contained, comparable to Nilus, ſeuereth by his winding chanel the barren and naked ſoile, from the greene and fruitefull. Moreouer it maketh a ſeparation betweene nations of ſundrie colours: for the people on this ſide are of a dead aſh-colour, leane, and of a ſmall ſtature; but on the farther ſide they are exceeding blacke, of tall and manly ſtature, and very well proportioned: howbeit neere vnto the riuer on either ſide, they are of a meane colour, complexion, and ſtature betweene both the aboue mentioned. It falleth

into

into the sea by two mouthes, the principall whereof is about a mile broad, vp into the which the sea entreth almost 60. miles. It springeth (according to *Iohn Barros*) out of two lakes (the greater whereof is now called the lake of Gaoga, but heretofore by *Ptolemey Chelonidæ paludes*, and the lesser *Ptolemey* calleth *Nubæ palus*) as also out of a riuer named by *Ptolemey* Ghir. This riuer of Senaga hath great variety of strange fishes, and other creatures that liue in the water, as namely, sea-horses, crocodiles, winged serpents, and such like: neere vnto it also are great store of Elephants, wilde bores, lyons, and leopards. Gambra or Gambea a very great riuer, lying betweene Senaga and Niger, and esteemed by *Sanutus* to be that which *Ptolemey* called Stachir, fetcheth his originall from the lake of Libya, and from the fountaines which *Ptolemey* assigneth to the riuer of Niger: this riuer in greatnes and depth exceedeth Senaga, and hath many vnknowne riuers falling thereinto, and bringeth foorth all kindes of liuing creatures that Senaga doth. In the midst of this riuer standeth the Isle of Elephants, so called, in regarde of great numbers of those beasts. The riuer Zaire beginneth out of the same lake from whence Nilus springeth: this being one of the greatest riuers of all Africa, and vtterly vnknowne vnto ancient writers, containeth at the mouth eight and twentie miles in bredth, hauing a very safe harbour for ships to ride in: also there are many and great Islands in the chanell thereof, and sundrie riuers do fall thereinto, the principall whereof are Vumba, Barbela, Coanza, and Lelunda: in briefe, this riuer Zaire running through the kingdome of Congo, disgorgeth it selfe into the maine Ethiopian sea. Out of the same lake, which is the very fountaine of Nilus, springeth another notable and famous riuer, which after a long race toward the south and east, is diuided into two branches: the northerly branch, which is exceeding great (for it receiueth sixe great riuers thereinto, and is nauigable for the space of seuen hundred miles) being properly called Cuama, and the other branch more southerly, which is verie great also, being named Manich or Magnice, or Rio del spirito santo.

These two riuers of Senaga and Gambra are not certainly known, whether they be maine riuers of themselues, or branches and mouthes of Niger.

The isle of Elephants.

These two riuers of Cuama and Magnice (according to Philippo Pigafetta) spring both out of the great lake and are not branches of one riuer.

The promontories, capes, or headlands of Africa be verie many, the most famous and principal wherof are, The cape of Buena esperança, or good hope, Cabo verde, and Cabo de los corrientes. The cape of Buena esperança or good hope is the extreame southerly point of all Africa, being a most renowmed and dangerous promontorie, which in the yeere one thousand foure hundred nintie seuen was the second time discouered by Vasco da Gama at the commandement of Don Emanuel king of Portugal: this cape the mariners were woont to cal the lion of the Ocean, and the tempestuous cape, by reason of the ruffling and roring of the windes, which they found there for the most part very boisterons: for the sea thereabout is exceeding rough, by reason of the continual fury of the windes; neither will any nauigatours touch vpon the cape, except they be enforced by meere necessitie. Cabo verde or The greene head-land, is esteemed by some to be the same which *Ptolemey* calleth *Promontorium Arsinarium*, & is compassed on either

The promontories or capes of Africa.

Cabo de buena esperanza.

Cabo verde.

Cabo de los corrientes.

ſide by the riuers of Senega and Gambra. Cabo de los corrientes, otherwiſe called the cape of San Sebaſtian, ſtretcheth foorth it ſelfe right ouer againſt the ſouth ende of the great Iſle of Madagaſcar: it is a cape well knowne, by reaſon it is ſo dangerous to double, which the Moores durſt not paſſe for a very long time.

And heere as concerning the ſtrange beaſts, fiſhes, ſerpents, trees, plants, and roots of Africa, as likewiſe touching the diſeaſes, whereto the African people are moſt ſubiect; and the varietie of languages (excepting the Chaldæan, Egyptian, Turkiſh, Italian, and Spaniſh toongs) which are now and haue beene of ancient times ſpoken in Africa; I refer the Reader to the firſt and laſt bookes of *Iohn Leo*, and to other places, where they are at large and purpoſely intreated of.

The inhabitants of Africa.

Moreouer this part of the worlde is inhabited eſpecially by fiue principall nations, to wit, by the people called Cafri or Cafates, that is to ſay outlawes, or lawleſſe, by the Abaſſins, the Egyptians, the Arabians, and the Africans or Moores, properly ſo called; which laſt are of two kinds, namely white or tawnie Moores, and Negros or blacke Moores. Of all which nations ſome are Gentiles which worſhip Idols; others of the ſect of Mahumet; ſome others Chriſtians; and ſome Iewiſh in religion; the greateſt part of which people are thought to be deſcended from *Cham* the curſed ſon of *Noah*; except ſome Arabians of the linage of *Sem*, which afterward paſſed into Africa. Now the Arabians inhabiting Africa are diuided into many ſeuerall kinds, poſſeſſing diuers and ſundrie habitations and regions; for ſome dwell neere the ſea ſhore, which retaine the name of Arabians; but others inhabiting the inland, are called Baduini. There bee likewiſe infinite ſwarmes of Arabians, which with their wiues and children, leade a vagrant and roguiſh life in the deſerts, vſing tents in ſtead of houſes: theſe are notable theeues, and very troubleſome both to their neighbour-inhabitants, and alſo to merchants: for which cauſe trauellers and merchants dare not paſſe ouer the African deſerts alone, but onely in Carouans, which are great companies of merchants riding, and tranſporting their goods vpon their camels and aſſes: who go very ſtrong, and in great numbers, for feare of the ſaid theeuiſh Arabians.

The diuerſitie of religions in Africa.

The ancient diuiſion of Africa by Ptolemey; and a compariſon of the ancient with the moderne names.

Ptolemey in his fourth booke of Geography diuideth Africa into twelue regions or prouinces: namely, Mauritania Tingitana, Mauritania Cæſarienſis, Numidia, Africa propria, Cyrenaica, Marmarica, Libya propria, AEgyptus ſuperior, AEgyptus inferior, Libya interior, AEthiopia ſub AEgypto, & AEthiopia interior.

Mauritania Tingitana, being all one with the kingdomes of Maroco and Fez.

Mauritania Tingitana, the moſt rich and beautifull couutrey of Africa, ſo named of the citie Tingis, which we at this day call Tanger, was ſometimes alſo (as *Plinie* witneſſeth) called Borgundiana: moreouer others haue called it by the names of Mauritania Sitiphenſis, Hiſpania Transfretana, and Hiſpania Tingitana: but *Solinus* termeth the ſame Mauritania inferior. The inhabitants were of old named by the Græcians Mauruſij, and by the

Romaines

Romaines Mauri, but the Spaniards at this present terme them Alarabes. In this part of Africa are now contained two stately kingdomes, namely the kingdome of Maroco, and the kingdome of Fez; both which are enuironed with the mountaines of Atlas, the Ocean and the Mediterran seas, and to the east with the riuer of Muluia.

Mauritania Cæsariensis, named according to the citie of Cæsaria, which was so called after the name of *Claudius Cæsar*, at this present bearing the name of Tiguident or Tegdemt, which worde in the Arabian toong signifieth ancient; was by *Victor Vticensis*, termed Mauritania maior; by *Strabo* Massilia, and Massæsilia, and the inhabitants thereof by *Plinie* Massæsuli. At this present it containeth the kingdome of Tremizen, as *Dominas Niger*, and *Giraua* are of opinion. *Mauritania Cæsariensis called at this present Tremizen, and Alger.*

Numidia the ancient, called in the time of *Ptolomey*, The new, but by the Greekes (as *Plinie* testifieth) Metagonitis, and the inhabitants thereof Numidæ, and Nomades; is that region which lieth betweene The great riuer, and the riuer Megerada, ouer which countrey king *Massiniſſa* bare rule. It containeth now (as I coniecture) the prouinces of Bugia, Constantina, Bona, and Mezzab. Howbeit at this present we vnderstande by Numidia that region which lieth betweene the mountaines of Atlas and the Libyan deserts, called by *Iohn Leo* and *Marmolius* Biledulgerid, or the lande of Dates, bicause this is the onely region for plentie of Dates, in all Africa. *Numidia the ancient, containing Bugia, Constantina, Bona, Mezzab, &c.*

Africa propria, situate vpon the Mediterran sea, betweene the regions of old Numidia, and the Cyrene, is called by *Plinie* Zeugitania, who diuideth it into the ancient and the new. At this present it is the kingdome of Tunis, for it containeth Byzacium, which by *Strabo* is accounted a part of Africa propria. The head of this prouince in times past was Carthage, whereof at this present there are nothing but ruines extant. *Africa propria all one with the kingdome of Tunis.*

Cyrene, or Cyrenaica, by *Plinie* called Pentapolis, and by the Hebrews Lebahim, is esteemed by *Giraua* to be at this present called Corene, and by *Andrew Theuet*, Assadib: but *Iohn Leo* and *Marmolius* name it Mesrata. *Cyrene now called Mesrata.*

Marmarica is called by *Plinie* Mareotis, and Libya: howbeit at this present the desert of Barcha, described by *Iohn Leo* in his sixt booke, containeth a great part of Cyrenaica, and all Marmarica. *Marmarica comprehended in the desert of Barcha.*

But Libya propria, retaineth till this present the name of Libya, and is that part which the Arabians call Sarra, which worde signifieth a desert. *Libya propria, called Sarra.*

Both the ancient Ethiopias are now possessed by the Abassins, vnder the dominion of *Prete Ianni*. *A Ethiopia, now called Abassia.*

Egypt retaineth euen till this day, the ancient name.

The best moderne diuision of Africa, for these our times is to adde vnto the foure general partes, Barbaria, Numidia, Libya, and the land of Negros, set downe by Iohn Leo, three other generall partes to wit, Egypt; the inner or the vpper Ethiopia, containing Troglodytica, Nubia, and the empire of Prete Ianni; and the lower, or the extreme Ethiopia, stretching from the

said

ſaid empire along the ſea-coaſt, and through the Inland euen to the Cape of Buena Eſperança.

Thus much of Africa in generall. Now it remaineth that we briefly deſcribe in particular all the principall maine landes, and iſlands, (vndeſcribed by *Iohn Leo*) which thereto belong, or adioyne; beginning firſt with the Red ſea one of the chiefe limites of Africa, and from thence ſhaping our courſe along the eaſterne or fartheſt quarters thereof, through the dominions of *Prete Ianni*, the lande of Zanguebar, the empires of Mohenemuge, and Monomotapa, and the region of Cafraria: and then, hauing doubled the cape of Buena eſperança, range we along the weſterne partes by the kingdomes of Angola, Congo, Anzichi, Benin, Ghinea, and by the capes of Sierra Leona, Capo verde, and the caſtle of Arguin, till we haue brought our ſelues to finiſh our courſe, vpon the moſt ſouthweſterne partes of Barbarie, from whence our author *Iohn Leo* beginneth his.

A particular deſcription of all the knowne borders, coaſtes and inlands of Africa, which Iohn Leo hath left vndeſcribed: collected out of ſundry ancient and late writers.

Of the red ſea.

THe red ſea called by others the Arabian gulfe, and the ſtreight of Mecha, containing in length twelue hundred miles, and in bredth but one hundred, is deuided into three partitions or chanels; the middlemoſt whereof being called The large or deepe ſea, is without danger nauigable both day and night, becauſe it hath from fiue and twentie to fiftie fathomes water, eſpecially from the iſle of Camaran euen to Suez ſtāding at the very bottome of the gulfe: the other two partitions, which are the eaſterne and weſterne extremities, are incumbred with ſo manie little iſles and rockes, as it is impoſſible to ſaile ouer them but onely by day-light, and with moſt expert pilots, which are to be hired at a ſmall iſland lying ouerthwart the very mouth or entrance of the red ſea; which the ancient kings of Egypt (if the report of *Strabo* be true) barred with a chaine, from the African, to the Arabian ſide. This ſea is very skarce of fiſh; perhaps becauſe there fall no riuers thereinto, which with their freſh and ſweete waters doe much delight and nouriſh the fiſh; and the ſtrand or ſhore thereof is deſtitute of all greene graſſe, herbes, or weedes. The portes and hauens of this ſea are for the moſt part very dangerous and difficult to enter, by reaſon of the manifold windings and turnings, which muſt be made, to auoide the rockes.

This iſle I take to be Babelmandel.

At the very head or North end of this gulfe, ſtandeth Suez, which heretofore ſeemeth to haue bin called Ciuitas Heroum, and in the times of *Dauid* and *Salomon* Hazion-Geber, from whence the fleetes of thoſe partes

Suez called of olde Heroum ciuitas, and Hazion Geber.

were

were sent to Ophir for golde and other rich commodities. Vnder the Egyptian Ptolemeys and the Romans, this towne flourished exceedingly, by reason of the infinite quantitie of merchandize brought thither from the east Indies, and Arabia. But now it is nothing so frequented; partly in regard of the mighty concurse and traffique which Mecha draweth vnto it selfe, and partly by reason of the Portugales conueiance of spices and other Indian commodities about the cape of Buena esperança. At this present the great Turke hath there an Arsenale, with certaine gallies, for feare of the Portugals aforesaid: against whome there haue bin dispatched from this place two greate fleetes, one for the assailing of Diu, and another for Ormuz. Howbeit becaus all the countries round about are vtterly destitute of wood, it is a matter of infinite charge to furnish foorth a fleete from hence; for they are constrained to fetch their timber as far as Caramania, partly by sea, and partly vpon camels backs. At this towne of Suez they haue no fresh water; but all their water is brought them from a place sixe miles distant vpon camels backs, being notwithstanding brackish and bitter.

Arsenale signifieth a store-house for munition, and for all necessaries to build, repaire, and furnish a fleete.

The western shore of the Red sea is inhabited with people called in old time Troglodytæ, which at this present do all of them yeelde obedience to the great Turke: who considering, that the fleets of the Portugales entered very often into the Red sea, and were there receiued by the subiects of Prete Gianni, and did him great domage; hath thereupon taken occasion not onely to conquer the Troglodytæ, but also to wast and subdue a great part of Barnagasso, the most Northerlie prouince of the said Prete. So that the audacious attempts of the Portugales in those partes haue bred two most dangerous and bad effects; the one is, that the Arabians haue most strongly fortified all their sea-townes, which before lay naked and without fortification; the other, for that the Turke also hath bin occasioned thereby to make warre against the Prete. Wherefore they ought not to haue vndertaken any such enterprise, but with full resolution and sufficient forces to accomplish the same: for lesser attempts serue to no other end, but onely to rouze and arme the enimie, which was before secure and quiet.

Troglodytæ were a people that liued in caues vnder the earth to auoide the extrem heat, being deriued ἀπὸ τῶ τρωγλας ἔχειν δεδύκεναι.

A great part of Barnagasso subdued by the Turke.

Neither is it heere to be omitted, that in the foresaide sea, a man can saile in no ships nor barks, but only those of the great Turke, or at least with his licence, paying vnto him for tribute a good part of the fraight. For this purpose he hath certaine Magazines or store-houses of timber, which is brought partly from the gulfe of Satalia, and partly from Nicomedia, and other places vpon the Euxin sea, vnto Rosetto and Alexandria; from whence it is afterward transported to Cairo, and thence to Suez.

This sea is called the Red sea, not in regard that the waters thereof be all red, but (as some thinke) from certaine red rushes which growe vpon the shore: and (as others are of opinion) from a kinde of red earth which in sundry places it hath at the bottome: which earth dieth not the very substance of the water red, but by transparence causeth it (especially neere the shore) to appeere of that colour.

Africa Troglodytica.

THat ſandie, barren, and deſert part of Africa which lieth betweene Nilus and the Red ſea, eſpecially to the ſouth of the tropike, was in old times inhabited by the Troglodytæ, a people ſo called, bicauſe of their dwelling in caues vnder the ground. Along this weſterne coaſt of the Red ſea runneth a ridge of mountaines, which being an occaſion that the inland riuers can not fall into the ſaide ſea, they are forced to diſcharge themſelues into Nilus. The foreſaide mountaines and ſea coaſt are now inhabited by Mahumetans, being partly Arabians, and partly Turkes: which not many yeeres ago haue attempted to ſaile that ſea, and to inuade the regions adioining. The naturall inhabitants are a rude barbarous people, and very poore and beggerly. The chiefe places of habitation are Corondol, a ſpeciall good porte; Alcoſſer a place well knowne, bicauſe that neere vnto it the ſaide mountaines open themſelues, and giue paſſage to the bringing in of the fruits and commodities of Abaſſia; Suachen eſteemed one of the principall ports in all the ſtreights, and being made by an iſland. Here reſideth the Baſſa of the great Turke, which is called the gouernour of Abaſſia, with three thouſand ſoldiers or thereabout.

Next followeth Ercoco the onely hauen towne of the *Prete*, lying ouer againſt the little iſle of Mazua: and heere the mountaines make an other opening or paſſage, for tranſporting of victuals out of the lande of the ſaide *Prete Ianni*. From hence almoſt to the very entrance of the Red ſea, the coaſt is at this preſent vninhabited, forlorne, and deſert. Likewiſe from Suachen to Mazua is a continuall woode, the trees whereof are but of ſmall woorth. Iuſt within the ſaide entrance ſtandeth the towne and port of Vela, vnder the iuriſdiction of the king of Dancali a Moore.

Vpon all this weſt ſhore of the Red ſea, as likewiſe vpon the contrary eaſt ſhore, ſcarcitie of water is the cauſe, why there are ſo fewe, and ſo ſmall places of habitation: and the people runne and flocke togither, where they may finde any pit or fountaine of water.

Some curious reader might here expect, becauſe I haue nowe paſſed ſo neere the frontiers of Egypt, that I ſhould make an exact deſcription of that moſt famous and fruitefull prouince, and likewiſe of the great city of Alcair, and of the inundation and decreaſe of Nilus: all which, becauſe they are expreſſed in moſt orient & liuelie colours by our author *Iohn Leo*; I ſhould ſhew my ſelfe both iniurious to him, and tedious to all iudiciall readers, in anticipating and foreſtalling that, before the beginning of his booke, which he ſo neere the end doth in ſuch large and particular wiſe intreate of. Now therefore let vs proceed to the vpper or inner Ethiopia, beginning with the firſt and moſt northerly prouince thereof called Nubia.

Nubia.

Nubia.

PAssing therefore westward from the Island of Siene, you enter into the prouince of Nubia, bordering on the west vpon Gaoga, eastward vpon the riuer Nilus, towards the North, vpon Egypt, and southward vpon the desert of Goran. The inhabitants thereof called by *Strabo* Νόβαι, liue at this present (as *Francisco Aluarez* reporteth) a most miserable and wretched kinde of life: for hauing lost the sinceritie and light of the gospel, they do embrace infinite corruptions of the Iewish and Mahumetan religions. At the same time when the foresaid *Aluarez* was in Abassia, there came certaine messengers out of Nubia, to make suit vnto the *Prete*, that he would send them priests, and such persons as might preach and administer the sacraments vnto them. But he returned answere, that he could not in regard of the scarcitie of great clergie-men in his dominions: The said messengers reported, that the Nubians had sent often to Rome for a bishop; but being afterward by the inuasions of the Moores and the calamitie of warre, cut short of that assistance, they fell for want of teachers and ministers, into extreme ignorance of Christian religion, and by little and little were infected with the impious and abominable sects of the Iewes and Mahumetans. Some Portugals trauailing to those parts, sawe many churches destroied by the handes of the Arabians, and in some places the pictures of saints painted vpon the wals. They are gouerned by women, and call their Queene *Gaua*. Their principall citie called Dangala, and consisting of about ten thousand households, is a place of great traffike, bicause it is so neere vnto Egypt and the riuer Nilus. All their other habitations are villages and base cottages. Their houses are built of claie, and couered with strawe. The chiefe commodities of this region are rice, stone-sugar, sanders, iuorie, (for they take many elephants) as likewise abundance of ciuet, and golde in great plentie. The countrey is for the most part sandie: howbeit there are certaine mightie lakes, by the benefite whereof a great part of Nubia is watred and made fruitfull.

Dangala the head citie of Nubia.

The Isle of Meroe.

MEroe called at this time by the names of Guengare, Amara, and Nobe, being the greatest and fairest isle which Nilus maketh, and resembled by *Herodotus* to the shape of a target, containeth in bredth a thousand, and in length three thousand stadios or furlongs. It aboundeth with golde, siluer, copper, iron, Eben-wood, palme-trees, and other such commodities as are in Nubia. Some write, that there growe canes or reeds of so huge a bignes, that the people make botes of them. Heere also you haue minerall salt, and lions, elephants, and leopards. This island is inhabited by Mahumetans, who are confederate with the Moores

against

againſt *Prete Ianni*. *Strabo* affirmeth, that in old time the authoritie of the prieſts of this iſland was ſo great, that by a meane and ordinarie meſſenger they woulde command the king to murther himſelfe, and woulde ſubſtitute an other in his roome. But at length, one king hauing in a certaine temple put all the ſaide prieſts to death, quite aboliſhed that monſtrous cuſtome. And heere as Nilus vnfoldeth himſelfe into two branches, to embrace this Iſlande, he receiueth from the eaſt the riuer of Abagni, and from the weſt the riuer Sarabotto, which haue likewiſe other ſmaller riuers falling into them. The Abaſſins are of opinion, that the Queene of Saba, which trauelled ſo farre to heare the wiſedome of *Salomon*, was miſtreſſe of this iſle. *Paulus Iouius* ſaith, here are three kings, one a Gentile, the ſecond a Moore, and the third a Chriſtian, ſubiect vnto the *Prete*. From Meroe to Siene it is accounted fifteene daies iourney by water.

* *Abaſsia, or the empire of* Prete Ianni.

* *Or Aethiopia the higher.*

THe Abaſſins are a people ſubiect to * *Prete Ianni*: whoſe empire (if we conſider the ſtile which he vſeth in his letters) hath moſt ample confines. For he intituleth himſelfe emperour of the great and higher Ethiopia, king of Goiame, which (as *Botero* ſuppoſeth) is ſituate betweene Nilus and Zaire; of Vangue a kingdome beyond Zaire; of Damut which confineth with the land of the Anzichi; and towards the ſouth he is called king of Cafate and Bagamidri, two prouinces bordering vpon the firſt great lake, which is the originall fountaine of Nilus; as likewiſe of the kingdomes of Xoa, Fatigar, Angote, Baru, Baaliganze, Adea, Amara, Ambea, Vague, Tigremahon, Sabaim, where the Queene of Saba gouerned, and laſtly of * Barnagaes, and lorde as farre as Nubia, which bordereth vpon Egypt. But at this preſent the center or midſt of his Empire (as *Iohn Barros* writeth) is the lake of Barcena. For it extendeth eaſtward towarde the Red ſea, as farre as Suaquen, the ſpace of two hundred twentie and two leagues. Howbeit betweene the ſea and his dominions runneth a ridge of mountaines inhabited by Moores, who are maſters of al the ſea-coaſt along, except the porte of Ercoco, which belongeth to the *Prete*. And likewiſe on the weſt, his empire is reſtrained by another mountainous ridge ſtretching along the riuer of Nilus, where are founde moſt rich mines of golde; amongſt which are the mines of Damut and of Sinaſſij, wholie in the poſſeſſion of Gentiles which pay tribute vnto the *Prete*. Northward it is bounded by an imaginarie line ſuppoſed to be drawen from Suachen to the beginning of the iſle Meroe aboue mentioned; which line extendeth an hundred and fiue and twentie leagues. From thence the Abaſſin borders trend ſouth ſomewhat crookedly in manner of a bowe, as farre as the kingdome of Adea (from the mountaines whereof ſpringeth a riuer called by *Ptolemey* * Raptus which falleth into the ſea about Melinde) for the ſpace of two hundred and fiftie nine leagues; next vnto the which borders, inhabite certaine Gentiles of blacke colour, with curled haire. And heere the ſaide

* *Commonly called in Latine writers, Presbiter Iohannes, by the Moores Aſiclabaſſi, and by the Abaſſins his owne ſubiects Acegue, that is, Emperour, & Neguz which importeth a king, and Belul alſo, being all one with Encoe in the Chaldean toong, both which wordes ſignifie pretious or high.*

* *Or Barnagaſſo*

Moſt rich gold-mines.

* *And by the late writers Quilimanci.*

empire

empire is limited by the kingdome of Adel, the head citie whereof called Arar, standeth in the latitude nine degrees. So that all this great empire may containe in compasse sixe hundred threescore and two leagues, little more or lesse. It is refreshed and watered by two mightie riuers which conuey their streames into Nilus, called by *Ptolemey* Astaboras and Astapus, and by the naturall inhabitants Abagni and Tagassi; the first whereof taketh his originall from the lake of Barcena, and the second from the lake of Colue. Barcena lieth in seuen degrees of north latitude; & Colue vnder the verie Equinoctiall. The first (besides Abagni) ingendereth also the riuer of Zeila: and the second (besides Tagassi) giueth essence to the riuer of Quilimanci. Between Abagni and the Red sea lieth the prouince of Barnagasso: betweene Abagni and Tagassi are the kingdomes of Angote and Fatigar; and more towards the * bay of Barbarians, the prouinces of Adea and of Baru; and somewhat lower, that of Amara. In briefe, beyond the riuer of Tagassi ly the regions of Bileguanzi, and of Tigremahon.

* *Sinus Barbaricus, a mightie gulfe on the backeside of Africa, stretching (as some will haue it) from 4. degrees of northerly to 17. of southerly latitude.*

The Abassins haue no great knowledge of Nilus by reason of the mountaines which deuide them from it; for which cause they call Abagni the father of riuers. Howbeit they say that vpon Nilus do inhabite two great and populous nations; one of Iewes towards the west, vnder the gouernment of a mighty king; the other more southerly, consisting of Amazones or warlike women; whereof wee will speake more at large in our relation of Monomotapa.

Throughout all the dominion of the *Prete* there is not any one city of importance, either for multitude of inhabitantes, for magnificent buildings, or for any other respect. For the greatest townes there, containe not aboue two thousand housholds; the houses being (cottage-like) reared vp with clay and couered with straw, or such like base matter. Also *Ptolemey* intreating of these partes, maketh mention but of three or foure cities onely, which he appointeth to the south of the Isle Meroe. Howbeit in some places vpon the frontiers of Abassia there are certaine townes verie fairely built, and much frequented for traffique. The Portugales in their trauailes throughout the empire haue often declared vnto the Abassins, how much better it were, for auoiding of the outragious iniuries and losses daily inflicted by the Moores and Mahumetans both vpon their goods and persons, if the emperour would build cities and castles stronglie walled and fortified. Whereunto they made answere, that the power of their Neguz, or emperour, consisted not in stone-walles, but in the armes of his people. They vse not ordinarily any lime or stone, but onely for the building of churches (saying, that so it becommeth vs to make a difference between the houses of men, and churches dedicated to God) and of their Beteneguz or houses of the emperour, wherein the gouernours of prouinces are placed to execute iustice. These Beteneguz stand continually open, and yet in the gouernours absence no man dare enter into them, vnder paine of being punished as a traytour. Moreouer in the city of Axuma (esteemed by them to haue beene

Of these Beteneguz read Francis Aluare cap. 42.

the ſeate of the Queene of *Saba*) ſtand certaine ruinous buildings like vnto pyramides; which by reaſon of their greatnes, remaine euen til this preſent, notwithſtanding their many yeeres antiquitie. Likewiſe there are in this countrie diuers churches and oratories hewen out of the hard rocke, conſiſting but of one onely ſtone, ſome ſixtie, ſome fortie, and ſome thirtie* fathomes long, being full of windowes, and engrauen with ſtrange and vnknowne characters. Three ſuch churches there are of twelue * fathomes broade and eightie in length.

* Or yardes: for Braccia ſignifieth both.

Of Melich read more at large in Franciſco Aluarez. cap. 37. and cap. 138.

The Abaſſins which are ſubiect to the *Prete*, hold opinion, that their prince deriueth his petigree from *Melich* the ſonne of *Salomon*, which (as they ſay) he begot of the Queene of *Saba*; and that themſelues are deſcended from the officers and attendants which *Salomon* appointed vnto this his ſonne when he ſent him home vnto his mother: which ſeemeth not altogether vnlikely, if you conſider the Iewiſh ceremonies of circumciſion, obſeruing of the ſabaoth, & ſuch like, which they vſe vntill this preſent: likewiſe they abhorre ſwines fleſh and certaine other meates, which they call vncleane. The *Prete* abſolutely gouerneth in all matters, except it be in adminiſtring of the ſacraments, and ordaining of prieſts. Hee giueth and taketh away benefices at his pleaſure; and in puniſhing offenders, maketh no difference betweene his clergie and laitie. The adminiſtration of their ſacraments is wholie referred to the Abuna or Patriarke. The *Prete* is lorde and owner of all the lands and poſſeſſions in his empire, except thoſe of the church; which are in number infinite; for the monaſteries of ſaint *Antonie* (beſides which there are none of any other order) and the colleges of the Canons and of the Hermites, togither with the pariſhes, are innumerable. They are all prouided by the king, both of reuenewes and of ornaments.

They haue two winters and two ſummers; which they diſcerne not by colde and heate, but by rainie and faire weather. They begin their yeere vpon the 26. of Auguſt, and diuide it into twelue moneths, each moneth containing thirtie daies, whereunto they adde euery common yeere fiue daies, and in the leape yeere ſixe, which odde daies they call Pagomen, that is, The end of the yeere. Their ordinarie iourneies in trauelling are twelue miles a day. The common harlots dwell without their townes, and haue wages allowed them out of the common purſe: neither may they enter into any cities, nor apparell themſelues, but only in yellow.

The ſoile of Abaſſia aboundeth generally with graine, and in eſpeciall with barly and all kindes of Pulſe, but not ſo much with wheate; they haue ſugar likewiſe (not knowing how to refine it) and hony, and cotton-wooll, orenges, cedars, and limons, grow naturally there. They haue neither melons, citrons, nor rape-roots: but many plants & herbes different from ours. Their drinke is made of barley and millet: neither haue they any wine made of grapes, but onely in the houſes of the emperour, and the * Abuna. They are not deſtitute of Elephants, mules, lions, tygres, ounces, and deere. Their

* Patriarke.

owne

owne countrey horſes are but of a ſmall ſize: howbeit they haue alſo of the Arabian and Egyptian breed, the coltes whereof within fower daies after they be foled, they vſe to ſuckle with kine. They haue great and terrible apes; and infinite ſorts of birds; but neither cuckowes nor Pies, ſo farre as euer could bee learned. Heere are likewiſe great ſtore of mines of gold, ſiluer, iron, and copper; but they know not how to digge and refine the ſame: for the people of this countrey are ſo rude and ignorant, that they haue no knowledge nor vſe of any arte or occupation. Inſomuch as they eſteeme the carpenters or ſmithes craft for an vnlawfull and diabolicall kinde of ſcience; and ſuch as exerciſe the ſame, liue among them like infamous perſons; neither are they permitted to enter into any of their churches. In the kingdome of Bagamidri are founde moſt excellent mines of ſiluer, which they knowe none other way how to take from the ore, but onely by melting it with fire into thinne plates. Goiame aboundeth with baſe gold. In the kingdome of Damut they digge and refine it ſomewhat better. They haue neither the arte of making cloth (for which cauſe the greater part of them go clad in beaſts skins) nor yet the manner of hauking, fowling, or hunting; ſo that their countries ſwarme with partridges, quailes, feſants, cranes, geeſe, hens, hares, deere, and other like creatures: neither knowe they how to make any full vſe or benefite of the fruitefulnes of their countrey, nor of the commoditie of riuers. They ſowe mill for the moſt parte, ſometimes in one place, and ſometimes in another, according as the raine giueth them opportunitie. In ſumme, they ſhew no wit nor dexterity in any thing ſo much as in robbery and warre; vnto both which they haue a kind of naturall inclination. Which is occaſioned (as I ſuppoſe) by the continuall voiages made by the *Prete*, and by their vſuall liuing in the wide fields, and that in diuers and ſundry places. For to trauaile continually, and remaine in the fields without any ſtable or firme habitation, compelleth men as it were, of neceſſitie, to lay holde on all that comes next to hande, be it their owne, or belonging to others.

They are not much ſubiect to tempeſts; but to an inconuenience far more intollerable, namely to innumerable ſwarmes of locuſts, which bring ſuch deſolation vpon them, as is moſt dreadfull to conſider: for they conſume whole prouinces, leauing them quite deſtitute of ſuccour both for man and beaſt. They vſe no ſtamped coine in all this empire, but inſteede thereof certaine rude pieces of golde, and little balles of iron, eſpecially in Angote; as likewiſe ſalt and pepper, which are the greateſt riches that they can enioy.

Hence it is, that the tributes which are payed to the prince, conſiſt onely of ſuch things as his owne dominions do naturally afforde; as namely of ſalt, gold, ſiluer, corne, hides, elephants teeth, the horne of the Rhinoceros, with ſlaues, and ſuch like. Which forme of tribute (being moſt agreeable to nature) is vſed alſo in other parts of Africa. Their ſalt is taken out of a certaine great mountaine in the prouince of Balgada, and is made into ſquare pieces.

The moſt populous place in all Abaſſia is the court of the *Prete*, whereſoeuer it reſideth; and there are erected fiue or ſixe thouſand tents of cotton of diuers colours, with ſo notable a diſtinction of ſtreetes, lanes, market-places, and Tribunals; that euen in a moment euery man knoweth his owne ſtation and the place where he is to doe his buſines. A man may coniecture the greatnes of this courte, if he doe but conſider, that (according to the report of ſome who haue there bin perſonally preſent) beſides the camels which carry the tents, the mules of carriage exceede the number of fiftie thouſand. Their mules ſerue them to carry burthens, and to ride vpon: but their horſes are onely for the warres. The Mahumetans haue now brought this prince to great extremity: but heretofore while he was in his flouriſhing eſtate, he liued ſo maieſtically, that he neuer ſpake but by an interpreter; nor would be ſeene to his ſubiects, but onely vpon ſolemne dayes. At other times it was held as a great fauour, if he did ſhew but the halfe part of his feete to ambaſſadours, and to his fauorites. And no maruel: for amongſt the Ethiopians it hath beene an ancient cuſtome (as *Strabo* writeth) To adore their kinges like gods, who for the moſt part liue encloſed at home. This ſo ſtrange and ſtately kinde of gouernment, did exceedingly abaſe his ſubiects, whom the *Prete* vſed like ſlaues; ſo that vpon the ſmalleſt occaſions that might be, he would depriue them of all honour and dignity, were they neuer ſo great. Abaſſia containeth many large plaines, and very high mountaines, all fruitfull. In ſome places you ſhall haue moſt extreame coulde and froſtie weather: but not any ſnowe throughout the whole empire, no not in the mountaines.

The Moores called Dobas.

The *Prete* hath many moores in his dominions, and vpon his borders; but the moſt populous of all others are the Moores called Dobas, who are bound by a law neuer to marry, till they can bring moſt euident teſtimony, that each of them hath ſlaine twelue Chriſtians. Wherefore the Abaſſin merchants paſſe not by their country, but with moſt ſtrong guardes.

A particular and briefe relation of all the kingdomes and prouinces ſubiect to the Chriſtian Emperour of Abaſſia, commonly called *Prete Ianni.*

Barnagaſſo.

** Barnagaez.*

OF all the prouinces ſubiect vnto the *Prete*, that of * Barnagaſſo is beſt knowne vnto vs, bicauſe it is ſo neere vnto the Red ſea; ouer againſt the ſhore whereof it ſtretcheth in length from Suachen, almoſt as farre as the very mouth or entrance of the ſtreight, being (as is before ſaide) bounded on the

ſouth

south part with the mightie riuer of Abagni, which runneth westward out of the lake of Barcena into Nilus. Howbeit it hath no other port vpon the Red sea but onely Ercoco, situate neere the Isle of Mazua; neither hath the *Prete* any porte but this, in all his dominions; so that he is (as it were) on all sides land-locked, which is one of the greatest defects in any empire, kingdome or state, that can be imagined. This prouince is full of townes & villages, as likewise of riuers and pooles which make it exceeding fruitfull. The Viceroy or gouernour hereof, called also by the name of *Barnagasso, resideth in the citie of Beroa, otherwise called Barua, and by *Ptolemey* (as *Sanutus* thinketh) Coloue, situate vpon a pleasant riuer abounding with fish. Vnto him likewise are subiect the gouernments of Danfila and of Canfila, neere vnto the borders of Egypt.

Out of this lake also the riuer of Zeila runneth eastward into the Red sea.

** Ear in the Abassin toong signifieth the Sea, and Neguz a king: so that Barnagaez or Barnagasso, is as much as king of the sea, or Lord high admirall.*

Certaine yeeres past the great Turkes forces haue mightily afflicted this prouince, destroying the townes, and leading the people captiue: so that in the end *Isaac* the lorde Barnagasso was inforced to compound with the Turkes lieutenant (bearing title, The Bassa of Abassia, and residing in Suachen) for the yeerely tribute of a thousand ounces of golde. Ouer and besides he paieth euery yeere vnto his soueraigne the *Prete*, an hundred and fiftie excellent horses, with cloth of silke and of cotton, and other matters.

On the most westerly part of Barnagasso, beginneth a mightie ridge of mountaines, which for a good space waxing narrower and narrower, at length in the kingdome of Angote dilateth it selfe into a rounde forme, enuironing with the steepe sides, and impassable tops thereof, many fruitefull and pleasant vallies, for the space of fifteene daies iourney in compasse: within which vallies (as it were in walled castles) all persons whatsoeuer, both male and female, of the Abassin bloud royall, are vnder paine of most extreme punishment, togither with their whole families, limited to remaine. Within this great roundell or enclosure of mountaines, there is (among many others) contained one lesser, which is begirt arounde with a mountainous wall so craggie, steepe, and vnscaleable, that no man can come in or out, but onely by a certaine basket drawne vp and downe vpon a rope: neither is it possible to famish the parties within by a siege, be it neuer so long: for they haue fruitefull ground, with houses, a church, a monasterie, cesternes of water, and all other necessaries for the continuall maintenance of fiue hundred persons. Within this strong citadell of mountaines (for the auoiding of all tumults and seditions) are locked vp those great personages which come neerest in bloud to the *Prete*, and are in possibilitie of the crowne; and here must they all liue and die, except a very few of them, who attaine at length vnto the gouernment of the empire. The Abassins haue a tradition, that one *Abraham* an emperour of theirs being admonished in a dreame, that he shoulde keepe his dominions in tranquillitie by the meanes aforesaid, was the first that founde this mountaine, and vsed it for the same purpose.

All persons of the Abassin blood royall enclosed within a mightie roundel of mountaines. Francis Aluarez cap. 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, &c.

Tigremahon.

TIgremahon, a very large kingdome, lieth betweene the riuer Marabo, Nilus, the Red ſea, and the kingdome of Angote. The gouernour heereof paieth for yeerely tribute vnto the *Prete* two hundred Arabian horſes, a great quantitie of ſilke and cotton-cloth, and very much golde. Vnto this kingdome is ſubiect the prouince of Tigray, wherein ſtandes the citie of Caxumo, ſometimes the royall ſeate of the Queene of Saba (which they ſay was called Maqueda, of whom *Salomon* begat a ſonne named *Melich*, before mentioned) which citie was the ſeate likewiſe of Queene *Candace*. Alſo to the ſaid kingdome of Tigremahon belong the prouinces of Sabaim, Torrates, Balgada, and others.

Angote.

THis kingdome ſtanding betweene the kingdomes of Tigremahon and Amara, is full of mountaines and valleies, and aboundeth mightilie with all kinde of corne and cattell. The inhabitants eate but one meale in fower and twentie howers, and that alwaies in the night: their foode is moſt commonly rawe fleſh, with a kinde of ſauce made of an oxe gall. In ſtead of money they vſe ſalte, and little balles of iron, as is before ſaide. Vnto this kingdome do belong the prouinces of Abuguna, and Guanamora, with other regions and places.

Amara.

THe kingdome of Amara bordering north vpon Angote, eaſt vpon Xoa, ſouth vpon Damut, and extending weſt almoſt as farre as Nilus; is for the moſt part a plaine region, without mountaines, very fertile, and abounding with cattell. Vpon the frontiers of this kingdome ſtandeth the foreſaide large, high, and craggie mountaine, wherein the ſonnes, brethren, and kinsfolkes of the *Prete* are moſt warily kept, and from whence after his deceaſe the heire apparant is brought, to be inueſted in the empire.

The kingdome of Xoa ſituate betweene the kingdomes of Amara, Damut, and Fatigar, containeth many deepe vallies, and aboundeth with all kinde of corne and cattell.

In the kingdome of Goiame are two mightie lakes, from which Nilus is ſaide to fetch his originall. Heere is exceeding plentie of golde vnrefined: the north part of this region is full of deſerts and mountainous places.

Bagamidri one of the largeſt kingdomes in all the vpper Ethiopia, extendeth in length by the riuer Nilus, the ſpace almoſt of ſix hundred miles: and in this kingdome are many moſt rich ſiluer-mines.

The

The kingdome of Fatigar lying betweene the kingdomes of Adel, and of Xoa, consisteth the greatest parte of champion groundes, which yeelde wheate, barly, and other graine most plentifully. In this kingdome standes an exceeding high mountaine, on the toppe whereof is a lake of twelue miles in compasse, abounding with great varietie of fish; and from this mountaine runne many riuers stored with fish also.

The kingdome of Damut (as *Sanutus* affirmeth) doth border vpon the kingdome of Xoa, and is enclosed on either side with the lake of Barcena, and the lande of Zanguebar. Howbeit others place Damut betweene the kingdomes of Vangue and Goiame towarde the west, which opinion seemeth most probable. This countrey aboundeth with golde, ginger, grapes, corne, and beasts of all sortes. The slaues of this kingdome are much esteemed, and are commonly solde throughout all Arabia, Persia, and Egypt, where they prooue most valiant soldiers. The greater part of the people of Damut are Gentiles, and the residue Christians, who haue certaine monasteries. In this kingdome is that exceeding high and dreadfull mountaine, (hauing one narrow passage onely to ascend by) whither the *Prete* sendeth his nobles which are conuicted of any heinous crime, to suffer ignominious death with hunger and cold. About the fountaines of Nilus some say, that there are Amazones or women-warriers, most valiant and redoubted, which vse bowes and arrowes, and liue vnder the gouernement of a Queene: as likewise the people called Cafri or Cafates, being as blacke as pitch, and of a mightie stature, and (as some thinke) descended of the Iewes; but now they are idolaters, and most deadly enimies to the Christians; for they make continuall assaults vpon the Abassins, dispoiling them both of life and goods: but all the day-time they lie lurking in mountaines, woods, and deepe valleies.

The mountaine of death.

Of these Amazones read more in the discourse of Monomotapa following.

The stile vsed by Prete Ianni in his letters.

I the king, whose name the lions doe reuerence, and who by the grace of God was at my baptisme called *Athani Tingil*, that is, *The incense of the virgine*, but now at the beginning of my raigne, tooke vpon me the name of *Dauid*; beloued of God, the piller of faith, descended of the tribe of *Iuda*, the sonne of *Dauid*, the sonne of *Salomon*, the sonne of the piller of *Sion*, the sonne of the seede of *Iacob*, the sonne of the hand of *Marie*, the sonne of *Nahu* according to the flesh, the sonne of the holy Apostles *Peter* and *Paul* according to grace, Emperour of the higher and greater AEthiopia, and of most large kingdomes, territories, and iurisdictions, the king of Xoa, Caffate, Fatigar, Angote, Barú, Baaliganze, Adea, Vangue, and Goiame, where the fountaines of Nilus are; as likewise of Amara, Baguamedri, Ambea, Vaguc, Tigremahon, Sabaim the countrie of the Queen of Saba, of Barnagasso, and lorde as farre as Nubia, which confineth vpon Egypt.

This stile is taken out of a letter written by Dauid the Emperour of AEthiopia 1524.

The

Certaine anſweres of Don *Franciſco Aluarez*, (*who from the yeere* 1520. *for the ſpace of ſixe yeeres* next enſuing, had trauailed and remained in the countrey of PRETE IANNI *with the Portugall ambaſſadour* Rodrigo de Lima) made vnto ſundrie demaunds or queſtions of the Archbiſhop of *Bragança, concerning the ſtate of the foreſaide countrey and prince, and of the diſpoſition, manners, and cuſtomes of the people.* Io. Bap. Ramuſius, *vol.* 1. *delle voiag. fol.* 254. 255.

THe Ethiopian Emperour called *Prete Ianni* hath no ſetled place of abode where he continually reſideth; but is alwaies flitting vp and downe, ſometimes to one place, and ſometimes to another, and liueth in tentes ſet vp in the fields, enuironed with a kinde of fortification; of which tents there may be in his campe of all ſorts to the number of 5000. or 6000; and of horſemen and mules 50000. and vpwards.

It is a generall cuſtome of the *Prete* and of all his ſubiects not to paſſe on horſebacke by any church (ſo great is their reuerence to holy places) but ſo ſoone as they approch thereunto, they light vpon the ground, and hauing paſſed by, they mount on horſebacke againe.

Whenſoeuer the *Prete* marcheth with all his troupes, there is carried before him vpon the ſhoulders of certaine prieſts an altar and a conſecrated ſtone, whereon they vſe to adminiſter their communion: the prieſts appointed to cary it vpon a frame of wood, are eight in number, ſeruing fower and fower by turnes; before whom goeth a clerke with a cenſer and a little bell ſounding; at the ſight and noiſe whereof all perſons forſake the way, and ſuch as are on horſebacke, diſmount.

In all this countrey there is not any towne conſiſting of aboue 1600. families, & there are very few that haue ſo many: neither are there any caſtles or walled places; but verie manie villages, and infinite numbers of people. Their houſes are built round, al of earth, flat-roofed, and couered with a kind of thatch which wil laſt the time of a mans life, being compaſſed about with courts or yards. They haue no bridges of ſtone vpon their riuers, but all of wood. They ſleep commonly vpon oxe-hides, or elſe vpon certaine couches corded & ſuſtained with thongs made of the ſaid hides. They haue no kind of tables to eat their meat vpon, but haue it ſerued in vpon plaine & very broad platters of wood, without any table-cloth at al. Alſo they haue certaine great deep diſhes like baſons made of black earth ſhining in maner of Iet, with other cups of the ſame earth, out of which they vſe to drinke water & wine. Many of them eate raw fleſh, but others broile it vpon the coles or

firebrands

firebrands: and some places there are so destitute of wood, that the people are faine to dresse their meate with oxe-dung.

Their armour and weapons be Azagaie or short darts, some few swords, and certaine shirts of male verie long and streight, and (as some of our men which haue seene them doe report) made of naughtie and vnseruiceable matter. They haue bowes and arrowes great store, but not with feathers as ours be: as likewise helmets and head-peeces, but very few, and first brought in since they began to haue traffique with the Portugals: howbeit they haue manie strong targets. Of artillerie they had *at our departure foureteene small yron-peeces, which they had bought of certaine Turkes that vsually came to trafficke vpon the coast; for which peeces the *Prete* willed that they should haue their vttermost demande, to the end they might be the willinger to returne and bring more; and he caused some of his seruants also to learne how to discharge them. *1526.

The riuer of Nilus, I my selfe neuer saw, although at one time I was within thirtie miles thereof: howbeit some of our Portugales haue trauelled to the very fountaines of Nilus, which are two great lakes comparable to seas, situate in the kingdome of Goiame; out of which hauing conueyed it selfe a small distance, this riuer embraceth certaine Islets, and then holdeth on his course to Egypt. *Philippo Pigafetta will haue Nilus to spring out of one great lake onely, which is to the south of Goiame.*

The reason why Nilus yeerely ouerfloweth Egypt, is, because the generall winter of Ethiopia holding on with most mightie and continual raines from the middle of Iune to the midst of September, doth make the said riuer so exceedingly to swel, that the waters thereof couer al the plaine countrie of Egypt. *The true cause of the increase of Nilus.*

In all the foresaid dominions of the *Prete*, they vse not to write one to another, neither do the officers of Iustice commit any of their affaires to writing, but all matters are dispatched by messengers and by wordes of mouth: onely it was told me, that the reuenues and tributes of the *Prete*, are put downe in writing both vpon the receite, and at the disbursement.

The emperour *Prete Ianni* hath two speciall princely names, to wit, Acegue, which signifieth an emperour, and Neguz, a king.

The Patriarke or arche-prelate of all Abassia is called Abuna, that is to say, Father; neither is there any in all the whole empire which ordaineth ministers, but onely hee.

There is no wine of the grape made publiquely in any place, but onelie in the houses of the *Prete* and of the Patriarke; for if it be made anie other where, it is done by stealth.

The wine which is vsed in their communions, they make of raisins steeped ten daies in water, and afterward streined in a wine-presse; and it is a most cordiall, delicate, and strong wine.

In this countrey is great abundance of golde, siluer, copper, and tinne, but the people are ignorant how to worke it out of the mines: neither haue they any coine of golde or siluer, but all their bargaines are made by bartering

bartering of one commoditie for another. Alſo they trucke little peeces of gold, ſome weighing a dram, and ſome an ounce. But ſalt is the principall thing which runneth currant for money throughout all the emperours dominions.

Some places there are which yeeld wheat and barly, and others millet in great plentie; and where the ſaide graines are not reaped, there groweth Tafo da guza, a ſeede vtterly vnknowne in theſe parts, as likewiſe lentiles, beanes, peaſe, fitches, and all kinde of pulſe in abundance.

Heere are infinite ſtore of ſugar canes, which they know neither how to boile nor refine, but eate it rawe.

There be great plentie of faire grapes and peaches, which are ripe in the moneths of Februarie and Aprill. Of orenges, limons, and citrons, the quantitie is innumerable; for they growe moſt naturally out of the Abaſſin ſoile: garden-herbes there are but fewe, becauſe the people delight neither to ſet nor ſowe them.

All the whole countrey is full of Baſill, which groweth very tall both in the woods and vpon the mountaines: ſo are there likewiſe other odoriferous herbes of diuers ſorts, but vnknowen vnto vs. Of trees common with vs I remember none other kinds growing there, but onely Cypreſſes, damſin-trees, ſallowes by the waters ſide, and trees of Iuiubas.

Honie there is exceeding great plentie all the countrey ouer: neither are their bee-hiues placed abroad in the open aire as ours are: but they ſet them in chambers, where making a little hole in the wall, the bees go thicke in and out, and come home laden with honie. Wherefore there is great quantitie gathered in all the empire, but eſpecially in the monaſteries, where they make it a great part of their ſuſtenance. There are founde alſo ſwarmes of bees in the woodes and vpon the mountaines, neere whom they place certaine hollowe boxes made of barke, which being filled with honicombes, they take vp, and carrie home to their houſes.

They gather much waxe, whereof they make their candles, becauſe they haue no vſe of tallow.

Oyle ſtrayned out of an herbe.

They haue no oyle of oliues, but of another kinde which they call Hena: and the hearbe whereout they ſtraine it, is like a little vine-leafe: neither hath this oyle any ſmell at all, but in colour it is as beautifull as gold.

Heere likewiſe they haue ſtore of flax, but they know not how to make cloth thereof.

Here is alſo great plenty of cotton, whereof they make cloth of diuers colours.

One countrie there is ſo extreamely colde, that the people are inforced to clad themſelues in very courſe cloth of a darke tawnie.

Concerning phiſicke, and the cure of diſeaſes, they know verie little or nothing; but for aches in any partes of their bodies the onely remedy which they vſe is to apply cupping-glaſſes; and for head-aches they let the great vaine of the temples bloud.

Howbeit

Howbeit they haue certaine herbes, the iuice whereof being drunke, serueth them in steede of a purgation.

There would in this conntrie be gathered infinite store of fruit, and far greater quantitie of corne, were not the poore commons most miserablie oppressed by their superiours, who extorte all their substance from them; so that they neuer till nor plant any more, then they must of meere necessitie.

In no place whersoeuer I trauelled, could I see any shambles of flesh, but onely at the court of the *Prete*: for in other places no man may kill an oxe, though it bee his owne, without licence from the gouernour of the countrie.

As touching their ordinary proceeding in iustice, they vse not to put any to sudden death, but beate them with bastonados according to the quality of the offence, and likewise they plucke out their eyes, and cut off their handes and feete: howbeit during mine abode there I saw one burnt for robbing of a church. *Their manner of Iustice.*

The common sort speake truth very seldome, though it bee vpon an oathe, vnlesse they be forced to sweare *By the head of the King*. They feare exceedingly to be excommunicated; so that being enioined any thing that tendeth to their preiudice, if they do it at all, it is done for feare of excommunication.

Their depositions or othes are performed in this manner. The partie to be deposed goeth accompanied with two priests, carrying with them fire and incense to the church-doore, whereon he layeth his hande; and then the said priests adiure him to tell the truth, saying: *If thou sweare falsly, as the lyon deoureth the beasts of the forest, so let the diuell deoure thy soule; and as corne is ground vnder the mill-stone, so let him grinde thy bones; and finally, as the fire burneth vp the wood, so may thy soule burne in the fire of hell*: and the partie sworne, answereth to euery of the former clauses, Amen. *But if thou speake truth, let thy life be prolonged with honour, and thy soule enter into Paradise with the blessed*: and he againe answereth, *Amen*. Which being done, hee giueth testimonie of the matter in question. *Their maner of swearing.*

No person may sit in their churches, nor enter into them with his shooes on, nor spit within them, neither may any dogge or any other creature voide of reason come within them. They confesse themselues standing vpon their feete, and so standing likewise, receiue absolution. They say their forme of publike praier after one and the same manner, both in the churches of their Canons, and of their friers: which friers haue no wiues; but the Canons and priests are permitted to haue. Where the Canons liue togither, they go each man to diet at his owne house; but the friers eate their meate in common. *The ceremonies vsed in their Churches.*

Their ecclesiasticall gouernours are called Licanati. The sonnes of the Canons are, as it were by inheritance, Canons; but priests sonnes haue no such priuilege, vnlesse they be ordained by the Abuna. They pay no tithes

to any churches, but the clergie are maintained by great possessions belonging to their churches and monasteries. Also when any priest is cited, he is conuented before a secular iudge.

Whereas I saide, they sit not in their churches, it is to bee vnderstoode, that alwaies without the church doore stande a great number of woodden crutches, such as lame men vse to goe vpon; where euery man taketh his owne, and leaneth thereupon all the time of their diuine seruice.

All their books (which they haue in great numbers) are written in parchment, for paper they haue none; and the language wherein they are written named Tigia, is all one with the Abassin language: but so it was called from the name of the first towne in all that empire, which was conuerted to the Christian religion.

All their churches haue two curtaines, one about their great altar, with belles, within which curtaine none may enter but onely priests: also they haue another curtaine stretching through the midst of their church, and within that may no man come, but such as haue taken holy orders: insomuch that many gentlemen and honorable persons take orders vpon them, onely that they may haue accesse into their churches.

The greater part of their monasteries are built vpon high mountaines, or in some deepe valley: they haue great reuenues and iurisdictions; and in many of them they eate no flesh all the yeere long. Neither do they spende any store of fish, bicause they know not how to take it.

Vpon the wals of all their churches are painted the pictures of Christ, of the blessed virgine Marie, of the apostles, prophets and angels, and in euery one the picture of Saint George a horseback. They haue no Roodes, neither will they suffer Christ crucified to be painted, bicause they say, they are not woorthy to behold him in that passion. All their priests, friers, and noblemen continually carrie crosses in their hands; but the meaner sort of people carrie them about their neckes.

Their mooueable feasts, namely Easter, the feast of Ascension & Whitsontide, they obserue at the verie same daies and times that we do. Likewise as concerning the feasts of Christmas, the Circumcision, the Epiphanie, and other the feasts of the saints, they agree whollie with vs, though in some other things they varie.

They haue great store of leprous persons, who are not put apart from the rest of the people, but liue in company with them: and many there are who for charitie and deuotions sake do wash them, and heale their wounds.

Their musicall instruments.

They haue a kinde of trumpets, but not of the best, and likewise certaine drums of brasse which are brought from Cairo, and of woode also couered with leather at both endes, and cimbals like vnto ours, and certaine great basons whereon they make a noise. There are flutes in like sort, and a kinde of square instruments with strings, not much vnlike to an harpe, which they call *Dauid Mozan*, that is to say, the harpe of *Dauid*; and with these harpes they sounde before the *Prete*, but somewhat rudely.

Their

Their horses of the countrey-breed are in number infinite, but such small hackney-iades, that they doe them little seruice: howbeit those that are brought out of Arabia and Egypt are most excellent and beautifull horses: and the great horse-masters also in Abassia haue certaine breeds or races of them, which being new foled, they suffer not to sucke the damme aboue three daies, if they be such as they meane to backe betimes: but separating them from their dammes, they suckle them with kine, and by that meanes they prooue most sightly and gallant horses. Hitherto *Aluarez*.

Thus much (I hope) may suffice to haue bin spoken concerning the vpper or Inner Ethiopia which containeth the empire of *Prete Ianni*: now sithens we are so far proceeded, let vs take also a cursory and briefe surueie of the lower or extreme Ethiopia, extending it selfe in forme of a speares point, or a wedge, as far as thirtie fiue degrees of southerly latitude.

Of the lower or extreme Ethiopia.

THis parte of Africa being vtterly vnknowne to *Ptolemey* and all the ancient writers, but in these later times, throughly discouered by the Portugales, especially along the coast, beginneth to the Northwest about the great riuer of Zaire, not far from the Equinoctial: from whence stretching southward to thirtie fiue degrees, and then Northward along the sea-coast on the backside of Africa, as far as the very mouth or enterance of the Arabian gulfe, it limiteth the south and east frontiers of the Abassin Empire last before described.

In this part also are many particulars very memorable, as namely besides sundry great empires & kingdomes, The famous mountaines of the moon, the mightie riuers of Magnice Cuama, and Coauo, springing out of the lake Zembre, the renowmed cape of good hope, and other matters whereof we will intreate in their due places.

This portion of Africa is diuided into sixe principall partes, namely: The land of Aian, the land of Zanguebar, the empire of Mohenemugi, the empire of Monomotapa, the region of Cafraria, & the kingdome of Congo.

Aian the first generall part of Ethiopia the lower.

THe land of Aian is accounted by the Arabians to be that region which lyeth betweene the narrow entrance into the Red sea, and the riuer of Quilimanci; being vpon the sea-coast for the most part inhabited by the said Arabians; but the inland-partes thereof are peopled with a black nation which are Idolaters. It comprehendeth two kingdomes; Adel and Adea.

The riuer of Quilimanci in nine degrees of northerly latitude.

Adel is a very large kingdome, and extendeth from the mouth of the Arabian gulfe to the cape of Guardafu called of olde by *Ptolemey* Aromata promontorium. South and west it bordereth vpon the dominions of *Prete Ianni*, about the kingdome of Fatigar. The king of this countrie being a

Adel the first generall part of Aian.

Moore, is accounted amongſt the Mahumetans a moſt holy man, and very much reuerenced by them, becauſe he wageth continuall war with the Chriſtians, taking captiue many of the Abaſſins, and ſending them to the great Turke, and the princes of Arabia, of whome he receiueth greate ayde for the maintenance of his warres, both of horſe and foote. The people of Adel are of the colour of an oliue, being very warlike, notwithſtanding that the greateſt part of them want weapons. Their principall city is called * Anar, as ſome are of opinion. Vnto this kingdome is ſubiect the citie of Zeila inhabited by Mooes, ſituate on a ſandie and low ſoile, which ſome ſuppoſe to be built in the very ſame place, without the enterance of the Red ſea, where *Ptolemey* placed the ancient mart-towne of Aualites. This citie is a place of great traffike; for hither they bring out of India, cloth, elephants teeth, frankincenſe, pepper, golde, and other rich merchandize. The territorie adioining yeeldeth abundance of honie, waxe, and great quantitie of oile, which they make not of oliues, but of a kinde of daintie plums: it affourdeth likewiſe ſuch plentie of corne, of cattell, and of fruits differing from ours, that they are tranſported by ſhipping to other nations. Barbora likewiſe, a citie of the Moores, ſtandeth in this kingdome of Adel, and hath a commodious hauen, whereunto reſort many ſhips laden with merchandize, from Aden in Arabia, and from Cambaya vpon the riuer of Indus. The citizens are blacke people, and their wealth conſiſteth moſt of all in fleſh.

* Or *Arar.*

Ptol. geog. lib. 4. cap. 7.

In the yeere 1541. *Gradaameth* the king of this place, after manie miſchiefes which he had done to *Claudius* the emperour of Abaſſia, being vanquiſhed by *Chriſtopher de Gama*, the Indian Viceroy of *Iohn* the third king of Portugale; hee did by meanes of the ſouldiers and warlike prouiſions, which were ſent him from the Sheque or gouernour of Zebit, ouercome the Portugals & the Abaſſins. Howbeit afterward hauing ſent the ſaid forces backe againe to Zebit, himſelfe was ſlaine, and his whole armie ouerthrowne by king *Claudius* aforeſaide. But certaine yeeres after, the ſucceſſour of *Gradaameth* hauing in a warlike encounter ſubdued the *Prete*, rode in triumph vpon a little aſſe; ſignifying thereby, that he aſcribed not the victorie to his owne forces, but to the power of God.

Adea, the ſecond part of Aian.

Adea, the ſecond kingdome of the land of Aian, ſituate vpon the eaſterne Ocean, is confined northward by the kingdome of Adel, & weſtward by the Abaſſin empire. It is exceeding fruitful, & one part thereof mightily aboundeth with woods, the reſidue being ſufficiently ſtored with cattell & corne. The inhabitants being Moores by religion, and paying tribute to the emperour of Abaſſia, are (as they of Adel before-named) originally deſcended of the Arabians: who many hundred yeeres agoe, partly by their rich traffike, and eſpecially by force of armes, became lords not onely of Aian, but of all the ſea-coaſt along as farre as Cabo de los corrientes, ſtanding in the ſoutherly latitude of fower and twentie degrees. In all which ſpace the cities ſtanding vpon the ſea-coaſt; before the Portugals diſcouered the eaſt

Indies, lay open and vnfortified to the sea (bicause the Arabians themselues were absolute lords thereof) but were strongly walled toward the lande, for feare of the Cafri, or lawlesse wilde Negros, who were deadly enimies to the Arabians, and vtterly misliked their so neere neighbourhood. Howbeit since the Portugals taking of Magadazo, and diuers other townes vpon the coast, they haue applied themselues very much to fortification. But, to returne to the matter where we left, vnto the foresaid kingdome of Adea belongeth the kingdome of Magadazo, so called of the principall citie therein, which is a most strong, beautifull, and rich place, and is subiect to the kingly gouernment of a Moore. The territorie adiacent is exceeding fruitfull, abounding with sheepe, kine, horses, wheate, barly, and other kindes of graine. It hath also an excellent hauen, and much frequented by the ships of Aden and Cambaya, which come thither laden with sundrie kindes of cloth, with spices and other merchandize; and from hence they carrie elephants teeth, golde, slaues, honie, and waxe. The inhabitants are of an oliue-colour, and some of them blacke, like vnto the nations adioining, and they go naked from the girdle-stead vpward, and speak the Arabian toong. They are but meanely weaponed, which causeth them to shoote poisoned arrowes. This citie was in times past head of all the townes and cities of the Moores standing along this coast for a great distance.

The kingdome and citie of Magadazo.

Zanguebar or Zanzibar, the second generall part of the lower Ethiopia.

ZAnzibar or Zanguebar, so called by the Arabians and Persians, is that tract of lande, which runneth along some parte of the dominions of *Prete Ianni*, and from thence extendeth it selfe by the east of Mohenemugi, til it ioyneth with the frontiers of Monomotapa. Howbeit some there are who vnder the name of Zanzibar will haue all the south part of Africa to be vnderstood, euen as far as Cabo Negro, which stretcheth into the western Ocean about 18. degrees of southerly latitude: so that they comprehend therein the empires of Mohenemugi and Monomotapa, and all the land of Cafraria. But in this controuersie wee rather chuse to follow the opinion of *Sanutus*, affirming with him, that the said maritime tract of Zanguebar (as it is by vs before limited) is a lowe, fennie, and woodie countrie, with many greate and small riuers running through it: which extremity of moisture in those hot climates causeth the ayer to be most vnholesome and pestilent. The inhabitants are for the most part black, with curled haire, being Idolaters, and much addicted to sorcery and witchcraft. They go naked all the vpper part of their bodies, couering their nether partes with clothes of diuers colours, and with beasts skins. And this tract of lande stretching along the sea-coast from the riuer Quilimanci to the riuer of Magnice containeth the kingdomes and territories of Melinde, Mombaza, Quiloa, Moçambique, Sofala, and others.

Melinde the firſt part of Zanguebar.

Melinde, the moſt Northerly kingdome of Zanguebar, ſituate in two degrees and an halfe of ſoutherly latitude, and ſtretching from the coaſt vp into the main for the ſpace of an hundred miles, hath a ſtrong and ſtately city of the ſame name, being ſeuentie miles diſtant from Mombaça. It aboundeth with Rice, Millet, fleſh, limons, citrons, and all kinds of fruites: but as for corne, it is brought hither out of Cambaya. The inhabitants (eſpecially on the ſea coaſt) are Moores and Mahumetans: who build their houſes very ſumptuouſly after the manner of Europe. They are of a colour inclining to white, and ſome blacke people they haue alſo among them, which are for the greateſt part Idolaters: howbeit all of them pretend a kinde of ciuilitie both in their apparell, and in the decencie and furniture of their houſes. The women are white, and ſumptuouſly attired after the Arabian faſhion with cloth of ſilke. Likewiſe they adorne their neckes, armes, hands, and feete with bracelets and iewels of golde and ſiluer. When they go abroad out of their houſes, they couer themſelues with a vaile of taffata, ſo that they are not knowne but when they themſelues liſt. Vpon this coaſt of Melinde you haue a very ſafe harborough, wherunto the ſhips that faile thoſe ſeas do vſually reſort. In briefe the inhabitants are a kind, true-harted, & truſtie people, & courteous to ſtrangers. They haue alwaies beene in league with the Portugals, giuing them moſt friendly entertainmēt, & repoſing much cōfidence in them; neither haue they euer done them any iniury.

Mombaza the ſecond portion of Zanguebar.

The kingdome of Mombaça, being the ſecond generall part of Zanguebar, and ſituate in three degrees and an halfe beyond the Equinoctiall line, bordering to the north vpon Melinde, and to the ſouth vpon Quiloa; is ſo called after the name of a certaine iſle and citie vpon the coaſt, both which are named Mombaça, and are peopled with Mahumetans: their houſes are of many ſtories high, and beautified with pictures both grauen and painted. Their kings are Mahumetans, and moſt deadly enimies to the Chriſtians: one of the which taking vpon him to reſiſt the Portugals, was himſelfe quite vanquiſhed and ouerthrowen, and conſtrained to leaue his citie to the ſacke and ſpoile of his enimies, who found therein a good quantitie of gold, ſiluer, and pearle; and likewiſe cloth of cotton, of ſilke, and of gold, with great numbers of ſlaues, & ſuch other commodities. Howbeit they remained not there any long time, but were inforced to abandon the place in regard of the moſt vnholeſome and infectious aire. This kingdome is tributarie to the great empire of Mohenemugi.

Quiloa the third part of Zanguebar.

The kingdome of Quiloa ſituate in nine degrees towarde the pole Antarticke, and (like the laſt before mentioned) taking the denomination thereof from a certaine iſle and citie both called by the name of Quiloa; may be accounted for the third portion of the lande of Zanguebar. This iſland hath a very freſh and coole aire, and is repleniſhed with trees alwaies greene, and with plentie of all kinde of victuals. It is ſituate at the mouth of the great riuer Coauo which ſpringeth out of the ſame lake from whence Nilus floweth, and is called alſo by ſome Quiloa, and by others Tahiua,

and

and runneth from the saide lake, eastward for the space of sixe hundred miles, till it approcheth neere the sea, where the streame thereof is so forcible, that at the very mouth or out-let, dispersing it selfe into two branches, it shapeth out a great island, to the west whereof vpon the coast you may behold the little isle and the citie of Quiloa, being separated from the maine by a very narrow arme of the sea. This isle (as also the great isle before named) is inhabited by Mahumetans, who are of colour whitish. Their women are comely, and rich in their attire. Their houses are fairely builte of lime and stone, and haue within them very gallant and costly furniture, and without they are enuironed with gardens and orchards full of sundry delicate fruits and herbes. Of this island the whole kingdome (as is aforesaide) tooke the name; which vpon the coast extendeth it selfe to Cabo Delgado, or the slender Cape (being the limite betweene Moçambique and this kingdome of Quiloa) & from thence it stretcheth vnto the foresaid riuer of Coauo. In old time this kingdome of Quiloa was the chiefest of all the principalities there adioining; for the Arabians which were masters thereof had inlarged their dominions for the space of nine hundred miles, so that all the sea-coast and the islands, as farre as Cabo de los Corrientes situate in fower and twentie degrees of southerly latitude, were tributarie and subiect thereunto. Whereupon when the Portugals arriued in those countries, the king of this place trusted so much to himselfe, that he thought he was able with his owne forces, not onely to make a defensiue warre against them, but also to driue them from those places, which they had already surprized. Howbeit, quite contrarie to his expectation, he was by the Portugals vtterly vanquished and put to flight. Who seazing vpon the isle and citie, enriched themselues with the great booties & spoiles that they found therein. Thus the mightie king of Quiloa (who before the Portugals arriuall in those parts, enioied also the chiefe commoditie of the rich gold mines of Sofala) became at length, by a composition made with *Don Pedro Cabral*, tributarie to the crowne of Portugall, paying for tribute at the first fiue hundred, and afterward fifteene hundred peeces of gold. Vpon the foresaid isle the Portugals erected a fortresse, which their king afterward commanded them to deface, considering that there were other forts sufficient enough for that coast.

Mozambique the fourth part of Zanguebar.

Betweene the two mightie riuers of Coauo and Cuama (both which spring out of one lake with Nilus) among the kingdomes of Mombara, Mozimba, Maeuas, and Embeoe, which are not as yet perfectly discouered, lieth the kingdome of Moçambique, so called of three small islets, situate in the mouth of the riuer *Meghincate in fowerteene and a halfe, or fifteene degrees of southerly latitude, which kingdome in ancient time by *Ptolemey* was called Promontorium Prassum. In the principall of the three foresaide isles, there is a very commodious and secure hauen, capable of all kinde of vessels, and there also the Portugals haue built a very strong forte: where albeit in regard of the lownes and moisture of the soile, being

*Or Moghincats.

full of bogges and fens, the aire be moſt vnholſome, and in manner peſtilent: yet the oportunitie of the place, and the plentie of victuals, haue made it one of the moſt famous and frequented hauens in all that Ocean. For which cauſe the fleetes which ſaile from Portugall to the eaſt Indies, when they are out of hope to performe their voiage in ſummer, do vſually reſort to ſpend the whole winter at Moçambique: and thoſe Portugale ſhips alſo which come from the Indies toward Europe, muſt of neceſſitie touch at this place, to furniſh themſelues with victuals. Along theſe coaſts do ſaile certaine Moores in veſſels ſowed or faſtened togither with thongs of leather, the ſailes whereof they make of Palme-leaues, and in ſtead of pitch and tallow, they calke them with gumme which they gather in the woods. Vnto this kingdome of Moçambique belongeth the prouince of Angoſcia, ſo called from certaine iſles of that name, lying directly ouer againſt it, which prouince ſtretcheth to the riuer of Cuama. It is inhabited by Mahumetans and Gentiles, who are for the greateſt part merchants, and do trafficke along that coaſt with the ſame wares and commodities wherewith the people of Sofala do trade.

Angoſcia.

Sofala the fift part of Zanguebar.

Sofala, or Sefala, the fift and laſt general part of Zanguebar, is a ſmall kingdome lying vpon the ſea-coaſt, between the riuers of Cuama and Magnice, being ſo called after the name of a riuer running through it, in which riuer lyeth an Iſland, which is the head and principal place of the whole countrie. On this Iſland the Portugales haue built a moſt ſtrong forte, by meanes whereof they are become Lordes of the richeſt trade in all thoſe parts. For (to ſay nothing of the Iuorie, Amber, and ſlaues which are hither brought) all the gold in a manner that is taken out of thoſe manifolde and endleſſe mines of Sofala and all the Inland-countries thereabouts, is here exchanged vnto the Portugales for cotton-cloth, ſilkes, and other commodities of Cambaia: all which is thought yeerely to amount vnto the ſumme of two millions of gold. This golden trade was firſt in the power of the Moores of Magadazo; and afterward it befell to them of Quiloa. The inhabitants of Sofala are Mahumetans, being gouerned by a king of the ſame ſect, who yeeldeth obedience to the crowne of Portugale, becauſe hee will not be ſubiect to the empire of Monomotapa.

Neither is it heere to bee omitted, that in theſe parts vnder the name of Iuorie, are bartered not onely elephants teeth, but alſo the teeth of ſea-horſes: which creatures are commonly found in the riuers of Nilus, Niger, Coauo, Cuama, Magnice, and all other the great riuers of Africa.

The empire of Mohenemugi, the third generall part of the lower Ethiopia.

THis mightie empire bordering ſouth vpon the kingdome of Moçambique, and the empire of Monomotapa; to the riuer Coauo, and beyond; weſt with the riuer Nilus; North vpon the dominions of *Prete Ianni*; and eaſt vpon the kingdomes of Melinde, Mombaça, and Quiloa, hath

hath not many yeeres ago bin discouered or at least heard of by the Portugales, vpon occasion perhaps of the warres, which with vnfortunate successe they haue waged against Monomotapa. The emperour of this country holdeth a continuall league with the princes of Melinde, Mombaça, and Quiloa, towards the sea, for traffiques sake: for they prouide his dominions with cloth of cotton, cloth of silke, and sundrie other commodities brought from Arabia, Persia, Cambaya, and India, which are very well esteemed in those parts: but among the rest they bring especially certaine little balles, of a red colour, and in substance like vnto glasse, being made in Cambaya of a kinde of Bitumen or clammie claie, which balles they vse to weare like beades about their necks. They serue also to them in stead of money, for gold they make none account of. Likewise with the silkes that are brought vnto them they apparel themselues from the girdle downward. In exchange of all the foresaide wares and commodities they giue gold, siluer, copper, and iuorie. Howbeit vpon his Inland frontiers to the south and southwest, he maintaineth continuall and bloudie warres against the emperour of Monomotapa, his principall and greatest forces consisting of a most barbarous and fierce nation, called by the people of Congo Giachi, but by themselues Agag, who inhabite from the first great lake which is the fountaine of Nilus, for a certaine space vpon both sides of the said riuer, and then afterward on the westerne banke as farre as the second great lake from whence Zaire hath his chiefe original, & thence euen to the confines of *Prete Ianni*. They are a wilde and lawles people, liuing (after the manner of the ancient Scythians and Nomades, and like the Tartars and Baduin-Arabians of these times) a vagrant kind of life, vnder cabbins and cottages in the open forrests. They are of stature tall, and of countenance most terrible, making lines vpon their cheekes with certaine iron-instruments, and turning their eie-lids backward, whereby they cast vpon their enimies a most dreadfull and astonishing aspect. They are man-eaters, and couragious in battaile. For their armour of defence they vse certaine Pauises or great targets wherwith they couer their whole bodies, being otherwise naked: and their offensiue weapons are dartes and daggers. It is not many yeeres since these cruel sauages ranging westward from Nilus, inuaded the kingdome of Congo, vanquished the inhabitants in sundrie battels, tooke the head citie, and forced the king *Don Aluaro* to flee for succour and safetie vnto the isle of horses, in the mouth of the great riuer Zaire, being one of the extreme frontiers of his dominions. Where the king himselfe was taken with an incurable dropsie, and his people in great numbers died of famine; who to relieue their extreme necessities, sold their wiues, their children, and their owne selues for slaues vnto the Portugals. Howbeit these warlike Giacchi, notwithstanding their hautie courage, and great exploits, are no whit feared, but rather most boldly encountered, and sometimes vanquished by the Amazones or women warriers of Monomotapa. Which two nations, what by warlike stratagems, and what by open and maine force, do often fight

the

the moſt deſperate and doubtfull battailes, that are performed in all thoſe ſouthern parts.

The empire of Monomotapa, the fourth generall part of the lower Ethiopia.

BEnomotapa, Benomotaxa, or Monomotapa is a large empire, ſo called after the name of the prince thereof, who in religion is a Gentile, and for extenſion of dominions, and military forces, a renowmed and mightie emperour; in the language of whoſe ſubiects an emperour is ſignified by this word Monomotapa. This empire of his lyeth, as it were, in an Iſland which containeth in compaſſe ſeuen hundred and fiftie, or (as ſome thinke) one thouſand leagues, being limited on the north-weſt by the great lake whereout Nilus ſpringeth; on the ſouth, by the riuer Magnice and the tributarie kingdome of Butua or Toroa; on the eaſt it hath the ſea-coaſt and the kingdome of Sofala, which in very deed is a member thereof; and the North part abutteth vpon the riuer of Cuama, and the empire of Mohenemugi. That part of this great Iſland which lyeth betweene the mouth of Cuama, and the cape de los Corrientes, is a very pleaſant, holeſome, and fruitfull country. And from the ſaid cape to the riuer of Magnice, the whole region aboundeth with beaſts both great and ſmall; but it is cold by reaſon of the ſharp brizes which come off the ſea; and ſo deſtitute of wood, that the people for fewel are conſtrained to vſe the dung of beaſts, and they apparel themſelues in their skinnes. Along the banke of the riuer Cuama are diuers hilles and downes couered with trees, and vallies likewiſe watered with riuers, being pleaſantly ſituate, and well peopled. Here are ſuch plenty of Elephants, as it ſeemeth by the great quantitie of their teeth, that there are yeerely ſlaine betweene foure and fiue thouſand. Their elephants are nine cubites high, and fiue cubites in thicknes: They haue long and broad eares, little eyes, ſhorte tailes, and great bellies: and ſome are of opinion, that Ethiopia yeeldeth as many elephants, as Europe doth oxen. The townes and villages of this empire are very few, and their buildings are of wood and clay, couered with thatch. None may haue doores to their houſes but onely great perſonages. Their principal cities are *Zimbas, and Benamataza, the firſt whereof is one and twentie, and the ſecond fifteene daies iourney from Sofala. They ſerue this emperour at the table vpon their knees: to ſit before him, is all one, as with vs for a man to ſtand vpon his feete, neither may any preſume to ſtand in his preſence, but onely great lords. He is taſted vnto, not before, but after he hath eaten and drunke. For his armes he hath a ſpade and two dartes. Tribute he taketh none, but onely certaine daies ſeruice and giftes preſented vnto him; without which there is no appearing in his ſight. Hee carrieth, whitherſoeuer he go, foure hundred dogs, as a moſt ſure and truſtie guard. Hee keepeth all the heires of his tributary princes, as vaſſals, and as pledges of their fathers loialtie. There are no priſons in al his empire: for

Some will haue Magnice and Cuama to be two branches of one mightie riuer ſpringing out of the great lake; which being ſo, they muſt quite ſeparate Monomotapa from the ſame lake.

**This place both in regard of the name and ſituation may ſeeme to haue been Agyſimba mentioned by Ptolemey.*

for sufficient testimonie being brought of the commission of any crime, iustice is executed out of hand: and of all offences none are punished with greater seueritie and rigour, then witchcraft, theft, and adulterie. His people are of a meane stature, blacke, and well proportioned. They are Gentiles in religion, hauing no idols, but worshipping one onely God whom they call Mozimo. They go apparelled in cloth of cotton, either made by themselues, or brought from other countries: howbeit the king will in no case weare any forrein cloth for feare of poison or such like trecherie: and the meaner sort of his subiects are clad in beasts skins. Among all the armies and legions of soldiers, which this emperour (for the defence of his great estate) is forced to maintaine, his Amazones or women warriers before mentioned are the most valiant, being indeed the very sinewes and chiefe strength of all his militarie forces. These women, after the manner of the ancient Scythish or Asiatike Amazones, so much spoken of in histories of former times, seare off their left paps, that they might not be an hinderance vnto them in their shooting. They are most expert in warlike stratagems, and swift of foote. Their weapons are bowes and arrowes. At certaine times for generations sake they accompany with men; sending the male children home to their fathers, but keeping their daughters vnto themselues. They inhabite towards the west, not farre from the beginning of Nilus, in certaine places which themselues make choise of, and which are graunted vnto them by the fauour of the Emperour.

This empire of Monomotapa comprehendeth not onely the foresaid great island, but stretcheth it selfe farther also toward the cape of Buena esperança, as farre as the kingdomes of Butua or Toroa, which being gouerned by particular lords, do acknowledge Monomotapa for their soueraigne. Throughout all this emperours dominions is found infinite quantitie of gold, in the earth, in the rockes, and in the riuers. The gold-mines of this countrey neerest vnto Sofala are those of Manica, vpon a plaine enuironed with mountaines; and those also in the prouince of Matuca, which is inhabited by the people called Battonghi, and situate betweene the Equinoctiall line and the Tropique of Capricorne. These mines are distant from Sofala, betweene the space of 300. and sixe hundred miles: but those of the prouinces of Boro and Quiticui are fifteene hundred miles distant towards the west. Others there are also in the kingdomes of Toroa or Butua: so that from hence or from Sofala, or from some other part of Monomotapa, some are of opinion, that *Salomons* gold for the adorning of the temple at Ierusalem, was brought by sea. A thing in truth not very vnlikely: for here in Toroa, and in diuers places of Monomotapa are till this day remaining manie huge and ancient buildings of timber, lime and stone, being of singular workemanship, the like whereof are not to be found in all the prouinces thereabouts. Heere is also a mightie wall of fiue and twentie spannes thicke, which the people ascribe to the workemanship of the diuell, being accounted from Sofala fiue hundred and ten miles the neerest way. All other

houses

houſes throughout this empire (as is aforeſaid) conſiſt of timber, claie, and thatch. And heere I may boldly affirme, that the ancient buildings of this part of Africa, & along the coaſt of the eaſt Indies, may not onely be compared, but euen preferred before the buildings of Europe. The authors of which ancient monuments are vnknowen: but the later African buildings haue beene erected by the Arabians. In the time of *Sebaſtian* king of Portugale, the emperour of Monomotapa and many of his nobles were baptized: howbeit afterward being ſeduced by certaine Moores, hee put *Gonſaluo Silua* to death, who conuerted him to the Chriſtian religion. Whereupon *Sebaſtian* king of Portugall ſent againſt him an armie of ſixteene thouſand, conſiſting for the moſt part of gentlemen and men of qualitie, vnder the conduct of *Franciſco Barretto*. The Monomotapa being afraid of the Portugall forces, offered *Barretto* as good and acceptable conditions of peace as might be deſired: but he not contented with reaſon, was quite ouerthrowne, not by his enimies, but by the vnholeſome aire of Ethiopia, and by the manifold diſeaſes which conſumed his people.

* *Mine author here ſetteth downe too great a number.*

Cafraria the fift generall part of the lower Ethiopia.

CAfraria, or the land of the Cafri we eſteeme to be both the coaſts and inlands of the extreame ſoutherly point of Africa, beginning from the riuer Magnice, and thence extending by Cabo da peſcaria, Terra do Natal, Bahia da lagoa, Bahia fermoſa, about the cape of Buena eſperança, by the bay called Agoada Saldanha, and thence Northward along the weſterne coaſt of Africa, as far as Cabo Negro, or the blacke cape, which is ſituate verie neere vnto eighteene degrees of Southerly latitude. The ſaide Cape of Buena eſperança is deuided into three ſmaller headlands or capes; The weſtermoſt, being called Cabo de buena eſperança, or The cape of good hope after the name of the whole promontorie, and being cut from the reſt of the firme land: The middlemoſt is named Cabo falſo, becauſe the Portugales in their voiage homewards from the eaſt Indies, haue ſometimes miſtaken this for the true cape beforementioned; betweene which two capes runneth into the ſea a mightie riuer called by the Portugales Rio dolce (where their caraks often take in freſh water) and by the naturall inhabitants Camiſſa, which ſpringeth out of a ſmall lake called Gale, ſituate among The mountaines of the moon ſo much celebrated by ancient geographers: The third and eaſtermoſt cape ſtretching fartheſt into the ſea, is called Cabo das Agulhas, or the cape of Needles, becauſe there the needles of dialles touched with the loadſtone, ſtand directly North, without any variation either to the eaſt or to the weſt: betweene this cape and the foreſaid weſtermoſt cape (which ly forth into the ſea like two hornes) is the bredth of this mightie promontorie, containing about fiue and twentie leagues; the length whereof from the riuer of Fernando Poo, where it beginneth to iuttie forth into the ſea, along the weſterne coaſt ſouthward, to

the

the cape das Agulhas, amounteth to two thouſand two hundred Italian miles; and from Cabo das Agulhas, along the eaſterne ſhore northward, to Cape Guardafu, are three thouſand three hundred of the ſame miles. This cape at the firſt diſcouerie thereof was called by Nauigators, The Lyon of the ſea; & Cabo tormentoſo, or The tẽpeſtuous cape; not ſo much, as I take it, for the dangerous and ſtormie ſeas more about this cape then any other; but partly in regard of the chargeable, dangerous, and long trauels of the Portugals before they could attaine vnto it; and partly bicauſe of the great compaſſe which in their voiages outward they are conſtrained to fetch for the doubling thereof; and partly alſo in regard of ſome tempeſtuous and ſtormie weather wherewith they haue beene encountered at this Cape; which notwithſtanding at certaine times is an ordinarie matter vpon all ſhores and promontories ouer the face of the whole earth. And albeit ſome will not come within ſight of this cape, but keepe a great diſtance off, for feare of the dangerous ſeas beating thereupon (as namely *Francis de Almeida* who ſailed aboue an hundred leagues to the ſouth, in fortie degrees of latitude; *Pedro de Agnaia* in fortie fiue; and *Vaſco Carualho* in fortie ſeuen, where in the moneth of Iuly eight of his men died for cold) yet we finde by the late and moderne experience of ſir *Francis Drake*, maſter *Candiſh*, maſter *Lancaſter* in his returne from the eaſt Indies, and of the Hollanders in their nauigations thither, begun in the yeere 1595. that thoſe ſeas are at ſometimes not onely free from ſtormie tempeſts, but moſt pleaſant alſo to ſaile vpon, with faire and gentle weather. And as the Spaniards for a long time (that they might diſcourage all other nations from attempting nauigation vpon The ſouth ſea beyond America) blinded all Chriſtendome with a report, that the ſtreights of Magellan were vnrepaſable: ſo perhaps the Portugals, to terrifie all others from ſailing to the eaſt Indies, and to keepe the gaine and ſecrets of that rich trade entire vnto themſelues, haue in their writings and relations made the doubling of the cape of Buena Eſperança, and the croſſing ouer thoſe ſeas, a matter of farre greater difficultie and danger, then it is of late manifeſtly found to be. The name of Buena eſperança or good hope, was giuen vnto this promontory by *Iohn* the ſecond king of Portugall; bicauſe that when his fleetes had once doubled this cape, either outward or homeward, they then ſtedfaſtly hoped in good time to performe the reſidue of their voiage; otherwiſe not. In the midſt of this cape lieth a plot of ground of that beautie and delight, as that without any humane induſtrie it may compare with the moſt artificiall gardens of Europe. On the top of this place, nature minding as it were to excell her-ſelfe, hath framed a great plaine, which for beautifull ſituation, fruitfulnes of herbes, varietie of flowers, and flouriſhing verdure of all things, ſeemeth to reſemble a terreſtriall paradiſe. The Portugals terme it not altogither vnfitly, The table of the cape. And to the end they might not faile of the meanes to enioy ſo pleaſant a place, there is cloſe vnder it a very good harbour which is called The port of Conception.

G.B.B. Rel. vn. dell. Afr. Part. 1. lib. 2.

The

The people of this place called in the Arabian toong Cafri, Cafres, or Cafates, that is to ſay, lawleſſe or outlawes, are for the moſt part exceeding blacke of colour, which very thing may be a ſufficient argument, that the ſunne is not the ſole or chiefe cauſe of their blacknes; for in diuers other countries where the heate thereof is farre more ſcorching and intolerable, there are tawnie, browne, yellowiſh, aſh-coloured, and white people; ſo that the cauſe thereof ſeemeth rather to be an hereditarie qualitie transfuſed from the parents, then the intemperature of an hot climate, though it alſo may be ſome furtherance thereunto. The Hollanders in the yeere 1595. entering the harbour of Saint Bras, ſomewhat to the eaſt of Cabo das Agulhas, had conuerſation & truck with ſome of theſe Cafres, whom they found to be a ſtoute and valiant people, but very baſe and contemptible in their behauiour and apparell, being clad in oxe and ſheeps skins, wrapped about their ſhoulders with the hairie ſides inward, in forme of a mantle. Their weapons are a kinde of ſmall ſlender dartes or pikes, ſome whereof are headed with ſome kinde of mettall, the reſidue being vnheaded, and hardened onely at the points with fire. They couer their priuie parts with a ſheepes tayle, which is bound vp before and behinde with a girdle. Their horne-beaſts are, like thoſe of Spaine, verie well limmed and proportioned. Their ſheepe are great and faire, not hauing any wooll on their backes, but a kinde of harſh haire like goates. Other particulars by them obſerued, for breuities ſake, I omit.

Now that we may proceede in deſcribing the reſidue of Cafraria, hauing ſayled about the cape of Buena eſperança weſtward, albeit the coaſt in regard of the greatnes thereof may ſeem to ly directly north, yet for the ſpace of ſeuenteene degrees, till you come to Cabo Negro, (the fartheſt Northweſterne bound of this fift part of the lower Ethiopia) it trendeth ſomewhat to the weſt: along which coaſt ſomewhat within the lande appeareth a mighty ranke or ridge of mountaines, called by the Portugales Os picos fragoſos, that is, the ragged points or ſpires, being beſides their exceſſiue height, craggie, rough, and ſteepe, lying bare, deſolate, and vtterly voide of all ſuccour, and ſeruing for no other end, but for an obiect to the windes, and a mark for the tempeſts. The reſidue of the coaſt, till you come to Cabo Negro, ſometimes lying lowe and ſometimes high, ſometimes ſhooting into the ſea, and ſometimes again gently retiring, containeth many plaines, hils, vallies, and places moſt fertile and delightful; ſome of them being alwaies of ſo freſh and pleaſant view, as they ſeeme to repreſent a continuall ſpring.

Os Picos fragoſos.

The

The sixt and last part of the lower or extreme Ethiopia, containing the kingdome of Congo; whereunto in times past were tributarie and subiect the kingdomes of Matama, and Angola to the south; the kingdomes of Quisama, and Pangelungos to the east; and to the north the kingdome of Anzicana inhabited by the Anzichi, and Loango peopled by the Bramas.

FIrst therefore (according to our proposed order) that we may begin with the most southerly parts; The kingdome of Matama, so called after the name of the king thereof, (who being a Gentile ruleth ouer diuers prouinces named Quimbebe) bordereth north vpon the first great lake whereout Nilus springeth, and vpon the south frontiers of Angola; east it abutteth vpon the western banke of the riuer Bagamidri, and stretcheth south as far as the riuer Brauagul, which springeth out of the mountains of the moone. This countrey standeth in a good & holesome aire, & aboundeth with mines of cristall & other metals, & hath victuals great plenty. And although the people thereof & their neighbour-borderers doe traffike togither; yet the king of Matama and the king of Angola wage war oftentimes one against another: also the said riuer Bagamidri deuideth this kingdome of Matama from the great empire of Monomotapa before described, which lieth to the east thereof. *The kingdome of Matama.*

Next followeth Angola, a kingdome subiect in times past to the king of Congo, the gouernour whereof not verie many yeeres ago, growing exceedingly rich & mightie, rebelled against his soueraigne, & by diuers attempts shaking off the yoke of superioritie, became himselfe an absolute prince. This countrey, by reason that the people are suffered to haue as many wiues as they list, is a place most woonderfully populous. They goe whole millions of them to the warres, not leauing any men of seruice behinde: but for want of victuals they are often constrained to leaue their enterprises halfe vndone. Vpon this king, *Paulo Diaz*, who remained gouernour in these parts for the king of Portugall, waged warre: the reason was, bicause certaine Portugall merchants and others going by way of traffike to Cabaza, a towne situate an hundred and fiftie miles from the sea, where the king of Angola vsually resideth; they were by order from this king, the same yeere that king *Sebastian* died in Barbarie, sodainly spoiled of their goods, and part of them slaine; it being alleaged, that they were all spies, and came *Angola.*

to vndermine the present state. Whereupon *Paulo Diaz* prouided himselfe, and with two galeots did many notable exploits on both sides of the riuer Coanza. Finally hauing built a forte in a very commodious and hillie ground, at the confluence or meeting of the riuer last mentioned, and the riuer Luiola, with a small number of Portugals, ioined to the aide sent him from the king of Congo and from certaine princes of Angola his confederates, he gaue the foresaid king (notwithstanding his innumerable troupes of Negros) diuers & sundry ouerthrowes. The said riuer Coanza springeth out of the lake of Aquelunda, situate westward of the great lake whereout Nilus takes his originall. In this kingdome are the mountaines of Cabambe, abounding with rich and excellent siluer mines; which haue ministred the chiefe occasion of all the foresaid warres. This region aboundeth also with other minerals, and with cattell of all sorts. Most true it is, that dogs-flesh is heere accounted of all others the daintiest meate; for which cause they bring vp and fatten great plentie of dogs for the shambles. Yea it hath beene constantly affirmed, that a great dogge accustomed to the bull was sold in exchange of two and twentie slaues, the value of whom coulde not amount to much lesse then two hundred and twentie ducats. The priests of Angola called Gange, are helde in such estimation and account, as the people are verily perswaded, that they haue in their power abundance and scarcitie, life and death. For they haue knowledge of medicinable hearbes, and of deadly poisons also, which they keepe secret vnto themselues; and by meanes of their familiaritie with the diuell, they often foretell things to come.

The siluer-mines of Cabambe.

Quizama.

Towards the lake of Aquelunda before mentioned, lieth a countrey called Quizama; the inhabitants whereof being gouerned after the manner of a common wealth, haue shewed themselues very friendly to the Portugals, and haue done them speciall good seruice in their warres against the king of Angola.

Thus hauing briefely pointed at the former three bordering countries, let vs now with like breuitie passe through the kingdome of Congo it selfe. This kingdome therefore (accounting Angola, as indeede it is, a member thereof) beginneth at Bahia das vacas in thirteene, and endeth at Cabo da Caterina in two degrees and an halfe of southerly latitude. True it is that the coast neere vnto the saide Bay of Cowes is subiect to the king of Congo, but the inland is gouerned by him of Angola. East and west it stretcheth from the sea in bredth as farre as the lake of Aquelunda, for the space of sixe hundred miles, and is diuided into sixe prouinces: namely, the prouince of Pemba, situate in the very hart and center of the whole kingdome; Batta, the most easterly prouince, where the ancient writers seeme to haue placed Agisymba; Pango which bordereth vpon the Pangelungi; Sundi the most Northerly prouince; Sogno which stretcheth ouer the mouth of the great riuer Zaire; and Bamba which is the principall of all the rest both for extension of ground, for riches, and for militarie forces. In the prouince

Bahia das vacas, or the baye of Cowes.

The six prouinces of Congo.

prouince of Pemba, or rather in a seuerall territorie by it selfe, standeth the citie of Sant Saluador, in former times called Banza, being the metropolitan of all Congo, and the seate of the king, situate an hundred and fiftie miles from the sea, vpon a rockie and high mountaine; on the verie top whereof is a goodly plaine abounding with fountaines of holesome and sweete water, and with all other good things which are requisite either for the sustenance, or solace of mankinde: and vpon this plaine where Sant Saluador is seated, there may inhabite to the number of an hundred thousand persons. In this citie the Portugals haue a warde by themselues, separate from the rest, containing a mile in compasse: and about that bignes also is the palace or house of the king. The residue of the people dwell for the most part scatteringly in villages. It is a place enriched by nature with corne, cattell, fruits, and holesome springs of water in great abundance. The principall riuer of all Congo called Zaire, taketh his chiefe originall out of the second lake of Nilus, lying vnder the Equinoctiall line: and albeit this is one of the mightiest riuers of all Africa, being eight and twentie miles broad at the mouth, yet was it vtterly vnknowen to ancient writers. Amongst other riuers it receiueth Vumba and Barbela, which spring out of the first great lake. In this countrey are sundry other riuers also, which fetch their originall out of the lake of Aquelunda: the principall whereof are Coanza, which diuideth the kingdome of Congo from that of Angola, and the riuer Lelunda, which breedeth crocodiles & water-horses which the Greeks call Hippopotami, of which creatures the isle of horses in the mouth of the riuer Zaire taketh denomination. The Hippopotamus or water-horse is somewhat tawnie, of the colour of a lion; in the night he comes on lande to feed vpon the grasse, and keepeth in the water all the day time. The Africans tame and manage some of these horses, and they prooue exceeding swift; but a man must beware how he passe ouer deepe riuers with them, for they will sodainly diue vnder water. Also in these riuers of Ethiopia are bred a kinde of oxen, which liue euery night vpon the lande. Here likewise breedeth another strange creature, called in the Congonian language Ambize Angulo, that is to say, a hogge-fish, being so exceeding fatte, and of such greatnes, that some of them weie aboue fiue hundred pound. This abũdance of waters, togither with the heat of the climate, which proceedeth from the neerenes of the sunne, causeth the countrey to be most fruitfull of plants, herbes, fruits, and corne; & much more fertile would it be, if nature were helped forward by the industrie of the inhabitants. Heere also, besides goates, sheepe, deere, Gugelle, conies, hares, ciuet-cats, and ostriches, are great swarmes of tigres, which are very hurtfull both to man and beast. The Zebra or Zabra of this countrey being about the bignes of a mule, is a beast of incomparable swiftnes, straked about the body, legges, eares, and other parts, with blacke, white and browne circles of three fingers broad; which do make a pleasant shew. Buffles, wilde asses called by the Greekes Onagri, and Dantes (of whose hard skins they make all their targets) range

S. Saluador the chiefe citie of Congo.

The great riuer of Zaire.

Crocodiles.

Water-horses.

The Zabra.

The elephant. in heards vp and downe the woods. Alſo here are infinite ſtore of elephants of ſuch monſtrous bignes, that by the report of ſundrie credible perſons, ſome of their teeth do weigh two hundred pounds, at ſixteene ounces the pound: vpon the plaines this beaſt is ſwifter then any horſe, by reaſon of his long ſteps; onely he cannot turne with ſuch celeritie. Trees he ouerturneth with the ſtrength of his backe, or breaketh them between his teeth; or ſtandeth vpright vpon his hinder feete, to browſe vpon the leaues and tender ſprigs. The ſhe elephants beare their brood in their wombes two yeeres before they bring foorth yoong ones: neither are they great with yoong, but onely from ſeuen yeeres to ſeuen yeeres. This creature is ſaide to liue 150. yeeres; hee is of a gentle diſpoſition; and relying vpon his great ſtrength, he hurteth none but ſuch as do him iniurie; only he will in a ſporting maner gently heaue vp with his ſnowte ſuch perſons as he meeteth. He loueth the water beyond meaſure, and will ſtande vp to the mid-body therein, bathing the ridge of his backe, and other parts with his long promuſcis or trunke. His skin is fower fingers thicke; and it is reported, that an elephant of this countrey being ſtricken with a little gunne called Petrera, was not wounded therewith, but ſo ſore bruſed inwardly, that within three daies after he died. Heere are likewiſe reported to be mightie adders or ſnakes of fiue and twentie ſpannes long, and fiue ſpans broad, which will ſwallow vp an whole ſtagge, or any other creature of that bignes. Neither are they here deſtitute of Indie-cockes and hens, partridges, feaſants, and innumerable birds of praie, both of the lande and of the ſea; whereof ſome diue vnder the water, which the Portugals call Pelicans.

The iſle and hauen of Loanda. Ouer againſt the moſt ſoutherly part of the ſaid kingdome of Congo, where it confineth with Angola, lyeth an Iſle called Loanda, being twentie miles long, and but one mile broad at the moſt, betweene which and the maine land is the beſt port of all that Ocean. About this Iſle do haunt infinite ſtore of whales, where notwithſtanding no amber at all is found; which is a manifeſt argument that it proceedeth not from theſe creatures. Here they fiſh for certaine little ſhels, which in Congo and the countries adioyning are vſed in ſteed of mony. The well-waters of this Iſle, when the ſea ebbeth, are ſalte, but when it floweth they are moſt freſh and ſweet. In this Iſle the Portugals haue a towne from whence they traffique to Congo and Angola: and amongſt other commodities, they get euery yeere in thoſe parts about fiue thouſand ſlaues; the cuſtome of which trade belongeth by ancient conſtitutions vnto the crowne of Portugale.

Loango. To the north of Congo vpon the ſea coaſt beginneth the kingdome of Loango tributarie in times paſt to the king of Congo: It aboundeth with elephants; and the inhabitants called Bramas are circumciſed after the Iewiſh manner.

Anzichi. Next vpon them doe border the Anzichi, who are poſſeſſed of large countries, namely from the riuer Zaire euen to the deſerts of Nubia. They abound with mines of copper, and with ſanders both Red, and Gray which

are

are the best; and some are of opinion, that here groweth the right Lignum Aquilæ, which is of so excellent vertue in phisick. They haue one supreme king, with many princes vnder him. They traffique in Congo, and carrie home from thence salt and great shels to be vsed for coine (which are brought thither from the Isle of San Tomé) in exchange of their cloth of the palme tree, and of Iuory: but the chiefe commodities which they part from, are slaues of their owne nation and of Nubia: and the said shels they vse also insteed of Iewels and ornaments. Both they and the Bramas before mentioned do carry for their defence in the warres, certaine targets made of the skin of a beast which in Germany is called Dante: their weapons offensiue be little bowes and shorte arrowes, which they shoot with such woonderfull celerity, as they will discharge twentie one after another, before the first arrow fall to the ground. They haue shambles of mans-flesh as wee haue of beeues and muttons. They eat their enemies which they take in the warres: their slaues which they cannot make away for a good round price, they sell vnto the butchers: and some will offer themselues to the slaughter, for the loue of their princes and patrons: so fillie they are, that to do their lordes a pleasure, they will not refuse present death: wherefore the Portugals repose not so much trust in any kinde of slaues as in them: and they are very valiant also in the warres.

But, to returne vnto the sea-coast; from the mouth of the riuer Zaire Northward, the land bearing out somewhat more to the west, is framed into three headlands, namely, Cabo primero, Cabo da Caterina, and the cape of Lopo Gonsalues, which is a cape very well knowen in regard of the eminency and outstretching thereof. It lyeth in one degree of southerly latitude. Ouer against which cape within the land do inhabite the people called Bramas in the kingdome of Loango beforementioned. From hence for the space of fiue or sixe degrees, till you come to Punta delgada, or The slender point, the coast lyeth in a manner directly North; most of which tract is inhabited by a nation of Negros called Ambus. North of the said slender point you haue Rio dos Camarones, or The riuer of shrimps, which is full of little Isles; not far from which riuer are The countries of Biafar and Medra, inhabited with people which are addicted to inchantments, witchcrafts, and all kind of abominable sorceries.

Much more might be said concerning this sixt part of the lower Ethiopia: but becausse it is in so ample and methodicall a manner described in the historie of Philippo Pigafetta, most iudiciously and aptly Englished by the learned Master *Abraham Hartwell*; I refer the reader thereunto, as to the principal and the very fountaine of all other discourses which haue bin written to any purpose of Congo and the countries adioyning.

Of the countries of Benin, Meleghete, Ghinea, and Sierra Leona.

WEstward from the countries last mentioned lyeth the kingdome of Benin, hauing a very proper towne of that name, and an hauen called Gurte. The inhabitants liue in Idolatry, and are a rude and brutish nation; notwithstanding that their prince is serued with such high reuerence, and neuer commeth in sight but with great solemnity, & many ceremonies: at whose death his chiefe fauorites count it the greatest point of honour to be buried with him, to the end (as they vainely imagine) they may doe him seruice in another world. This countrie aboundeth with long pepper called by the Portugals Pimienta dal rabo, which is as much to say, as ppeper with a tayle: This tailed or long pepper so far excelleth the pepper of the east Indies, that an ounce therof is of more force then halfe a pound of that other. For which cause the kings of Portugale haue done what lay in them, to keep it from being brought into these parts of Europe, least it should too much abase the estimation and price of their Indian pepper. All which notwithstanding there hath bin great quantitie secretly conueied from thence by the Portugals: as likewise the English and French nations, and of late yeeres the Hollanders haue had great traffique into those parts.

Of this long pepper read Ramusius, vol. 1. fol. 115. pag. 2.

The prouinces of Temian, Dauma, and Meleghete.

Next follow the kingdomes of Temian and Dauma; and lower to the south the prouince of Meleghete, a place very famous and well knowne, in regard of a little red graine which there groweth, being in shape somewhat like to the Millet of Italy, but of a most vehement and firy taste: and these little graines are by the apothecaries called Grana Paradisi. Here also is made of oile and the ashes of the Palme-tree, a kind of sope, which hath double the force of ours. For which cause it is forbidden by the Portugals, who haue vpon that coast a little to the east of Cabo das tres puntas, in the northerly latitude of fiue degrees, a strong castle called San Georgio de la Mina, whereunto by way of traffike they draw all the gold and riches of the countries adioining.

Grana Paradisi.

The castle of Mina.

Westward of these lieth the countrie of Ghinea, inhabited by a people which the ancient writers called * Autolatæ, and Ichthyophagi: Ghinea is so named, according to the chiefe citie thereof called Genni, being situate vpon the riuer of Sanega. The people of this countrie towards the sea-coast liue vpon fish; and they of the inland sustaine themselues with Lizards and such like creatures; & in some places more temperate their food consisteth of herbes and milke. They conuerse togither in great families; and they fight oftentimes for water and for pastures; neither haue they anie knowledge of learning or liberall arts. So long as the sun continueth in our northren signes, that is, from the xj. of March to the xiij. of September, this people in regard of extreme scorching heat, are constrained all the day time (being ordinarily with them of 12. howers) to retire themselues within their houses,

** Pliny calleth them Autololes.*

houses, and to do all their busines in the night. The countrey in most places is destitute of trees that beare fruite: neither haue the greatest part of the inhabitants any haire on their bodies, saue onely a thicke tuft growing vpon their heads: they sell their children vnto strangers, supposing that their estate cannot possiblie be impaired. Vnto these naturall miseries of the place, you may ad the insupportable mischiefes which are here done by the locustes: for albeit these creatures do infinite harme likewise in all the inner parts of Africa; yet seemeth it that this countrey of Ghinea is their most proper habitation; whither they do often resort in such innumerable swarmes, that like a mightie thicke cloud they come raking along in the skie, and afterward falling downe, they couer the face of the earth, deuouring all things that they light vpon. Their comming towards any place is known two or three daies before by the yellownes of the sunne. But in most places where they haunt, the poore people are reuenged of them by killing and dryng them in the aire for their foode: which custome is commonly vsed by the Arabians and Ethiopians; and the Portugals also haue found vessels full of them vpon the coast of Cambaia, where they do the like mischiefes. They which haue eaten of them affirme that they are of a good taste, and that their flesh (so much as it is) is as white as that of a lobster. These may seem to be al one with those grashoppers which God sent to plague Egypt; and the same kind of locustes, which the holy prophet *Iohn Baptist* fed vpon in the wildernes. *Locustes.*

Moreouer along the coasts of Meleghete and Ghinea are diuers small riuers and freshets, containing little water, and running a slow pace: which notwithstanding are the best and pleasantest things that are to be founde in these forlorne countries. For wheresoeuer any little water springeth or runneth, thither do the people resort, partly for the watring of their scorched grouds, & partly to quench their own thirst. Also vpō these coasts are diuers and sundry headlands which stretch into the sea; as namely The faire cape, The three-pointed cape, The cape of Palmetrees, Cabo da Verga, & Sierra Leona. This cape last mentioned hath an exceeding high mountaine thereupon, which causeth it to be seene a mightie distance off. It seemeth to be the same promontorie which *Hanno* and *Ptolemey* call The chariot of the gods. It is called by the name of a lyon in regard of the dreadfull thunders and lightnings which are continually heard from the top thereof: howbeit neere vnto it are found apes, munkeies, and such other beasts as liue in temperate places. *Sierra Leona.*

Of Cabo verde, Sanega, and Gambra or Gambea.

NOrthward of Sierra Leona lieth Cabo verde, or the greene cape, called by *Ptolemey* Arsinarium, and being one of the most famous headlands in all Africa. It is enuironed with two riuers, namely the riuer of Gambra or Gambea on the south, and the riuer of Senaga on the north; which last riuer is esteemed to be an arme of Ghir or Niger.

Gambea

Gambea ſpringeth out of the ſame fountaines aſſigned by *Ptolemey* vnto Niger (which by all the ancient writers is placed heereabout) and out of the lake of Libya. It is larger and deeper then that other of Senaga, and runneth a crooked courſe, receiuing many leſſer riuers thereinto. One hundred and eightie leagues within the mouth of this riuer the Portugals haue a factorie or place of traffique, called The factorie of Cantor. Hither by exchange of ſundry wares, they draw the gold of all thoſe countries. In the midde way (as it were) vnto the ſaid factorie, there is a place called the iſle of Elephants in regard of the huge numbers of thoſe creatures. The riuer of Senaga is thought to take his original out of the lakes called Chelonides. It containeth certaine Iſles, which in regard of their rough and ragged ſhape are good for nothing, but to breed adders and ſuch like hurtfull things, and theſe Iſles in many places make the riuer vtterly innauigable. About one hundred and fiftie leagues from the mouth thereof, it falleth ſpouting-wiſe with ſuch maine force from certaine high cliffes or rockes, that a man may walke drie vnder the ſtreame thereof. The Negros in their language call this place a Bowe. It is reported that Nilus doth the like at his Cataracts or ouerfals. And *Strabo* writeth of certaine riuers of Hircania, which from exceeding ſteepe and craggie rockes guſh with ſuch violence into the Caſpian ſea, that whole armies may paſſe vnder them without danger of drowning. Into this riuer of Senaga, among many riuers vnknowne, falleth one, which paſſing through a red ſoile, is it ſelfe alſo died red: and whoſoeuer drinketh of the waters firſt of the Red riuer, and after of Senaga, is conſtrained extremely to vomite. Along the bankes of this mightie riuer inhabite the blacke and barbarous nations of the Gialofi, the Tucuroni, the Caraguloni, and the Bagani. Finally it voideth into the ſea at two mouths, one of which mouthes is a mile broad. And it is ſtrange to conſider, how vpon the ſouth ſide of this riuer the people are blacke and well proportioned, and the ſoile pleaſant and fertile; whereas on the north ſide they are browne and of a ſmall ſtature, and do inhabite a barren and miſerable countrie. In both the ſaid riuers of Gambra and Senaga do breed diuers ſtrange kindes of fiſhes, and other creatures of the water, as namely crocodiles, ſea-horſes, and winged ſerpents; and hither come to drinke ſundry ſorts of wilde beaſts. The lands comprehended betweene them both, by reaſon of their yeerely inundation (for from the xv. of Iune they increaſe fortie daies togither, and are ſo long time decreaſing, after the manner of Nilus) abound with all kinds of graine and pulſe wherof the climate is capable, as namely with beanes, peaſe, millet, &c. but wheate, rie, barley, and grapes cannot there attaine to ripenes and perfection, by reaſon of ouermuch moiſture: ſaue onely ſome ſmall quantitie of wheat neere the deſerts where the Caraguloni inhabite. But their chiefe ſuſtenance is Zaburro, otherwiſe called Ghinie-wheate or Maiz, which they ſowe after the inundation of their riuers, caſting ſome quantitie of ſande thereupon to defend it from the heate, which otherwiſe would ſcorch the grounde too exceſſiuely.

A factorie of the Portugals.

The iſle of elephants.

A mightie cataract or fall of Senaga.

excessiuely. They drinke the iuice of the palme-tree, which they cut and lance for that purpose: and this iuice not being tempered, is as strong and headie as any wine. Neither are they heere destitute of mightie adders, of lions, leopards, and elephants: but beasts for labour they haue none, saue onely a small kinde of oxen, and goates. The horses which are brought thither by merchants, liue but a short time. The aire, by reason of abundance of lakes bredde by the ouerflowes of their riuers, is moist and grosse. And heere fall most vnholesome and palpable dewes. It raineth in these countries from October till the end of Iuly, euery day about noone, with thunder and lightning.

All the kingdomes and countries by vs before described, from the cape of Buena esperança, to the riuer last mentioned, are inhabited by blacke people. The most northerly are the Gialofi, who spread themselues between the two foresaid riuers for the space of fiue hundred miles eastward: so that the riuer Senaga is the vtmost northren bound of Negros, or nations extremely blacke; howbeit vpon the bankes thereof are found people of sundry colours, by reason of the varietie of women.

Betweene this riuer of Senaga and Cabo blanco, or the white cape, lieth a countrey called by some Anterote, being all ouer in a manner sandy, barren, lowe, and plaine; neither is there in all this distance any place of account or reckoning, saue onely the isles of Arguin (whereof we will intreat among the isles of Africa) and a territorie or towne sixe daies iourney within the maine, called Hoden. This towne is not walled, but lieth open, and consisteth of the wandring Arabians rude and homely habitations, being notwithstanding a place of Rendeuous or meeting for all such as trauell in Carouans from Tombuto, and other places in the lande of Negros to Barbarie. The principall food of the inhabitants heere, are dates and barly, both which the soile yeeldeth indeed, but not in so plentifull a manner: and they drinke the milke of camels & of other beasts, for wine they haue none at all. These people are Mahumetans, and most deadly enimies to Christians: neither abide they long in any place, but runne rouing and wandring vp and downe those deserts. They are themselues very populous, and haue abundance of camels, vpon whose backes they carrie copper, siluer, and other commodities from Barbarie to Tombuto, and to the residue of the land of Negros. *Ramusius vol. 1. fol. 99.*

From Cabo blanco to the regions of Sus, and Hea (which are the first prouinces described by *Iohn Leo*) excepting a small portion onely of Biledulgerid, you haue nothing but part of the vast, fruitles, & vnhabitable desert of Libya, called by the Arabians Sarra, which stretcheth from the westerne Ocean as farre as the frontiers of Egypt.

Thus from the very bottome of the Red sea, hauing coasted along the easterne and westerne shores of the most southerly partes of Africa, and briefly described all the principall knowen empires, kingdomes, and regions within that maine, which are left vntouched by our author *Iohn Leo*;

let

let vs now with like or more breuitie proſecute the deſcription of the iſlands which are by the hand of the omnipotent creator planted round about this ample and ſpacious continent.

A briefe enumeration and deſcription of all the *moſt famous and knowne Iſlandes ſituate round* about the coaſts of Africa, which haue beene omitted by IOHN LEO: *beginning firſt with the moſt northeaſterly, and ſo by* little and little bringing our ſelues about the Cape of Buena Eſperança neerer vnto Europe.

The Iſlands of the Red ſea.

BOth the ſhores of the Red ſea, as well on the African as on the Arabian ſide, are euerie where beſet with many ſmall iſlets and rockes, which lie ſo thicke togither, that they make the nauigation all along the ſaid coaſts to be moſt dangerous and difficult.

Babelmandel. The iſles of the Red ſea moſt woorthie to be remembred, are theſe following. Babelmandel a little iſle ſituate in the very mouth of the Red ſea, in twelue degrees, containeth two leagues in compaſſe, being from either of the firme lands three miles diſtant, and ſtanding about twentie paces high out of the water. By *Ptolemey* it is called The iſle of Diodorus. Vpon this iſle, or one of the continents adioining, are to be hired the moſt experimẽted pilots for al that narrow ſea, euen as far as Suez. And from the eaſterne and weſterne ſide of this iſlet, *Strabo* reporteth that the twofold enterance of the Arabian Gulfe was barred with a double chaine. *The iſle of Camaran.* More to the north ſtandeth Camaran, being about eight leagues from the Arabian coaſt in fifteene degrees of latitude. Vpon this iſle are to be ſeene great ruines of ancient buildings. It hath one indifferent good hauen, and aboundeth with freſh water, (a thing moſt precious and acceptable in thoſe parts) with ſalt, and with cattell. *Dalaqua.* On the other ſide towards Africa, in fifteene degrees and an halfe, ſtandeth the iſle of Dalaqua of about thirtie miles in circuite, which ſpace is almoſt contained in the length thereof, being a place very famous for the abundance of pearles which are there caught; wherewithall likewiſe the iſle of Mua neere vnto it is richly endowed. *Mua.* *Mazua.* Next followeth Mazua in forme like to an halfe moone, and not

aboue

aboue a bow-shoot distant from the African maine: betweene which isle and the continent, there is an excellent hauen which is now the only porte that *Prete Ianni* hath in all his dominions; for which (as you may read before in the description of the said princes empire) his lieutenant *Barnagasso* is constrained to pay a great yeerely tribute to the Turke.

Ouer against Mazua, vpon the firme, standeth the towne of Ercoco. Vpon this little isle are diuers houses of Arabians, built of lime and stone; and others of claie couered with thatch. North of Mazua standeth Suaquen in a certain lake made by the sea, which there insinuateth it selfe within the land, and frameth a most secure and commodious hauen. On this small islet is built the faire and stately citie of Suaquen, being almost as large as the isle it selfe; wherein resideth the Turkes lieutenant or Bassa of Abassia.

The isle, hauen, and citie of Suaquen.

Of the Isle of Socotera and other isles lying without the narrow entrance of the Arabian gulfe.

WIthout the streight of Babelmandel there are no islands woorthy of mention, saue onely Socotera; which (as *Iohn Barros* supposeth) was of old called by *Ptolemey* Dioscoridis, & lieth in sight of cape Guardafu, which the same author nameth Aromata Promõtorium. Being about three-score miles long, and fiue and twentie miles broad, it is diuided with a rough and exceeding high ridge of mountaines, and is subiect vnto most terrible and boisterous windes, which do out of measure dry and parch the same. For which cause, and in regard of the slothfull rudenes of the inhabitants, it is very scarce of victuals: for it yeeldeth neither wheate, rice, wine, nor hony. In the vallies and places of shelter it affoordeth some quantitie of Millet, of dates, and of sundrie kinds of fruits: neither is it altogither destitute of pasture for cattell. It is frequented by merchants for * Cinabre, Sanguis Draconis, and the most excellent Aloës of the world. It hath no hauen of importance. The Portugals are heere possessed of two small townes, one called Coro, and the other Benin; and here in times past the king of Fartac [*A countrey of Arabia Fœlix*,] had a castle & a garrison of soldiers vpon this isle, which castle being taken by the Portugals, was afterward by them abandoned, bicause it quited not the cost. The inhabitants being of a browne colour, and of a good constitution; are in religion a kind of Christians. They hold an opinion that Saint *Thomas* suffred shipwracke vpon this isle, and that of his ship was built a most ancient church, which as yet is to be seene walled round about, with three allies or partitions, and three doores.

* *Or vermillion.*

Two townes of the Portugales in Socotora.

Furthermore they liue for the most part in caues or in cabins made of boughes, very farre from the sea. They go apparrelled in course cloth, or in the skins of beastes. In war their weapons are slings, and swordes made of base iron: and the women are as good soldiers as the men. They are much addicted vnto Magick and inchantments, and doe bring to passe matters incredible. They haue no vse at all of nauigation, nor of traffique, and yet forsooth

sooth they esteeme themselues the most noble and worthy people vnder the heauens; as also they are vtterly voide of learning: which I doe note, because that such as are learned make but small account of their wisedome.

The two sisters. To the North of Socotera are two small Isles which are called the two sisters: the inhabitants whereof being of an oliue-colour, liue without lawe, and haue no conuersation with any other people. The commodities of these Islets are Iuorie, amber, Sanguis draconis, Aloës, and a kind of pretious stones called Nizzolij.

Likewise ouer against Socotera are two other Islets, one called the Isle of men, and the other the Isle of women, being distant thirtie miles asunder, and fiue miles from Socotera. They are so termed, because that in the one dwell men onely, and in the other women. Howbeit they visite one another at certaine seasons: but they cannot stay one in the Isle of another aboue three moneths, in regarde of a secret qualitie of the ayer which is contrary to either sexe. A matter (if it be true) most strange and admirable.

Of the Isles lying in the sea called Sinus Barbaricus, ouer against the Easterne and Southeasterne shore of Africa.

ALl along from the cape of Guardafu to the cape of Buena Esperança are found sundry Islands, partly dispersed heere and there in the sea, and partly adioining vpon the firme land. Such as are far into the sea, are the greatest part vnhabited, as namly, the Isle of Don Garçia, The*three and The *seuen brethren, As rocas partidas, the Isles of Sant Brandan, and those of Mascarenha, of Sant Francis, of Santa Apollonia, of Iohn de Lisboa, of Cosmoledo: and betweene the great Isle of Saint Laurence and the maine, the Isles Do Natal or of the natiuitie, as likewise the three Isles of Comoro, with those of Alioa, of Spirito Santo, and of saint Christopher.

Isles which are not inhabited.

Concerning the isles of Mõbaça, Quiloa, & Moçambique read more at large in the discourse of Zanguebar before set downe, whereas I thought it meetest to intreat of them, being (as it were) certaine fragments of the maine, & hauing large territories thereof subiect vnto them.

But of those which the vicinity of the firme land hath made more noble and frequented, the first that offereth it selfe to our consideration, is the Isle of Mombaza in foure degrees of southerly latitude, cut out by a certaine chanel or arme of the sea, which deuideth the same from the maine of Africa: in compasse it containeth twelue miles; and at the entrance of the saide chanel, vpon a downe, standeth the city of Mombaça, built very handsomely after the Arabian fashion. Somewhat farther from the continent are situate the Isles of Pemba, Zanzibar, and Monsia inhabited by Negros; the greatest of which is Zanzibar, the prince whereof is called by the name of a king; and it lyeth vnder sixe degrees of south latitude, being from the main ten leagues distant. But the soueraigne of all these Isles was Quiloa, inhabited like the rest, with Mahumetans of little bodies and abiect mindes. It aboundeth with rice, millet, cattel, woods of palme-trees, limons, orenges, & sugarcanes; whereof notwithstanding they are ignorant how to make sugar. The city standeth vpon the sea-shore ouer against the firme land: it is built of

pure

pure marble, and the streetes are very narrow: a thing common among the Arabians, whereby they vse to defend themselues, after the enemie hath once entered their townes. From this Isle to Moçambique are about an hundred leagues. Without the porte lieth Misa, and three miles off Songo and Canga inhabited by Moores. Next follow As Ilhas do Açotatado, or The isles of the scourged, bicause here a certaine pilot that was a Moore, who had determined to wracke the whole fleete of *Vasco da Gama*, receiued punishment. Concerning Moçambique called by *Ptolemey* and other ancient writers Prassia, we haue intreated before. Fower miles from thence lie the desert isles of Saint George: and then the isles of Angoscia inhabited by Moores. These are stored with indifferent quantitie of victuals: and here vpon an east winde they gather plentie of Ambergrise. An hundred and fiftie miles from Cabo dos corrientes, lieth A Ilha das vacas, or The isle of Cowes, with a castle thereupon, and store of good water. As Ilhas llanas, or The plaine isles are not woorth the speaking of. A Ilha da cruz, otherwise called Ilha das fontanhas, was the farthest limite of *Bartholomew Diaz* his nauigation, who was the first Portugale that euer doubled the cape of Buena esprança, and hauing doubled it, returned backe without discouering any farther.

Plentie of Ambergrise.

Of the Isle of Saint Laurence, otherwise called Madagascar.

THis isle called by the Portugales The isle of Sant Laurence, by the naturall inhabitans Madagascar, by *Paulus Venetus* Magastar, by *Ptolemey* Menuthias, and by *Plinie* Cerne, is accounted one of the greatest, noblest, and richest in the whole world. About the midst thereof it approcheth towards the maine of Africa, in forme of an elbowe, being distant from thence an hundred threescore and ten miles. The extreames of this isle are very farre separate from the saide maine, and especially that which stretcheth toward the northeast. The whole isle containeth in bredth fower hundred and fowerscore, in length one thousand two hundred, and in compasse fower thousand miles; so that in bignes it farre exceedeth Italy, though it be not so well inhabited and manured. Situate it is beyond the Equator in seuenteene degrees, and stretcheth from thence to sixe and twentie degrees and an halfe of southerly latitude. It is plentifully endowed with all things needfull for mans vse: for it yeeldeth cotton, Millet, Rice, Potatos, sweete orenges, sugar-canes, and sundry kindes of pulse: as likewise, amber, Iette, siluer, copper, red sanders, saffron, a spice somewhat like vnto cloues, and some quantitie of ginger. Moreouer, heere are lions, leopards, stags, roe-deere, goates, kine, sheepe, and other beastes both tame and wilde. Heere are likewise innumerable elephants, so that from hence is conueied great quantitie of iuorie. They haue also great store of camels, whose flesh the inhabitants eate for the holesomenes thereof. The people (except

ſome few Moores vpon the coaſt) are idolaters, of colour black, with curled haire, very barbarous, and in faſhions reſembling much the Cafres. They go naked all ſaue their priuities, which they couer with cloth of cotton: and they vſe in the warre certaine crooked ſtaues headed with bone. The Ieſuits in their letters report, that in one part of this iſland there are white people found; who (as they affirme) are deſcended from the people of China; whereby may be gathered the great length of the Chinians nauigations, and the largenes of their empire. The Portugals ſailing towards India in due time, do paſſe betweene this great iſle and the firme land; but if the ſeaſon groweth towards winter, they holde on their courſe (as themſelues report) on the backe-ſide thereof. In theſe two courſes of nauigation they haue found, and daily do diſcouer ſundrie iſles, but of ſmall account, part whereof we haue mentioned before. Amongſt others, as it were ouer againſt Moçambique, lieth on a certaine ſtrand or ſhold an iſle called Langane of a reaſonable bignes, with a great riuer therein, being inhabited by Moores. And the fartheſt toward the weſt are thoſe iſles which the Portugals call Os Romeros. On the northeaſt part of this iſle is the Bay of Antogill, being one of the ſafeſt and moſt commodious harbours in the world.

Of the Iſles of the Ethiopian ſea about the cape of Buena eſperança.

THis ſea I take to be moſt exceeding deepe, becauſe it hath fewer Iſles then the former, and thoſe few which it hath are but little ones. The firſt that was diſcouered on this ſide the cape of Buena Eſperança is that of Don Aluarez, ſituate in thirtie degrees and an halfe. And to the northweſt of that is the Iſle of Triſtan d' Acunna beeing diſtant 1500. miles from the cape, and beyond the Equinoctiall eight and thirtie degrees; which beeing of a round forme, containeth in compaſſe fiftie leagues. It is full of birdes, and eſpecially of ſea-crowes or cormorants, and round about it lie foure other ſmall iſlets. The marriners hold, that neere vnto this iſle, as vnto that of Bermuda, there are continual ſtormes and tempeſtes. Not far from the main are certaine dry and rockie iſles, and others of none account.

The Iſles of Santa Helena, and of the Aſcenſion.

NExt followeth in the height of ſixteene degrees of ſoutherly latitude the iſle of Santa Helena, diſcouered by *Iuan da Noua*, being ſo fitly and commodiouſly ſituate for ſuch as returne home from the eaſt Indies into Europe, as it ſeemeth there of purpoſe to haue beene planted by God for the furtherance of this voiage, and for the refreſhing and comfort of nauigators. In compaſſe it containeth nine miles, & hath a moſt perfect healthfull

full aire, and sundry freshets of excellent water. The soile is of a red colour, and like vnto ashes; it giueth way to ones footing like sand, and a man may shake euery tree vpon the isle. Heere the kings of Portugall haue enacted, that none may remaine to inhabite, except it be sometime two or three sicke persons for the recouerie of their health; to the end that the fleets may heere plentifully and of free cost furnish themselues with fresh victuals, fruits, and water. So that when they arriue, they vsually plant or sow some one thing or other, which presently springeth and groweth to ripenes; and then the seed falling into the earth, it multiplieth of it selfe. Heere are woods of Eban and Cedar, with infinite store of limons, orenges, and all sorts of fruits; as likewise hogs, geese, hens, partridges, feasants, Guinie-cocks, and other like creatures brought thither by the Portugals out of Europe, or from other countries. In sailing from Portugall toward India it is not so eafily found: but in their returne home they do heere in fewe daies cure all their diseases, and relieue their wants: and heere to their vnspeakable solace and recreation they hunt, foule, and fish, and prouide themselues of water, wood, and all things necessarie. To the west thereof appeere in the sea the isles of Santa Maria, and of the Trinitie, which serue for signes vnto the mariners. To the northwest of this isle, towards the coast of Brasil, are the isles of Ascension, so called bicause they were first discouered by *Tristan Acunna* in his returne from the Indies vpon Ascension day in the yeere 1508. They are all vnhabited and desert, and haue vpon them infinite swarmes of a kinde of fowles of the bignes of duckes.

The isles of Ascension.

Of the Isles of Loanda, Nobon, and Saint Thomas.

HArd vpon the firme land of the south part of Congo, is situate the isle of * Loanda before mentioned. And ouer against the cape of Lopo Gonsalues in a manner, lieth the small isle of Nobon, being a rockie and desolate place, but of great importance for fishing; for which cause it is frequented by the inhabitants of Saint Thomas isle. This isle of Saint Thomas being an hundred and fower-score miles distant from the maine, is of a round forme, containing threescore Italian miles from side to side, and an hundred and fower-score miles in also compasse: of which isle (bicause it is situate iust vnder the Equinoctiall, so that the horizon thereof passeth by both the poles) it will not be from our purpose to intreat somewhat at large; to the end we may the better vnderstand the qualitie and temperature of such places as are seated in that part of the world. This isle when it was first discouered was nothing else but a woode of vnprofitable trees, with their boughs turning crookedly vpward. The aire is extremely hot: in the moneths of March and September, when the sunne passeth perpendicularly ouer, it raineth heere out of measure, and in other moneths heere falleth onely a moist dewe which watereth the ground. In the verie midst it hath a woodie mountaine, which is continually ouershadowed with a thick

* *Concerning this isle read more at large in the description of Congo.*

cloud, which cloud ſo moiſtneth the trees that grow in great abundance vpon this mountaine, that from hence droppeth water ſufficient for the watering of al their fields of ſugar-canes. By how much the ſun is more perpendicular ouer this iſle, by ſo much is the aire more cloudie & darke; and contrariwiſe, the farther it is diſtant from perpendicularitie, the cleerer and brighter is the skie. In the moneths of December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, ſuch as are borne in Europe, can very hardly walke or mooue themſelues for faintnes: and all the reſt of the yeere, once in eight or ten daies, they ſeeme to be taken with an hot and a cold fit of an ague, which continueth vpon them for tow howers togither. They are thrice or oftner let bloud euerie yeere: and few of them liue aboue fiftie yeeres; but their Negros remaine more then an hundred yeers aliue. They which newly arriue there, are commonly ſurprized with a moſt dangerous feauer, which holdeth them for twentie daies togither. And theſe are let bloud, without any reckoning of ounces. Heere blow no windes at all, but onely from the ſoutheaſt, ſouth, and ſouthweſt, which windes ſtirre not in the moneths of December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, and therefore theſe moneths are moſt extremely hot. But in Iune, Iuly, and Auguſt, they blow a freſh gale. In this iſle the French euill, and the ſcuruies are verie rife. The ſoile is of a meane colour betweene red and yellow, being clammie like claie, and by reaſon of the continuall nightly dewes, as ſoft and pliable as waxe, and of incredible fertility. Beſides diuers other good ports, it hath one principall among the reſt, belonging to the chiefe towne or citie called * Pauoaſan, conſiſting of aboue ſeuen hundred families, and inhabited by Portugals, and into the ſaide port runneth a little riuer of excellent water.

** Or perhaps Pouaçaon, which (as I conieƈture) may be all one with Poblacion in Spaniſh, which ſignifieth a Colonie or towne.*

To euery of the Ingenios or ſugar-houſes (which in all may amount to the number of ſeuentie) do belong Negro-ſlaues, for the planting of their canes and the dreſſing of their ſugars, to ſome, two hundred, and to others, three hundred a piece, who liue vpon Maiz or Ghiny-wheat: the number of which ſlaues is ſo great, that oftentimes they rebell, to the great domage of the Portugals. They haue good ſuſtenance alſo by meanes of a root, called there Igname, but in the weſt Indies Batata. Wheat that is heere ſowen, groweth not to any ripenes or graine, but is reſolued altogether into graſſe. They make wine of the Palme-tree. Vines proſper nothing kindely in this place, except it be heere and there one, planted by an houſe-ſide, and attended with great diligence. They bring forth cluſters at the ſame time, ſome ripe, ſome greene, and ſome bloſſomes onely; and they beare fruit twice in the yeere, as doe the fig-trees likewiſe. They haue ſugar-canes ripe all the yeere long: but melons onely in Iune, Iuly, and Auguſt. No tree that beareth fruit with a ſtone or kernell will fruƈtifie or proſper in this place. Here are found all ouer the Iſle certaine crabs or creuiſes like vnto them of the ſea; heere be likewiſe gray parots, and infinite other birds of diuers ſortes; and in the ſea are mightie ſtore of whales, eſpecially toward the firme land. The principall riches of this iſle conſiſt in ſugars, whereof there groweth

Seuentie Ingenios in San Tomé.

great

great abundance. The sugar-canes are planted and cut euery moneth, and in fiue months they grow to ripenes, but by reason of the moistnes of the ayer, they neither prooue hard nor white, but are of a reddish colour. The tenths which belong to the king amount to the number of 12. or 14. thousand Arrouas, euery Arroua being one and thirtie Italian pound-weight. In times past there were fortie ships yeerely laden therewith; but now of late certaine wormes which eat the roots of the canes, or (as others think) white antes or mise, haue so mightily impaired the growth of this commodity, that now there are not aboue sixe ships laden therewith. The sugar-canes, after they be once ground, they giue vnto their hogges, wherewith they prooue fat, and their flesh is very sauory. For returne of sugars, the merchants of Europe carry thither meale, wine, swordes, oile, cheese, hides, drinking-glasses, and certaine shels, which there and in the countries adioining they vse insteed of mony. Of the coniunction betweene the men of Europe and the Negro women are bred a generation of browne or tawnie people.

This Isle of Saint Thomas together with the principal towne and castle, was in October 1599 taken by part of the same fleet of Hollanders, which not fullie foure moneths before had sacked the isles, castles and townes of Gran Canaria and Gomera.

Of the Isle del principe, and that of Fernando Po.

THe Isle del principe or of the prince, situate in three degrees of Northerly latitude, and one hundred twentie miles on this side the isle of Sant Thomas, is little in quantitie, but excellent in qualitie: for which cause it is throughly tilled and manured. The reuenues thereof (which consist the greatest part in sugars) were in times past allowed vnto the prince of Portugale; whereupon it was named The isle of the prince.

This Isle was in the yeere 1598 taken by certaine ships of war sent forth vnder the conduct of *Iulianus Clerehagen* at the charges of *Balthasar Musheron* of Camphere in Zeland merchant, who had the conqueste thereof giuen him by patent from Prince *Maurice*, and the States generall of the vnited prouinces.

That of *Fernando Po* hath no other matter of speciall note, saue onely a certaine lake which is the originall of sundry freshets of sweete and holesome water, which make the island to be most pleasant. It seemed so beautifull to the first discouerer thereof, that he termed it Ilha fermosa, or The faire isle.

To the west of these two isles are situate the isle of Sant Matthew, and that of Santa Cruz; and afterward hauing passed the Equinoctial, you come to the isle of Sant Paule, and the isle of conception, both which were discouered by *Pedro Aluarez Cabral* in the yeere 1501.

Of the iſles of Cabo verde.

NExt vnto Cape verde it ſelfe ſtand The Barbacene which are ſeuen ſmall iſles repleniſhed with greene trees, and full of ſtrange birds vnknowne to vs; and yet are they vtterly voide of inhabitants. But thoſe that are called the iſles of Cape verde (which by ancient authors are thought to haue bin named Gorgones, or Gorgades, or Heſperides) are nine in number, and are ſituate betweene Cabo verde and Cabo blanco. They were firſt diſcouered by *Antonio di Nolli* a Genoway, and began in like ſort to be peopled, in the yeere of our Lord 1440. Albeit there are none of them now inhabited, but onely the iſle of Sant Iago, and Iſla del fogo or The burning iſle. The principall of them all is Sant Iago being ſeuentie miles long, whereon the Portugals haue a faire and ſtrong towne called Ribera grande, with a riuer running through it, and a commodious and ſecure hauen: it is very ſtrongly ſeated betweene two mountaines, and conſiſteth of fiue hundred families at the leaſt. The riuer (which ſpringeth two leagues from the city) is beautified vpon the bankes thereof with Cedars, Orenge-trees, and diuers other plants, amongſt which the Palme tree of India that beareth nuts, proſpereth exceeding well. The hearbes of Europe grow here as naturally as in their original ſoile; howbeit the ſeeds thereof muſt euery yeere be brought out of Spaine. The iſle is generally vneuen and mountainous: but the valleis are paſſing fertile, and throughly inhabited: and here is ſowed abundance of rice and Saburro, which groweth to ripenes in fortie daies. Howbeit the ſoile will beare no wheat. Here is ſtore of cotton alſo, the cloth whereof is diſperſed along the coaſt of Africa. The ſhee-gotes here, as likewiſe in all the iſles adiacent, bring forth three and more kids at a birth, euery foure moneths. When the ſunne is in Cancer, it raineth here in a manner without ceaſing.

This towne was taken by ſir Francis Drake 1585. and by ſir Anthonie Sherley 1596.

To the weſt of Sant Iago ſtand the iſles of Fogo and Braua being but of ſmall importance (albeit that of Fogo is in ſome parts thereof inhabited) and to the North of the ſame is ſituate the iſle of Maio, where there is a lake of two leagues long, which is full of ſalt; the which is a common thing in all theſe iſlands; but in one, more then in any of the other, in that it is full of ſuch like ſalt-pits, and is therefore called The iſland of ſalt, being deſtitute of all other liuing things, ſaue onely of wild gotes. The iſle of Buena viſta hath a name contrary to the quality; for it is without all ſhew of beauty. Of the others I haue nothing woorthie the obſeruation.

Of the Isles of Arguin.

ALittle to the south or on the backside of Cabo blanco, within a certaine gulfe or baie which entereth thirtie miles into the maine, lie the isles of Arguin, which were discouered in the yeere 1443. so called after the name of the principall of them, which hath great store of fresh water, whereof all the residue are destitute. Heere the king of Spaine hath a fortresse, for the traffique of gold and other rich commodities of those countries. These isles are sixe or seuen in number, all little ones, being inhabited by the Azanaghi, who liue of fish, whereof there is plentie in that baie. They go to sea in certaine small botes which they call Almadies. The names of the other isles (as farre as I coniecture) are The isle of Penguins, The isles of Nar, Tider, and Adeget.

Of the Isles in the Atlantick Ocean, and first of the Canaries.

FOr so the isles named of olde *Insulæ fortunatæ* (which euer since the decay of the Romaine empire, till within these two hundred yeeres, lay vndiscouered) are at this present called. They are in number twelue, (although the ancient writers make mention but of sixe) that is to say, Canaria, Lançarotta, Fuerte ventura, Hierro, Palma, Gomera, Santa Clara, Isla de lobos, La Roca, Gratiosa, Alegrança, and Infierno. They generally abound with barly, sugar, hony, goates, cheese, hides, and Orchel, being a herbe commodious to die cloth withall, and whereof they make great merchandise. Amongst other beasts they haue also camels. The natural inhabitants of the countrey are of a good disposition, and notable agilitie; but before they were discouered, they were so grosse and rude, as they knewe not the vse of fire. They beleeued in one creatour of the world, who punished the euill, and rewarded the good; and in this point they all consented, but in other matters they were very different. They had no iron at all, but yet esteemed it much when any came to their hands, for the vse thereof. They made no accoũt of gold or siluer, iudging it a folly to esteem of that mettal, which could not serue for mechanicall instruments. Their weapons were stones and staues. They shaued their heads with certaine sharpe stones like to flint. The women would not willingly nurse their owne children, but caused them to be suckled by goates. They were and are at this day delighted with a kinde of dance which they vse also in Spaine and in other places, and because it tooke originall from thence, it is called The Canaries. From hence also they bring certaine birds which sing at all times of the yeere. The greatest of all these isles is the *Gran Canaria, containing fower-score and ten miles in circuit, and it hath to the number of nine thousand inhabitants.

*This isle with the principall towne and castles was sacked by the Hollanders in Iune Anno 1598.

Tenerif

The Pike of Tenerif.

Tenerif is not altogither ſo great. This is eſteemed one of the higheſt iſlands in the world, by reaſon of a mountaine therein of the forme of a diamond, being (as it is reported) fifteene leagues high, & it may be ſeene more then threeſcore leagues off. Hierro hath neither ſpring nor well, but is miraculouſly furniſhed with water by a cloud which ouer-ſpreadeth a tree, from whence diſtilleth ſo much moiſture, as ſufficeth both for men and cattell. This cloud ariſeth an hower or two before the ſunne, and is diſſolued two howers after ſunne riſing. The water falleth into a ponde made at the foote of the tree. The iſle of Palma is little, but beautifull, and abundant in ſugar, wine, fleſh, and cheeſe: wherefore ſuch ſhips as go from Spaine to Terra firma, and Braſil, do there ordinarily prouide themſelues of freſh victuall. It is from Lisbon a thouſand miles by ſea, being much ſubiect to tempeſts, and eſpecially thoſe which come from the northweſt.

Of theſe iſlands Lançarota, Hierro, and Gomera are in the hands of priuate men: the others belong to the crowne.

Of the Iſles of Madera and Puerto ſanto.

Madera in Spaniſh ſignifieth wood or timber.

MAdera is the greateſt and moſt principal of all the iſles in the Atlantick Ocean. It ſtandeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, fortie miles to the ſouthweſt of Puerto ſanto. So it is called, becauſe at the firſt diſcouerie thereof it was all ouergrowen with mightie thick woods. Wherfore, to waſte the ſaid woods, and to make it fit to be manured, the firſt diſcouerers ſet them on fire, which continued burning (as ſome report) for the ſpace of certaine yeeres together: whereupon it grew ſo exceeding fertile, that of corne it yeeldeth ſixtie folde for one: and for a certaine ſpace the fifte part of the ſugars amounted yeerely to threeſcore thouſand Arrouas (one of which Arrouas containeth fiue and twentie pounds of ſixteene ounces the pound) but now it cometh not to the one halfe of that reckoning. This iſle containeth in compaſſe an hundred & ſixtie miles. It is dided into foure regions or quarters, that is to ſay Comerico, Santa Cruz, Funcial, and Camara de los Lobos. It aboundeth with water: and beſides diuers and ſundry fountaines, it hath eight ſmall riuers which make it as fruitfull and pleaſant as a garden. It yeeldeth euery thing in ſuch perfection, that *Cadamoſta* (in regard of their excellency) affirmeth all commodities which are there gathered, to be gold. It produceth infinite ſtore of fruits, excellent wines, and ſugars which cannot be matched. Heere is likewiſe great abundance of cedars, whereof are made fine cheſtes and other works of account: for which purpoſe there are diuers ſawing milles vpon the foreſaid riuers. This iſle is very ſcarce of oile and of corne. The head or principall citie hereof is Funciall, being the ſeat of an archbiſhop who hath 8000. ducates of reuenue. Here are two fortreſſes built which command the hauen.

Puerto ſanto, the principall towne whereof

Fortie miles to the northeaſt of Madera lieth the iſle of Puerto ſanto, ſo called bicauſe it was diſcouered vpon the day of all ſaints, in the yeere 1428.

It

It containeth in compasse fifteene miles, and aboundeth with oxen, wilde swine, and honie; and yeeldeth wheat sufficient for the vse of the inhabitants. Heere groweth a fruite in bignes and shape like vnto a cherry, but of a yellow colour. The tree that beareth this fruit being cut neere the roote with certaine strokes of an hatchet, putteth foorth the yeere following a kinde of gum which is called Sanguis Draconis. *was taken by sir Amias Preston 1596.*

The generation of one shee-cony bigge with yoong, brought hither out of Portugale at the first inhabiting of this isle, did in short time so exceedingly increase, that the inhabitants were quite out of hope euer to repaire the ruine and waste which they committed. At this present there is a small isle neere vnto Puerto santo which breedeth nothing but conies. *The woonderful increase of one shee-conie.*

Vnto all these might be added such isles as lie neere the African coast within the streights of Gibraltar: the principall whereof (as namely Pennon or The little rocke ouer against Velles de Gumera, with the isle of Gerbi, &c.) bicause they are largely described by *Iohn Leo*, I hold it a matter meerely vaine and superfluous in this place to stande vpon them.

An approbation of the historie ensuing, by me RICHARD HAKLVYT.

BEeing mooued to publish mine opinion as touching this present Historie of *Iohn Leo*; I do hold and affirme it to be the verie best, the most particular, and methodicall, that euer was written, or at least that hath come to light, concerning the countries, peoples, and affaires of Africa. For which cause, and knowing well the sufficiencie of the translator, my selfe was the first and onely man that perswaded him to take it in hand. Wherein how diligently and faithfully he hath done his part, and how he hath enlarged and graced this Geographicall historie out of others, the best ancient and moderne writers, by adding a description of all those African maine lands and isles, and other matters verie notable, which *Iohn Leo* himselfe hath omitted: I referre to the consideration of all iudiciall and indifferent Readers.

Richard Hakluyt.

VNto this approbation of master *Richard Hakluyt*, I holde it not altogither amisse to adioine the testimonies of certaine moderne writers, the most approoued and famous for their skill in Geographie and historie, which they haue also purposely set downe in commendation of this author of ours *Iohn Leo*.

First therefore master *Iohn Baptista Ramusius*, Secretarie to the State of Venice, and a man of singular iudgement and diligence in these matters, in his epistle Dedicatorie before the third edition of his first volume of voiages, speaking of the manifold difficulties which he vnderwent to bring the important discourses therein, to light, writteth vnto learned *Fracastorius* in manner following.

Oltra che gli essemplari che mi son venute alle mani, &c.

MOreouer (saith he) those copies which haue come to my hands, haue beene extremely fowle and vncorrect; a matter sufficient to discourage the minde of any man, though neuer so forward and resolute, were it not sustained by considering what vnspeakable delight these discourses will breed vnto all those that are studious in Geography; and most especially this of Africa written by *Iohn Leo*. Concerning which part of the world, euen till these our daies, we haue had no knowledge in a manner out of any other authour, or at leastwise neuer any information so large, and of so vndoubted truth. But what do I heere speake of the delight which those that are learned and studious shall reape heereby? As though it were not a matter which will affoord also very much satisfaction vnto the greatest Lords and Princes? Whom it concerneth more then any other to know the secrets and particularities of this African part of the world, togither with the situations of all the regions, prouinces, and cities thereof, and the dependences, which the princes and people haue one towards another. For albeit they may haue some aduertisements & instructions from others that haue personally trauailed these countries, & may think their writings & discourses to be very large; yet am I well assured, that hauing once read this booke of *Iohn Leo*, and throughly considered the matters therein contained and declared, they will esteeme the relati-

ons

ons of all others, in compariſon of this, to be but briefe, vnperfect, and of little moment: ſo great will be the fruit which to their exceeding contentment, all readers ſhall reape heereby, &c. Thus farre *Ramuſius*.

Abraham Ortelius *before his generall mappe of Africa hath theſe wordes.*

Ex recentioribus, &c.

AMong the late writers (for your more perfect knowledge of Africa) you muſt read *Aloiſius Cadamoſta*, *Vaſco da Gama*, and *Francis Aluarez*, who trauailed Ethiopia; *Sed omnium accuratiſsimè &c.* but of all others you haue it moſt exactly deſcribed by *Iohn Leo*.

Alſo the ſame author before his map of Barbary and Biledulgerid.

BVt (ſaith he) concerning theſe regions and people, you ſhall finde a moſt exquiſite deſcription in the Hiſtorie of *Iohn Leo*, &c.

The opinion of IOHN BODIN *in the fourth chapter of his method of reading Hiſtories concerning this our author.*

Ita quoque Leo Afer, genere Maurus, &c.

SO likewiſe *Leo Afer* by deſcent a More, borne in Spaine, in religion a Mahumetan, and afterward a Chriſtian, hauing by continuall iournies trauelled almoſt ouer all Africa; as alſo

so ouer Asia minor, and a good part of Europe, was taken by certaine pirates, and presented vnto pope *Leo* the tenth: vnder whom he translated into Italian all those things which with incredible studie and diligence he had written in the Arabick toong, concerning Africa, the manners, lawes, and customes of the African people, and the situation and true description of the whole countrey. Their militarie discipline he lightly passeth ouer: and briefly mentioneth the conflicts and victories of famous warrious, without any orations or ornaments of speech, rather like a Geographer then a Chronicler: and with a perpetuall delight of new and strange things, he doth (as it were) perforce detaine his Reader, &c. And a little after he addeth: *Profecto vnus est ex omnibus*, &c. Certes of all others this is the onely man, by whom Africa, which for a thousand yeeres before had lien buried in the barbarous and grosse ignorance of our people, is now plainly discouered and laide open to the view of all beholders.

Antonius Possevinus *de historicis sect. 7. cap. 2.*

Sed & perdigna est lectu, &c.

ALso the Historie of *Leo Afer* the Geographer is most worthie to be read, bicause it containeth an exact description of all the regions and people of Africa; and it hath beene published in Italian and French.

IOHN LEO HIS FIRST BOOKE OF the descriptiõ of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

VVhy this part of the worlde was named Africa.

AFRICA is called in the Arabian toong *Iphrichia*, of the word *Faraca*, which signifieth in the said language, to diuide: but why it should be so called, there are two opinions; the first is this: namely, because this part of the worlde is diuided from Europa by the Mediterran sea, and from Asia * by the riuer of Nilus. Others are of opinion, that this name *Africa* was deriued from one *Africus* the king of Arabia Fœlix, who is saide to haue beene the first that euer inhabited these partes. This *Africus* waging warre against the king of Assyria, and being at length by him driuen out of his kingdome, passed with his whole armie ouer Nilus, and so conducting his troupes westward, made no delay till he was come vnto the region lying about Carthage. Hence it is that the Arabians do imagine the countrie about Carthage onely, and the regions lying westward thereof, to comprehende all Africa.

* *Others diuide it from Asia by the red sea.*

The borders of Africa.

AFRICA (if we may giue credite vnto the writers of that nation, being men of learning, and most skilfull Cosmographers) beginneth southward at certaine riuers issuing foorth of a lake in the desert of Gaoga. Eastward it bordereth vpon the riuer Nilus. It extendeth northward to that part of Egypt, where Nilus at seuen mouthes dischargeth his streames into the Mediterran sea: from whence it stretcheth westward as farre as the streites of Gibraltar, and is bounded on that part with the vtmost sea-towne of all Libya, called * Nun. Likewise the south part thereof abutteth vpon the Ocean sea, which compasseth Africa almost as farre as the deserts of Gaoga.

* *Nun.*

The diuision of Africa.

OVR authors affirme, that Africa is diuided into fower partes, that is to say, Barbaria, Numidia, Libya, and the lande of Negros. Barbaria taketh beginning from the hill called Meies, which is the extreme part of all the mountaines of Atlas, being distant from Alexandria almost three hundred miles. It is bounded on the North side with the Mediterran sea, stretching thence to mount-Meies aforesaid, and from mount-Meies extending it selfe to the streites of Gibraltar. Westward it is limited with the said streites, from whence winding it selfe out of the Mediterran sea into the maine Ocean, it is inclosed with the most westerly point of Atlas: namely, at that Westerne cape which is next vnto the towne called Messa. And southward it is bounded with that side of Atlas which lieth towards the Mediterran sea. This is the most noble and worthie region of all Africa, the inhabitants whereof are of a browne or tawnie colour, being a ciuill people, and prescribe wholsome lawes and constitutions vnto themselues.

The second part of Africa is called of the Latines *Numidia*, but of the Arabians *Biledulgerid*: this region bringeth foorth dates in great abundance. It beginneth eastward at the citie of Eloacat, which is an hundred miles distant from Egypt, & extendeth west as far as the towne of *Nun, standing vpon the Ocean sea. Northward it is inclosed with the south side of Atlas. And the south part thereof bordereth vpon the sandie deserts of Libya. All the Arabians doe vsually call it The land of dates: because this onely region of Africa beareth dates.

*Nun.

The third part called of the Latines *Libya*, and of the Arabians *Sarra* (which word signifieth a desert) beginneth eastward at that part of Nilus which is next vnto the citie of Eloacat, and from thence runneth westward as far as the Ocean sea. Northwarde it is bounded with Numidia, southward it abutteth vpon the land of Negros, eastward it taketh beginning at the kingdome of Gaoga, and stretcheth westwarde euen to the land of Gualata, which bordereth vpon the Ocean sea.

The fourth part of Africa which is called the land of Negros, beginneth eastward at the kingdome of Gaoga, from whence it extendeth west as far as Gualata. The north part thereof is inclosed with the desert of Libya, and the south part, which is vnknowen vnto vs, with the Ocean sea: howbeit the merchants which daily come from thence to the kingdome of Tombuto, haue sufficiently described the situation of that countrie vnto vs. This lande of Negros hath a mightie riuer, which taking his name of the region, is called Niger: this riuer taketh his originall from the east out of a certaine desert called by the foresaide Negros *Seu*. Others will haue this riuer to spring out of a certaine lake, and so to run

The riuer of Niger.

westward

weſtward till it exonerateth it ſelfe into the Ocean ſea. Our Coſmographers affirme, that the ſaid riuer of Niger is deriued out of Nilus, which they imagine for ſome certaine ſpace to be ſwallowed vp of the earth, and yet at laſt to burſt foorth into ſuch a lake as is before mentioned. Some others are of opinion, that this riuer beginneth weſtward to ſpring out of a certaine mountaine, and ſo running eaſt, to make at length a huge lake: which verily is not like to be true; for they vſually ſaile weſtward from Tombuto to the kingdome of Ginea, yea and to the land of Melli alſo; both which in reſpect of Tombuto are ſituate to the weſt: neither hath the ſaid land of Negros any kingdomes comparable, for beautifull and pleaſant ſoile, vnto thoſe which adioine vnto the bankes of Niger. And here it is to be noted, that (according to the opinion of our Coſmographers) * that land of Negros by which Nilus is ſaid to run (namely, that part of the world which ſtretcheth eaſtward euen to the Indian ſea, ſome northerly parcell whereof abutteth vpon the red ſea, to wit, the countrie which lieth without the gulfe of Arabia) is not to be called any member or portion of Africa; and that for many reaſons, which are to be found in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſet downe more at large: The ſaid countrie is called by the Latines *Aethiopia*. From thence come certaine religious Friers ſeared or branded on the face with an hot iron, who are to be ſeene almoſt ouer all Europe, and ſpecially at Rome. Theſe people haue an Emperour, which they call *Prete Gianni*, the greater part of that land being inhabited with Chriſtians. Howbeit, there is alſo a certaine Mahumetan among them, which is ſaid to poſſeſſe a great dominion.

* *Aethiopia.*

A diuiſion of the fower forenamed partes of Africa.

BArbarie is diſtinguiſhed into fower kingdomes: the firſt whereof is the kingdome of Maroco; which is likewiſe diuided into ſeuen regions or prouinces; namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, the territorie of Maroco, Duccala, Hazcora, & Tedles. The ſecond kingdome of Barbarie called Fez, comprehendeth in like ſort ſeuen regions within the bounds thereof; to wit, Temeſne, the territorie of Fez, Azgara, * Elabat, Errif, Garet, and * Elcauz. The third kingdome is called * Telenſin, and hath three regions vnder it, namely, the mountaines, Tenez, and Algezer. The fourth kingdome of Barbarie is named Tunis; vnder which are comprized fower regions, that is to ſay, Bugia, Conſtantina, Tripolis in Barbarie, and Ezzaba, which is a good part of Numidia. Bugia hath alwaies beene turmoiled with continuall warres; becauſe ſometimes it was ſubiect vnto the king of Tunis, and ſometimes againe vnto the king of Tremizen. Certaine it is that euen vntill theſe our daies, this Bugia was a kingdome of it ſelfe, and ſo continued, till the principall citie of that region was at the

* *Habat.*
* *Chauz.*
* *Tremizen.*

commandement of *Ferdinando* the king of Caſtile, taken by one *Peter* of Nauarre.

The diuiſion of Numidia.

THis is the baſeſt part of all Africa; neither will our Coſmographers vouchſafe it the name of a kingdome, by reaſon that the inhabitants thereof are ſo far diſtant aſunder; which you may eaſily coniecture by that which followeth. Teſſet a citie of Numidia containeth about fower hundred families, and is in regard of the Libyan deſert, ſeuered from all places of habitation almoſt three hundred miles; wherefore this ſecond part is thought by diuers not to be woorthie the name of a kingdome. Howbeit we will make ſome relation of the habitable partes of Numidia; ſome whereof may not vnfitly bee compared with other regions of Africa, as for example, that of Segelmeſs, which territorie of Numidia lieth ouer againſt Barbarie; likewiſe Zeb, which is ſituate againſt Bugia, and the ſigniorie of Biledulgerid, which extendeth vnto the kingdome of Tunis. Reſeruing therefore many particulars for the ſecond part of this hiſtorie, we wil make our entrie and beginning at thoſe places, which lie vpon the weſt of Numidia: the names whereof be theſe; Teſſet, Guaden, Ifren, Hacca, Dare, Tebelbelt, Todga, Fercale, Segelmeſs, Benigumi, Fighig, Tegua, Tſabit, Tegorarin, Meſab, Tegort, and Guarghela. The region of Zeb containeth fiue townes, to wit, Peſcara, Elborgh, Neſta, Taolac, and Deuſin: ſo many cities likewiſe hath the territorie of Biledulgerid; namely, Teozar, Capheſa, Nefreoa, Elchamid, and Chalbis: and from hence eaſtward are found the iſles of Gerbe, Garion, Meſſellata, Meſtrata, Teoirraga, Gademis, Fizza, Augela, Birdeoa, and Eloacat. Theſe are the names of the moſt famous places of all Numidia, being bounded (as is ſaid before) weſtward vpon the Ocean ſea, and eaſtward with the riuer of Nilus.

A deſcription of the Libyan deſerts, which lie betweene Numidia and the land of Negros.

THeſe deſerts haue not as yet any certaine name amongſt vs, albeit they be diuided into fiue partes, and receiue all their denomination from the inhabitants which dwell vpon them, that is to ſay, from the Numidians, who are in like ſort themſelues diuided into fiue partes alſo, to wit, the people or tribes called Zanega, Ganziga, Terga, Leuta, and Berdeoa. There bee likewiſe certaine places, which take ſome proper and particular name from the goodnes and badnes of the ſoile; as namely the deſert of Azaohad, ſo called for the drought and vnfruitfulnes of that place: likewiſe Hair, albeit a deſert, yet ſo called for the goodnes and temperature of the aire.

A diuision of the land of Negros into seuerall kingdomes.

MOreouer, the land of Negros is diuided into many kingdomes: whereof albeit a great part be vnknowen vnto vs, and remooued farre out of our trade; we will notwithstanding make relation of those places, where we our selues haue aboad, and which by long experience are growne very familiar vnto vs: as likewise of some other places, from whence merchants vsed to trauell vnto the same cities wherein my selfe was then resident; from whom I learned right well the state of their countries. I * my selfe saw fifteene kingdoms of the Negros: howbeit there are many more, which although I saw not with mine owne eies, yet are they by the Negros sufficiently knowen and frequented. Their names therefore (beginning from the west, and so proceeding Eastward and Southward) are these following: Gualata, Ghinea, Melli, Tombuto, Gago, Guber, Agadez, Cano, Casena, Zegzeg, Zanfara, Guangara, Burno, Gaoga, Nube. These fifteene kingdomes are for the most part situate vpon the riuer Niger, through the which merchants vsually trauell from Gualata to the citie of * Alcair in Egypt. The iourney indeede is very long, but yet secure and voide of danger. All the said kingdomes adioine one vpon another; ten whereof are separated either by the riuer Niger, or by some sandie desert: and in times past each one of the fifteene had a seueral king, but now * at this present, they are all in a manner subiect vnto three kings onely: namely, to the king of Tombuto who is Lord of the greatest part; to the king of Borno, who gouerneth the least part, and the residue is in subiection vnto the king of Gaoga: howbeit he that possesseth the kingdome of Ducala hath a very small traine attending vpon him. Likewise these kingdomes haue many other kingdomes bordering vpon the South frontiers of them: to wit, Bito, Temiam, Dauma, Medra, and Gorhan; the gouernors and inhabitants whereof are most rich and industrious people, great louers of iustice and equitie, albeit some lead a brutish kinde of life.

* *John Leo trauelled ouer 15. kingdomes of the land of Negros.*

* *Cairo.*

* *About the yeere 1526.*

Of the habitations of Africa, and of the signification of this word Barbar.

OVr Cosmographers and historiographers affirme, that in times past Africa was altogether disinhabited, except that part which is now called the land of Negros: and most certaine it is, that Barbarie and Numidia were for many ages destitute of inhabitants. The tawnie people of the said region were called by the name of *Barbar*, being deriued of the verbe *Barbara*, which in their toong signifieth to murmur: because the African

toong ſoundeth in the eares of the Arabians, no otherwiſe then the voice of beaſts, which vtter their ſounds without any accents. Others will haue *Barbar* to be one word twiſe repeated, forſomuch as *Bar* in the Arabian toong ſignifieth a deſert. For (ſay they) when king *Iphricus* being by the Aſſyrians or Aethiopians driuen out of his owne kingdome, trauelled towards Aegypt, and ſeeing himſelfe ſo oppreſſed with his enimies, that he knew not what ſhould become of him and his followers, he asked his people how or which way it was poſſible to eſcape, who anſwered him *Bar-Bar*, that is, to the deſert, to the deſert: giuing him to vnderſtand by this ſpeech, that he could haue no ſafer refuge, then to croſſe ouer Nilus, and to flee vnto the deſert of Africa. And this reaſon ſeemeth to agree with them, which affirme the Africans to be deſcended from the people of Arabia fœlix.

The originall of the people of Africa.

ABout the originall of the Africans, our hiſtoriographers doe much diſagree. For ſome will haue them to be deriued from the inhabitants of Palæſtina; becauſe (as they ſay) being expelled out of their owne countrie by the Aſſyrians, they came at length into Africa, & ſeeing the fruitfulnes of the ſoile, choſe it to be their place of habitation. Others are of opinion, that they tooke their originall from the Sabeans a people of Arabia fœlix, and that, before ſuch time as they were put to flight by the Aſſyrians or Aethiopians, as hath beene aforeſaid. Some others report, that the Africans deſcended from certaine people of * Aſia, who being chaſed thence by reaſon of warres which were waged againſt them, fled into Greece, which at the ſame time had no inhabitants at all. Howbeit the enimie ſtill purſuing them, they were forced to croſſe the ſea of Morea, and being arriued in Africa, to ſettle themſelues there: but their enimies abroad ſtill in Greece. All which opinions and reportes are to bee vnderſtood onely of the originall of the tawnie people, that is to ſay, of the Numidians and Barbarians. For all the Negros or blacke Moores take their deſcent from *Chus*, the ſonne of *Cham*, who was the ſonne of *Noë*. But whatſoeuer difference there be betweene the Negros and the tawnie Moores, certaine it is that they had all one beginning. For the Negros are deſcended of the Philiſtims, and the Philiſtims of *Meſraim* the * ſonne of *Chus*: but the tawnie Moores fetch their petigree from the Sabeans, and it is euident that *Saba* was begotten of * *Rama*, which was the eldeſt ſonne of *Chus*. Diuers other opinions there be as touching this matter: which becauſe they ſeeme not ſo neceſſarie, wee haue purpoſely omitted.

* *Forte Aſia minor.*

* *Geneſis the 10. v. the 6. Mezraim is accounted the brother of Chus.*
* *Gen. 10. 7.*

A diuiſion of the tawnie Moores into ſundrie tribes or nations.

THE tawnie Moores are diuided into fiue ſeuerall people or tribes: to wit, the tribes called Zanhagi, Muſmudi, Zeneti, Hacari, and Gumeri. The tribe of Muſmudi inhabite the weſterne part of mount Atlas, from the prouince of Hea to the riuer of * Seruan. Likewiſe they dwell vpon the ſouth part of the ſaid mountaine, and vpon all the inward plaines of that region. Theſe Muſmudæ haue fower prouinces vnder them: namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the territorie of Marocco. The tribe of Gumeri poſſeſſe certaine mountaines of Barbarie, dwelling on the ſides of thoſe mountaines which lie ouer againſt the Mediterran ſea: as likewiſe they are Lords of all the riuer called in their language *Rif*. This riuer hath his fountaine neere vnto the ſtreites of Gibraltar, and thence runneth eaſtwards to the kingdome of Tremizen, called by the Latines *Cæſaria*.

* *Guadalhabit.*

Tremizen called by the ancient Coſmographers Cæſaria or Mauritania Cæſarienſis.

Theſe two tribes or people haue ſeuerall habitations by themſelues: the other three are diſperſed confuſiuely ouer all Africa: howbeit they are, like ſtrangers, diſcerned one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre among themſelues, eſpecially they of Numidia. Theſe (I ſay) are thoſe very people (as ſome report) who had no other places then tents and wide fields to repoſe themſelues in: and it is reported, that in times paſt they had great conflicts together, and that the vanquiſhed were ſent to inhabit townes and cities, but the conquerors held the champions and fieldes vnto themſelues, and there ſetled their aboad. Neither is it altogether vnlikely; becauſe the inhabitants of cities haue all one and the ſame language with the countrie people. For the Zeneti, whether they dwell in the citie or in the countrie, ſpeake all one kinde of language: which is likewiſe to be vnderſtood of the reſt. The tribes of Zeneti, Haoari, and Sanhagi; inhabit the countrie of Temeſne: ſometimes they liue peaceably, and ſometimes againe, calling to minde their ancient quarrels, they breake foorth into cruell warres and manſlaughters. Some of theſe people beare rule ouer all Africa, as namely the Zeneti, who in times paſt vanquiſhed the familie called Idris; from which ſome affirme the true and naturall Dukes of Fez, and the founders of the ſame citie to deriue their petigree: their progenie likewiſe was called Mecnaſa. There came afterward out of Numidia, another familie of the Zeneti called Magraoa: this Magraoa chaſed the familie of Mecnaſa with all their Dukes and chieftaines out of their dominions. Not long after, the ſaid tribe of Magraoa was expelled in like ſort by certaine others of the race of the Sanhagij, called by the name of Luntuna, which

came

came also out of the desert of Numidia.

By this familie was the countrie of Temesna in processe of time vtterly spoiled and wasted, and all the inhabitants thereof slaine, except those which were of their owne tribe and kindred of Luntuna, vnto whom was allotted the region of Ducala to inhabit, and by them was built the citie commonly called Maroco. It fell out afterwards by the inconstancie of fortune, that one *Elmahdi* the principall Mahumetan preacher among them, conspiring with the Hargij (these Hargij were of the familie of Musmuda) expelled the whole race of the Luntuna, and vsurped that kingdome vnto himselfe. After this mans decease, succeeded in his place one of his disciples called *Habdul Mumen a Baniguerıaghel* of the kindred of the Sanhagij. The kingdome remained vnto this family about an 120. yeeres, whereunto all Africa in a manner was subiect: At length being deposed by the Banimarini, a generation of the Zeneti, the said familie was put to flight: which Banimarini are said to haue raigned afterward for the space of 170. yeeres. The Banimarini which descended of the Sanhagij and of Magroa, waged continuall warre against *Banizeiyan* the king of Telensin: likewise the progenie of Hafasa, and of Musmuda are at variance and dissension with the king of Tunis. So that you see what stirres and tumults haue at all times beene occasioned in those regions by the foresaid fiue families.

Who were the founders of Maroco.

Certaine it is, that neither the Gumeri, nor the Haoari haue at this present any iurisdiction at all; albeit heretofore (as we reade in their chronicles) they had some certaine dominion, before such time as they were infected with the Mahumetan lawe. Out of all which it is euident, that in times past all the foresaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields: euery one of which fauoured their owne faction, and exercised all labours necessarie for mans life, as common among them. The gouernours of the countrie attended their droues and flockes; and the citizens applied themselues vnto some manuall art, or to husbandrie. The said people are diuided into fiue hundred seuerall families, as appeereth by the genealogies of the Africans, author whereof is one *Ibnu Rachu*, whom I haue oftentimes read and perused. Some writers are of opinion, that the king of Tombuto, the king of Melli, and the king of Agadez fetch their originall from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the desert.

The agreement or varietie of the African language.

THe foresaid fiue families or people, being diuided into hundreds of progenies, and hauing innumerable habitations, doe notwithstanding vse all one kinde of language, called by them *Aquel Amarig*, that is, the noble toong: the Arabians which inhabite Africa, call it a barbarous toong; and this is the

Aquel Amarig

true

true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether different from other languages, although it hath diuers words common with the Arabian toong; whereupon ſome would inferre, that the Africans(as is aboue ſaid) came by lineall deſcent from the Sabeans,a people of Arabia fœlix. Others ſay, that theſe words were euen then inuented when the Arabians came firſt into Africa, and began to take poſſeſſion thereof: but theſe authors were ſo rude and groſſe-witted, that they left no writings behinde them,which might be alleaged either for,or againſt. Moreouer they haue among them another diuerſitie, not onely of pronuntiation, but of ſignificant words alſo: as namely, they which dwell neere vnto the Arabians, and exerciſe much traffique with them,doe for the greater part vſe their language. Yea,all the Gumeri in a manner, and moſt of the Haoari ſpeake Arabian,though corruptly; which(I ſuppoſe) came firſt hereupon to paſſe, for that the ſaid people haue had long acquaintance and conuerſation with the Arabians. The Negros haue diuers languages among themſelues, among which they call one *Sungai*, and the ſame is current in many regions; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto, Ghinea, Melli, and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros,which they cal *Guber*;& this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano,of Caſena,of Perzegreg,& of Guangra. Likewiſe the kingdom of Borno hath a peculiar kinde of ſpeech,altogether like vnto that,which is vſed in Gaoga. And the kingdome of Nube hath a language of great affinitie with the Chaldean, Arabian,& Egyptian toongs. But all the ſea-townes of Africa frõ the Mediterran ſea to the mountains of Atlas,ſpeak broken Arabian. Except the kingdome and towne of Maroco,& the inland Numidians bordering vpon Maroco,Fez, & Tremizen; all which, vſe the Barbarian toong. Howbeit they which dwel ouer againſt Tunis & Tripoli,ſpeake indeede the Arabian language; albeit moſt corruptly.

Of the Arabians inhabiting the citie of Africa.

OF that armie which was ſent by *Califa* * *Otmen* the third, in the fower hundred yeere of the Hegeira, there came into Africa fowerſcore thouſand gentlemen and others, who hauing ſubdued ſundrie prouinces, at length arriued in Africa: and there the Generall of the whole armie called * *Hucha Hibnu Nafich* remained. This man built that great citie which is called of vs * Alcair. For he ſtood in feare of the people of Tunis, leaſt they ſhould betray him, miſdoubting alſo that they would procure aide out of Sicily, and ſo giue him the encounter. Wherefore with all his treaſure which he had got,he trauelled to the deſert & firme ground,diſtant from * Carthage about one hundred and twentie miles, and there is he ſaid to haue built the citie of * Alcair. The remnant of his ſoldiers he commanded to keepe thoſe places, which were moſt ſecure and fit for their defence, and

* *Hutmen.*
* *Hucba.*
* *Cairaoan.*
* *Tunis.*
* *Cairaoan.*

and willed them to build where no rocke nor fortification was. Which being done, the Arabians began to inhabit Africa, and to disperse themselues among the Africans, who, because they had beene for certaine yeeres subiect vnto the Romans or Italians, vsed to speake their language: and hence it is, that the naturall and mother-toong of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African toong, grewe by little and little to be corrupted: and so they report that these two nations at length conioined themselues in one. Howbeit the Arabians vsually doe blaze their petigree in daily and triuiall songs; which custome as yet is common both to *vs, and to the people of Barbarie also. For no man there is, be he neuer so base, which will not to his owne name, adde the name of his nation; as for example, Arabian, Barbarian, or such like.

*The Moores of Granada.

Of the Arabians which dwell in tents.

THE Mahumetan priestes alwaies forbad the Arabians to passe ouer Nilus with their armies and tents. Howbeit in the fower hundred yeere of the Hegeira we reade, that they were permitted so to doe by a certaine factious and schismaticall * Calisa: because one of his nobles had rebelled against him, vsurping the citie of Cairaoan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which rebell, that kingdome remained for some yeeres vnto his posteritie and familie; whose iurisdiction (as the African chronicles report) grew so large and strong in the time of *Elcain* (the Mahumetan Calisa and patriark of Arabia) that he sent vnto them one *Gehoar*, whom of a slaue he had made his counsellour, with an huge armie. This *Gehoar* conducting his armie westward, recouered all Numidia and Barbarie. Insomuch that he pierced vnto the region of Sus, and there claimed most ample tribute: all which being done, he returned backe vnto his Calipha, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him whatsoeuer he had gained from the enemie. The Calipha seeing his prosperous successe, began to aspire vnto greater exploites. And *Gehoar* most firmely promised, that as he had recouered that westerne dominion vnto his Lord, so would he likewise by force of warre most certainly restore vnto him the countries of the East, to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreouer that with the greatest hazard of his life, he would be auenged of all the iniuries offered by the familie of *Labbus* vnto his Lords predecessors, and would reuest him in the royall seate of his most famous grandfathers, great-grandfathers, and progenitors. The Calipha liking well his audacious promise, caused an armie of fower-score thousand soldiers, with an infinite summe of money and other things necessarie for the warres, to be deliuered vnto him. And so this valiant and stout chieftaine being prouided for warfare, conducted his troupes through the deserts of Aegypt & Barbarie; & hauing first put to flight the vice-Calisa of Aegypt (who fled vnto *Eluir* the Calisa

* *A Mahumetan patriarke.*

Gehoar a slaue by condition, conquered all Barbarie, Numidia, Egypt, and Syria.

Califa of Bagdet) in ſhort time he ſubdued very eaſily all the prouinces of Aegypt and Syria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himſelfe ſecure; fearing leaſt the Califa of Bagdet would aſſaile him with an armie out of Aſia, and leaſt the garriſons which he had left to keepe Barbarie, ſhould be conſtrained to forſake thoſe conquered prouinces. Wherefore hee built a citie, and cauſed it to be walled round about. In which citie he left one of his moſt truſtie captaines, with a great part of the armie: and this citie he called by the name of Alchair, which afterward by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is ſaide daily ſo to haue increaſed, that no citie of the world for buildings and inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto. Now when *Gehoar* perceiued that the Calipha of Bagdet made no preparation for warre, he foorthwith wrote vnto his Lord, that all the conquered cities yeelded due honour vnto him, and that all things were in quiet and tranquillitie: and therefore, that himſelfe (if he thought good) ſhould come ouer into Aegypt, and thereby with his onely preſence ſhould preuaile more to recouer the remnant of his dominions, then with neuer ſo huge an armie: for he was in good hope that the Calipha of Bagdet hearing of his expedition, woulde leaue his kingdome and prelacie, and would betake himſelfe to flight. This notable and ioyfull meſſage no ſooner came to the eares of Califa *Elcain*; but he being by his good fortune much more encouraged then before, and not forethinking himſelfe what miſchiefe might enſue, leuied a great armie, appointing for vice-roy of all Barbarie one of the familie of Sanagia aforeſaid, finding him afterward not to be his truſtie friend. Moreouer Califa *Elcain* arriuing at Alchair, and being moſt honorably entertained by his ſeruant *Gehoar*, began to thinke vpon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge armie, reſolued to wage battell againſt the Califa of Bagdet. In the meane ſeaſon he that was appointed vice-roy of Barbarie compacting with the Calipha of Bagdet, yeelded himſelfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Califa moſt kindly accepted, and ordained him king ouer all Africa. But Califa *Elcain* hearing this newes at Alchair was woonderfully afflicted in minde; partly becauſe he ſaw himſelfe repelled from his owne kingdome, and partly for that he had ſpent all his money which hee brought with him: inſomuch that he knew not what in the world to doe, determining ſome ſeuere puniſhment for *Gehoar*, by whoſe counſell he left his kingdome of Arabia. Howbeit there was one of his ſecret counſellers a very learned and wittie man, who ſeeing his Lord ſo ſad and penſiue, and being deſirous by ſome good aduiſe to preuent the danger imminent, comforted him in this wiſe: Your highnes knoweth (moſt inuincible Califa) that fortune is moſt variable, and that the courage of your ſoldiers is no whit daunted by reaſon of theſe miſhaps. For mine owne part, as I haue heretofore ſhewed my ſelfe to be your truſtie ſeruant, ſo will I at this time giue you ſuch profitable counſell, whereby you may within ſhort ſpace recouer all thoſe dominions which haue beene

Gehoar the firſt founder of Cairo.

beene so treacherously taken from you, and may without al peraduenture most easily attaine vnto your owne harts desire. And this you may doe without maintaining any armie at all; yea, I assure you, if you please to take mine aduise, that I will foorthwith procure you such an armie, as shall giue you great store of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good seruice also. The Califa being somewhat emboldened at these speeches, asked his counsellour how this might possibly be brought to effect: My Lord (saith his counseller) certaine it is, that the Arabians are now growen so populous and to so great a number, that all Arabia cannot containe them, scarcely wil the yeerely increase of the ground suffice to feede their droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but euen of victuals and sustenance. Wherefore if you had heeretofore giuen them leaue, they would long ere this haue inuaded Africa. And if you will now licence them so to doe, doubt you not, but that you shall receiue of them an huge masse of golde. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the Califa his minde: for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither bee profitable for himselfe, nor for his enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his kingdome was altogether endangered, hee thought it better to accept those summes of money which his counsellour promised, and so to be reuenged of his enemie, then to lose both his kingdome and gold all at once. Wherefore hee permitted all Arabians, which would pay him ducats apeece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would shewe themselues most deadly enemies vnto the treacherous king of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vnto them, it is reported that ten tribes or families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia deserta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine inhabitants of Arabia fœlix ioyned themselues, insomuch that there were found amongst them about fiftie thousand persons able to beare armes: their women, children, and cattell were almost innumerable: the storie whereof *Ibnu Rachu*, the most diligent chronicler of African affaires (whom we haue before mentioned) setteth downe at large. These Arabians hauing trauersed the desert betweene Aegypt and Barbarie, first laid siege vnto Tripolis a citie of Barbarie, which being ouercome, they slew a great part of the citizens, the residue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the towne of Capes, which was by them taken and vanquished. At length they besieged Cairaoan also; howbeit the citizens being sufficiently prouided of victuals, are said to haue indured the siege for eight monethes: which being expired, they were constrained to yeeld: at what time there was nothing in Cairaoan but wofull slaughters, hideous outcries, and present death. This land the Arabians diuided among themselues, and began to people and inhabite the same; requiring in the meane space large tributes of the townes and prouinces subiect vnto them. And so they possessed all

Ten tribes of Arabians inuade Africa.

Ibnu Rachu a famous historiographer.

Africa,

Africa, vntill ſuch time as one *Ioſeph* the ſonne of *Ieffin* attained to the kingdom of Marocco. This *Ioſeph* was the firſt king of Marocco, who endeuored by all meanes to aduance the friends and kinred of the late deceaſed king of Africa vnto the kingdome; neither did he ceaſe vntill he had expelled all the Arabians out of Cairaoan. Howbeit the Arabians poſſeſſed the regions thereabout, giuing themſelues wholy to ſpoiles and robberies: and the friends of the ſaid deceaſed king could beare rule but in certaine places only. Afterward ſucceeded in the kingdome of Marocco one *Manſor*, who was the fourth king and prelate of that Mahumetan ſect which was called *Muachedim*. This man, albeit his grand-fathers & great grand-fathers had alwaies fauoured the poſteritie and friends of the foreſaid deceaſed African king, and had reſtored them to their ancient dignitie; deuiſed altogether how to oppoſe himſelfe againſt them, and to vſurpe all their authoritie. Wherefore making a fained league with them, we reade, that he prouoked the Arabians againſt them, and ſo very eaſily ouercame them. Afterward *Manſor* brought the greateſt part of the Arabians into the weſterne dominions of Africa; vnto the better ſort of whom he gaue the habitation of Duccala & Azgara, and vnto the baſer remnant he bequeathed the poſſeſſion of Numidia. But in proceſſe of time he commanded the Numidian ſlaues to be ſet at libertie, and ſo in deſpight of the Arabians, he cauſed them to inhabite that part of Numidia which he had allotted vnto them. But as for the Arabians of Azgara and of certaine other places in Barbarie, he brought them all vnder his ſubiection. For the Arabians out of deſerts are like fiſhes without water: they had indeede often attempted to get into the deſerts; but the mountaines of Atlas, which were then poſſeſſed by the Barbarians, hindred their paſſage. Neither had they libertie to paſſe ouer the plaines, for the reſidue of the Barbarians were there planted. Wherefore their pride being abated, they applied themſelues vnto husbandrie, hauing no where to repoſe themſelues, but onely in villages, cottages, and tents. And their miſerie was ſo much the greater, in that they were conſtrained yeerely to diſburſe vnto the king of Marocco moſt ample tribute. Thoſe which inhabited Duccala, becauſe they were an huge multitude, eaſily freed themſelues from all tribute, and impoſition. A great part of the Arabians remained ſtill at Tunis, for that *Manſor* had refuſed to carie them along with him: who, after the death of the ſaid *Manſor*, grew to be Lords of Tunis, and ſo continued, till they reſigned their gouernment vnto the people called Abu-Haf; vpon condition that they ſhould pay them halfe the reuenues thereof: and this condition hath remained firme euen vntill our daies. Howbeit, becauſe the Arabians are increaſed to ſuch innumerable ſwarmes, that the whole reuenues are not ſufficient for them, the king of Tunis moſt iuſtly alloweth ſome of them their duties, to the end they may make ſecure paſſage for merchants, which indeede they performe without moleſtation or hurt of any. But the reſidue which are depriued of their pay, betake themſelues wholy to robberies, theſts, ſlaughters, and ſuch other monſtrous outrages. For theſe, lurking alwaies 1526.

alwaies in the woods, no ſooner ſee any merchant approching, but ſuddenly they breake foorth, depriuing him of his goodes and life alſo: inſomuch that now merchants dare not paſſe that way but with a garriſon of ſafe-conduct. And ſo they paſſe ſometimes to their great inconuenience. For they are notwithſtanding conſtrained to giue vnto the foreſaid Arabians, which are in pay with the king of Tunis, great ſummes of money: and are likewiſe oftentimes ſo in danger of robbers, that they loſe both their goods & liues.

A diuiſion of the Arabians which inhabite Africa, and are called by the name of Barbarians, into diuers progenies or kinreds.

THE Arabians which inhabite Africa are diuided into three partes: one part whereof are called Cachin, the ſecond Hilell, and the third Machill. The Cachin are diuided into three nations or tribes; to wit, the tribes of Etheg, Sumait, and Sahid. Moreouer Etheg is diuided into three families; that is to ſay, the familie of Delleg, Elmuntefig, and Subair: and theſe are diſperſed into many regions. Hilel are deriued into fower generations; to wit, the people of Benihemir, of Rieh, of Sufien, and of Chuſain. The familie of Benihemir is diuided into the linages of Huroam, Hucben, Habrum and Muſſim. The tribe of Rieh are diſtributed into the kinreds called Deuvad, Suaid, Aſgeg, Elcherith, Enedri, and Garfam; which kinreds poſſeſſe many dominions. Machil haue three tribes vnder them: to wit, Maſtar, Hutmen, and Haſſan. Maſtar are diuided into Ruchen, and Selim; Hutmen into Elhaſi and Chinan; and Haſſan into Deuiheſſen, Deuimanſor, and Deuihubaidulla. Deuiheſſen is diſtinguiſhed into the kinreds called Dulein, Berbun, Vodein, Racmen and Hamram; Deuimanſor into Hemrun, Menebbe, Huſein, and Albuhuſein; and laſtly Deuihubaidulla, into Garag, Hedeg, Teleb, and Geoan. All theſe doe in a manner poſſeſſe innumerable regions; inſomuch that to reckon them vp at large, were a matter not onely difficult, but almoſt impoſſible.

Of the habitations and number of the foreſaid Arabians.

THE moſt noble and famous Arabians were they of the familie of Etheg, vnto whome *Almanſor* gaue the regions of Duccala and of Tedles to inhabit. Theſe Arabians euen till our times haue beene put to great diſtreſſe and hazard, partly by the Portugall king, and partly by the king of Fez. They haue at all oportunities, if need ſhould require, a hundred thouſand ſoldiers fit to beare armes, a great part whereof are horſemen. The Arabians called Sumait enioy that part of the Libyan deſert which lieth ouer againſt the deſert of Tripoly. Theſe make often inuaſions into Barbarie,

barie, for they haue no places allotted them therein, but they and their camels doe perpetually remaine in the deserts. They are able to leuie fowerscore thousand soldiers, the greatest part being footmen. Likewise the tribe of Sahid doe inhabite the desert of Libya: and these haue had alwaies great league and familiaritie with the king of Guargala. They haue such abundance of cattell, that they doe plentifully supply all the cities of that region with flesh, and that especially in sommer time, for all the winter they stirre not out of the deserts. Their number is increased to about a hundred and fiftie thousand, hauing not many horsemen among them. The tribe of Delleg possesse diuers habitations, howbeit * Cæsaria containeth the greatest part of them. Some also inhabit vpon the frontiers of the kingdome of Bugia; who are said to receiue a yeerely stipend from their next neighbours. But the least part of them dwell vpon the field-countrey of Acdes, vpon the borders of Mauritania, and vpon some part of mount Atlas, being subiect vnto the king of Fez. The people of Elmuntefig are seated in the prouince of Azgar, and are called by the later writers Elcaluth. These also pay certaine yeerely tribute vnto the King of Fez, beeing able to furnish about eight thousand horsemen to the warres. The kindred of Sobair doe inhabit not farre from the kingdome of Gezeir, being many of them vnder the pay of the king of Tremizen, and are said to enioy a great part of Numidia. They haue, more or lesse, three thousand most warlike horsemen. They possesse likewise great abundance of camels; for which cause they abide all winter in the deserts. The remnant of them occupieth the plaine which lieth betweene Sala and Mecnes. These haue huge droues of cattell, and exercise themselues in husbandrie, being constrained to pay some yeerely tribute vnto the king of Fez. They haue horsemen, who, as a man may say, are naturally framed to the warres, about fower thousand in number.

* Tremizen.

Of the people of Hillel, and of their habitations.

HIllel, which are also called Benihamir, dwell vpon the frontiers of the kingdome of Tremizen and Oran. These range vp and downe the desert of Tegorarin, being in pay vnder the king of Tremizen, and of great riches and power; insomuch that they haue at all times in a readines for the warres six thousand horsemen. The tribe of Hurua possesse onely the borders of Mustuganim. These are sauage people, giuing themselues wholy to spoiles and robberies, and alienating their mindes from the warres. They neuer come foorth of the deserts; for the people of Barbarie will neither allow them any places of habitation, nor yet any stipend at all: horsemen they haue to the number of two thousand. The kindred of Hucban are next neighbours vnto the region of Melian, who receiue certaine pay from the king of Tunis. They are rude and wilde people, and in very deede estranged from al humanitie: they haue (as it is reported) about fifteene hundred horsemen.

men. The tribe of Habru inhabit the region lying betweene Oran and Mustuganim: these exercise husbandrie, paying yeerely tribute vnto the king of Tremizen, and being scarce able to make one hundred horsemen.

The people called Mussim possesse those deserts of Masila which extend vnto the kingdome of Bugia. These likewise are giuen onely to theft and robberie; they take tribute both of their owne people, and of other regions adioyning vnto them. The tribe of Rieeh inhabite those deserts of Libya which border vpon Constantina. These haue most ample dominions in Numidia, being now diuided into sixe parts. This right famous and warlike nation receiueth stipende from the king of Tunis, hauing fiue thousande horsemen at command. The people of Suaid enioy that desert, which is extended vnto the signiorie of Tenez. These haue very large possessions, receiuing stipend from the king of Tremizen, being men of notable dexteritie, as well in the warres as in all other conuersation of life. The kindred of Azgeg dwell not all together in one place: for part of them inhabite the region of Garet among the people called Hemram: and the residue possesse that part of Duccala which lieth neere vnto Azaphi. The tribe of Elcherit dwell vpon that portion of Helin which is situate in the plaine of Sahidim, hauing the people of Heah tributarie vnto them, and being a very vnciuill and barbarous people. The people called Enedri are seated in the plaine of Heah: but the whole region of Heah maintaineth almost fower thousand horsemen; which notwithstanding are vnfit for the warres. The people of Garfa haue sundrie mansions; neither haue they any king or gouernour. They are dispersed among other generations, and especially among the kindreds of Manebbi and Hemram. These conuay dates from Segelmessa to the kingdome of Fez, and carrie backe againe from thence such things as are necessarie for Segelmes.

Of the tribe of Machil.

THE people called Ruche, who are thought to be descended from Mastar, doe possesse that desert, which lieth next vnto Dedes and Farcala. They haue very small dominions, for which cause they are accounted no whit rich; howbeit they are most valiant soldiers, and exceeding swift of foote; insomuch that they esteeme it a great disgrace, if one of their footemen be vanquished by two horsemen. And you shall finde scarce any one man among them, which will not outgoe a very swift horse; be the iourney neuer so long. They haue about fiue hundred horsemen; but most warlike footemen, to the number of eight thousand. Selim inhabite vpon the riuer of Dara; from whence they range vp and downe the deserts. They are endowed with great riches, carrying euery yeere merchandize vnto the kingdome of Tombuto, and are thought to be in high fauour with the king himselfe. A large iurisdiction they haue in Darha and great plentie of camels: and

Traffique to Tombuto.

for

for all oportunities of warre they haue euer in a readines three thouſande horſemen. The tribe of Elhaſis dwelleth vpon the ſea-coaſt neere vnto Meſſa. They doe arme about fiue hundred horſemen, and are a nation altogether rude and vnacquainted in the warres. Some part of them inhabiteth Azgara. Thoſe which dwell about Meſſa are free from the yoke of ſuperioritie, but the others which remaine in Azgar are ſubiect to the king of Fez. The kindred of Chinan are diſperſed among them which before were called Elcaluth, and theſe alſo are ſubiect vnto the king of Fez. Very warlike people they are; and are able to ſet foorth two thouſand horſemen. The people of Deuiheſſen are diuided into the kindreds of Duleim, Burbun, Vode, Deuimanſor, and Deuihubaidulla. Duleim are conuerſant in the deſerts of Libya with the African people called Zanhaga. They haue neither dominion nor yet any ſtipend; wherefore they are very poore and giuen to robberie: they trauell vnto Dara, and exchange cattell for dates with the inhabitants there. All brauerie & comelines of apparell they vtterly neglect; and their number of fighting menis ten thouſand, fower thouſand being horſemen and the reſidue footmen. The people called Burbun poſſeſſe, that part of the Libyan deſert, which adioyneth vnto Sus. They are a huge multitude, neither haue they any riches beſide camels. Vnto them is ſubiect the citie of Teſſet, which ſcarce ſufficeth them for the maintenance of their horſes, being but a few. The people of Vode enioyeth that deſert, which is ſituate betweene Guaden and Gualata. They beare rule ouer the Guadenites, and of the Duke of Gualata they receiue yeerely tribute, and their number is growen almoſt infinite. For by report they are of abilitie to bring into the field almoſt threeſcore thouſand moſt skilful ſoldiers; notwithſtanding they haue great want of horſes. The tribe of Racmen occupie that deſert which is next vnto Hacha. They haue very large poſſeſſions, and doe in the ſpring-time vſually trauell vnto Teſſet: for then alwaies they haue ſomewhat to doe with the inhabitants there. Their people fit for armes are to the number of twelue thouſand; albeit they haue very few horſemen. The nation of Hamrum inhabit the deſerts of Tagauoſt, exacting ſome tribute of the inhabitants there, and with daily incurſions likewiſe moleſting the people of Nun. Their number of ſoldiers is almoſt eight thouſand.

The people deſcended of Deuimanſor.

THE generation of Dehemrum, which are ſaide to deriue their petigree from Deuimanſor, inhabite the deſert ouer againſt Segellmeſs, who continually wander by the Libyan deſerts as farre as Ighid. They haue tributarie vnto them the people of Segelmeſſe, of Todgatan, of Tebelbelt, and of Dara. Their ſoile yeeldeth ſuch abundance of dates, that the yeerely increaſe thereof is ſufficient to maintaine them, although they had nothing elſe to liue on. They are of great fame in other nations, being able to furniſh for the warres about three thou-

ſand horſemen. There dwell likewiſe among theſe certaine other Arabians of more baſe condition, called in their language *Garfa Eſgeh*; which notwithſtanding haue great abundance of horſes and of all other cattell. A certaine part alſo of the people Hemrun obtaineth many and large poſſeſſions among the Numidians, from whence they haue a notable yeerely reuenue brought them in: this part of Hemrun maketh often excurſions towards the deſerts of Fighig. In ſummer they diſperſe themſelues all ouer the prouince of Garet, poſſeſſing the eaſt part of Mauritania. They are noble and honeſt perſons, and endued with all kinde of humanitie and ciuilitie; inſomuch that all the kings of Fez in a manner do vſually chuſe them wiues out of the ſame tribe; needes therefore muſt there be great friendſhip and familiaritie among them. The people of Menebbe doe almoſt inhabite the very ſame deſert, hauing two prouinces of Numidia vnder them; to wit, Matgara, and Retebbe. Theſe alſo are a moſt valiant nation, being in pay vnder the prouince of Segelmeſs, and being able to make about two thouſand horſemen. The kindred of Huſein, which are thought to be deſcended of Deuimanſor, are ſeated vpon the mountaines of Atlas. They haue in the ſaid mountaines a large iuriſdiction, namely diuers caſtles euery where, and many moſt rich and flouriſhing cities, all which, they thinke, were giuen them in olde time by the vice-royes of the Marini: for ſo ſoone as they had woon that kingdome, the kindred of Huſein affoorded them great aide and ſeruice. Their dominion is now ſubiect vnto the kings of Fez and of Segelmeſs. They haue a captaine, which for the moſt part reſideth at the citie commonly called Garſeluin. Likewiſe they are alwaies, in a manner, trauerſing of that deſert which in their language is called *Eddara*. They are taken to be a moſt rich and honeſt people, being of abilitie to furniſh for the warres about ſixe thouſande horſemen. Among theſe you ſhall oftentimes finde many Arabians of another ſort, whom they vſe onely to be their ſeruants. The tribe of Abulhuſein doe inhabite part of the foreſaid deſert of Eddara, howbeit a very ſmal part: the greateſt number of whom are brought vnto ſuch extreme miſerie, that they haue not in thoſe their wilde tents ſufficient ſuſtenance to liue vpon. True it is, that they haue built them certaine habitations vpon the Libyan deſerts; but yet they are cruelly pinched with famine and with extreme penurie of all things: and (that there might be no end of their miſerie) they are conſtrained to pay yeerely tribute vnto their kindred and parents.

The ofspring of Deuihubaidulla.

ONE generation of the people of Deuihubaidulla are thoſe which are named Gharrag: theſe enioy the deſerts of Benigomi and Fighig, hauing very large poſſeſſions in Numidia. They are ſtipendaries vnto the king of Tremizen; who diligently endeuoreth to bring them to peace and tranquillitie of life; for they

are

are wholy giuen to theft and robberie. In sommer time they vsually repaire vnto Tremizen, where they are thought for that season of the yeere to settle their aboad: their horsemen are to the number of fower thousand, all which are most noble warriours. The kindred of Hedeg possesse a certaine desert neere vnto Tremizen, called in their owne language Hangad. These haue no stipend from any prince, nor yet any iurisdiction at all, rapine and stealth is onely delightfull vnto them, they prouide onely for their familie and themselues, and are able to set foorth about fiue hundred horsemen. The tribe of Theleb inhabite the plaine of * Algezer: these haue often vagaries ouer the deserts vnto the prouince of Tedgear. Vnto them were subiect in times past the most famous cities of Algezer and Tedelles: howbeit in these our daies they were recouered againe from them by *Barbarossa* the Turke; which losse could not but greatly grieue and molest their king. It is reported moreouer, that at the same time, the principal of the said people of Theleb were cut off. For strength and cunning in chiualrie they were inferiour to no other nation; their horsemen were about three thousand. The tribe of Gehoan inhabite not all in one place: for part of them you may finde among the people of Guarag, and the residue amongst the people of Hedeg, and they are vnto them no otherwise then their seruants, which condition they notwithstanding most patiently and willingly submit themselues vnto. And here one thing is to be noted by the way; to wit, that the two forenamed people called * Schachin and Hilel are originally Arabians of Arabia deserta, and thinke themselues to be descended from *Ismael* the sonne of *Abraham*. And those which wee called Machil, came first forth of Arabia fœlix, and deriue their petigree from *Saba*. Before whom the Mahumetans preferre the former, which of *Ismael* are called Ismaelites. And because there hath alwaies beene great controuerfie among them, which part should be of greater nobilitie, they haue written on both sides many dialogues and epigrams, whereby each man is woont to blaze the renowme, the vertuous manners, and laudable customes of his owne nation. The ancient Arabians, which were before the times of the Ismaelites, were called by the African historiographers Arabi-Araba, as if a man should say, Arabians of Arabia. But those which came of *Ismael*, they call Arabi Mus-Araba, as if they should say, Arabians ingraffed into the land of Arabia, or Arabians accidentally, because they were not originally bred & borne in Arabia. And thē which afterward came into Africa, they name in their language Mustehgeme, that is, barbarous Arabians; and that because they ioyned themselues vnto strangers, insomuch that not only their speech, but their manners also are most corrupt and barbarous. These are (friendly reader) the particulars, which for these ten yeeres my memorie could reserue, as touching the originals and diuersities of the Africans and Arabians; in all which time I remember not, that euer I read or saw any historie of that nation. He that will know more, let him haue recourse vnto *Hibnu Rachu* the historiographer beforenamed.

* *Algez.*

* *The Arabians called Cachin and Hilel descended from Ismael the base sonne of Abraham.*

The Arabians called Machil descended of Saba.

The

The manners and customes of the African people, which inhabit the deserts of Libya.

The people of Numidia.

THose fiue kindes of people before rehearsed, to wit, the people of Zenega, of Gansiga, of Terga, of Leuta, and of Bardeoa, are called of the Latins *Numidæ:* and they liue all after one manner, that is to say, without all lawe and ciuilitie. Their garment is a narrow and base peece of cloth, wherewith scarce halfe their bodie is couered. Some of them wrap their heads in a kinde of blacke cloth, as it were with a scarfe, such as the Turks vse, which is commonly called a Turbant. Such as will be discerned from the common sort, for gentlemen, weare a iacket made of blew cotton with wide sleeues. And cotton-cloth is brought vnto them by certaine merchants from the land of Negros. They haue no beastes fit to ride vpon except their camels; vnto whom nature, betweene the bunch standing vpon the hinder part of their backes and their neckes, hath allotted a place, which may fitly serue to ride vpon, in stead of a saddle. Their manner of riding is most ridiculous. For sometimes they lay their legs acrosse vpon the camels neck; and sometimes againe (hauing no knowledge nor regard of stirrops) they rest their feete vpon a rope, which is cast ouer his shoulders. In stead of spurres they vse a truncheon of a cubites length, hauing at the one end thereof a goad, wherewith they pricke onely the shoulders of their camels. Those camels which they vse to ride vpon haue a hole bored through the gristles of their nose, in the which a ring of leather is fastened, whereby as with a bit, they are more easily curbed and mastred; after which manner I haue seene buffles vsed in Italie. For beds, they lie vpon mats made of sedge and bulrushes. Their tents are couered for the most part with course chamlet, or with a harsh kinde of wooll which commonly groweth vpon the boughes of their date-trees. As for their manner of liuing, it would seeme to any man incredible what hunger and scarcitie this nation will indure. Bread they haue none at all, neither vse they any seething or rosting; their foode is camels milke onely, and they desire no other dainties. For their breakefast they drinke off a great cup of camels milke: for supper they haue certaine dried flesh stieped in butter and milke, wherof each man taking his share, eateth it out of his fist. And that this their meate may not stay long vndigested in their stomackes, they sup off the foresaid broth wherein their flesh was steeped: for which purpose they vse the palmes of their hands as a most fit instrument framed by nature to the same end. After that, each one drinks his cup of milk, & so their supper hath an ende. These Numidians, while they haue any store of milke, regard water nothing at all, which for the most part happeneth in the spring of the yeere, all which time you shall finde some among them that will neither wash their hands nor their faces. Which seemeth not altogether to be vnlikely; for (as we said before) while their milke lasteth, they frequent not those

Wooll growing vpon the Palme tree.

thoſe places where water is common: yea, and their camels, ſo long as they may feede vpon graſſe, will drinke no water at all. They ſpende their whole daies in hunting and theeuing: for all their indeuour and exerciſe is to driue away the camels of their enemies; neither will they remaine aboue three daies in one place, by reaſon that they haue not paſture any longer for the ſuſtenance of their camels. And albeit (as is aforeſaid) they haue no ciuilitie at all, nor any lawes preſcribed vnto them; yet haue they a certaine gouernour or prince placed ouer them, vnto whom they render obedience and due honour, as vnto their king. They are not onely ignorant of all good learning and liberall ſciences; but are likewiſe altogether careles and deſtitute of vertue: inſomuch that you ſhall finde ſcarce one amongſt them all which is a man of iudgement or counſell. And if any iniuried partie will goe to the lawe with his aduerſarie, he muſt ride continually fiue or ſixe daies before he can come to the ſpeech of any iudge. This nation hath all learning and good diſciplines in ſuch contempt, that they will not once vouchſafe to goe out of their deſerts for the ſtudie and attaining thereof: neither, if any learned man ſhall chance to come among them, can they loue his companie and conuerſation, in regarde of their moſt rude and deteſtable behauiour. Howbeit, if they can finde any iudge, which can frame himſelfe to liue and continue among them, to him they giue moſt large yeerely allowance. Some allow their iudge a thouſand ducates yeerely, ſome more, and ſome leſſe, according as themſelues thinke good. They that will ſeeme to be accounted of the better ſort, couer their heads (as I ſaid before) with a peece of blacke cloth, part whereof, like a vizard or maske, reacheth downe ouer their faces, couering all their countenance except their eies; and this is their daily kinde of attire. And ſo often as they put meate into their mouthes they remooue the ſaid maske, which being done, they foorthwith couer their mouths again; alleging this fond reaſon: for (ſay they) as it is vnſeemely for a man, after he hath receiued meate into his ſtomack, to vomite it out of his mouth againe and to caſt it vpon the earth; euen ſo it is an vndecent part to eate meate with a mans mouth vncouered. The women of this nation be groſſe, corpulent, and of a ſwart complexion. They are fatteſt vpon their breſt and paps, but ſlender about the girdle-ſtead. Very ciuill they are, after their manner, both in ſpeech and geſtures: ſometimes they will accept of a kiſſe; but whoſo tempteth them farther, putteth his owne life in hazard. For by reaſon of iealouſie you may ſee them daily one to be the death and deſtruction of another, and that in ſuch ſauage and brutiſh manner, that in this caſe they will ſhew no compaſſion at all. And they ſeeme to be more wiſe in this behalfe then diuers of our people, for they will by no meanes match themſelues vnto an harlot. The liberalitie of this people hath at all times beene exceeding great. And when any trauellers may paſſe through their drie and deſert territories, they will neuer repaire vnto their tents, neither will they themſelues trauell vpon the common high way. And if any carouan or multitude of merchants will paſſe thoſe deſerts, they are

bound

bound to pay certaine custome vnto the prince of the said people, namely, for euery camels load a peece of cloth woorth a ducate. Vpon a time I remember that trauelling in the companie of certaine merchants ouer the desert called by them Araoan, it was our chaunce there to meete with the prince of Zanaga; who, after he had receiued his due custome, inuited the said companie of merchants, for their recreation, to goe and abide with him in his tents fower or fiue daies. Howbeit, because his tents were too farre out of our way, and for that we should haue wandered farther then we thought good, esteeming it more conuenient for vs to hold on our direct course, we refused his gentle offer, and for his courtesie gaue him great thanks. But not being satisfied therewith, he commanded that our camels should proceede on forward, but the merchants he carried along with him, and gaue them very sumptuous entertainment at his place of aboad. Where wee were no sooner arriued, but this good prince caused camels of all kindes and ostriches, which he had hunted and taken by the way, to bee killed for his houshold prouision. Howbeit we requested him not to make such daily slaughters of his camels; affirming moreouer, that we neuer vsed to eate the flesh of a gelt camell, but when all other victuals failed vs. Whereunto hee answered, that he should deale vnciuilly, if he welcommed so woorthie and so seldome-seene guests with the killing of small cattell onely. Wherefore he wished vs to fall to such prouision as was set before vs. Here might you haue seene great plentie of rosted and sodden flesh: their roasted ostriches were brought to the table in wicker platters, being seasoned with sundrie kindes of herbes and spices. Their bread made of Mill and panicke was of a most sauorie and pleasant taste: and alwaies at the end of dinner or supper we had plentie of dates and great store of milke serued in. Yea, this bountifull and noble prince, that he might sufficiently shew how welcome we were vnto him, would together with his nobilitie alwaies beare vs companie: howbeit we euer dined and supped apart by our selues. Moreouer he caused certaine religious and most learned men to come vnto our banquet; who, all the time we remained with the said prince, vsed not to eate any bread at all, but fed onely vpon flesh and milke. Whereat we being somewhat amazed, the good prince gently told vs, that they all were borne in such places whereas no kinde of graine would grow: howbeit that himselfe, for the entertainment of strangers, had great plentie of corne laid vp in store. Wherefore he bad vs to be of good cheere, saying that he would eate onely of such things as his owne natiue soile affoorded: affirming moreouer, that bread was yet in vse among them at their feast of passeouer, and at other feasts also, whereupon they vsed to offer sacrifice. And thus we remained with him for the space of two daies; all which time, what woonderfull and magnificent cheere we had made vs, would seeme incredible to report. But the third day, being desirous to take our leaue, the prince accompanied vs to that place where we ouertooke our camels and companie sent before. And this I dare most deepely take mine oath on, that we spent the saide prince ten times more,

Camels and ostriches vsed for victuals.

more, then our cuſtome which he receiued came to. Wee thought it not amiſſe here to ſet downe this hiſtorie, to declare in ſome ſort the courteſie and liberalitie of the ſaid nation. Neither could the prince aforeſaid vnderſtand our language nor we his; but all our ſpeech to and fro was made by an interpreter. And this which we haue here recorded as touching this nation, is likewiſe to be vnderſtood of the other fower nations aboue mentioned, which are diſperſed ouer the reſidue of the Numidian deſerts.

The manners and cuſtomes of the Arabians which inhabite Africa.

THE Arabians, as they haue ſundrie manſions and places of aboad, ſo doe they liue after a diuers and ſundry maner. Thoſe which inhabite betweene Numidia and Libya leade a moſt miſerable and diſtreſſed life, differing much in this regard from thoſe Africans, whom wee affirmed to dwell in Libya. Howbeit they are farre more valiant then the ſaid Africans; and vſe commonly to exchange camels in the lande of Negros: they haue likewiſe great ſtore of horſes, which in Europe they cal horſes of Barbarie. They take woonderfull delight in hunting and purſuing of deere, of wilde aſſes, of oſtriches, and ſuch like. Neither is it here to be omitted, that the greater part of Arabians which inhabite Numidia, are very wittie and conceited in penning of verſes; wherein each man will decipher his loue, his hunting, his combates, and other his woorthie actes: and this is done for the moſt part in ryme, after the Italians manner. And albeit they are moſt liberally minded, yet dare they not by bountifull giuing make any ſhew of wealth; for they are daily oppreſſed with manifold inconueniences. They are apparelled after the Numidians faſhion, ſauing that their women differ ſomewhat from the women of Numidia. Thoſe deſerts which they doe now enioy were woont to be poſſeſſed by Africans: but the Arabians with their armie inuading that part of Africa, draue out the naturall Numidians, and reſerued the deſerts adioining vpon The land of dates, vnto themſelues: but the Numidians began to inhabite thoſe deſerts which border vpon the land of Negros. The Arabians which dwell betweene mount Atlas and the Mediterran ſea are far wealthier then theſe which we now ſpeake of, both for coſtlines of apparell, for good horſe-meate, and for the ſtatelines and beautie of their tents. Their horſes alſo are of better ſhape and more corpulent, but not ſo ſwift as the horſes of the Numidian deſert. They exerciſe husbandrie and haue great increaſe of corne. Their droues and flockes of cattell be innumerable, inſomuch that they cannot inhabite one by another for want of paſture. They are ſomewhat more vile and barbarous then thoſe which inhabite the deſerts, and yet they are not altogether deſtitute of liberalitie: part of them, which dwell in the territorie of Fez are ſubiect vnto the king of Fez. Thoſe which remaine in Marocco and Duccala haue continued this long time free from all exaction and tribute: but ſo ſoone as the king

Where the Barbarie horſes are bred.

Arabian poems and verſes.

king of Portugall began to beare rule ouer Azafi and Azamor, there began alſo among them ſtrife and ciuill warre. Wherefore being aſſailed by the king of Portugall on the one ſide, and by the king of Fez on the other, and being oppreſſed alſo with the extreme famine and ſcarcitie of that yeere, they were brought vnto ſuch miſerie, that they freely offered themſelues as ſlaues vnto the Portugals, ſubmitting themſelues to any man, that was willing to releeue their intolerable hunger: and by this meanes ſcarce one of them was left in all Duccala. Moreouer thoſe which poſſeſſe the deſerts bordering vpon the kingdomes of Tremizen and Tunis may all of them, in regard of the reſt, be called noblemen and gentlemen. For their gouernours receiuing euery yeere great reuenues from the king of Tunis, diuide the ſame afterward among their people, to the end they may auoid all diſcord: and by this meanes all diſſenſion is eſchewed, and peace is kept firme and inuiolable among them. They haue notable dexteritie and cunning, both in making of tents, and in bringing vp and keeping of horſes. In ſummer time they vſually come neere vnto Tunis, to the end that each man may prouide himſelfe of bread, armour, and other neceſſaries: all which they carrie with them into the deſerts, remaining there the whole winter. In the ſpring of the yeere they applie themſelues to hunting, inſomuch that no beaſt can eſcape their purſuit. My ſelfe, I remember, was once at their tents, to my no little danger and inconuenience; where I ſawe greater quantitie of cloth, braſſe, yron, and copper, then a man ſhall oftentimes finde in the moſt rich warehouſes of ſome cities. Howbeit no truſt is to be giuen vnto them; for if occaſion ſerue, they will play the theeues moſt ſlyly and cunningly; notwithſtanding they ſeeme to carrie ſome ſhewe of ciuilitie. They take great delight in poetrie, and will pen moſt excellent verſes, their language being very pure and elegant. If any woorthie poet be found among them, he is accepted by their gouernours with great honour and liberalitie; neither would any man eaſily beleeue what wit and decencie is in their verſes. Their women (according to the guiſe of that countrie) goe very gorgeouſly attired: they weare linnen gownes died black, with exceeding wide ſleeues, ouer which ſometimes they caſt a mantle of the ſame colour or of blew, the corners of which mantle are very artificially faſtened about their ſhoulders with a fine ſiluer claſpe. Likewiſe they haue rings hanging at their eares, which for the moſt part are made of ſiluer: they weare many rings alſo vpon their fingers. Moreouer they vſually weare about their thighes and ankles certaine ſcarfes and rings, after the faſhion of the Africans. They couer their faces with certaine maskes hauing onely two holes for their eies to peepe out at. If any man chance to meete with them, they preſently hide their faces, paſſing by him with ſilence, except it be ſome of their allies or kinſfolks; for vnto them they alwaies diſcouer their faces, neither is there any vſe of the ſaid maske ſo long as they be in preſence. Theſe Arabians when they trauell any iourney (as they oftentimes doe) they ſet their women vpon certaine ſaddles made handſomely of wicker for the ſame purpoſe, and faſtened

The Arabians offer themſelues ſlaues to any that would releeue their extreme hunger.

faſtened to their camels backes, neither be they any thing too wide, but fit onely for a woman to ſit in. When they goe to the warres each man carries his wife with him, to the end that ſhe may cheere vp her good man, and giue him encouragement. Their damſels which are vnmarried doe vſually paint their faces, breſts, armes, hands, and fingers with a kinde of counterfeit colour: which is accounted a moſt decent cuſtome among them. But this faſhion was firſt brought in by thoſe Arabians, which before we called Africans, what time they began firſt of all to inhabite that region; for before then, they neuer vſed any falſe or glozing colours. The women of Barbarie vſe not this fond kind of painting, but contenting themſelues only with their naturall hiew, they regarde not ſuch fained ornaments: howbeit ſometimes they will temper a certaine colour with hens-dung and ſafron, wherewithall they paint a little round ſpot on the bals of their cheeks, about the bredth of a French crowne. Likewiſe betweene their eie-browes they make a triangle; and paint vpon their chinnes a patch like vnto an oliue leafe. Some of them alſo doe paint their eie-browes: and this cuſtome is very highly eſteemed of by the Arabian poets and by the gentlemen of that countrie. Howbeit they will not vſe theſe fantaſticall ornaments aboue two or three daies together: all which time they will not be ſeene to any of their friends, except it be to their husbands and children: for theſe paintings ſeeme to bee great allurements vnto luſt, whereby the ſaid women thinke themſelues more trim and beautifull.

How the Arabians in the deſerts betweene Barbarie and Aegypt doe lead their liues.

THE life of theſe men is full of miſerie and calamitie: for the places where they inhabite are barren and vnpleaſant. They haue ſome ſtore of camels and other cattell: howbeit their fodder is ſo ſcarce, that they cannot well ſuſtaine them. Neither ſhall you finde ouer all the whole region any place fit to beare corne. And if in that deſert there be any villages at all, which vſe to husband and manure their ground; yet reape they ſmall commoditie thereby, except it be for plentifull increaſe of dates. Their camels and other of their cattell they exchange for dates and corne; and ſo the poore husbandmen of the foreſaide villages haue ſome ſmall recompence for their labours: notwithſtanding, how can all this ſatisfie the hunger of ſuch a multitude? For you ſhall dayly ſee in Sicilia great numbers of their ſonnes layde to pawne. Becauſe when they haue not wherewithall to pay for the corne which they there buy, they are conſtrained to leaue their ſonnes behinde them, as pledges of future payment. But the Sicilians, if their money be not paide them at the time appointed, will chalenge the Arabians ſonnes to be their ſlaues. Which day being once paſt, if any father will redeeme his childe, he muſt diſburſe thriſe or fower times ſo much as the due debt amounteth vnto: for which cauſe they are the moſt notable

The Arabians of Barca lay their ſonnes to pawne vnto the Sicilians for corne.

theeues in the whole world. If any ſtranger fall into their hands, depriuing him of all that he hath, they preſently carrie him to Sicilie, and there either ſell or exchange him for corne. And I thinke, that no merchants durſt at any time within theſe hundred yeeres arriue for traffiques ſake vpon any part of their coaſt. For when they are to paſſe by with merchandize, or about any other weightie affaires, they eſchew that region fiue hundred miles at the leaſt. Once I remember, that I my ſelfe, for my better ſecuriritie, and to auoide the danger of thoſe miſchieuous people, went in companie with certaine merchants, who in three ſhips ſayled along their coaſt. We were no ſooner eſpied of them; but forthwith they came running to the ſhore, making ſignes that they would traffique with vs to our great aduantage. Howbeit becauſe we durſt not repoſe any truſt in them, none of our companie would depart the ſhip, before they had deliuered certaine pledges vnto vs. Which being done, we bought certaine Eunuchs or gelded men, and good ſtore of butter of them. And ſo immediately weighing our ankers we betooke vs to flight, fearing leaſt we ſhould haue beene met withall by the Sicilian and Rhodian Pirates, and beene ſpoiled not onely of our goods, but of our liberties alſo. To be ſhort, the ſaide Arabians are verie rude, forlorne, beggerly, leane, and hunger-ſtarued people, hauing God (no doubt) alwaies diſpleaſed againſt them, by whoſe vengeance they dayly ſuſtaine ſuch grieuous calamities.

Of the people called Soara, namely, which poſſeſſe droues and flockes of cattell, and being Africans by birth, do notwithſtanding imitate the manners of the Arabians.

YOV ſhall finde many among the Africans which liue altogither a ſhepheards or drouers life, inhabiting vpon the beginning of mount Atlas, and being diſperſed here and there ouer the ſame mountaine. They are conſtrained alwaies to pay tribute either to the King of the ſame region where they dwell, or elſe to the Arabians, except thoſe onely which inhabite Temeſna, who are free from all forren ſuperioritie, and are of great power. They ſpeake the ſame kinde of language that other Africanes doe, except ſome fewe of them which conuerſe with the inhabitants of the citie called Vrbs (which is neere vnto Tunis) who ſpeake the Arabian toong. Moreouer there is a certaine people inhabiting that region which diuideth Numidia from Tunis. Theſe oftentimes wage warre againſt the King of Tunis himſelfe, which they put in practiſe not many yeeres ſince, when as the ſaid King his ſonne marching towards them from Conſtantina with an armie, for the demaunding of ſuch tribute as was due vnto him, fought a verie vnfortunate battell. For no ſooner were they aduertiſed of the Kings ſonne his approach, but foorthwith they went to meete him with two thouſande horſemen, and at length vanquiſhed and ſlew him at vnawares, carrying home

The ouerthrow and death of the King of Tunis his ſonne.

home with them all the furniture, bag, and baggage, which he had brought foorth. And this was done in the yeere of Mahumets Hegeira 915. From that time their fame hath beene spred abroad in all places. Yea, many of the king of Tunis his subiects reuolted from their King vnto them; insomuch that the Prince of this people is growen so puissant, that scarcely is his equall to be found in all Africa.

Of the faith and religion of the ancient Africans or Moores.

THE ancient Africans were much addicted to idolatrie, euen as certain of the Persians are at this day, some of whom worship the sunne, and others the fire, for their gods. For the saide Africans had in times past magnificent and most stately temples built and dedicated, as well to the honour of the sunne as of the fire. In these temples day and night they kept fire kindled, giuing diligent heed that it might not at any time be extinguished, euen as we read of the Romane Vestall virgines: All which you may read more fully and at large in the Persian and African Chronicles. Those Africans which inhabited Libya and Numidia, would each of them worship some certaine planet, vnto whom likewise they offered sacrifices and praiers. Some others of the land of Negros worship *Guighimo*, that is to say, *The Lord of Heauen.* And this sound point of religion was not deliuered vnto them by any Prophet or teacher, but was inspired, as it were, from God himselfe. After that, they embraced the Iewish law, wherein they are said to haue continued many yeeres. Afterward they professed the Christian religion, and continued Christians, vntill such time as the *Mahumetan* superstition preuailed; which came to passe in the yeere of the Hegeira 208. About which time certaine of *Mahomets* disciples so bewitched them with eloquent and deceiueable speeches, that they allured their weake minds to consent vnto their opinion; insomuch that all the kingdomes of the Negros adioyning vnto Libya receiued the *Mahumetan* lawe. Neither is there any region in all the Negros land, which hath in it at this day any Christians at all. At the same time such as were found to be Iewes, Christians, or of the African religion, were slaine euerie man of them. Howbeit those which dwell neere vnto the Ocean sea, are all of them verie grosse idolaters. Betweene whom and the Portugals there hath beene from time to time and euen at this present is, great traffique and familiaritie. The inhabitants of Barbarie continued for many yeeres idolaters; but before the comming of *Mahomet* aboue 250. yeeres, they are saide to haue embraced the Christian faith: which some thinke came to passe vpon this occasion; namely, because that of part Barbarie which containeth the kingdome of Tripolis and Tunis, was in times past gouerned by *Apulian* & *Sicilian* Captaines, and the countries of *Cæsaria and of *Mauritania are supposed to haue beene

* *Tremizen.*
* *Maroco and Fez.*

subiect vnto the Gothes. At what time also many Christians fleeing from the furie and madnes of the Gothes left their sweet natiue soyle of Italy, and at length arriued in Africa neere vnto Tunis: where hauing setled their aboad for some certaine space, they began at length to haue the dominion ouer all that region. Howbeit the Christians which inhabited Barbaria, not respecting the rites and ceremonies of the Church of Rome, followed the Arrians religion and forme of liuing: and one of the African Christians was that most godly and learned father Saint *Augustine*. When the Arabians therefore came to conquer that part of Africa they found Christians to be Lords ouer the regions adiacent; of whom, after sundry hot conflicts, the saide Arabians got the victorie. Whereupon the Arrians being depriued of all their dominions and goods went part of them into Italy and part into Spaine. And so about two hundred yeeres after the death of *Mahumet*, almost all Barbarie was infected with his law. Howbeit afterward, ciuile dissensions arising among them, neglecting the law of *Mahumet*, they slue all the priests and gouernours of that region. Which tumult when it came to the eares of the Mahumetan Caliphas, they sent an huge armie against the saide rebels of Barbarie, to wit, those which were reuolted from the Calipha of Bagdet, and seuerely punished their misdemeanor. And euen at the same time was layd the most pernitious foundation of the Mahumetan law; notwithstanding there haue remained many heresies among them euen vntill this verie day. As touching the patrons of the Mahumetan lawe, and likewise concerning the difference in religion betweene the Mahumetans of Africa, and them of Asia, we will (by Gods grace) write more in another seuerall volume; and in the meane season, let these particulars which we haue noted suffice the Reader.

A booke written by Iohn Leo concerning the Mahumetan religion.

Of the letters and characters of the Africans.

THose writers which record the histories of the Arabians doings are all iointly of opinion, that the Africans were woont to vse onely the Latine letters. And they doe most constantly affirme, that the Arabians, when they first inuaded Africa and especially Barbarie (which was the principall seate of the Africans) founde no letters nor characters there, beside the Latine. Neither indeede doe they denie that the Africans haue a peculiar kinde of language, but this they firmly auouch, that they haue the very same letters which the Hetrurians or Florentines a people of Italie haue. The Arabians haue no histories * of African matters, which was not first written in Latine. They haue certaine ancient authors, who writ partly in the times of the Arrians and partly before their times, the names of all which are cleane forgotten. Howbeit it is very likely that those Latine authors haue written many volumes: for when their interpreters laboured to perswade something vnto vs, I remember they would say, it is contained in the seuentieth booke. Neither did they in translating of the

The Africans vsed in times past none other kind of letters but the Roman letters.

**Perhaps he meaneth the histories of Salust, Titus Liuius, and others.*

said

said volumes altogether follow the authors order; but taking the historie of some one prince, they would conioine his time and actions with the historie of the Persian, Assyrian, and Chaldæan kings, or of the Israelites, which concerned the same times. But when as those which rebelled against the Calipha of Bagdet (as is aforesaid) got the vpper hand in Africa, they burnt all the Africans bookes. For they were of opinion, that the Africans, so long as they had any knowledge of naturall philosophie or of other good artes and sciences, would euery day more and more arrogantly contemne the lawe of Mahumet. Contrariwise, some historiographers there are which affirme, that the Africans had a kinde of letters peculiar vnto themselues; which notwithstanding, from the time wherein the Italians began first to inhabite Barbarie, and wherein the Christians fleeing out of Italie from the Gothes, began to subdue those prouinces of Africa, were vtterly abolished and taken away. For it is likely that a people vanquished shoulde follow the customes and the letters also of their conquerors. And did not the same thing happen to the Persians, while the Arabians empire stood? For certaine it is, that the Persians at the same time lost those letters which were peculiar vnto their nation; and that all their bookes, by the commandement of the Mahumetan prelates, were burnt, least their knowledge in naturall philosophie, or their idolatrous religion might mooue them to contemne the precepts of Mahumet. The like also (as we shewed before) befell the Barbarians when as the Italians and the Gothes vsurped their dominions in Barbarie; which may here (I hope) suffice the gentle reader. Howbeit this is out of doubt, that all the sea-cities and inland-cities of Barbarie doe vse Latine letters onely, whensoeuer they will commit any epitaphes or any other verses or prose vnto posteritie. The consideration of all which former particulars hath made me to be of opinion, that the Africans in times past had their owne proper and peculiar letters, wherein they described their doings and exploites. For it is likely that the Romans, when they first subdued those prouinces (as conquerours vsually doe) vtterly spoiled and tooke away all their letters and memorie, and established their owne letters in the stead thereof; to the end that the fame and honour of the Roman people might there onely be continued. And who knoweth not that the very same attempt was practised by the Goths vpon the stately buildings of the Romans, and by the Arabians against the monuments of the Persians. The very same thing likewise we daily see put in practise by the Turks, who when they haue gotten any citie or towne from the Christians, doe presently cast foorth of the temples all the images and memorials of their saints. And to omit all the aforesaid, may we not in our time see the like daily practised in Rome; where sumptuous and stately buildings left vnperfect by reason of the vntimely death of one Pope, are for some noueltie vtterly ruined and destroied by his next successour? Or else, doth not the new Pope cause his predecessours armes to be razed, and his owne in stead thereof to be set vp? Or at the least, if he will not seeme so arrogant, letting his prede-

The Mahumetan Califas caused all the bookes of the Persians to be burned.

ceſſours monuments ſtand ſtill, doth he not erect others for himſelfe farre more ſumptuous and ſtately? No maruell therefore, though ſo long ſucceſſe of times and ſo many alterations haue quite bereaued the Africans of their letters. Concerning thoſe nine hundred yeeres wherein the Africans vſed the letters of the Arabians, *Ibnu Rachich*, a moſt diligent writer of Africa, doth in his Chronicle moſt largely diſpute; whether the Africans euer had any peculiar kinde of writing or no. And at laſt he concludeth the affirmatiue part; that they had: for (ſaith he) whoſoeuer denieth this, may as well denie, that they had a language peculiar vnto themſelues. For it cannot be that any people ſhould haue a proper kinde of ſpeech, and yet ſhould vſe letters borrowed from other nations, and being altogether vnfit for their mother-language.

Of the ſituation of Africa.

AS there are fower partes in Africa, ſo the ſituation thereof is not in all places alike. That part which lieth towards the Mediterran ſea, that is to ſay, from the ſtreites of Gibraltar to the frontiers of Aegypt, is here and there full of mountaines: Southward it is extended about a hundred miles, albeit in ſome places it be larger and in ſome other narrower. From the ſaide mountaines vnto mount Atlas there is a very ſpatious plaine & many little hillocks. Fountaines there are in this region great ſtore, which meeting together at one head doe ſend foorth moſt beautifull riuers and chriſtall ſtreames. Betweene the foreſaid mountaines and the plaine countrie is ſituate the mountaine of Atlas; which beginning weſtward vpon the Ocean ſea, ſtretcheth it ſelfe towards the eaſt as farre as the borders of Aegypt. Ouer againſt Atlas lieth that region of Numidia which beareth dates, being euery where almoſt ſandie ground. Betweene Numidia and the land of Negros is the ſandie deſert of Libya ſituate, which containeth many mountaines alſo; howbeit merchants trauell not that way, when as they may goe other waies with more eaſe and leſſe danger. Beyond the Libyan deſert beginneth the land of Negros, all places whereof are barren and ſandie except thoſe which adioine vpon the riuer of Niger, or through the which any riuer or ſtreame runneth.

Of the vnpleaſant and ſnowie places in Africa.

ALl the region of Barbarie, and the mountaines contained therein, are ſubiect more to cold then to heat. For ſeldome commeth any gale of winde which bringeth not ſome ſnow therwith. In al the ſaid mountaines there grow abundance of fruits, but not ſo great plentie of corne. The inhabitants of theſe mountaines liue for the greateſt part of the yeere vpon barlie bread.

The

The ſprings & riuers iſſuing foorth of the ſaid mountaines, repreſenting the qualitie and taſte of their natiue ſoile, are ſomewhat muddie and impure, eſpecially vpon the confines of Mauritania. Theſe mountaines likewiſe are repleniſhed with woods and loftie trees, and are greatly ſtored with beaſtes of all kindes. But the little hils and vallies lying betweene the foreſaid mountaines and mount Atlas are far more commodious, and abounding with corne. For they are moiſtened with riuers ſpringing out of Atlas, and from thence holding on their courſe to the Mediterran ſea. And albeit woods are ſomewhat more ſcarce vpon theſe plaines, yet are they much more fruitfull, then be the plaine countries ſituate betweene Atlas and the Ocean ſea, as namely the regions of Maroco, of Duccala, of Tedles, of Temeſna, of Azgara, and the countrie lying towards the ſtraites of Gibraltar. The mountaines of Atlas are exceeding colde and barren, and bring foorth but ſmall ſtore of corne, beeing woody on all ſides, and engendring almoſt all the riuers of Africa. The fountaines of Atlas are euen in the midſt of ſummer extremely cold; ſo that if a man dippeth his hand therein for any long ſpace, he is in great danger of looſing the ſame. Howbeit the ſaid mountaines are not ſo cold in all places: for ſome partes thereof are of ſuch milde temperature, that they may be right commodiouſly inhabited: yea and ſundry places thereof are well ſtored with inhabitants; as in the ſecond part of this preſent diſcourſe we will declare more at large. Thoſe places which are deſtitute of inhabitants be either extremely cold, as namely the ſame which lie ouer againſt Mauritania: or very rough and vnpleaſant, to wit, thoſe which are directly oppoſite to the region of Temeſna. Where notwithſtanding in ſummer time they may feede their great and ſmall cattell, but not in winter by any meanes. For then the North winde ſo furiouſly rageth, bringing with it ſuch abundance of ſnowe; that all the cattell which till then remaine vpon the ſaide mountaines, and a great part of the people alſo are forced to loſe their liues in regard thereof: wherefore whoſoeuer hath any occaſion to trauell that way in winter time, chuſeth rather to take his iourney betweene Mauritania and Numidia. Thoſe merchants which bring dates out of Numidia for the vſe and ſeruice of other nations, ſet foorth vſually vpon their iourney about the ende of October; and yet they are oftentimes ſo oppreſſed and ouertaken with a ſudden fall of ſnowe, that ſcarcely one man among them all eſcapeth the danger of the tempeſt. For when it beginneth to ſnow ouer night, before the next morning not onely carts and men, but euen the verie trees are ſo drowned & ouerwhelmed therein, that it is not poſſible to finde any mention of them. Howbeit the dead carcaſes are then founde when the ſunne hath melted the ſnow. I my ſelfe alſo, by the goodnes of almighty God, twiſe eſcaped the moſt dreadfull danger of the foreſaid ſnow; whereof, if it may not be tedious to the reader, I will heere in few wordes make relation. Vpon a certaine day of the foreſaid moneth of October, trauelling with a great companie of Merchants towards Atlas, we were there about the ſunne going downe weather-beaten with a moſt cold and ſnowy

The mountaines of Atlas exceeding cold.

Moſt woonderfull and terrible ſnowes.

The extreme danger of ſnow which Iohn Leo himſelfe eſcaped.

kinde

kinde of hayle. Here we found eleuen or twelue horſemen (Arabians to our thinking) who perſwading vs to leaue our carts and to goe with them, promiſed vs a good and ſecure place to lodge in. For mine owne part, that I might not ſeeme altogether vnciuill, I thought it not meete to refuſe their good offer; albeit I ſtood in doubt leaſt they went about to practiſe ſome miſchiefe. Wherefore I bethought my ſelfe to hide vp a certaine ſumme of gold which I had as then about me. But all being ready to ride, I had no leiſure to hide away my coine from them; whereupon I fained that I would goe eaſe my ſelfe. And ſo departing a while their companie, and getting me vnder a certaine tree, whereof I tooke diligent notice, I buried my money betweene certaine ſtones and the roote of the ſaid tree. And then we rode on quietly till about midnight. What time one of them thinking that he had ſtaied long ynough for his pray, began to vtter that in words which ſecretly he had conceiued in his minde. For he asked whether I had any money about me or no? To whom I anſwered, that I had left my money behind with one of them which attended the cartes, and that I had then none at all about me. Howbeit they being no whit ſatisfied with this anſwer, commanded me, for all the cold weather, to ſtrip my ſelfe out of mine apparell. At length when they could find no money at all, they ſaid in ieſting & ſcoffing wiſe, that they did this for no other purpoſe, but onely to ſee how ſtrong and hardie I was, and how I could endure the cold and tempeſtuous ſeaſon. Well, on we rode, ſeeking our way as well as we could that darke and diſmall night; and anone we heard the bleating of ſheepe, coniecturing thereby, that we were not farre diſtant from ſome habitation of people. Wherefore out of hand we directed our courſe thitherwards: being conſtrained to leade our horſes through thicke woods and ouer ſteepe and craggie rocks, to the great hazard and perill of our liues. And at length after many labours, wee found ſhepherds in a certaine caue: who, hauing with much paines brought their cattell in there, had kindled a luſtie fire for themſelues, which they were conſtrained, by reaſon of the extreme cold, daily to ſit by. Who vnderſtanding our companie to be Arabians, feared at the firſt that we would do them ſome miſchiefe: but afterward being perſwaded that we were driuen thither by extremitie of cold, and being more ſecure of vs, they gaue vs moſt friendly entertainment. For they ſet bread, fleſh, and cheeſe before vs, wherewith hauing ended our ſuppers, we laid vs along each man to ſleepe before the fire. All of vs were as yet exceeding cold, but eſpecially my ſelfe, who before with great horrour and trembling was ſtripped ſtarke naked. And ſo we continued with the ſaid ſhepherds for the ſpace of two daies: all which time we could not ſet foorth, by reaſon of continuall ſnowe. But the thirde day, ſo ſoone as they ſaw it leaue ſnowing, with great labour they began to remooue that ſnowe which lay before the doore of their caue. Which done, they brought vs to our horſes, which we found well prouided of hay in another caue. Being all mounted, the ſhepherds accompanied vs ſome part of our way, ſhewing vs where the ſnowe was of leaſt depth, and yet euen there it

touched

touched our horſe bellies. This day was ſo cleere, that the ſunne tooke away all the cold of the two daies going before. At length entring into a certaine village neere vnto Fez, we vnderſtood, that our cartes which paſſed by, were ouerwhelmed with the ſnowe. Then the Arabians ſeeing no hope of recompence for all the paines they had taken (for they had defended our carts from theeues) carried a certaine Iew of our companie with them as their captiue, (who had loſt a great quantitie of dates, by reaſon of the ſnowe aforeſaid) to the end that he might remaine as their priſoner, till he had ſatisfied for all the reſidue. From my ſelfe they tooke my horſe, and committed mee vnto the wide world and to fortune. From whence, riding vpon a mule, within three daies I arriued at Fez, where I heard dolefull newes of our merchants and wares, that they were caſt away in the ſnowe. Yea, they thought that I had beene deſtroied with the reſt; but it ſeemed that God would haue it otherwiſe. Now, hauing finiſhed the hiſtorie of mine owne misfortunes, let vs returne vnto that diſcourſe where we left. Beyond Atlas there are certaine hot & dry places moiſtened with very few riuers, but thoſe which flow out of Atlas it ſelfe: ſome of which riuers running into the Libyan deſerts are dried vp with the ſands, but others do ingender lakes. Neither ſhal you finde in theſe countries any places apt to bring forth corne, notwithſtanding they haue dates in abundance. There are alſo certaine other trees bearing fruit, but in ſo ſmall quantitie, that no increaſe nor gaine is to be reaped by them. You may ſee likewiſe in thoſe partes of Numidia which border vpon Libya certaine barren hils deſtitute of trees, vpon the lower parts whereof growe nothing but vnprofitable thornes and ſhrubs. Amongſt theſe mountaines you ſhall finde no riuers nor ſprings, nor yet any waters at all, except it be in certaine pits and wels almoſt vnknowen vnto the inhabitants of that region. Moreouer in ſixe or ſeuen daies iourney they haue not one drop of water, but ſuch as is brought vnto them by certaine merchants vpon camels backes. And that eſpecially in thoſe places which lye vpon the maine road from Fez to Tombuto, or from Tremizen to *Agad. That iourney likewiſe is verie dangerous which is of late found out by the merchants of our daies from Fez to Alcair ouer the deſerts of Libya, were it not for an huge lake in the way, vpon the bankes whereof the Sinites and the Goranites doe inhabite. But in the way which leadeth from Fez to Tombuto are certaine pits enuironed either with the hides or bones of camels. Neither doe the merchants in ſommer time paſſe that way without great danger of their liues: for oftentimes it falleth out, when the ſouth winde bloweth, that all thoſe pits are ſtopped vp with ſande. And ſo the merchants, when they can finde neither thoſe pits, nor any mention thereof, muſt needes periſh for extreame thirſt: whoſe carcaſes are afterward found lying ſcattered here and there, and ſcorched with the heat of the ſunne. One remedie they haue in this caſe, which is verie ſtrange: for when they are ſo grieuouſly oppreſſed with thirſt, they kill foorthwith ſome one of their camels, out of whoſe bowels they wring and expreſſe ſome quantitie of water, which water they drinke

* *Agadez.*

A ſtrange remedie vſed by the African merchants to quench their thirſt.

they drinke and carrie about with them, till they haue either found some pit of water, or till they pine away for thirst. In the desert which they cal Azaoad there are as yet extant two monuments built of marble, vpon which marble is an Epitaphe engrauen, signifying that one of the said monuments represented a most rich merchant, and the other a carrier or transporter of wares. Which wealthie merchant bought of the carrier a cup of water for tenne thousand ducates, and yet this pretious water could suffice neither of them; for both were consumed with thirst. This desert likewise containeth sundry kinds of beasts, which in the fourth part of this discourse concerning Libya, and in our treatise of the beasts of Africa, we will discourse of more at large. I was determined to haue written more cõcerning those things which happened vnto my self & the rest of my company trauelling through the Libyan deserts vnto Gualata. For somtime being sore a thirst, we could not find one drop of water, partly because our guide strayed out of the direct course, and partly because our enemies had cut off the springs and chanels of the foresaid pits and wels. Insomuch that the small quantitie of water which we found, was sparingly to be kept; for that which would scarce suffice vs for fiue daies, we were constrained to keepe for ten. But if I should commit to writing all things woorthy of memorie, a whole yeare were not sufficient for me. The lande of Negros is extreme hot, hauing some store of moysture also, by reason of the riuer of Niger running through the midst thereof. All places adioining vpon Niger doe mightily abound both with cattle & corne. No trees I saw there but only certain great ones, bearing a kind of bitter fruit like vnto a chestnut, which in their language is called Goron. Likewise in the same regions grow Cocos, cucumbers, onions, and such kinde of herbes and fruits in great abundance. There are no mountaines at all either in Libya or in the land of Negros: howbeit diuers fennes and lakes there are; which (as men report) the inundation of Niger hath left behinde it. Neither are the woods of the said regions altogether destitute of Elephants and other strange beastes; whereof we will make relation in their due place.

A merchant constrained by extreme thirst, gaue ten thousand duckats for a cup of water.

The fruit called Goron. Cocos. Cucumbers. Onions.

What naturall impressions and motions the aire of Africa is subiect vnto; and what effects ensue thereupon.

THroughout the greatest part of Barbarie stormie and cold weather begin commonly about the midst of October. But in December and Ianuarie the cold groweth somewhat more sharpe in all places: howbeit this happeneth in the morning onely, but so gently and remissely, that no man careth greatly to warme himselfe by the fire. Februarie somewhat mitigateth the cold of winter, but that so inconstantly, that the weather changeth sometime fiue and sometime sixe times in one day. In March the north and west windes vsually blowe, which cause the trees to be adorned with blossoms. In Aprill all fruits attaine to

their

their proper forme and ſhape, inſomuch that cherries are commonly ripe about the end of Aprill and the beginning of May. In the midſt of May they gather their figs: and in mid-Iune their grapes are ripe in many places. Likewiſe their peares, their ſweete quinces and their damaſcens attaine vnto ſufficient ripenes in the moneths of Iune and Iulie. Their figs of Autumne may be gathered in Auguſt; howbeit they neuer haue ſo great plentie of figs and peaches, as in September. By the midſt of Auguſt they vſually begin to drie their grapes in the ſun, whereof they make reiſins. Which if they cannot finiſh in September, by reaſon of vnſeaſonable weather, of their grapes as then vngathered they vſe to make wine and muſt, eſpecially in the prouince of Rifa, as we will in due place ſignifie more at large. In the midſt of October they take in their honie, and gather their pomegranates and quinces. In Nouember they gather their oliues, not climing vp with ladders nor plucking them with their hands, according to the cuſtome of Europe; for the trees of Mauritania and Cæſarea are ſo tal, that no ladder is long ynongh to reach vnto the fruit. And therefore their oliues being full ripe, they clime the trees, beating them off the boughes with certaine long poles, albeit they know this kinde of beating to be moſt hurtfull vnto the ſaide trees. Sometimes they haue great plentie of oliues in Africa, and ſometimes as great ſcarcitie. Certaine great oliue-trees there are, the oliues whereof are eaten ripe by the inhabitants, becauſe they are not ſo fit for oile. No yeere falles out to be ſo vnſeaſonable, but that they haue three monethes in the ſpring alwaies temperate. They begin their ſpring vpon the fifteenth day of Februarie, accounting the eighteenth of May for the ende thereof: all which time they haue moſt pleaſant weather. But if from the fiue and twentith of Aprill, to the fifth of May they haue no raine fall, they take it as a ſigne of ill lucke. And the raine-water which falleth all the time aforeſaid they call Naiſan, that is, water bleſſed of God. Some ſtore it vp in veſſels, moſt religiouſly keeping it, as an holy thing. Their ſummer laſteth till the ſixteenth of Auguſt; all which time they haue moſt hot and cleere weather. Except perhaps ſome ſhowers of raine fall in Iuly and Auguſt, which doe ſo infect the aire, that great plague and moſt peſtilent feuers enſue thereupon; with which plague whoſoeuer is infected, moſt hardly eſcapeth death. Their Autumne they reckon from the 17. of Auguſt to the 16. of Nouember; hauing commonly in the moneths of Auguſt and September not ſuch extreme heate as before. Howbeit all the time betweene the 15. of Auguſt and the 15. of September is called by them the furnace of the whole yeere, for that it bringeth figs, quinces, and ſuch kinde of fruits to their full maturitie. From the 15. of Nouember they begin their winter-ſeaſon, continuing the ſame till the 14. day of Februarie. So ſoone as winter commeth, they begin to till their ground which lieth in the plaines: but vpon the mountaines they goe to plough in October. The Africans are moſt certainly perſwaded that euery yeere containeth fortie extreme hot daies, beginning vpon the 12. of Iune; and againe ſo many daies extreme colde, beginning from the 12. of

The oliues of Africa.

Raine ſignifying plentie or ſcarcitie.

12. of December. Their *Aequinoctia* are vpon the 16. of March, and the 16. of September. For their *Solstitia* they account the 16. of Iune and the 16. of December. These rules they doe most strictly obserue, as well in husbandrie and nauigation, as in searching out the houses and true places of the planets: and these instructions, with other such like they teach their yoong children first of all. Many countrie-people and husbandmen there be in Africa, who knowing (as they say) neuer a letter of the booke, will notwithstanding most learnedly dispute of Astrologie, & alleage most profoūd reasons & arguments for themselues. But whatsoeuer skill they haue in the art of Astrologie, they first learned the same of the Latines: yea they giue those very names vnto their moneths which the Latines do. Moreouer they haue extāt among them a certaine great booke diuided into three volumes, which they call The treasurie or storehouse of husbandrie. This booke was then translated out of Latine into their toong, when *Mansor* was Lord of Granada. In the said Treasurie are all things contained which may seeme in any wise to concerne husbandrie; as namely, the changes and varietie of times, the maner of sowing, with a number of such like particulars, which (I thinke) at this day the Latine toong it selfe, whereout these things were first translated, doth not containe. Whatsoeuer either the Africans or the Mahumetans haue, which seemeth to appertaine in any wise to their law or religion, they make their computation thereof altogether according to the course of the moone. Their yeere is diuided into 354. daies: for vnto sixe moneths they allot 30. daies, and vnto the other sixe but 29; all which being added into one summe doe produce the number aforesaid: wherefore their yeere differeth eleuen daies from the yeere of the Latines. They haue at diuers times festiuall daies, and fasts. About the ende of Autumne, for all winter, and a great part of the spring they are troubled with boisterous windes, with haile, with terrible thunder and lightening: yea then it snoweth much in some places of Barbarie. The easterne, southerne, and southeasterne windes blowing in May and Iune, doe very much hurt there: for they spoile the corne, and hinder the fruit from comming to ripenes. Their corne likewise is greatly appaired by snow, especially such as falleth in the day-time, when it beginneth to flower. Vpon the mountaines of Atlas they diuide the yeere into two parts onely: for their winter continueth from October to Aprill; and from Aprill to October they account it summer: neither is there any day throughout the whole yeere, wherein the tops of those mountaines are not couered with snowe. In Numidia the yeere runneth away very swiftly: for they reape their corne in May, and in October they gather their dates: but from the midst of September they haue winter till the beginning of Ianuarie. But if September falleth out to be rainie, they are like to lose most part of their dates. All the fields of Numidia require watering from the riuers; but if the mountaines of Atlas haue no raine fall vpon them, the Numidian riuers waxe drie, and so the fields are destitute of watering. October being destitute of raine, the husbandman hath no hope to cast his seede into the ground;

The peasants and vnlearned people of Africa cunning in Astrologie.

The yeere of the Arabians and Africans.

The yeere diuided into two seasons onely, vpon the mountaines of Atlas.

ground; and he deſpaireth likewiſe, if it raine not in Aprill. But their dates proſper more without raine, wherof the Numidians haue greater plentie then of corne. For albeit they haue ſome ſtore of corne, yet can it ſcarcely ſuffice them for halfe the yeere. Howbeit, if they haue good increaſe of dates, they cannot want abundance of corne, which is ſold vnto them by the Arabians for dates. If in the Libyan deſerts there fall out change of weather about the midſt of October; & if it continue raining there all December, Ianuarie, and ſome part of Februarie, it is wonderful what abundance of graſſe and milke it bringeth foorth. Then may you finde diuers lakes in all places and many fennes throughout Libya; wherefore this is the meeteſt time for the Barbarie-merchants to trauell to the land of Negros. Here all kinde of fruits grow ſooner ripe, if they haue moderate ſhowers about the ende of Iuly. Moreouer the land of Negros receiueth by raine neither any benefite, nor yet any dammage at all. For the riuer Niger together with the water which falleth from certaine mountaines doth ſo moiſten their grounds, that no places can be deuiſed to be more fruitfull: for that which Nilus is to Aegypt, the ſame is Niger to the land of Negros: for it increaſeth like Nilus from the fifteenth of Iune the ſpace of fortie daies after, and for ſo many againe it decreaſeth. And ſo at the increaſe of Niger, when all places are ouerflowen with water, a man may in a barke paſſe ouer all the land of Negros, albeit not without great perill of drowning; as in the fift part of this treatiſe we will declare more at large.

The increaſe of the riuers of Niger & Nilus

Of the length and ſhortnes of the Africans liues.

ALl the people of Barbarie by vs before mentioned liue vnto 65. or 70. yeeres of age, and fewe or none exceed that number. Howbeit in the foreſaide mountaines I ſawe ſome which had liued an hundred yeeres, and others which affirmed themſelues to be older; whoſe age was moſt healthfull and luſtie. Yea ſome you ſhall finde here of fowerſcore yeeres of age, who are ſufficiently ſtrong and able to exerciſe husbandrie, to dreſſe vines, and to ſerue in the warres; inſomuch that yoong men are oftentimes inferiour vnto them. In Numidia, that is to ſay, in the land of dates, they liue a long time: howbeit they loſe their teeth very ſoone, and their eies waxe woonderfully dimme. Which infirmities are likely to be incident vnto them, firſt becauſe they continually feede vpon dates, the ſweetnes and naturall qualitie whereof doth by little and little pull out their teeth: and ſecondly the duſt and ſand, which is toſſed vp and downe the aire with eaſterne windes entring into their eies, doth at laſt miſerably weaken and ſpoile their eie-ſight. The inhabitants of Libya are of a ſhorter life; but thoſe which are moſt ſtrong and healthfull among them liue oftentimes till they come to threeſcore yeeres; albeit they are ſlender and leane of bodie. The Negros commonly

liue the shortest time of al the rest: howbeit they are alwaies strong & lustie, hauing their teeth sound euen till their dying day: yet is there no nation vnder heauen more prone to venerie; vnto which vice also the Libyans and Numidians are to too much addicted. To be short, the Barbarians are the weakest people of them all.

What kindes of diseases the Africans are subiect vnto.

THE children, and sometimes the ancient women of this region are subiect vnto baldnes or vnnaturall shedding of haire; which disease they can hardly be cured of. They are likewise oftentimes troubled with the head-ache, which vsually afflicteth them without any ague ioined therewith. Many of them are tormented with the tooth-ache, which (as some thinke) they are the more subiect vnto, because immediately after hot pottage they drinke cold water. They are oftentimes vexed with extreme paine of the stomacke, which ignorantly they call, the paine of the hart. They are likewise daily molested with inwarde gripings and infirmities ouer their whole body, which is thought to proceede of continuall drinking of water. Yea they are much subiect vnto bone-aches and goutes, by reason that they sit commonly vpon the bare ground, and neuer weare any shooes vpon their feete. Their chiefe gentlemen and noblemen proue gowtie oftentimes with immoderate drinking of wine and eating of daintie meats. Some with eating of oliues, nuts, and such course fare, are for the most part infected with the scruuies. Those which are of a sanguine complexion are greatly troubled with the cough, because that in the spring-season they sit too much vpon the ground. And vpon fridaies I had no small sport and recreation to goe and see them. For vpon this day the people flocke to church in great numbers to heare their Mahumetan sermons. Now if any one in the sermon-time falles a neezing, all the whole multitude will neeze with him for companie, and so they make such a noise, that they neuer leaue, till the sermon be quite done; so that a man shall reape but little knowledge by any of their sermons. If any of Barbarie be infected with the disease commonly called the French poxe, they die thereof for the most part, and are seldome cured. This disease beginneth with a kinde of anguish and swelling, and at length breaketh out into sores. Ouer the mountaines of Atlas, and throughout all Numidia and Libya they scarcely know this disease. Insomuch that oftentimes the parties infected trauell foorthwith into Numidia or the land of Negros, in which places the aire is so temperate, that onely by remaining there they recouer their perfect health, and returne home sound into their owne countrie: which I sawe many doe with mine owne eies; who without the helpe of any phisitian or medicine, except the foresaide holesome aire, were restored to their former health. Not so much as the name of this maladie was euer knowen vnto the Africans, before *Ferdinand* the king of Castile

The French disease.

Caſtile expelled all Iewes out of Spaine; after the returne of which Iewes into Africa, certaine vnhappie and lewd people lay with their wiues; and ſo at length the diſeaſe ſpread from one to another, ouer the whole region: inſomuch that ſcarce any one familie was free from the ſame. Howbeit, this they were moſt certainly perſwaded of, that the ſame diſeaſe came firſt from Spaine; wherefore they (for want of a better name) do call it, The Spaniſh poxe. Notwithſtanding at Tunis and ouer all Italie it is called the French diſeaſe. It is ſo called likewiſe in Aegypt and Syria: for there it is vſed as a common prouerbe of curſing; The French poxe take you. Amongſt the Barbarians the diſeaſe called in Latine *Hernia* is not ſo common; but in Aegypt the people are much troubled therewith. For ſome of the Aegyptians haue their cods oftentimes ſo ſwollen, as it is incredible to report. Which infirmitie is thought to be ſo common among them, becauſe they eate ſo much gumme, and ſalt cheeſe. Some of their children are ſubiect vnto the falling ſicknes; but when they growe to any ſtature, they are free from that diſeaſe. This falling ſicknes likewiſe poſſeſſeth the women of Barbarie, and of the land of Negros; who, to excuſe it, ſay that they are taken with a ſpirite. In Barbarie the plague is rife euery tenth, fifteenth, or twentith yeere, whereby great numbers of people are conſumed; for they haue no cure for the ſame, but onely to rub the plague-ſore with certaine ointments made of Armenian earth. In Numidia they are infected with the plague ſcarce once in an hundred yeeres. And in the land of Negros they know not the name of this diſeaſe: becauſe they neuer were ſubiect thereunto.

When and by what meanes the French poxe was brought into Africa.

Hernia or the diſeaſe called burſting or the rupture.

Earth of Armenia.

The commendable actions and vertues of the Africans.

THoſe Arabians which inhabite in Barbarie or vpon the coaſt of the Mediterran ſea, are greatly addicted vnto the ſtudie of good artes and ſciences: and thoſe things which concerne their law and religion are eſteemed by them in the firſt place. Moreouer they haue beene heretofore moſt ſtudious of the Mathematiques, of Philoſophie, and of Aſtrologie: but theſe artes (as it is aforeſaid) were fower hundred yeeres agoe, vtterly deſtroyed and taken away by the chiefe profeſſours of their lawe. The inhabitants of cities doe moſt religiouſly obſerue and reuerence thoſe things which appertaine vnto their religion: yea they honour thoſe doctours and prieſts, of whom they learne their law, as if they were petie-gods. Their Churches they frequent verie diligently, to the ende they may repeat certaine preſcript and formal prayers; moſt ſuperſtitiouſly perſwading themſelues that the ſame day wherein they make their praiers, it is not lawfull for them to waſh certaine of their members, when as at other times they wil waſh their whole bodies. Whereof we will (by Gods helpe) diſcourſe more at large in the ſecond Booke of this preſent treatiſe, when we ſhall fall into the mentioning of *Mahumet*

and of his religion. Moreouer thoſe which inhabite Barbarie are of great cunning & dexteritie for building & for mathematicall inuentions, which a man may eaſily coniecture by their artificiall workes. Moſt honeſt people they are, and deſtitute of all fraud and guile; not onely imbracing all ſimplicitie and truth, but alſo practiſing the ſame throughout the whole courſe of their liues: albeit certaine Latine authors, which haue written of the ſame regions, are farre otherwiſe of opinion. Likewiſe they are moſt ſtrong and valiant people, eſpecially thoſe which dwell vpon the mountaines. They keepe their couenant moſt faithfully; inſomuch that they had rather die then breake promiſe. No nation in the world is ſo ſubiect vnto iealouſie; for they will rather leeſe their liues, then put vp any diſgrace in the behalfe of their women. So deſirous they are of riches and honour, that therein no other people can goe beyonde them. They trauell in a manner ouer the whole world to exerciſe traffique. For they are continually to bee ſeene in AEgypt, in AEthiopia, in Arabia, Perſia, India, and Turkie: and whitherſoeuer they goe, they are moſt honorably eſteemed of: for none of them will profeſſe any arte, vnleſſe hee hath attained vnto great exactnes and perfection therein. They haue alwaies beene much delighted with all kinde of ciuilitie and modeſt behauiour: and it is accounted heinous among them for any man to vtter in companie, any bawdie or vnſeemely worde. They haue alwaies in minde this ſentence of a graue author; Giue place to thy ſuperiour. If any youth in preſence of his father, his vncle, or any other of his kinred, doth ſing or talke ought of loue matters, he is deemed to bee woorthie of grieuous puniſhment. Whatſoeuer lad or youth there lighteth by chaunce into any company which diſcourſeth of loue, no ſooner heareth nor vnderſtandeth what their talke tendeth vnto, but immediately he withdraweth himſelfe from among them. Theſe are the things which we thought moſt woorthie of relation as concerning the ciuilitie, humanitie, and vpright dealing of the Barbarians: let vs now proceede vnto the reſidue. Thoſe Arabians which dwell in tents, that is to ſay, which bring vp cattell, are of a more liberall and ciuill diſpoſition: to wit, they are in their kinde as deuout, valiant, patient, courteous, hoſpitall, and as honeſt in life and conuerſation as any other people. They be moſt faithfull obſeruers of their word and promiſe: inſomuch that the people, which before we ſaid to dwell in the mountaines, are greatly ſtirred vp with emulation of their vertues. Howbeit the ſaid mountainers, both for learning, for vertue, and for religion, are thought much inferiour to the Numidians; albeit they haue little or no knowledge at all in naturall philoſophie. They are reported likewiſe to be moſt skilfull warriours, to be valiant, and exceeding louers and practiſers of all humanitie. Alſo, the Moores and Arabians inhabiting Libya are ſomewhat ciuill of behauiour, being plaine dealers, voide of diſſimulation, fauourable to ſtrangers, and louers of ſimplicitie. Thoſe which we before named white, or tawney Moores, are moſt ſtedfaſt in friendſhip: as likewiſe they

The Moores are a people of great fidelitie.

they indifferently and fauourably esteeme of other nations: and wholy indeuour themselues in this one thing, namely, that they may leade a most pleasant and iocund life. Moreouer they maintaine most learned professours of liberall artes, and such men as are most deuout in their religion. Neither is there any people in all Africa that lead a more happie and honorable life.

What vices the foresaid Africans are subiect vnto.

NEuer was there any people or nation so perfectly endued with vertue, but that they had their contrarie faults and blemishes: now therfore let vs consider, whether the vices of the Africãs do surpasse their vertues & good parts. Those which we named the inhabitants of the cities of Barbarie are somewhat needie and couetous, being also very proud and high-minded, and woonderfully addicted vnto wrath; insomuch that (according to the prouerbe) they will deeply engraue in marble any iniurie be it neuer so small, & will in no wise blot it out of their remembrance. So rusticall they are & void of good manners, that scarcely can any stranger obtaine their familiaritie and friendship. Their wits are but meane, and they are so credulous, that they will beleeue matters impossible, which are told them. So ignorant are they of naturall philosophie, that they imagine all the effects and operations of nature to be extraordinarie and diuine. They obserue no certaine order of liuing nor of lawes. Abounding exceedingly with choler, they speake alwaies with an angrie and lowd voice. Neither shall you walke in the day-time in any of their streetes, but you shall see commonly two or three of them together by the eares. By nature they are a vile and base people, being no better accounted of by their gouernours then if they were dogs. They haue neither iudges nor lawyers, by whose wisedome and counsell they ought to be directed. They are vtterly vnskilfull in trades of merchandize, being destitute of bankers and money-changers: wherefore a merchant can doe nothing among them in his absence, but is himselfe constrained to goe in person, whithersoeuer his wares are carried. No people vnder heauen are more addicted vnto couetise then this nation: neither is there (I thinke) to bee found among them one of an hundred, who for courtesie, humanitie, or deuotions sake, will vouchsafe any entertainment vpon a stranger. Mindfull they haue alwaies beene of iniuries, but most forgetfull of benefites. Their mindes are perpetually possessed with vexation and strife, so that they will seldome or neuer shew themselues tractable to any man; the cause whereof is supposed to be; for that they are so greedily addicted vnto their filthie lucre, that they neuer could attaine vnto any kinde of ciuilitie or good behauiour. The shepherds of that region liue a miserable, toilsome, wretched and beggerly life: they are a rude people, and (as a man may say) borne and bred to theft, deceit, and brutish manners. Their yoong men may goe a wooing

to diuers maides, till such time as they haue sped of a wife. Yea, the father of the maide most friendly welcommeth her suiter; so that I thinke scarce any noble or gentleman among them can chuse a virgine for his spouse: albeit, so soone as any woman is married, she is quite forsaken of all her suiters; who then seeke out other new paramours for their liking. Concerning their religion, the greater part of these people are neither Mahumetans, Iewes, nor Christians; and hardly shall you finde so much as a sparke of pietie in any of them. They haue no churches at all, nor any kinde of prayers, but being vtterly estranged from all godly deuotion, they leade a sauage and beastly life: and if any man chanceth to be of a better disposition (because they haue no law-giuers nor teachers among them) he is constrained to follow the example of other mens liues & maners. All the Numidians being most ignorant of naturall, domesticall, & commonwealth-matters, are principally addicted vnto treason, trecherie, murther, theft, and robberie. This nation, because it is most slauish, will right gladly accept of any seruice among the Barbarians, be it neuer so vile or contemptible. For some will take vpon them to be dung-farmers, others to be scullians, some others to bee ostlers, and such like seruile occupations. Likewise the inhabitants of Libya liue a brutish kinde of life; who neglecting all kindes of good artes and sciences, doe wholy apply their mindes vnto theft and violence. Neuer as yet had they any religion, any lawes, or any good forme of liuing; but alwaies had, and euer will haue a most miserable and distressed life. There cannot any trechery or villanie be inuented so damnable, which for lucres sake they dare not attempt. They spend all their daies either in most lewd practises, or in hunting, or else in warfare; neither weare they any shooes nor garments. The Negros likewise leade a beastly kinde of life, being vtterly destitute of the vse of reason, of dexteritie of wit, and of all artes. Yea they so behaue themselues, as if they had continually liued in a forrest among wilde beasts. They haue great swarmes of harlots among them; whereupon a man may easily coniecture their manner of liuing; except their conuersation perhaps be somewhat more tolerable, who dwell in the principall townes and cities: for it is like that they are somewhat more addicted to ciuilitie.

The author of this worke his Apologie for the former relation.

Neither am I ignorant, how much mine owne credit is impeached, when I my selfe write so homely of Africa, vnto which countrie I stand indebted both for my birth, and also for the best part of my education: Howbeit in this regarde I seeke not to excuse my selfe, but onely to appeale vnto the dutie of an historiographer, who is to set downe the plaine truth in all places, and is blame-woorthie for flattering or fauouring of any person. And this is the cause that hath mooued me to describe all things so plainly without glosing or dissimulation: wherefore here I am to request the gentle Reader friendly to accept of this my most true discourse, (albeit not adorned with fine words, and artificiall eloquence) as of certaine vnknowne strange matters. Wherein how indifferent and sincere I haue shewed my selfe, it may in few words appeere by that which followeth. It is reported of a lewd countri-

man

man of ours, that being conuicted of ſome heinous crime, he was adiudged to be ſeuerely beaten for it. Howbeit the day following, when the executioner came to doe his buſines, the malefactor remembred that certaine yeeres before, he had ſome acquaintance and familiaritie with him: which made him to preſume, that he ſhould find more fauour at his hands, then a meere ſtranger. But he was fowly deceiued; for the executioner vſed him no better, then if he had neuer knowne him. Wherefore this caitife at the firſt exclaiming vpon his executioner, oh (ſaith he) my good friend, what maketh you ſo ſterne, as not to acknowledge our olde acquaintance? Hereupon the executioner beating him more cruelly then before: friend (quoth he) in ſuch buſines as this I vſe to be mindfull of my dutie, and to ſhew no fauour at all: and ſo continually laying on, he ceaſed not, till the iudiciall ſentence was fulfilled. It was (doubtleſſe) a great argument of impartiall dealing, when as reſpect of former friendſhip could take no place.

Wherefore I thought good to record all the particulars aforeſaid; leaſt that deſcribing vices onely I ſhould ſeeme to flatter them, with whom I am now preſently conuerſant; or extolling onely the vertues of the Africans, I might hereafter be ſaide to ſue for their fauour (which I haue of purpoſe eſchewed) to the end that I might haue more free acceſſe vnto them. Moreouer, may it pleaſe you for this purpoſe to heare another reſemblance or ſimilitude. There was vpon a time a moſt wily bird, ſo indued by nature, that ſhe could liue as well with the fiſhes of the ſea, as with the fowles of the aire; wherefore ſhe was rightly called Amphibia. This bird being ſommoned before the king of birds to pay her yeerely tribute, determined foorthwith to change her element, and to delude the king; and ſo flying out of the aire, ſhe drencht herſelfe in the Ocean ſea. Which ſtrange accident the fiſhes woondring at, came flocking about Amphibia, ſaluting her, and asking her the cauſe of her comming. Good fiſhes (quoth the bird) know you not, that all things are turned ſo vpſide downe, that we wot not how to liue ſecurely in the aire? Our tyrannicall king (what furie haunts him, I know not) commanded me to be cruelly put to death, whereas no ſilly bird reſpected euer his commoditie as I haue done. Which moſt vniuſt edict I no ſooner heard of, but preſently (gentle fiſhes) I came to you for refuge. Wherefore vouchſafe me (I beſeech you) ſome odde corner or other to hide my head in; and then I may iuſtly ſay, that I haue found more friendſhip among ſtrangers, then euer I did in mine owne natiue countrie. With this ſpeech the fiſhes were ſo perſwaded, that Amphibia ſtaied a whole yeere among them, not paying one penie or halfepenie. At the yeeres ende the king of fiſhes began to demand his tribute, inſomuch that at laſt the bird was feſſed to pay. Great reaſon it is (ſaith the bird) that each man ſhould haue his due, and for my part I am contented to doe the dutie of a loyall ſubiect. Theſe words were no ſooner ſpoken, but ſhe ſuddenly ſpred her wings, and vp ſhe mounted into the aire. And ſo this bird, to auoide yeerely exactions and tributes, woulde eſtſoones change her element. Out of this fable I will inferre no other morall,

rall, but that all men doe most affect that place, where they finde least dammage and inconuenience. For mine owne part, when I heare the Africans euill spoken of, I wil affirme my selfe to be one of Granada: and when I perceiue the nation of Granada to be discommended, then will I professe my selfe to be an African. But herein the Africans shall be the more beholding vnto me; for that I will onely record their principall and notorious vices, omitting their smaller and more tolerable faults.

IOHN LEO HIS SECOND BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

HAuing in my first booke made mention of the cities, bounds, diuisions, and some other notable and memorable things contained in Africa; we will in this second part more fully, particularly, largely, and distinctly describe sundrie prouinces, townes, mountaines, situations of places, lawes, rites, and customes of people. Insomuch that we will leaue nothing vntouched, which may any way serue to the illustrating and perfecting of this our present discourse. Beginning therefore at the west part of Africa, we will in this our geographicall historie proceede eastward, till we come to the borders of Aegypt. And all this our narration following we will diuide into seuen bookes; whereunto (God willing) we purpose to annexe the eighth, which shall intreat of riuers, of liuing creatures, of trees, of plants, of fruits, of shrubs, and of such other most delightfull matters.

Of the region of Hea lying vpon the west part of Africa.

HEa being one of the prouinces of Maroco is bounded westward and northwarde with the maine Ocean, southwarde with the mountaines of Atlas, and eastward with the riuer which they call Esfualo. This riuer springeth out of the foresaide mountaine, discharging it selfe at length into the riuer of Tensift, and diuiding Hea from the prouince next adiacent.

Of

Of the situation and description of Hea.

THis region of Hea is an vneeuen and rough soile, full of rockie mountaines, shadie woods, and chrystall-streames in all places; being woonderfully rich, and wel stored with inhabitants. They haue in the said region great abundance of goates and asses, but not such plentie of sheepe, oxen, and horses. All kinde of fruites are very scarce among them, not, that the ground is vncapable of fruit, but because the people are so rude and ignorant in this behalfe, that very few of them are skilfull in planting, graffing, or pruning of trees. Whereof I was easily perswaded: for I remember that I founde among some gardiners of Hea great abundance of fruits. Of graine they haue not much plentie, except it be of barlie, mill, and panick. They haue great abundance of honie, which they vse in stead of ordinarie foode, but the waxe they cast away, little regarding it, because they know not the value thereof. Likewise there are found in this region certaine thornie trees bearing a grosse kinde of fruit, not vnlike vnto those oliues which are brought vnto vs from Spaine: the said fruit they call in their language *Arga*. Of this fruit they make a kinde of oile, being of a fulsome and strong sauour, which they vse notwithstanding for sauce and for lampes. *The fruit called Arga.*

The manner of liuing, and the foode of the people of Hea.

THis people for the most part eateth barlie-bread vnleuened, which is like rather vnto a cake, then to a loafe: this bread is baked in a kinde of earthen baking-pan, somewhat like vnto that wherewith in Italie they vse to couer iuncats and daintie dishes: neither shall you finde many in Hea which eate ouen-bread. They vse also a certaine vnsauourie and base kinde of meate, which in their language is called *Elhasid*, and is made in manner following: they cast barlie-meale into boiling water, continually tempering and stirring the same about with a sticke, till they perceiue it be sufficiently sodden. Then setting this pap or hastie-pudding vpon the table, and powring in some of their countrie-oile, all the whole familie stand round about the platter, and eate the said pap not with spoones, but with their hands and fingers. Howbeit in the spring and summer season they temper the said meale with milke, and cast in butter in stead of oile: and this kinde of meate is not vsuall among them, but only at supper. For in winter time they breake their fast with bread and honie; and in summer with milke, butter, and bread. Moreouer sometimes they vse to eate sodden flesh, whereunto some adde onions, other beanes, and some other, a kinde of seasoning or sauce called by them *Cuscusu*. With them tables and table-cloathes are quite out of vse, in stead whereof they spread a certaine round mat vpon the ground, which serueth among this rude people both for table, cloth, and all. *Elhasid.*

The

The apparell and cuſtomes of the foreſaid people of Hea.

THE greateſt part of them are clad in a kinde of cloath-garment made of wooll after the manner of a couerlet, called in their language, *Elchiſe*, and not vnlike vnto thoſe couerlets or blankets which the Italians lay vpon their beds. In theſe kinde of mantles they wrap themſelues; and then are they girt with a woollen girdle, not about their waſte, but about their hippes. They haue alſo a certaine piece of cloath of ten handfuls in length and two in bredth, wherewith they vſe to adorne their heads: theſe kinde of ornaments or head-tires they dye with the iuice of walnut-tree-rootes, being ſo put vpon their heads, that their crownes are alwaies bare. None of them weare any cap, except it be an olde man, or a man of learning; albeit learned men are verie rare among them: which caps of theirs are double and round, not much vnlike to the caps of certaine Phiſitians in Italy. You ſhall ſeldome finde any linnen ſhirts or ſmockes among this people; and that (as I ſuppoſe) either becauſe their ſoile will yeeld no flaxe nor hemp, or elſe for that they haue none skilfull in the arte of weauing. Their ſeats whereon they ſit, are nought elſe but certaine mats made of hayre and ruſhes. For beds they vſe a certaine kinde of hairie flockbed or mattreſſe; ſome of which beds are ten elles in length, ſome more, and ſome leſſe, yea ſome you ſhall finde of twenty elles long, but none longer: one part of theſe mattreſſes they lye vpon inſteed of a couch, and with the reſidue they couer their bodies as it were with blankets and couerlets. In the Spring-time alwaies they lay the hairie ſide next vnto their bodies, becauſe it is ſomewhat warmer; but in Sommer-time not regarding that ſide, they turne the ſmooth ſide vpwarde, and thereon they reſt themſelues. Likewiſe of ſuch baſe and harſh ſtuffe they make their cuſhions: being much like vnto the ſtuffe which is brought hither out of Albania and Turkie, to ſerue for horſe-cloathes: The women of Hea goe commonly with their faces vncouered, vſing for their huſwifery turned veſſels and cups of wood: their platters, diſhes, and other their kitchin-veſſels be for the moſt part of earth. You may eaſily diſcerne which of them is married, and who is not: for an vnmarried man muſt alwaies keepe his beard ſhauen, which, after hee be once married, hee ſuffereth to grow at length. The ſaide region bringeth foorth no great plentie of horſes, but thoſe that it doth bring foorth, are ſo nimble and full of mettall, that they will climbe like cats ouer the ſteepe and craggie mountaines. Theſe horſes are alwaies vnſhod: and the people of this region vſe to till their ground with no other cattell, but onely with horſes and aſſes. You ſhall here finde great ſtore of deere, of wilde goats, and of hares: Howbeit the people are no whit delighted in hunting. Which is the cauſe (as I thinke) why the ſaid beaſts do ſo multiply. And it is ſomwhat ſtrange, that ſo many riuers running through the countrey, they ſhould haue ſuch ſcarſitie of wa-

ter-

ter-mils: but the reason is, because euerie household almost haue a woodden mill of their owne, whereat their women vsually grinde with their hands. No good learning nor liberall artes are heere to be found; except it bee a little skill in the lawes, which some few chalenge vnto themselues; otherwise you shall finde not so much as any shadow of vertue among them. They haue neither Phisition nor Surgeon of any learning or account. But if a disease or infirmitie befall any of them, they presently seare or cauterize the sicke partie with red hot yrons, euen as the Italians vse their horses. *Cauterizing.* Howbeit some chirurgians there are among them, whose duty and occupation consisteth onely in circumcising of their male children. They make no sope in all the countrey, but instead thereof they vse to wash with lee made of ashes. They are at continuall warre, but it is ciuill and among themselues, insomuch that they haue no leisure to fight against other nations. Whosoeuer will trauell into a forren countrey must take either a harlot, or a wife, or a religious man of the contrarie part, to beare him companie. They haue no regard at all of iustice, especially in those mountaines which are destitute of gouernours or princes: yea euen the principall men of this verie region of Hea, which dwell within townes and cities, dare scarce prescribe any law or good order vnto the people, so great is their insolencie in all places. The cities of Hea are few in number, but they haue great store of villages, townes, and most strong castles: whereof (God willing) we will hereafter speake more at large.

Of Tednest one of the cities of Hea.

THE auncient citie of Tednest was built by the Africans vpon a most beautiful and large plaine, which they inuironed with a loftie wall built of bricke and lime. Likewise a certaine riuer running foorth of the citie serueth to fill vp the wall ditch. In this citie are certaine merchants that sell cloath, wherein the people of the same place are clad. Here is likewise vttered a kinde of cloth which is brought thither out of Portugall: howbeit they will admit no artificers, but taylors, botchers, carpenters, and a few gold-smithes which are Iewes. In this citie there are no innes, stoues, nor wine-tauerns: so that whatsoeuer merchant goes thither, must seeke out some of his acquaintance to remaine withall: but if he hath no friends nor acquaintance in the town, then the principall inhabitants there cast lots who should entertaine the strange merchant: insomuch that no stranger, be he neuer so meane, shall want friendly entertainment, but is alwaies sumptuously and honourably accepted of. *Their manner of entertaining strangers at Tednest.* But whosoeuer is receiued as a gueſt, must at his departure bestow some gift vpon his host in token of thankfulnes, to the ende he may be more welcome at his next returne. Howbeit if the saide stranger bee no merchant, he may chuse what great mans house he will to lodge in, beeing bound at his departure to no recompence nor gift. To be short, if any beg-

ger

ger or poore pilgrim passe the same way, he hath some sustenance prouided for him in a certaine hospitall, which was founded onely for the reliefe of poore people, and is maintained at the common charge of the citie. In the middest of the citie stands an auncient temple, beeing most sumptuously built and of an huge bignes, which was thought to bee founded at the verie same time when as the King of Maroco bare rule in those places. This temple hath a great cestern standing in the midst thereof, and it hath many priests and such kinde of people which giue attendance thereunto, and store it with things necessarie. In this citie likewise are diuers other temples, which, albeit they are but little, yet be they most cleanly and decently kept. There are in this citie about an hundred families of Iewes, who pay no yeerely tribute at all, but only bestow each of them some gratuitie vpon this or that nobleman, whom they thinke to fauour them most, to the ende they may enioy their fauour still: and the greatest part of the said citie is inhabited with Iewes. These Iewes haue certaine minting-houses wherein they stampe siluer coine, of which 170. Aspers (as they call them) doe weigh one ounce, beeing like vnto the common coine of Hungarie, sauing that this Asper is square, and the Hungarian coine is round. The inhabitants of Tedneſt are free from al tributes & yeerely taxations: howbeit if any summe of money be wanting for the erection of a publique building, or for any other common vse, the people is foorthwith assembled, and each man must giue according to his abilitie. This citie was left desolate in the yeere 918. of the Hegeira. At what time all the citizens thereof fled vnto the mountaines, and from thence to Maroco. The reason they say was, becausé the inhabitants were informed that their next neighbours the Arabians ioyned in league with the Portugall Captaines (who as then held the towne of Azaphi) and promised to deliuer Tedneſt into the hands of the Christians, which thing so danted the citizens, that they presently sought to saue themselues by flight. My selfe (I remember) sawe this citie vtterly ruined and defaced, the walles thereof beeing laide euen with the ground, the houses beeing destitute of inhabitants, and nothing at that time to be there seene, but onely the nests of rauens and of other birds. All this I saw in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira.

Tedneſt left desolate.

Of Teculeth a towne of Hea.

VPon the foote of an hill eighteene miles Eastwarde from Tedneſt stands a towne called by the Africans Teculeth, and containing about one thousand housholdes. Hard by this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof are most pleasant gardens, and all kindes of trees. Within the walles of the saide towne are many pits or wels, whereout they draw most cleere and pleasant water. Here also is to be seene a most stately and beautifull temple; as likewise fower hospitals and a monasterie of religious persons.

sons. The inhabitants of this towne are farre wealthier then they of Tednest; for they haue a most famous port vpon the Ocean sea, commonly called by merchants, Goz. They haue likewise great abundance of corne and pulse, which grow in the fruitfull fields adiacent. These also of Teculeth send waxe into Portugall to be solde: and they are verie curious in their apparell and about the furniture of their horses. When I my selfe was at Teculeth, I found there a certaine nobleman, who was the president or chiefe of their senate: this noblemans duety was both to procure tribute which was yeerely to be payed vnto the Arabians, and also to make attonement and reconciliation betweene them, when they were at ods. This man had gathered great riches vnto himselfe, which he imployed rather to purchase friends, then to fill his coffers: most liberall he was vnto the poore, most bountifull and fauourable vnto all his citizens; insomuch that all men did reuerence and honour vnto him, as vnto their father and best protectour. Of whose curtesie I my selfe also made triall: and being not meanely but verie sumptuously entertained by him, I remained with him for a certaine time, and read in his house diuers histories of African matters. This good man togither with his sonne was slaine in a skirmish against the Portugals: which was done, according to our computation, in the yeere of the Hegeira 923. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1514. After which misfortune we heard, that the citie was razed, that the people were part of them put to flight, part lead captiue, and the residue slaine by the enimy: all which particulars we haue declared more at large in that Booke, which is now lately printed and published concerning African affaires.

Waxe.

Teculeth destroyed by the Portugals. 1514.

Of Hadecchis a towne of Hea.

THE citie of Hadecchis being situate vpon a plaine, standeth eight miles Southward of Teculeth: it containeth seauen hundred families: and the wals, churches, and houses throughout this whole citie are all built of free stone. Through the midst of the towne runneth a large and faire streame, hauing many vines & galleries on both sides thereof. There be many Iewes artificers in this citie. The citizens here go somewhat decently apparelled: their horses are good: most of them exercise merchandize: also they stampe a kinde of coine; and they haue certaine yeerely faires or martes, whereunto the nations adioining do vsually resort. Here is to be sold great store of cattell, of butter, oyle, yron, and cloath, and their said mart lasteth fifteene dayes. Their women are very beautifull, white of colour, fat, comely, and trim. But the men beare a most sauage minde, being so extremely possessed with ielousie, that whomsoeuer they finde but talking with their wiues, they presently goe about to murther them. They haue no iudges nor learned men among them, nor any which can assigne vnto the citizens any functions and magistracies according to their worthines: so that hee rules like a king that excelleth the residue in wealth.

wealth. For matters of religion, they haue certaine Mahumetan prieſts to adminiſter them. Who neither pay tribute nor yeerely cuſtome, euen as they whom we laſt before mentioned. Heere I was entertained by a certaine curteous and liberall minded prieſt, who was exceedingly delighted with Arabian Poetrie. Wherefore being ſo louingly entertained, I read vnto him a certaine briefe treatiſe as touching the ſame argument: which he accepted ſo kindly at my hands, that he would not ſuffer mee to depart without great and bountifull rewards. From hence I trauelled vnto Maroco. And afterward I heard that this towne alſo, in the yeere of the Hegeira 922. was ſacked by the Portugals, and that the inhabitants were all fled into the next mountaines, and the verie ſame yeere I returned home to viſit my natiue countrey, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1513.

Hadecchis ſacked by the Portugals. 1513.

Of Ileuſugaghen a towne of Hea.

THis towne is ſituate vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine which is diſtant eight miles to the South of Hadecchis: it conſiſteth of about two hundred families: and by the foote of the hill runneth a ſmall riuer. Heere are no gardens at all, nor yet any trees which beare fruit: the reaſon whereof is (as I ſuppoſe) becauſe the inhabitants are ſuch ſlothfull and groſſe people, that they regard nothing but their barley and their oyle. They are at continuall warre with their next neighbours, which is performed with ſuch monſtrous bloodſhed and manſlaughter, that they deſerue rather the name of beaſts then of men. They haue neither iudges, prieſts, nor lawyers, to preſcribe any forme of liuing among them, or to gouerne their common-wealth: wherefore iuſtice and honeſtie is quite baniſhed out of their habitations. Thoſe mountaines are altogither deſtitute of fruits: howbeit they abound greatly with honie, which ſerueth the inhabitants both for food, and for merchandize to ſell in the neighbour-countries. And becauſe they know not what ſeruice to put their waxe vnto, they caſt it foorth, togither with the other excrements of honie. The ſaide towne of Ileuſugaghen hath a verie ſmall and narrow chappell, which will ſcarce containe a hundred perſons, whither notwithſtanding the people doe ſo ſlowly reſort, that they need not to haue any greater; ſo much do they neglect religion and pietie. Whenſoeuer they goe abroad, they carrie a dagger or a iauelin about with them: and you ſhall often heare of the ſlaughter of ſome one or other of their citizens. No people vnder heauen can be more wicked, trecherous, or lewdly addicted, then this people is.

I remember that I my ſelfe went once thither with a Seriffo or Mahumetan prieſt, (who made chalenge vnto the gouernment of Hea) to the ende that we might arbitrate certaine ſtrifes and contentions: for it were incredible to report, what cruell warres, partly for murthers, and partly for robberies, were practiſed among them. But becauſe the Seriffo had brought no lawyers with him, nor any iudges to decide controuerſies, he would needes, that I

ſhould

ſhould take that office vpon me. Immediately the townſmen come flocking about vs: one complaines that his neighbour hath ſlaine eight of his kinred and family; his neighbour on the contrarie alleageth, that the former had ſlaine ten of his familie; wherefore, according to the auncient cuſtome, he demaundeth to haue a ſumme of money giuen him. For (ſaith he) there is ſome recompence due vnto me, ſithens ten of my people haue beene ſlaine, and but eight of this my neighbours. Whereunto the other replied that the ſaide ten perſons were iuſtly ſlaine, becauſe they went about by violence to diſpoſſeſſe him of a certaine piece of ground which his father had left him by inheritance; but, that his eight were murthered onely for vniuſt reuenge, againſt all equitie and lawe. With theſe and ſuch like friuolous allegations we ſpent that whole day, neither could we decide any one controuerſie. About midnight we ſawe a great throng of people meet in the market-place, who made there ſuch a bloodie and horrible conflict, that the ſight thereof would haue affrighted any man, were he neuer ſo hard harted. Wherefore the ſaide Seriffo fearing leaſt thoſe lewd varlets would make ſome trecherous conſpiracie againſt him, and thinking it better to depart thence immediately, then to expect the concluſion of that fraye, wee tooke our iourney from that place to a towne called Aghilinghighil.

Of the towne of Teïjeut in Hea.

MOreouer, the tower of Teijeut ſtanding vpon a plaine ten miles Weſtward of Ileuſugaghen, containeth about three hundred houſholdes. The houſes and wall of this towne are built of bricke. The townesmen exerciſe husbandrie; for their ground is moſt fertile for barley; albeit it will ſcarcely yeeld any other graine. They haue pleaſant and large gardens, ſtored with vines, fig-trees, and peach-trees: alſo they haue great abundance of goates. About this towne are many lyons, whereby the townesmen are not a little endamaged: for they pray continually vpon their goats and vpon other of their cattell. Certaine of vs vpon time comming into theſe parts for want of a lodging were cõſtrained to repayre vnto a little cottage which we eſcried, being ſo olde, that it was in danger of falling: hauing prouided our horſes of prouender, we ſtopped vp all the doores and paſſages of the ſaid cottage with thornes and wood, as circumſpectly as poſſibly we could: theſe things happened in the moneth of Aprill, at what time they haue extreme heat in the ſame countrey. Wherefore we our ſelues got vp to the top of the houſe, to the end that in our ſleep we might be neere vnto the open ayer. About midnight we eſpied two monſtrous lyons, who were drawen thither by the ſent of our horſes, and endeuored to breake downe that fence of thornes which we had made. Whereupon the horſes being put in feare, kept ſuch a neighing, and ſuch a ſtirre, that we misdoubted leaſt the rotten cottage would haue fallen, and leaſt our ſelues ſhould haue become a pray vnto the lyons. But ſo ſoone as we perceiued

ceiued the day begin to breake, we foorthwith sadled our horses, and hyed vs vnto that place, where we knew the Prince and his armie lay. Not long after followed the destruction of this towne. For the greater part of the townesmen being slaine, the rest were taken by the Portugals, and were carried as captiues into Portugall. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 920. and in the yeere of our Lord 1513.

Teijeut destroyed by the Portugals.

Of Tesegdelt a towne of Hea.

THe towne of Tesegdelt being situate vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, and naturally enuironed with an high rocke in steade of a wall, containeth more then eight hundreth families. It is distant from Teijeut southward about twelue miles, and it hath a riuer running by it, the name whereof I haue forgotten. About this towne of Tesegdelt are most pleasant gardens and orchards, repleniſhed with all kinde of trees, and especially with walnut-trees. The inhabitants are wealthie, hauing great abundance of horses, neither are they constrained to pay any tribute vnto the Arabians. There are continuall warres betweene the Arabians and them, and that with great bloudshed and manslaughter on both parts. The villages lying neere vnto Tesegdelt do vsually carry all their graine thither, least they shoulde be depriued thereof by the enimie, who maketh daily inrodes and inuasions vpon them. The inhabitants of the foresaid towne are much addicted vnto curtesie and ciuilitie; and for liberalitie and bountie vnto strangers, they will suffer themselues to be inferiour to none other. At euery gate of Tesegdelt stande certaine watchmen or warders, which do most louingly receiue all incommers, enquiring of them, whether they haue any friends and acquaintaine in the towne, or no? If they haue none, then are they conducted to one of the best Innes of the towne, and hauing had entertainment there, according to their degree and place, they are friendly dismissed: and whatsoeuer his expences come to, the stranger paies nought at all, but his charges are defraied out of the common purse. This people of Tesegdelt are subiect also vnto iealousie; howbeit they are most faithfull keepers of their promise. In the very middest of the towne standes a most beautifull and stately temple, whereunto belong a certaine number of Mahumetan priests. And to the ende that iustice may be most duly administred among them, they haue a very learned iudge, who decideth all matters in the common wealth, except criminall causes onely. Their fieldes where they vse to sowe their corne, are, for the greater part vpon the mountaines. Vnto this verie towne I trauelled with the foresaide Seriffo in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1510.

The curtesie of the citizens of Tesegdelt towards strangers.

A

A description of the citie of Tagtess.

THE most ancient citie of Tagtess is built rounde, and standeth vpon the toppe of an hill: on the sides whereof are certaine winding steps hewen out of the hard rocke. It is about foureteene miles distant from Tesegdelt. By the foote of the saide hill runnes a riuer, whereout the women of Tagtess draw their water, neither haue the citizens any other drinke: and although this riuer be almost fixe miles from Tagtess, yet a man would thinke, looking downe from the citie vpon it, that it were but halfe a mile distant. The way leading vnto the said riuer being cut out of the rocke, in forme of a payre of stayres, is verie narrow. The citizens of Tagtess are addicted vnto theft and robberie, and are at continuall warre with their neighbours. They haue no corne-fields, nor any cattell, but onely vpon the said mountaine: they haue great store of bores; but such scarcitie of horses, that there is not one almost to bee found in the whole citie. The way through their region is so difficult, that they will suffer none to passe by without a publique testimoniall. While I was in that countrey, there came such a swarme of Locusts, that they deuoured the greatest part of their cornes which were as then ripe: insomuch that all the vpper part of the ground was couered with Locusts. Which was in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. that is, in the yeere of our Lord 1510. *Locusts.*

The towne of Eitdeuet.

FIfteene miles Southward from Tagtess stands another towne called Eitdeuet, being built vpon a plaine, and yet vpon the higher ground thereof. It containeth to the number of seuen hundred families; and hath in the midst thereof most cleere and coole fountaines. This towne is enuironed on all sides with rockes and mightie woods. In the said towne are Iewes of all occupations: and some there are which affirme, that the first inhabitants of this towne came by naturall descent from King *Dauid*: but so soone as the Mahumetan religion had infected that place, their owne lawe and religion ceased. Heere are great store of most cunning lawyers, which are perfectly well seene in the lawes and constitutions of that nation: for I remember that I my selfe sawe a very aged man, who could most readily repeate a whole volume written in their language, called by them *Elmudevuana*, that is to say, the body of the whole lawe. The said volume is diuided into three tomes, wherein all difficult questions are dissolued: together with certaine counsels or commentaries of a famous author, which they call *Melic*. They haue a kinde of tribunall or iudgement-hall, wherein all contentions happening betweene the citizens of this place, and their neighbour-cities, are presently decided and set through. Neither doe the said

said lawyers deale onely in common-wealth matters, but also in cases pertaining to religion: albeit in criminall cases the people doe not so greatly credit them, for indeede their learning little serueth them for that purpose. Being amongst them, it was my hap to soiourne in the house of a certaine lawyer, who was a man of great learning. This lawyer, to the end he might giue me more solemne entertainmēt, would needs inuite diuers learned men of his owne profession to beare vs companie at supper. After supper, we had many questions propounded: and amongst the residue this was one; namely, Whether any man might iustly sell that person for a bondslaue, who is nourished by any commoditie of the people. There was in companie at the same time a certaine aged Sire, hauing a graue beard and a reuerend countenance, vnto whom each one of them ascribed much honour; him they called in their owne language *Hegazzare*. Which name, when I had heard thrice or fower times repeated, I demanded of some that were in presence, what was the true signification thereof. They told me that it signified a butcher: for (say they) as a butcher knoweth right well the true anatomy of euery part of a beast; euen so can this aged Sire most learnedly dissolue all difficult questions & doubts of lawe. This people leadeth a most miserable and distressed life: their foode is barlie bread, oile arganicke, and goates-flesh. They know no vse of any other graine but barlie. Their women are very beautifull and of a louely hue: their men be strong and lustie, hauing haire growing vpon their brestes, and being very liberall and exceeding iealous.

Of Culeihat Elmuridin, that is to say, The rocke of disciples; a castle of Hea.

THis Culeihat Elmuridin is a castle built vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, hauing round about it diuers other mountaines of a like heighth, which are enuironed with craggie rocks and huge woods. There is no passage vnto this castle, but onely a certaine narrow path vpon one side of the mountaine. By the one side thereof stands a rocke, and vpon the other side the mountaine of Tesegdelt is within halfe a mile; and it is distant from Eitdeuet almost eighteene miles. This castle was built euen in our time by a certaine apostata or renouncer of the Mahumetan religion, called by them *Homar Seief*; who being first a Mahumetan preacher vnto the people, propounded vnto a great number of disciples and sectaries, whom he had drawen to be of his opinion, certaine new points of religion. This fellow seeing that he preuailed so with his disciples, that they esteemed him for some petie-god, became of a false preacher a most cruell tyrant, and his gouernment lasted for twelue yeeres. He was the chiefe cause of the destruction and ruine of the whole prouince. At length he was slaine by his owne wife, because he had vnlawfully lien with her daughter which she had by her former husband. And then was his peruerse and lewd dealing laide open vnto all men; for he is reported to haue beene vtterly ignorant of the

A pestiferous Mahumetan preacher.

lawes

lawes, and of all good knowledge. Wherefore not long after his deceaſe all the inhabitants of the region gathering their forces togither, ſlew euerie one of his diſciples and falſe ſectaries. Howbeit the nephew of the ſaid apoſtata was left aliue; who afterward in the ſame caſtle endured a whole yeeres ſiege of his aduerſaries, and repelled them, inſomuch that they were conſtrained to depart. Yea euen vntill this day he moleſteth the people of Hea, and thoſe which inhabite neere vnto him, with continuall warre, liuing vpon robberie and ſpoile; for which purpoſe he hath certaine horſemen, which are appointed to watch and to purſue trauellers, ſometimes taking cattel, and ſometimes men captiues. He hath likewiſe certaine gunners, who, although trauellers be a good diſtance off (for the common high way ſtandeth almoſt a mile from the caſtle) will put them in great feare. Howbeit all people doe ſo deadly hate him, that they will not ſuffer him to till one foote of ground, or to beare any dominion without the ſaid mountaine. This man hath cauſed his grandfathers body to be honorably buried in his caſtle, ſuffering him to be adored of his people, as if he were a god. Paſſing by that way vpon a certain time, I eſcaped their very bullets narrowly. The life, religion & manners of the foreſaid *Homar Seijef* I perfectly learned by a diſciple of his, hauing at large declared the ſame in a certaine briefe treatiſe, which I haue written concerning the Mahumetan religion.

A treatiſe written by Iohn Leo concerning the Mahumetan religion.

Of Igilingigil a towne of Hea.

MOreouer the Africans in olde time built a certaine towne vpon an hill, called by the inhabitants Igilingigil; being diſtant from Eitdeuet about ſix miles ſouthward, and containing almoſt fower hundred families. In this towne are ſundry artificers, employing themſelues onely about things neceſſarie, to the ende they may make their beſt gaine & aduantage thereby. Their ground is moſt fertile for barlie; as likewiſe they haue great abundance of honie and of oile Arganicke. The paſſage or way vnto this citie is very narrow, lying onely vpon one ſide of the hill. And it is ſo hard and difficult, that horſes cannot without great labour and perill goe vpon it. The inhabitants are moſt valiant people and wel exerciſed in armes, maintaining continuall warre againſt the Arabians, and that for the moſt part with very proſperous ſucceſſe, by reaſon of the naturall and ſtrong ſituation of the towne. A more liberall people then this, you ſhall hardly find. They generally exerciſe themſelues in making of earthen pots and veſſels, which (I thinke) none of their neighhours thereabout can doe.

Of

Of Tefethne a port and most famous mart-towne of Hea.

NEere vnto the Ocean sea standeth a citie, most strong both for situation and building, commonly called Tefethne, being westward of Ingilingigil about fortie miles. They say that this towne was built by certaine Africans, and that it containeth more then sixe hundred housholds. Here ships of meane burthen may safely harbour themselues; and hither the Portugall merchants resort to buy goats-skins and waxe. Corne-fields they haue none, but onely certaine hils, which yeeld great increase of barlie. Neere vnto this towne runs a certaine riuer, whereinto the ships put themselues in tempestuous weather. The towne-wall is built of white hewen stone and of bricke. They gather their yeerely customes and subsidies; all the whole summe whereof is equally distributed among such citizens as are meete for the warres. In this towne are great plentie of Mahumetan priests and of iudges; howbeit, for the inquirie of murther and such like crimes these iudges haue no authoritie. For if any kinsman of the slaine or wounded partie meeteth with him that did the fact, he is presently without any iudgement to haue *Legem talionis*, that is, like for like, inflicted vpon him: but if he escape that, he is banished seuen yeeres out of the citie: at the end of which seuen yeeres the malefactor hauing paide a certaine summe of money to the friends of the wounded or slaine partie, is afterward receiued into fauour, and accounted among the number of citizens. All the inhabitants of Tefethne are of a most white colour, being so addicted vnto friendship and hospitalitie, that they fauour strangers more then their owne citizens. They haue a most stately and rich hospitall; howbeit those which are there placed may for the most part remaine in citizens houses. My selfe being in companie with the Seriffo or Mahumetan prelate, continued for the space of three daies among this people; which three daies seemed three yeeres vnto me, both for the incredible number of fleas, and also for the most lothsome and intolerable stench of pisse, and of goates dung. For each citizen hath a flocke of goates, which they driue in the day-time to pasture, and at night they house them at home in their owne habitations, yea euen before their chamber-doores.

A punishment of murther.

Of the people called Ideuacal who inhabite the beginning of mount Atlas.

HAuing hitherto made report of al the cities of Hea, which are worthie of memorie, I thought good in this place (to the end that nothing should be wanting in this our discourse, which might delight the reader) to describe the inhabited mountaines also. Wherefore the greatest part of the people of

Hea

Hea dwelleth vpon mountaines, some whereof being called Ideuacal (for so are they named) inhabite vpon that part of Atlas, which stretcheth it selfe from the Ocean sea eastward, as farre as Igilingigil; and this ridge of mountaines diuideth Hea from Sus. The bredth of this mountaine is three daies iourney. For Tefethne, whereat this mountaine beginneth from the north, is distant from the towne of Messa, where it endeth southward, as farre as I coulde conueniently ride in three daies. Whosoeuer knoweth this region as well as my selfe, can sufficiently beare me witnes, howe it is replenished with inhabitants and countrey-villages. Their ordinary food is barly, goates-flesh, and hony. Shirts they weare none at all, nor yet any other garments which are sowen togither; for there is no man among them which knoweth how to vse the needle: but such apparell as they haue, hangeth by a knot vpon their shoulders. Their women weare siluer rings vpon their eares, some three, and some more. They haue siluer buttons of so great a scantling, that each one weigheth an ounce, wherewith they fasten their apparell vpon their shoulders, to the end it may not fall off. The nobler and richer sort of people among them weare siluer rings vpon their fingers and legs, but such as are poore weare ringes onely of iron or of copper. There are likewise certaine horses in this region, being so small of stature and so swift, as it is woonderfull. Heere may you finde great plentie of wilde goats, hares, and deere, and yet none of the people are delighted in hunting. Many fountaines are heere to be founde, and great aboundance of trees, but especially of walnut-trees. The greater part of this people liueth after the Arabians manner, often changing their places of habitation. A kinde of daggers they vse which are broad and crooked like a wood-knife; and their swords are as thicke as sithes, wherewith they mowe haie. When they go to the warres they carrie three or fower hunting toiles with them. In al the said mountaine are neither iudges, priestes, nor temples to be founde. So ignorant they are of learning, that not one among them either loueth or embraceth the same. They are all most lewd and wicked people, and applie their mindes vnto all kinde of villanie. It was tolde the Seriffo in my presence, that the foresaide mountaine was able to affoord twentie thousand soldiers for a neede.

Of the mountaine called Demensera.

THis mountaine also is a part of Atlas, beginning from the mountaine last before mentioned, and extending it selfe eastward for the space of about fiftie miles, as farre as the mountaine of Nifif in the territorie of Maroco. And it diuideth a good part of Hea from the region of Sus before named. It aboundeth with inhabitants, which are of a most barbarous and sauage disposition. Horses they haue great plenty: they go to warre oftentimes with the Arabians which border vpon them: neither will they permit any of the saide Arabians to come within their dominions. There are

no

no townes nor castles vpon all this mountaine: howbeit they haue certaine villages and cottages, wherein the better sort do hide their heads. Great store of noble men or gouernors they haue in all places, vnto whom the residue are very obedient. Their grounde yeeldeth barly and mill in abundance. They haue euery where many fountaines, which being dispersed ouer the whole prouince, do at length issue into that riuer, which is called in their language Siffaia. Their apparell is somewhat decent: also they possesse great quantitie of iron, which is from thence transported into other places; and these people are well giuen to thrift and good husbandry. Great numbers of Iewes remaine in this region, which liue as stipendarie soldiers vnder diuers princes, & are continually in armes; and they are reputed and called by other Iewes in Africa Carraum, that is to say, heretiques. They haue store of boxe, of mastick, and of high walnut trees. Vnto their Argans (for so they call a kinde of oliues which they haue) they put nuts; out of which two simples they expresse very bitter oile, vsing it for a sauce to some of their meates, and powring it into their lampes. I heard diuers of their principall men auouch, that they were able to bring into the field fiue and twentie thousand most expert soldiers. In my returne from Sus they did me exceeding honour, in regard of certaine letters, which I deliuered vnto them from my Lord the Seriffo: and to manifest their good will towardes the said Seriffo, they dismissed me with most ample gifts and gratuities. This was done in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira, that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord, 1520.

Plentie of yron.

Of the mountaine of Iron, commonly called Gebelelhadid.

THis mountaine is not to be accounted any part of Atlas: for it beginneth northward from the Ocean; and southward it extendeth to the riuer of Tensift; and diuideth Hea from Duccala and Maroco. The inhabitants are called Regraga. Vpon this hill are waste deserts, cleere fountaines, and abundance of hony, and of oyle Arganick, but of corne and pulse great scarcitie, vnlesse they make prouision thereof out of Duccala. Few rich men are heere to be founde, but they are all most deuout and religious after their manner. Vpon the toppe of this mountaine are many Hermites, which liue onely vpon the fruits of certaine trees, and drinke water. They are a most faithfull and peaceable nation. Whosoeuer among them is apprehended for theft or any other crime, is foorthwith banished the countrey for certaine yeeres. So great is their simplicitie, that whatsoeuer they see the Hermites do, they esteeme it as a miracle. They are much oppressed with the often inuasions of their neighbours the Arabians; wherefore this quiet nation choose rather to pay yeerely tribute, then to maintaine warre. Against the saide Arabians Mahumet the King of Fez directed his troupes: insomuch that they were constrained to leaue their owne countrey and to flee into the mountaines. But the people of the mountaines being aided

aided with Mahumet his forces, vanquished the Arabians; so that three thousand of them were slaine, and fower-score of their horses were brought vnto K. Mahumet. After which prosperous battaile, the said mountainers remained free from all tribute. I my selfe, while these things were a dooing, serued the king. It was in the yeere of the Hegeira 921. that is to say, in the yeere of our Lord 1512. When this people vndertake any warre, they bring commonly into the fielde an armie of twelue thousand men.

Of the region of Sus.

NOw comes the region of Sus to be considered of, being situate beyond Atlas, ouer against the territorie of Hea, that is to say, in the extreme part of Africa. Westward it beginneth from the Ocean sea, and southward from the sandie deserts: on the north it is bounded with the vtmost towne of Hea; and on the east with that mightie riuer whereof the whole region is named. Wherefore beginning from the west, wee will describe all those cities and places which shall seeme to be woorthy of memorie.

Of the towne of Messa.

THree small townes were built by the ancient Africans vpon the sea shoare (each being a mile distant from other) in that very place where Atlas takes his beginning: all which three are called by one onely name, to wit, Messa, and are enuironed with a wall builte of white stones. Through these three runneth a certaine great riuer called Sus in their language: this riuer in sommer is so destitute of water, that a man may easilie without perill passe ouer it on foote; but it is not so in the winter time. They haue then certaine small barkes, which are not meete to saile vpon this riuer. The place where the foresaide three townes are situate, aboundeth greatly with palme trees, neither haue they in a manner any other wealth; and yet their dates are but of small woorth, becausse they will not last aboue one yeere. All the inhabitants exercise husbandry, especially in the moneths of September and Aprill; what time their riuer encreaseth. And in May their corne groweth to ripenes. But if in the two foresaide moneths the riuer encreaseth not according to the woonted manner, their harueſt is then nothing woorth. Cattell are very scarce among them. Not farre from the sea side they haue a temple, which they greatly esteeme and honour. Out of which, Historiographers say, that the same prophet, of whom their great Mahumet foretold, shoulde proceed. Yea, some there are which sticke not to affirme, that the prophet *Ionas* was cast foorth by the whale vpon the shoare of Messa, when as he was sent to preach vnto the Niniuites. The rafters and beames of the saide temple are of whales bone. And it is a vsuall thing amongst them, to see whales of an huge and monstrous bignes cast vp dead

Dates which will last but one yeere.

Great store of whales.

vpon

vpon their shore, which by reason of their hugenes and strange deformitie, may terrifie and astonish the beholders. The common people imagine, that, by reason of a certaine secret power and vertue infused from heauen by God vpon the saide temple, each whale which woulde swim past it can by no meanes escape death. Which opinion had almost perswaded me; especially when at my being there, I my selfe sawe a mightie whale cast vp: vnlesse a certaine Iewe had tolde me, that it was no such strange matter: for (quoth he) there lie certaine rockes two miles into the sea on either side; and as the sea mooues, so the whales mooue also; and if they chaunce to light vpon a rock, they are easily wounded to death, and so are cast vpon the next shore. This reason more preuailed with me then the opinion of the people. My selfe (I remember) being in this region at the same time when my Lord the Seriffo bare rule ouer it, was inuited by a certaine gentleman, and was by him conducted into a garden: where he shewed me a whales rib of so great a size, that lying vpon the grounde with the conuexe or bowing side vpwarde in manner of an arche, it resembled a gate, the hollow or inwarde part whereof aloft we could not touch with our heads, as we rode vpon our camels backs: this rib (he said) had lien there aboue an hundred yeeres, and was kept as a miracle. Here may you finde vpon the sea-shore great store of amber, which the Portugal, & Fessan merchãts fetch from thence for a very meane price: for they scarcely pay a duckat for a whole ounce of most choise and excellent amber. Amber (as some thinke) is made of whales dung, and (as others suppose) of their Sperma or seede, which being consolidate and hardened by the sea, is cast vpon the next shore.

A whales rib of incredible greatnes.

Amber.

Of Teïjeut an ancient towne of Sus.

TEijeut being (as the report goeth) built by the ancient Africans in a most pleasant place, is diuided into three partes, whereof each one is almost a mile distant from another, and they all make a triangle or three-square. This Teijeut containeth fower thousand families, and standeth not farre from the riuer of Sus. The soile adiacent is most fruitfull for graine, for barlie, and for all kinde of pulse. They haue here likewise a good quantitie of sugar growing; howbeit, because they know not how to presse, boyle, and trim it, they cannot haue it but blacke and vnsauourie: wherefore so much as they can spare, they sell vnto the merchants of Maroco, of Fez, and of the land of Negros. Of dates likewise they haue plentie; neither vse they any money besides the gold which is digged out of their owne natiue soile. The women weare vpon their heads a peece of cloth woorth a duckat. Siluer they haue none, but such as their women adorne themselues with. The least iron-coine vsed amongst them, weigheth almost an ounce. No fruites take plentifully vpon their soile, but onely figs, grapes, peaches, and dates. Neither oile nor oliues are here to be found, except such as are brought from certaine

Store of sugar.

certaine mountaines of Maroco. A measure of oile is sold at Sus for fifteene duckats; which measure containeth an hundred and fiftie pounds Italian waight. Their peeces of golde (because they haue no certaine nor proportionable money) doe weigh, seuen of them & one third part, one ounce. Their ounce is all one with the Italian ounce: but their pound containeth eighteene ounces, and is called in their language *Rethl*; and an hundred *Rethl* make one such measure of oile as is aforesaid. For carrying of merchandize from place to place, their custome is to pay for a camels load, that is, for 700. pounds of Italiã waight, 3. peeces of gold, especially in the spring time: for in sõmer they pay somtimes 5. & somtimes 6. pieces of gold, as the time requireth. Here is that excellent leather dressed, which is called leather of Maroco; twelue hides whereof are here sold for sixe duckats, and at Fez for eight. *Cordouan leather of Maroco.* That part of this region which lieth toward Atlas hath many villages, townes, and hamlets: but the south part thereof is vtterly destitute of inhabitants, and subiect to the Arabians which border vpon it. In the midst of this citie standeth a faire and stately temple, which they call The greatest, and the chiefest, through the very midst whereof they haue caused a part of the foresaid riuer to runne. The inhabitants are sterne and vnciuill, being so continually exercised in warres, that they haue not one day of quiet. Each part of the citie hath a seuerall captaine and gouernour, who all of them together doe rule the common-wealth: but their authoritie continueth neuer aboue three moneths, which being expired, three other are chosen in their roume. Their apparell is somewhat like vnto that of the people of Hea: sauing that some of them make their shirtes, and other of their garments of a certaine kinde of white stuffe. A Canna (which is a measure proper to this region, containing two elles) of course cloth is solde for halfe a peece of gold: but fower and twentie elles of Portugall or Neatherlandish cloth, if it be any thing fine, is vsually sold there for fower peeces of their gold. *Good sale for cloth.* Likewise in this towne are many iudges and priests, which are conuersant onely in matters of religion: but in ciuill matters, he that hath most friends, obtaineth greatest fauour. Whensoeuer any one is slaine, all the friends of the slaine partie doe foorthwith conspire to kill the murtherer. Which if they cannot bring to passe, then is the malefactor by open proclamation banished out of the citie for seuen yeeres, vnlesse he will in despight of all men continually defend himselfe by maine force. They which returne from exile before the time prefixed, are punished in such manner as we will hereafter declare in place conuenient. But he that returnes after the seuen yeeres are once expired, maketh a feast vnto the Burghmasters, and so is restored againe to his former libertie. In this citie dwell many Iewes, and many notable artificers, who are not compelled to pay any yeerely tribute or taxation at all: except it be some small gratuitie vnto the principall citizens.

Of Tarodant a towne of Sus.

THE towne of Tarodant built by the ancient Africans, containeth about three thousand housholds. It is distant from Atlas Southward about fower miles, and fiue and thirtie miles Eastward of Teijeut. For the fruitfulnes of the soyle and manners of the people, it is all one with Teijeut; sauing that the towne is somewhat lesser, and the people somewhat more ciuill. For when the family of *Marin* gouerned at Fez, part of them also inhabited Sus, and in those daies Sus was the seat of the King of Fez his Vice-roy. There is to be seene euen at this present a certaine rocke lying vpon the ground, which was there placed by the foresaid king. But the said family of *Marin* decaying, the inhabitants recouered their former estate. Their garments are made partly of linnen, and partly of woollen; and they haue manie artificers of all sorts. All authoritie is committed vnto their noble or principall men; who gouerne fower by fower, sixe moneths onely. They are wholy giuen to peace: neither doe I read, that euer they endamaged any of their neighbours. Betweene this towne and Atlas are many villages and hamlets: but to the south of this towne lye the Arabians desert. The townesmen pay large yeerely tribute, to the ende that merchants may haue safe and secure passage to and fro. This towne in our time waged warre against the Arabians: which, that they might the more prosperously bring to passe, they yeelded themselues vnto my Lord the Seriffo; in the yeere of the Hegeira 920. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1511.

Of the castle of Gartguessem.

Gartguessem surprised by the Portugals.

THE castle of Gartguessem is built vpon the top of Atlas in a most impregnable place, ouer against that part of the Ocean whereinto the riuer of Sus dischargeth his streames: the soyle is most profitable and fruitfull. This place about twentie yeeres sithens the Portugals surprised; which caused the inhabitants of Hea and Sus foorthwith to arme themselues, to the end they might recouer the castle by maine force, which was by force taken from them. Wherfore leuying a mightie army as wel of home-bornes, as of strangers; they chose for their Captaine a certaine Mahumetan Seriffo, being a man descended of the family of *Mahumet*; and so besieged the castle. But they had vnhappie successe in this their enterprise; for they which came to the siege, seeing that they could not preuaile, and that so many of their companie were slaine, left the castle, and returned home. Except some few which remained with the Seriffo, to the end they might maintaine warre against the Christians, euen till the last hower. The inhabitants of Sus not being desirous to liue in warfare, allowed the Seriffo money for the maintenance of fiue hundred horses. Who hauing with his

his money hyred a great number of ſouldiers, and growing famous ouer all the region, at laſt vſurped the gouernment thereof. This I know for a certaintie, that the Seriffo, when I came from his court, had aboue three thouſand horſemen; and ſuch numbers of footemen and ſummes of money, as were almoſt innumerable.

Of Tedſi a towne of Sus.

TEdſi being a very great towne, and built many yeeres agoe in a moſt pleaſant and fertile place by the Africans, containeth moe then fower thouſand families: it is diſtant from Tarodant Eaſtward thirtie miles, from the Ocean ſea ſixtie miles, and from Atlas twentie. Heere groweth great abundance of corne, of ſugar, and of wilde woad. You ſhall finde in this citie many merchants, which come out of the lande of Negros for trafiques ſake. The citizens are great louers of peace & of all ciuilitie: and they haue a flouriſhing common-wealth. The whole citie is gouerned by ſixe Magiſtrates which are choſen by lots: howbeit their gouernment laſteth for ſixteene moneths onely. The riuer of Sus is diſtant three miles from hence. Here dwell many Iewes, which are moſt cunning goldſmiths, carpenters, and ſuch like artificers. They haue a verie ſtately temple and many prieſts and doctors of the lawe, which are maintained at the publike charge. Euery munday great numbers of Arabians both of the plaines and of the mountaines come hither to market. In the yeere of the Hegeira 920. this citie of their owne accord yeelded themſelues into the hands of the Seriffo: and here the common councell of the whole region was eſtabliſhed.

Store of ſugar and of woad.

Of the citie of Tagauoſt.

IN all Sus there is no citie comparable vnto that which is commonly called Tagauoſt: for it containeth aboue eight thouſand houſholdes: the wall thereof is builte of rough ſtones. From the Ocean it is diſtant about threeſcore miles, and about fiftie miles ſouthward of Atlas: and the report is, that the Africans built this citie. About ten miles from this place lieth the riuer of Sus: here are great ſtore of artificers and of ſhops: and the people of Tagauoſt are diuided into three parts. They haue continuall ciuill wars among themſelues, and one part haue the Arabians alwaies on their ſide; who for better pay will take parte ſometime with one ſide, and ſometime with the contrarie. Of corne and cattell heere is great abundance; but their wooll is exceeding courſe. In this citie are made certaine kindes of apparell, which are vſually carried for merchandize once a yeere to Tombuto, to Gualata, and to other places in the lande of Negros. Their market is twiſe euery weeke: their attire is ſomewhat decent and comely: their women are beautifull; but their men are of a tawnie and ſwart colour, by reaſon they are

descended of blacke fathers and white mothers. In this citie such carrie the greatest authoritie and credit, as are accounted the richest and the mightiest. I my selfe remained heere thirteene daies with the Seriffo his principall chancellour, who went thither of purpose to buie certaine slaues for his Lord, in the yeere of the Hegeira 919. which was in the yeere of our Lord, 1510.

Of the mountaine of Hanchisa.

THis mountaine beginneth westward from Atlas, and from thence stretcheth almost fortie miles eastward. At the foote of this mountaine standeth Messa, with the residue of the region of Sus. The inhabitants of this mountaine are such valiant footmen, that one of them will encounter two horsemen. The soile will yeeld no corne at all but barly; howbeit hony there is in great abundance. With snowe they are almost at all times troubled: but how patiently and strongly they can endure the colde, a man may easily gesse, for that the whole yeere throughout they weare one single garment onely. This people my Lord the Seriffo attempted often to bring vnder his subiection: howbeit he hath not as yet preuailed against them.

Of the mountaine of Ilalem.

THis mountaine beginneth westward from the mountaine aforesaid; on the east it abutteth vpon the region of Guzula, and southward vpon the plaines of Sus. The inhabitants are valiant, hauing great store of horses. They are at continuall warre among themselues, for certaine siluer mines: so that those which haue the better hande digge as much siluer as they can, and distribute to euery man his portion, vntill such time as they be restrained from digging by others.

Mines of siluer.

The situation and estate of the region of Maroco.

THis region beginneth westward from the mountaine of Nefisa, stretching eastward to the mountaine of Hadimei, and northward euen to that place where the most famous riuers of Tensift and Asfinual meete togither, that is to say, vpon the east border of Hea. This region is in a manner three square, being a most pleasant countrey, and abounding with many droues and flockes of cattell: it is greene euery where, and most fertile of all things, which serue for foode, or which delight the senses of smelling or seeing. It is altogither a plaine countrey, not much vnlike to Lombardie. The mountaines in this region are most colde and barren, insomuch that they will bring foorth nought but barly. Wherefore (according to our former order) beginning at the west part of this region, we will proceed in our description eastward.

Of

Of Elgihumuha a towne of Maroco.

VPon that plaine which is about seuen miles distant from Atlas, and not farre from the riuer of Sesseua, standeth a towne called by the inhabitants Elgihumuha, which was built, as they suppose, by the Africans. A while after it was brought vnder the subiection of certaine Arabians, about that verie time when the family of Muachidin aforesaid began to reuolt from the kingdome. And at this day the ruines and reliques of this towne can scarce be seene. The Arabians which now dwel thereabout do sow so much ground onely, as to supply their owne necessities; and the residue they let lye vntilled and fruitles. Howbeit when the countrey thereabout was in flourishing estate, the inhabitants payed yeerely vnto the Prince for tribute 100000. ducates: and then this towne contained aboue sixe thousand families. Trauelling that way I was most friendly entertained by a certaine Arabian, and had good experience of the peoples liberality: sauing that I heard of some, that they were most trecherous and deceitfull.

Of the castle of Imegiagen.

THe castle of Imegiagen is built vpon the top of a certaine hil of Atlas, being so fortified by naturall situation, that it neither hath nor needeth any wall. It standeth southward of Elgihumuha (as I take it) 25. miles. This castle was in times past vnder the iurisdiction of the noble men of that region, vntill such time as it was taken by one *Homar Essuef* an apostata from the Mahumetan religion, as we will afterward declare. The said *Homar* vsed such monstrous tyrannie in that place, that neither children, nor women big with childe could escape his crueltie; insomuch that he caused the vnborne infants to bee ripped out of their mothers wombes, and to be murthered. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 900, and so that place remained destitute of inhabitants In the yeere 920. of the Hegeira the said region began to be inhabited anew: howbeit now there can but one side of the mountaine onely be tilled, for the plaine vnderneath is so dangerous, both by reason of the daily incursions of the Arabians, and also of the Portugals, that no man dare trauell that way.

The crueltie of Homar Essuef.

Of the towne of Teneſſa.

VPon a certaine hill of Atlas named Ghedmin standeth a towne, which was built (as some report) by the ancient Africans, and called by the name of Teneſſa, being a most strong and defensible place, and being distant about eight miles eastward from the riuer of Asifinuall. At the foote of the said hill lieth a most excellent plaine, which, were it not for the lewd thee-

uiſh Arabians, would yeeld an incomparable crop. And becauſe the inhabitants of Teneſſa are depriued of this notable commoditie, they till onely that ground which is vpon the ſide of the mountaine, and which lieth betweene the towne and the riuer. Neither doe they enioy that gratis; for they yeerely pay vnto the Arabians for tribute the third part of their corne.

Of the new towne of Delgumuha.

VPon the top of a certaine high mountaine was built in our time a moſt large and impregnable forte, being enuironed on all ſides with diuers other mountaines, and called by the inhabitants New Delgumuha. Beneath the ſaid mountaine ſpringeth Aſifinuall, which word ſignifieth in the African toong, the riuer of rumor, becauſe that breaking foorth by the ſide of the hill with a monſtrous noiſe, it maketh a moſt deepe gulfe, much like vnto that, which the Italians call *Inferno di Tivoli*. The ſaid forte containeth almoſt a thouſand families. It was ſometime gouerned by a certaine tyrant, which came thither out of the king of Maroco his court. Here may you finde great ſtore of ſoldiers both horſemen and footemen. They gather yeerely tribute of the people bordering vpon Atlas, to the ſumme of a thouſand crownes. They haue alwaies had great league and familiaritie with the Arabians, each of whom haue accuſtomed to ſalute and gratifie the other with mutuall gifts: for which cauſe they haue oftentimes much prouoked the kings of Maroco againſt them. They haue alwaies beene great louers of ciuilitie, and haue worne neat and decent apparell; neither ſhall you find any corner in the whole towne which is not well peopled. In this towne are plentie of artificers, for it is but fiftie miles from the citie of Maroco. Vpon the ſaid mountaine there are great ſtore of gardens and orchards; which yeeld the inhabitants abundance of fruit yeerely. They reape likewiſe barlie, hempe, and cotton; and their goates are almoſt innumerable. Likewiſe they haue many prieſts and iudges: but as touching their mindes, they are ignorant, froward, and exceedingly addicted to ielouſie. In this towne I aboad certaine daies with a kinſman of mine, who while he dwelt at Fez being impoueriſhed with extreme ſtudie of Alchimie, was conſtrained to flee vnto this towne, where in proceſſe of time he became Secretarie vnto the gouernour.

Of the citie of Imizmizi.

VPon a certaine part of Atlas ſtandeth a citie called Imizmizi. Weſtward it is diſtant from new Delgumuha about fourteene miles: and this citie the Arabians are reported to haue built. Neere vnto this citie lieth the common high way to Guzula ouer the mountaines of Atlas, being commonly called Burris, that is, A way ſtrowed with feathers: becauſe ſnow falles often thereupon, which a man would thinke rather to be feathers then ſnow. Not far from this towne likewiſe there is a very faire and large plaine,

which

which extendeth for the ſpace of thirtie miles, euen to the territorie of Maroco. This moſt fertile plaine yeeldeth ſuch excellent corne, as (to my remembrance) I neuer ſaw the like. Sauing that the Arabians and ſoldiers of Maroco doe ſo much moleſt the ſaid plaine countrie, that the greater part thereof is deſtitute of inhabitants: yea, I haue heard of many citizens that haue forſaken the citie it ſelfe; thinking it better to depart, then to be daily oppreſſed with ſo many inconueniences. They haue very little money, but the ſcarcitie thereof is recompenced by their abundance of good ground, and their plentie of corne. In the time of my aboad with them I went vnto a certaine Hermite, which they called **Sidi Canon*: which famous and woorthie man gaue me ſuch friendly entertainment, as I cannot eaſily expreſſe.

* *Sidi* ſignifieth a Saint in the Arabian toong.

Of the three townes of Tumelgaſt.

THeſe three townes called by the name of Tumelgaſt are ſituate vpon a plaine, about thirtie miles from Maroco, and fourteene miles northward of Atlas, being repleniſhed with palme-trees, vines, and all other trees that beare fruit. Their fields are very large and fertill, were they not continually waſted by the lewd Arabians. So few are the inhabitants of theſe three townes, that I thinke there are not in all aboue fifteene families, all which are ioined in affinitie and kinred vnto the foreſaid hermite: for which cauſe they are permitted to till ſome part of that plaine, without paying of any tribute vnto the Arabians. Saue onely, that they entertaine the Arabians when they trauell that way. Their lowly and baſe habitations a man would take rather to be hogs-cotes, then dwelling places for men: hence it is, that they are ſo continually vexed with fleas, gnats, and other ſuch vermine. Their water is exceeding ſalt. This prouince alſo I peruſed in the companie of my deere friend *Sidi Iehie*, who went thither to gather vp the tribute of the countrie on the behalfe of the king of Portugall. This *Sidi* was appointed gouernour ouer all that circuit which is called by them Azafi.

Of the towne of Teſraſt.

THis towne is ſituate vpon the banke of the riuer Aſifelmel. It ſtandeth weſtward of Maroco fourteen miles, & about twētie miles from Atlas. Round about this towne they haue diuers gardens & encloſures abounding with dates and corne; and the chiefe part of the inhabitants earne their liuing with gardening. Howbeit ſometimes the increaſe of their riuer is ſo great, that it drowneth all their gardens and corne-fields. And they are by ſo much the more miſerable, in regard that the Arabians all ſummer-time doe poſſeſſe the whole region, deuouring all things which the poore husbandmen by their great care and induſtrie had prouided. With theſe people I made no longer tarrying but onely till I could haue well baited my horſe: howbeit in that ſhort time I hardly eſcaped with life and goods, from certain Arabian theeues.

A most exact description of the great and famous citie of Maroco.

THis noble citie of Maroco in Africa is accounted to be one of the greateſt cities in the whole world. It is built vpon a moſt large field, being about fourteene miles diſtant from Atlas. One *Ioſeph* the ſonne of *Teſfin*, and king of the tribe or people called Luntuna, is reported to haue beene the founder of this citie, at that very time when he conducted his troupes into the region of Maroco, and ſetled himſelfe not farre from the common high way, which ſtretcheth from Agmet ouer the mountaines of Atlas, to thoſe deſerts where the foreſaid tribe or people doe vſually inhabite. Here may you behold moſt ſtately and woonderfull workmanſhip: for all their buildings are ſo cunningly and artificially contriued, that a man cannot eaſily deſcribe the ſame. This huge and mighty citie, at ſuch time as it was gouerned by *Hali* the ſonne of king *Ioſeph*, contained moe then 100000. families. It had fower and twenty gates belonging thereto, and a wall of great ſtrength and thicknes, which was built of white ſtone and lime. From this citie the riuer of Tenſift lieth about ſixe miles diſtant. Here may you behold great abundance of temples, of colleges, of bath-ſtoues, and of innes, all framed after the faſhion and cuſtome of that region. Some were built by the king of the tribe of Luntuna, and others by *Elmuachidin* his ſucceſſor: but the moſt curious and magnificent temple of all, is that in the midſt of the citie which was built by *Hali* the firſt king of Maroco, and the ſon of *Ioſeph* aforeſaid, being commonly called the temple of *Hali ben Ioſeph*. Howbeit one *Abdul-Mumen* which ſucceeded him, to the ende he might vtterly aboliſh the name of *Hali*, and might make himſelfe onely famous with poſteritie, cauſed this ſtately temple of Maroco to be razed, and to bee reedified ſomewhat more ſumptuouſly then before. Howbeit he loſt not onely his expences, but failed of his purpoſe alſo: for the common people euen till this day doe call the ſaid Temple by the firſt and auncienteſt name. Likewiſe in this citie not farre from a certaine rocke was built a Temple by him that was the ſeconde vſurper ouer the kingdome of Maroco: after whoſe death his nephew *Manſor* enlarged the ſaide Temple fiftie cubites on all ſides, and adorned the ſame with manye pillars, which he commanded to be bronght out of Spaine for that purpoſe. Vnder this temple he made a ceſterne or vault as bigge as the temple it ſelfe: the roofe of the ſaide temple he couered with lead: and at euery corner he made leaden pipes to conueigh raine water into the ceſterne vnderneath the temple. The turret or ſteeple is built of moſt hard and well framed ſtone, like vnto *Veſpaſian* his Amphitheatrum at Rome, containing in compaſſe moe then an hundreth elles, and in height exceeding the ſteeple of Bononia. The

The firſt founder of Maroco.

Maroco in times paſt contained aboue 100000. families.

Manſor the king of Maroco.

ſtaires

staires of the said turret or steeple are each of them nine handfuls in bredth, the vtmost side of the wall is ten, and * the thicknes of the turret is fiue. The said turret hath seauen lofts, vnto which the staires ascending are very lightsome: for there are great store of windowes, which to the ende they may giue more light, are made broader within then without. Vpon the top of this turret is built a certaine spire or pinnacle rising sharpe in forme of a sugar-loafe, and containing fiue and twentie elles in compasse, but in height being not much more then two speares length: the saide spire hath three lofts one aboue another, vnto euerie of which they ascend with woodden ladders. Likewise on the top of this spire standeth a golden halfe moone, vpon a barre of iron, with three spheares of golde vnder it; which golden spheares are so fastened vnto the saide iron barre, that the greatest is lowest, and the least highest. It woulde make a man giddie to looke downe from the top of the turret; for men walking on the grounde, be they neuer so tall, seeme no bigger then a childe of one yeere old. From hence likewise may you plainly escrie the promontorie of Azaphi, which notwithstanding is an hundreth and thirtie miles distant. But mountaines (you will say) by reason of their huge bignes may easily be seene a farre off: howbeit from this turret a man may in cleere weather most easily see fiftie miles into the plaine countries. The inner part of the saide temple is not very beautifull. But the roofe is most cunningly and artificially vaulted, the timbers being framed and set togither with singular workmanship, so that I haue not seene many fairer temples in all Italy. And albeit you shall hardly finde any temple in the whole worlde greater then this, yet is it very meanly frequented; for the people do neuer assemble there but onely vpon fridaies. Yea a great part of this citie, especially about the foresaid temple lieth so desolate and void of inhabitants, that a man cannot without great difficultie passe, by reason of the ruines of many houses lying in the way. Vnder the porch of this temple it is reported that in old time there were almost an hundreth shops of sale-bookes, and as many on the other side ouer against them: but at this time I thinke there is not one booke-seller in all the whole citie to be founde. And scarcely is the third part of this citie inhabited. Within the wals of Maroco are vines, palme-trees, great gardens, and most fruitefull corne-fields: for without their wals they can till no ground, by reason of the Arabians often inrodes. Know yee this for a certaintie, that the saide citie is growen to vntimely decay and old age: for scarcely fiue hundreth & sixe yeeres are past, since the first building thereof, forasmuch as the foundations thereof were laide in the time of *Ioseph* the sonne of *Tesfin*, that is to say, in the 424. yeere of the Hegeira. Which decay I can impute to none other cause, but to the iniurie of continuall warres, and to the often alterations of magistrates and of the common wealth. After king *Ioseph* succeeded his sonne *Hali*, and the sonne of *Hali* was ordained gouernour after his fathers decease. In whose time sprung vp a factious crue, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan preacher named *Elmaheli*, being a man both borne & brought

* *Obscurum.*

Great store of bookes in olde time to be sold in Maroco.

vp in the mountaines. The saide *Elmaheli* hauing leuied a great army, waged warre against *Abraham* his soueraigne Lord. Whereupon king *Abraham* conducting another armie against him, had marueilous ill successe: and after the battaile ended, his passage into the citie of Maroco was so stopped and restrained, that he was forced with a fewe soldiers, which remained yet aliue, to flee eastward to the mountains of Atlas. But *Elmaheli* not being satisfied with expelling his true soueraigne out of his owne kingdome, commaunded one of his captaines called *Abdul Mumen*, with the one halfe of his armie to pursue the distressed king, while himselfe with the other halfe laide siege to Maroco. The king with his followers came at length vnto Oran, hoping there to haue renued his forces. But *Abdul Mumen* and his great armie pursued the saide king so narrowly, that the citizens of Oran told him in plaine termes, that they would not hazard themselues for him. Wherefore this vnhappie king beeing vtterly driuen to dispayre, set his Queene on horsebacke behinde him, and so in the night time road foorth of the citie. But perceiuing that he was descried and knowen by his enimies, he fled foorthwith vnto a certaine rocke standing vpon the sea-shore: where, setting spurs to his horse-side, he cast himselfe, his most deere spouse, and his horse downe headlong, and was within a while after found slaine among the rockes and stones, by certaine which dwelt neere vnto the place. Wherefore *Abdul Mumen* hauing gotten the victorie, returned in triumphant manner toward Maroco, where the foresaide *Elmaheli* was deceased before his comming, in whose place *Abdul* was chosen King and Mahumetan prelate ouer the fortie disciples, and tooke tenne persons to be of his priuie councell, which was a new inuention in the law of Mahumet. This *Abdul Mumen* hauing besieged the citie of Maroco for the space of an whole yeere, at last ouercame it: and killing *Isaac* the onely sonne of King *Abraham* with his owne hand, he commaunded all the soldiers, and a good part of the citizens to be slaine. This mans posteritie raigned from the fiue hundred sixteenth, to the sixe hundred sixtie eight yeere of the Hegeira, and at length they were dispossessed of the kingdome by a certaine king of the Tribe called *Marin*. Now, attend (I beseech you) and marke, what changes and alterations of estates befell afterwards. The family of *Marin* after the said kings decease bare rule till the yeere of the Hegeira 785. At length the kingdome of Maroco decreasing dayly more and more, was gouerned by kings which came out of the next mountaine. Howbeit, neuer had Maroco any gouernours which did so tyrannize ouer it, as they of the family called *Marin*. The principall court of this family was holden for the most part at Fez; but ouer Maroco were appointed Vice-royes and deputies: insomuch that Fez was continually the head and Metropolitan citie of all Mauritania, and of all the Western dominion: euen as (God willing) we will declare more at large in our briefe treatise concerning the law and religion of Mahumet. But now hauing made a sufficient digression, let vs resume the matter subiect where we left. In the said citie of Maroco is

The miserable death of Abraham king of Maroco and of his Queene.

a moſt impregnable caſtle, which, if you conſider the bignes, the walles, the towers, and the gates built all of perfect marble, you may well thinke to be a citie rather then a caſtle. Within this caſtle there is a ſtately temple, hauing a moſt loftie and high ſteeple, on the top whereof ſtandeth an halfe moone, and vnder the halfe moone are three golden ſpheares one bigger then another, which all of them togither weigh 130000. ducates. Some kings there were, who being allured with the value, went about to take downe the faide golden ſphears: but they had alwaies ſome great misfortune or other, which hindered their attempt: inſomuch that the common people thinke it verie dangerous, if a man doth but offer to touch the ſaid ſphears with his hand. Some affirme that they are there placed by ſo forcible an influence of the planets, that they cannot be remooued from thence by any cunning or deuice. Some others report that a certaine ſpirite is adiured by Arte-magique, to defend thoſe ſphears from al aſſaults and iniuries whatſoeuer. In our time the king of Maroco neglecting the vulgar opinion, would haue taken down the ſaid ſphears, to vſe them for treaſure againſt the Portugals, who as then prepared themſelues to battell againſt him. Howbeit his counſellours would not ſuffer him ſo to doe, for that they eſteemed them as the principall monuments of all Maroco. I remember that I read in a certaine hiſtoriographer, that the wife of King *Manſor*, to the ende ſhe might be famous in time to come, cauſed thoſe three ſphears to be made of the princely and pretious iewels which her husband *Manſor* beſtowed vpon her, and to be placed vpon the temple which he built. Likewiſe the ſaid caſtle containeth a moſt noble college, which hath thirtie hals belonging thereunto. In the midſt whereof is one hall of a maruellous greatnes, wherein publique lectures were moſt ſolemnely read, while the ſtudie of learning flouriſhed among them. Such as were admitted into this college had their victuals and apparell freely giuen them. Of their profeſſours ſome were yeerely allowed an hundred, and ſome two hundred ducates, according to the qualitie of their profeſſion: neither would they admit any to heare them read, but ſuch as perfectly vnderſtood what belonged to thoſe Arts which they profeſſed. The walles of this beautifull hall are moſt ſtately adorned with painting and caruing, eſpecially of that hall where lectures were woont publiquely to be read. All their porches and vaulted roofes are made of painted and glittering ſtones, called in their language *Ezzulleia*, ſuch as are yet vſed in Spaine. In the midſt of the ſaid building is a moſt pleaſant and cleare fountaine, the wall whereof is of white and poliſhed marble, albeit low-built, as in Africa for the moſt part ſuch wals are. I haue heard that in old time here was great abundance of ſtudents, but at my beeing there I found but fiue in all: and they haue now a moſt ſenceleſſe profeſſour, and one that is quite voide of all humanitie.

Three golden ſphears.

A great college.

In the time of mine abode at Maroco I grew into familiar acquaintance with a certaine Iewe, who albeit his skill in the law was but meane, was notwithſtanding exceeding rich and well ſeene in hiſtories. This Iewe in regard

gard of many singular duties which he performed to his prince, found the kings bountie and liberalitie extended vnto him. All others which beare any publike office are(in mine opinion) men of no high reach. Moreouer the foresaide castell(as I remember) hath twelue courts most curiously and artificially built by one *Manſor*. In the first lodged about fiue hundreth Christians, which carried crosse-bowes before the king whither soeuer he went. Not farre from thence is the lodging of the Lord Chancellour and of the kings priuie counsell, which house is called by them, The house of affaires. The third is called The court of victorie; wherein all the armour and munition of the citie is laide vp. The fourth belongeth to the great Master of the kings horse. Vpon this court three stables adioine,each one of which stables will containe two hundreth horses. Likewise there are two other ostleries,wherof one is for mules,and the other for an hundreth of the kings horses onely. Next vnto the stables were two barnes or garners adioining, in two seuerall places,in the lower of which barnes was laide straw,and barly in the other. There is also another most large place to laye vp corne in, euerie roume whereof will containe moe then three hundreth bushels. The couer of the saide roume hath a certaine hole whereunto they ascend by staires made of stone. Whither the beasts laden with corne being come, they powre the saide corne into the hole. And so when they woulde take any corne from thence, they do but open certaine holes below, suffring so much corne to come foorth as may serue their turnes, and that without any labour at all. There is likewise a certaine other hall, where the kings sonne, and the sonnes of noble men are instructed in learning. Then may you beholde a certaine fower-square building, containing diuers galleries with faire glasse windowes, in which galleries are many histories most curiously painted: heere likewise the glittering and gilt armour is to be seene. Next vnto this building is another, wherein certaine of the kings guard are lodged: then followes that wherein state-matters are discussed: whereunto adioineth also another,which is appointed for ambassadours to conferre with the kings priuie counsell in. Likewise the kings concubines and other ladies of honour haue a most conuenient place assigned them: next vnto which standeth the lodging of the kings sonnes. Not farre from the castell wall, on that side which is next vnto the fields, may you behold a most pleasant and large garden, containing almost all kinde of trees that can be named. Moreouer, there is a sumptuous and stately porch built of most excellent square marble: in the midst whereof standeth a piller with a lion very artificially made of marble, out of the mouth of which lion issueth most cleere and christall water, falling into a cesterne within the porch: at each corner of the saide porch standeth the image of a leopard framed of white marble, which is naturally adorned with certaine blacke spots: this kinde of particoloured marble is no where to be founde but onely in a certaine place of Atlas, which is about an hundreth & fiftie miles distant from Maroco. Not farre from the garden stands a certaine woode or parke walled

Excellent spotted marble.

led round about: And here I thinke no kinde of wilde beasts are wanting: for heere you may behold elephants, lions, stagges, roes, and such like: howbeit the lions are separated in a certaine place from other beasts, which place euen to this day is called The lions den. Wherefore such monuments of antiquity as are yet extant in Maroco, albeit they are but few, do notwithstanding sufficiently argue, what a noble citie it was in the time of *Manſor*. At this present al the courts and lodgings before described lie vtterly voide and desolate: except perhaps some of the kings ostlery which tend his mules and horses do lie in that court, which we saide euen now was to lodge archers and crossebowe-men: all the residue are left for the fowles of the aire to nestle in. That garden which you might haue named a paradise in olde time, is now become a place where the filth and dung of the whole citie is cast foorth. Where the faire and stately librarie was of old, at this present there is nothing else to be founde, but hens, dooues, and other such like foules, which builde their nests there. Certaine it is, that the foresaid *Manſor*, whom we haue so often mentioned, was a most puissant and mightie prince: for it is well knowen that his dominion stretched from the towne of Messa to the kingdome of Tripolis in Barbary, which is the most excellent region of Africa, and so large, that a man can hardly trauell the length therof in foureſcore & ten daies, or the bredth in fifteene. This *Manſor* likewise was in times past Lord of all the kingdome of Granada in Spaine. Yea, his dominion in Spaine extended from Tariffa to Aragon, & ouer a great part of Castilia and of Portugall. Neither did this *Iacob* surnamed *Manſor* only possesse the foresaid dominiõs, but also his grandfather *Abdul Mumen*, his father *Ioseph*, & his sonne *Mahumet Enasir*, who being vanquished in the kingdome of Valençia, lost 60000. soldiers horsemen & footemen: howbeit himselfe escaped & returned to Maroco. The Christians being encouraged with this victorie, refrained not from warre, till, within 30. yeeres space, they had woon all the townes following, to wit, Valençia, Denia, Alcauro, Murcia, Cartagena, Cordoua, Siuillia, Iaen, and Vbeda. After which vnhappie warre succeeded the decay of Maroco. The said Mahumet deceasing, left behinde him ten sonnes of a full and perfect age, who contended much about the kingdome. Hereupon it came to passe, while the brethren were at discord, and assailed each other with mutuall warres, that the people of Fez called Marini, and the inhabitants of other regions adiacent, began to vsurpe the gouernment. The people called Habdulvad enioyed Tremizen, expelling the king of Tunis, and ordaining some other, whom they pleased, in his stead. Now haue you heard the end of *Manſor* his progenie and successors. The kingdome therefore was translated vnto one *Iacob* the sonne of *Habdulach*, who was the first king of the familie called Marin. And at length the famous citie of Maroco it selfe, by reason of the Arabians continuall outrages, fell into most extreme calamitie: so great is the inconstancie of all earthly things. That which we haue here reported as touching Maroco, partly we saw with our owne eies, partly we read in the historie of one *Ibnu*

This king called Manſor was he vnto whom Rasis that famous phisitian dedicated his Booke.

The huge dominions of king Manſor.

The Christians happie successe against the Moores.

Ibnu Abdul.

Abdul Malich. *Abdul Malich*, a most exact chronicler of the affaires of Maroco, and partly we borrowed out of that treatise, which our selues haue written concerning the law of Mahumet.

Of the towne of Agmet.

THE towne of Agmet built of old by the Africans vpon the top of a certaine hill which beginneth almost from Atlas, is distant from Maroco about fower and twentie miles. In times past, when *Muachidin* was prince thereof, it contained moe then sixe thousand families: at what time the people were very ciuill, and had such plentie and magnificence of all things, that many would not sticke to compare this towne with the citie of Maroco. It had on all sides most pleasant gardens, and great store of vines, whereof some grew vpon the mountaine it selfe, and others on the valley. By the foote of this hill runneth a faire riuer, which springing foorth of Atlas, falleth at length into Tensift. The field which lieth neere vnto this riuer is said to be so fruitfull, that it yeeldeth euery yeere fiftie fold encrease. The water of this riuer looketh alwaies white; albeit if a man stedfastly behold the said riuer, it may seeme vnto him in colour to resemble the soile of Narnia, or the riuer Niger of Vmbria in Italie. And some there are which affirme, that the very same riuer runneth vnder ground to Maroco, and not to breake foorth of the earth, till it come to a certaine place very neere vnto the said citie. Many princes in times past, being desirous to know the hidden and intricate passages of the said riuer, sent certaine persons into the hollow caue, who the better to discerne the same, carried candles and torches with them. But hauing proceeded a little way vnder ground, there met them such a flaw of winde, that blew out their lights, and perforce draue them backe to the great hazard of their liues, so that they said they neuer felt the like. They affirme likewise, that, the riuer being full of rocks, which the water driueth to and fro, and by reason of the manifold chanels and streames, their passage was altogether hindred. Wherefore that secret remaineth vnknowne euen till this day, neither is there any man so hardie as to attempt the same enterprise againe. I remember that I read in some histories, that king *Ioseph* which built Maroco, being forewarned by the coniecture of a certaine astrologer, that the whole region should perpetually be vexed with warre, prouided by arte-magique, that the passage of this riuer should alwaies bee vnknowen: least, if any enimie should afterward practise mischiefe, he might cut off the course thereof from the saide citie. Neere vnto this riuer lies the common high way, which crosseth ouer mount Atlas to Guzula a region of Maroco. Howbeit the citie of Agmet, which I haue now described vnto you, hath at this day no other inhabitants but woolues, foxes, deere, and such other wilde beasts. Except onely at my being there I found a certaine Hermite, who was attended vpon by an hundred persons of his owne sect: all of them were well-horsed, and did their best endeuour to become gouer-

A riuer running vnder the ground to Maroco.

The desolation of Agmet.

nours

nours and commanders, but their forces were insufficient. With this Hermite I staide (as I remember) for the space of tenne daies, and founde one amongst his followers, with whom I had old acquaintance, and familiaritie: for we were certaine yeeres fellow-students together at Fez, where being of one standing and seniority, we heard that booke of the Mahumetan religion expounded, which is commonly called the epistle of *Nensesi*. *Iohn Leo student at Fez.*

Of the towne of Hannimei.

VPon that side of Atlas which lieth towards the plaine countrey, standeth a certain towne called by the inhabitants Hannimei, being about 40. miles eastward of Maroco: by which towne, on the same side of Atlas, lieth the direct way to Fez. From the said towne the riuer of Agmet is almost fifteene miles distant: and the fielde lying betweene the saide riuer and towne is a most fruitefull soile, like vnto the fielde adioining vpon the citie of Agmet before mentioned. All the region betweene Maroco and the foresaid riuer is in subiection vnto the gouernour of Maroco, but from the riuer vnto Hannimei the townes-men of Hannimei beare rule. This towne had a famous yoong captaine, who maintained continuall warre against the gouernor of Maroco, and somtimes against the Arabians also. He had likewise a most ample dominion vpon the mountaines of Atlas: by naturall disposition he was right liberal & valiant, and hauing scarce attained to sixeteene yeeres of age, he slue his owne vncle, and vsurped his gouernment. Whereof so soone as the Arabians had intelligence, ioining three hundreth Christian horsemen, which came out of Portugale, vnto their great forces, they marched on the sodaine euen to the very gates of the towne. And the foresaide captaine with his armie containing scarce an hundreth horsemen, with a very fewe footemen met the Arabians, and gaue them such a valiant onset, that the greater part of them was slaine, and the Christians were so discomfited, that (as I suppose) not one of them returned home into Portugale: which (they say) came to passe, both by reason that the Christians were ignorant of the place, and vnskilfull of the Africans manner of warfare. These things were done in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira, and in the yeere of our Lorde 1511. Afterward being wearied by the king of Fez his warres (which king demaunded tribute of the townes men of Hannimei) he was slaine with a bullet: whereupon the towne remained tributarie to the king of Fez. Yea, the deceased captaines wife deliuered as prisoners certaine burgesses of the towne vnto the king himselfe. And the king so soone as he had placed a lieutenant ouer Hannimei, departed from the same towne in the 921. yeere of the Hegeira, and in the yeere of our Lord 1512. *The captaine of Hannimei.*

Of the mountaine of Nifisa.

HAuing before described all the cities and townes of Maroco, it now remaineth that we briefly declare the situation and qualitie of the mountaines there. Wherefore we will begin with the mountaine of Nifisa, from whence the region of Maroco it selfe beginneth westward, and is thereby diuided from the prouince of Hea. The said mountaine hath great store of inhabitants: and albeit the tops thereof are continually couered with snowe; yet doth it yeerely affoorde marueilous increase and abundance of barley. The rude people there are so destitute of all humanitie and ciuill behauiour, that they do admire not onely all strangers, but also do euen gaze and woonder at their apparell. I my selfe remained two daies among them, in which space all the people of the towne came flocking about me, greatly woondring at the white garment which I wore (being such as the learned men of our countrey are vsually clad in) so that euery one being desirous to handle and view this garment of mine, in two daies it was turned from white to blacke, and became all greasie and filthie. Here one of the townes-men being allured with the strangenes and noueltie of my sworde, which I bought at Fez for halfe a ducate, woulde neuer leaue intreating of me, till I had exchanged it with him for an horse, which cost (as himselfe affirmed) aboue ten ducates. The reason of which fonde and childish behauiour I thinke to be, because they neuer trauaile vnto Fez nor to any other cities. And were they neuer so desirous to trauaile, yet dare they not aduenture vpon the common high waies, in regard of the great number of robbers and theeues. Of honie, goates, and oile Arganick they haue woonderfull store: for in this mountaine beginneth the saide oile to be put in vse.

Of the mountaine called Semede.

AT the bounds of Nifisa a certaine other mountaine called by the inhabitants Semede taketh his originall: and these two mountaines are separated by the riuer of Sefsaua. Semede extendeth eastward almost 20. miles, the inhabitants whereof are most base & witlesse people. Great store of springs & fountaines are here to be found; the snowe is perpetuall; all good lawes, ciuilitie, and honestie are quite banished from hence, except perhaps the people be mooued thereunto by the aduise of some stranger, whom they finde to be of a modest and sober dispositon. Here being entertained by a certaine religious man of the same place (who was had in great reputation by the people) I was constrained to eate of such grosse meats as the saide people are accustomed vnto, to wit, of barlie meale mingled with water, and of goats-flesh, which was extremely tough and hard by reason of the stale-

nes

nes and long continuance. After supper we had no other bed but the bare ground to lie vpon. The next morning being ready to take horse, and desirous to depart, fiftie of the people came about me, laying open each man their causes and suites vnto me, as our people vse to doe before a iudge. Vnto whom I answered, that I had neuer in all my life either knowen or heard of the manners and customes of that region. Foorthwith comes one of the chiefe men amongst them, affirming that it was their custome neuer to dismisse any stranger, till he had both heard and throughly decided all the quarrels and controuersies of the inhabitants. Which words he had no sooner vttered, but immediately my horse was taken from me. Wherefore I was constrained for nine daies, and so many nights, longer to abide the penurie and miserie of that region. Moreouer my trouble was the greater, for that, in such abundance of suites and affaires, there was not one man present, which could set downe so much as a word in writing: wherefore I my selfe was faine to play both the iudge and the notarie. Vpon the eight day they all of them promised to bestowe some great rewarde vpon me. Wherefore the night following seemed vnto me a yeere long: for I was in good hope the next morrow to haue receiued a masse of golde from my clients. So soone as the next day began to dawne, they placed me in a certaine church-porch: whither, after an vsuall and short praier ended, each man full reuerently presented his gift vnto me. Here some offered me a cocke, others brought me nuts and onions, and some others bestowed a handfull of garlicke vpon me. The principall and head-men amongst them presented me with a goat; and so by reason that there was no money in all the said mountaine, they proffered me not one farthing for my paines: wherefore all the said gifts I bequeathed vnto mine oste for his woorthie entertaining of me. And this was all the notable reward which I reaped in regarde of so great and intolerable paines. All things being thus dispatched, they sent fiftie horsemen to accompanie and guard me from theeues in that dangerous way.

Iohn Leo constrained to play the iudge.

Of the mountaine called Seusaua.

THis mountaine of Seusaua taketh his beginning where Semede endeth, out of which springeth a certaine riuer, hauing one name with the said mountaine from whence it proceedeth. Neuer were the tops of this mountaine seene destitute of snowe. The inhabitants leade a brutish and sauage life, waging continuall warre with their next neighbours: for which purpose they vse neither swords, iauelins, nor any other warlike instruments, but onely certaine slings, out of which they discharge stones after a strange and woonderfull manner. Their victuals consist of barlie, honie, and goates-flesh. In the same mountaine great multitudes of Iewes exercising handy-craftes, doe inhabite: likewise they make sope, yron-hookes, and horse-shooes. Diuers masons are here to be found also. They build their walles of no other matter but onely of rough stone and lime, and the roofes

of their houſes they vſe to couer with thatch: neither haue they any other kind of lime or bricks. They haue among them alſo abundance of learned men & of skilful lawyers, whoſe counſell they vſe at all times. Among whom I found ſome, who had heretofore beene my fellow-ſtudents at Fez, and for our old acquaintance ſake, gaue me moſt courteous entertainment: and, to the end I might eſcape the danger of theeues, they conducted me a good part of my way.

Of the mountaine called Seſina.

VPon this moſt lofty and cold mountaine there is nothing almoſt to be found, but continuall ſnowe and woods. The inhabitants weare white caps: and the region in all places is full of ſprings and fountaines. Out of the ſaid mountaine ſpringeth a riuer, which in the diſcourſe before-going we called Aſifinuall. All ouer this mountaine are moſt deepe and hollow caues, wherein euerie yeere, for the three cold moneths of Nouember, Ianuarie, and Februarie they vſually winter their cattell, laying vp ſo much fodder, namely hay, and the leaues of certaine trees, as they thinke will ſuffice them. Moſt of their victuals are brought vnto them from the next mountaines, becauſe their owne ſoyle yeeldeth no corne at all: onely in the ſpring time and in ſommer, they haue good plentie of new cheeſe and butter. Their old age they beare moſt luſtily and ſtoutly, ſometime at ninetie, and ſometime at an hundred yeeres. They giue attendance to their cattell all their life long, neither doe they at any time, or ſeldome, ſee any ſtrangers. They weare no ſhooes at all, but certaine ſandals only, to defend the ſoles of their feete: and their legs they wrap in a certaine piece of cloath or liſt inſteed of an hoſe, to keepe themſelues from the iniurie of the ſnow.

Of the mountaine called Temnella.

THis high and cold mountaine hath verie many inhabitants: vpon the top whereof ſtandeth a towne which is called by the name of the mountaine it ſelfe. In this towne are great ſtore of dwellers, and a moſt ſtately and beautifull temple. It hath likewiſe a moſt pleaſant and cleere riuer. This towne is adorned with the monuments of **Elmahdi* (who was in times paſt a moſt learned Mahumetan prieſt) and of *Abdul Mumen* his diſciple. And albeit the inhabitants are accounted heretiques by all other Mahumetans, yet is there no kinde of learning which they will not arrogate vnto themſelues: becauſe perhaps they are well read in the workes of *Elmahdi*, who was notwithſtanding the ringleader of all the ſaide heretiques: ſo that if any ſtranger come among them, they preſently chalenge him to diſpute in matters of learning. In their apparell they goe verie ragged and beggerly, by reaſon that they haue

* Or Elmaheli.

no

no taylors in the whole towne. Their common-wealth is gouerned after a wilde and ſauage manner, albeit they haue a certaine prieſt, which vſeth all the policie and meanes he can to bring it into good order. Their victuals are barley-bread and oyle of oliues: likewiſe they haue great ſtore of nuts, and of pine-trees.

Of the mountaine called Gedmeua.

GEdmeua beginneth at the Weſt frontier of the foreſaide mountaine of Semede, and ſtretcheth Eaſtward almoſt fiue and twentie miles, extending vnto the border of Mizmizi. All the inhabitants are rude, miſerable, and hunger-ſtarued people, being ſubiect to the Arabians, for that they border vpon thoſe fields which adioine vpon the mountaine of Temnella. This hill of Gedmeua aboundeth with oliues, barley, wood, and fountaines.

Of the mountaine called Hanteta.

NEuer did I ſee (to my remembrance) an higher mountaine, then that which the Africans call Hanteta. Weſtward it beginneth from Gedmeua, and ſtretcheth fiue and fortie miles Eaſtward, to the mountaine of Adimmei beforenamed. The inhabitants are valiant and rich, hauing great ſtore of horſes. Heere likewiſe ſtandeth a moſt ſtrong and impregnable caſtle ſubiect vnto a certaine nobleman, which is reported to be of alliance vnto the prince of Maroco: howbeit they are at continuall warre for certaine landes ſituate within their dominions. Many Iewes exerciſing diuers handie-crafts doe here inhabite, and do yeerely pay vnto the gouernour of this mountaine great ſummes of money. As concerning religion, they follow them eſpecially which are called Carrain. The top of this mountaine is continually couered with ſnow. When I firſt beheld this mountaine, I thought it had bin clouds; ſo great is the height therof. The ſides of this mountaine being altogether deſtitute of herbes and trees, are in many places ſtored with excellent white marble, which the people might dig, and make a good commoditie thereof, were they not ſo ſluggiſh and ſo ignorant in hewing and poliſhing of the ſame. In this place are many pillars and arches which were moſt artificially and ſumptuouſly built by thoſe mightie princes whom we haue often before made mention of: which pillers they would haue vſed for the building of water-conduits, had they not beene hindred by the violence of warres. To be briefe, in the ſaid mountaine I ſaw many notable things, whereof I will here make no diſcourſe at all, partly becauſe they are out of my remembrance, and partly for auoiding tedioufnes to the reader; becauſe I haue determined to paſſe ouer theſe ſmall matters, and to proceede vnto greater.

Of the mountaine called Adimmei.

FRom Hanteta beginneth another huge and high mountaine called by the inhabitants Adimmei, extending eastward to the riuer of Teseut. Vpon this mountaine standeth that citie, the prince whereof (as we said before) was slaine in battell against the king of Fez. This mountaine is well stored with inhabitants and aboundeth with woods which bring foorth acornes, oliues, and quinces. The people heere inhabiting are most valiant, possessing beasts and cattell of all sorts, their ayre being verie temperate, and their soile exceeding fruitfull. Springs they haue great plentie, and also two riuers issuing foorth of the said mountaine, whereof in due place we will discourse more at large. Wherefore hauing described all the cities and mountaines of Maroco bordering southward vpon Atlas, let vs now passe ouer the said mountaine of Atlas, and take a view of the region beyond it commonly called Guzzula.

Of the region of Guzzula.

THis region is exceding populous: westward it abutteth vpon Ilda a mountaine of Sus; northward it ioineth vnto Atlas, and eastward it stretcheth vnto the region of Hea. It is inhabited with sauage and fierce people, beeing most needie of money, and yet abounding greatly in cattell. Great store of copper and yron is here digged out of mines, and here are brasen vessels made, which are carried into other countries to be solde: and these vessels they exchange for linnen and woollen cloth, for horses, and for other wares necessarie for the said region. In all this whole region there is neither towne nor castle enuironed with walles. Great villages they haue, which containe, many of them, more then a thousand families a peece. They haue neither king nor gouernour to prescribe any lawes vnto them: but euerie one is his owne captaine and commander; whereupon they are at continuall warres among themselues, neither haue they any truce at all, but three daies onely euery weeke; during which time euery man may safely and freely bargaine with his enemie, and may trauell whither he listeth. But these daies of truce being past, the wretched people of this region do continually commit most horrible slaughters. The foresaide daies of truce a certaine Hermite appointed vnto them, whom they honoured and reuerenced like a god. This Hermite with one eie I my selfe saw, and found him to be a trustie, sincere, courteous, and most liberall person. The common attire of the people of Guzzula is a woollen iacket streight to their bodies & without sleeues. They weare crooked, broad, and two-edged daggers: and their swords are like vnto the swords of Hea. Once euery yeere they haue a faire of two moneths long:

Yron and copper mines.

Continuall warre in Guzzula.

all

all which time(though the number of merchants be neuer so great)they giue free entertainment vnto all such as either bring wares with them, or come thither to fetch away their wares. When the time of their faire approcheth, they foorthwith make truce,and each faction appointeth a captaine ouer an hundred soldiers, to the end they may keepe themselues in safetie, and may defend their said faire from the inuasion and iniurie of all lewd persons. If any offence be committed, the captaines immediately giue sentence vpon the guiltie person: and whosoeuer bee conuicted of theft, is foorthwith slaine like a brute beast, and his theeues carcase is throwne out to be deuoured of dogs, wilde beastes, and rauenous foules. The saide faire is kept in a certaine plaine or valley betweene two hils. All the wares are contained in tents and in certaine cottages made of boughes,so that each particular kind of merchandize hath a seuerall place to lie in by it selfe. They which sell droues of cattell are remooued farre from the tents. And euery tent hath a cottage made of boughes belonging thereunto,for their principal and head men to repose themselues in. And in the said cottages or bowers are merchant strangers (as we noted before) freely entertained and bourded. Also they haue certaine Caters & purueiers among them,which make prouision of victuals, and take vpon them the friendly and well entertaining of strangers. And albeit an huge deale of money is spent for this behalfe,yet make they a good gaine thereof: for thither doe resort all the merchants of that region for traffiques sake,yea and a great number out of the land of Negros, who bring with them maruellous plentie of all kindes of wares. And although they are men of a dull and grosse capacitie, yet are they very industrious in gouerning and maintaining the said faire: the beginning whereof is vpon the birth-day of that great deceiuer Mahumet, that is, vpon the twelfth day of their moneth called Rabih, which is the third *Haraba* of the yeere, according to their account. I my selfe was present at this faire in the companie of my Lord the Seriffo for the space of fifteene daies,in the yeere of the Hegeira 920.which was in the yeere of our Lord 1511.

Free entertainment for merchants.

A briefe description of the region of Duccala.

THis region beginneth westward from the riuer of Tensift; northward it is bounded with the Ocean sea; the south part thereof lieth vpon the riuer of Habid; and the east part abutteth vpon the riuer Ommirabih. It is three daies iourney long,and about two daies iourney broad. Very populous it is; the inhabitants being a rude people, and most ignorant of all ciuilitie and humanitie. Walled cities it hath but a few,of all which we will in their due places particularly discourse,neither wil we(by Gods helpe) omit any thing which may seeme woorthie of memorie.

Of

Of the towne of Azaphi.

IT was built by the Africans, and ſtandeth vpon the ſhore of the Ocean ſea, containing fower thouſand families: inhabitants there are great ſtore, being for the moſt part very vnciuill and barbarous. In times paſt there dwelt many Iewes in this towne, which exerciſed diuers handy-crafts. Their ſoile is exceeding fertill; but ſo groſſe is their owne vnskilfulnes and negligence, that they know neither how to till their ground, to ſow their corne, or to plant vineyards: except perhaps ſome few of them (who would ſeeme to be more prouident then the reſidue) ſow a quantitie of pot-herbes in their ſmal gardens. After the kings of Maroco gaue ouer the gouerment of the ſaide region, the citie of Azafi was vſurped by certaine which were ſaid to fetch their originall from Farchon. Howbeit in our daies the ſaid citie was gouerned by a certaine prince called Hebdurrahmam: this man for a greedy and ambitious deſire of raigning murthered his owne vncle: after whoſe death he gouerned the towne for certaine yeeres. He had a daughter of moſt excellent beauty, who falling in loue with a certaine courtier (whoſe name was *Hali*, being ſonne vnto one *Goeſimen*) by the helpe of her mother and her wayting maide enioyed oftentimes the companie of her paramour. Which when her father had intelligence of, hee rebuked his wife, threatening death vnto her, if ſhee reformed not the manners of her daughter: howbeit afterwarde hee diſſembled his furie. But the mother throughly knowing her husbandes intent, tolde her daughters paramour that the prince was not to bee truſted, and therefore aduiſed him to take heede vnto himſelfe. Whereupon *Hali* fearing leaſt ſome miſchiefe might light vpon him, began to determine with himſelfe the princes death, and for his aſſociate in this conſpiracie he tooke a truſty friend of his who had been moſt familiar with him from his childhoode, and was captaine ouer a certaine band of footemen. Wherefore both of them being alike miſchieuouſly bent againſt their prince, expected nothing elſe but a fit place and oportunitie to put their bloudie determination in practiſe. Contrariwiſe the king ſeeking by all meanes an occaſion to effect his purpoſe, ſent word vnto *Hali* vpon a certaine feſtiuall day, that after their Mahumetan deuotions were finiſhed he ſhoulde come and walke with him; appointing a place, where he had laide a troupe of men in ambuſh to kill *Hali* at his comming: which being done, he went to church. *Hali* ſuſpecting no harme at all, told his aſſociate, that now was the time wherein they might bring their purpoſe to effect. And this intent of theirs they foorthwith declared vnto ten other of their adherents: and to the end that the whole matter might go ſecurely and certainly forward, they preſently aſſembled a great multitude of footemen (which they fained that they woulde ſende the next day vnto Azamor) that, if they were conſtrained to flie, they might haue aide and ſuc-

The occaſion of the prince of Azafi his death.

cour

cour in a readines. All their complices being armed, they came to church at the very same time when as the king with all his traine was entring thereinto, and had placed himselfe next vnto the Mahumetan preacher. The church was full of auditors, and the king had his guard attending vpon him, who bicause they knew the two foresaid yoong gentlemen to be very familiar with the king, suspected none euill, but suffered them to draw neere vnto his person. Wherefore one of the saide yoong courtiers, as though he would haue done obeizance vnto the king, came before him, but *Hali* got in at his backe and stabd him through with a dagger: and at the verie same instant the other thrust him in with his sworde, and so this vnhappie king, imbrued in his owne bloud, gaue vp the ghost. The kings guarde went about to apprehend the authors of this fact; but being ouermatched by the contrarie part, and suspecting, least the people were authors of this conspiracie, they sought to saue themselues by flight. And after them followed all the rest of the assemblie, till the authors of the saide murther were left alone. They also immediately came foorth, and perswaded the people with many words, that they had slaine the king for none other cause, but onely in regard that he had attempted the vtter ouerthrow both of themselues and of the whole people. The citizens beeing to too credulous, aduaunced the two foresaid conspiratours to the gouernment of the kingdome: howbeit they agreed not long thereabout, but the common-wealth was diuersly tossed hither and thither, sometime inclining to one, & sometime to another. Wherefore the Portugall merchants which vsually frequented that citie in great numbers, wrote vnto their king to sende foorthwith an armie of soldiers thither: for they were in good hope, that he shoulde most easily and with small disaduantage winne the saide citie. Howbeit the king being nothing mooued with this message of theirs, would not send any forces at al, til he was more certainly informed by his said merchants touching the death of the king of Azaphi, & the dissension betweene the two new gouernours. As also, that they had made such a compact with a certaine captaine of the contrary faction, that it was the easiest matter in the world for him to cõquer the towne. For they had built them a verie strong castell vpon the sea-shore, wherein their merchandize might safely be bestowed. For the Portugals had perswaded the townes-men, that during the great tumult about the kings death, they were all of them in danger to lose both their liues and goods. Wherefore into this castell, among their vessels of oile and other wares, they cunningly conueied gunnes and all other kind of warlike instruments: but the townes-men being ignorant heereof, exacted nothing of the Portugals saue onely custome due for their wares. Now after the Portugales had sufficiently prouided themselues of all kinde of armour and warlike munitions, they sought by all meanes an occasion to fight with the citizens. At length it came to passe that a certaine Portugals seruant buying meat in the citie, did so prouoke a butcher, that after much quarrelling they fell to blowes, whereupon the seruant feeling himselfe hurt, thrust the butcher with

The prince of Azafi slaine, as he was hearing of a Mahumetan sermon.

with his sworde, and laide him along vpon the colde earth, and then fledde speedily to the castell, wherein he knewe the merchants to be. The people immediately rose vp in armes, and ranne all of them with one consent vnto the castell, to the end they might vtterly destroy it, & cut the throats of all them which were therein. But the guns and crosse-bowes which were there in a readines made such hauock among the townes-men, that it cannot be, but they were greatly daunted. At this first encounter there were an hũdreth and fiftie citizens slaine outright; howbeit the residue woulde not therefore giue ouer, but gaue the castle daily assaults. At length the king of Portugall sent aide vnto his subiects, to wit fiue thousand footemen, two hundreth horsemen, with a great number of gunnes. Which forces when the citizens sawe to approch, they presently betooke themselues to their feete, and fled vnto the mountaine of Benimegher: neither durst any man staie in the towne, but onely he that was the author of building the castle. And so it came to passe that the Portugall forces woon the towne without any perill or labour. Soone after the generall of the whole armie sent the builder of the castle vnto the king of Portugall. But the king sent him with a certaine number of attendants backe againe to Azafi, and appointed him gouernour of all the region adiacent. For the Portugall king was not acquainted with their customes, nether did he sufficiently know how they gouerned their common-wealth. Soone after ensued the miserable desolation and ruine, not onely of the citie but of the whole region thereabouts. In this discourse we haue beene somewhat tedious, to the end we might shew of how great euill a woman may be the instrument, and what intollerable mischiefes are bred by dissension. These things were a dooing (as I remember) when my selfe was but ten yeeres olde: and being fowerteene yeeres of age, I had some conference with the Portugall captaine aforesaide. This captaine with an armie of fiue hundreth Portugals, and more then twelue thousand Arabian horsemen giuing battaile to the king of Maroco, conquered all the foresaid prouince on the behalfe of his master the Portugall king, in the yeere of the Hegeira 920. as in our briefe treatise concerning the Mahumetan religion we will declare more at large.

Azafi woon by the Portugals.

Iohn Leo ten yeeres old at the winning of Azafi.

Of Conta a towne in Duccala.

THis towne is situate from Azafi about 20. miles, & is said to haue bin built by the Gothes at the verie same time when they possessed the whole region of Duccala: but now it is vtterly layde waste: howbeit the field belonging thereto is in subiection vnto certaine Arabians which dwell in the said prouince of Duccala.

Of Tit a citie in Duccala.

THis ancient citie of Tit built of olde by the Africans vpon the Ocean sea-shoare, is about twentie miles distant from Azamur. It hath most large and fruitfull fields belonging vnto it. The inhabitants are men of a grosse conceit, who regard neither husbandrie nor ciuilitie. Their apparell indeed is somewhat decent, by reason that they continually haue so great traffique with the Portugals. At the same time when Azamur was subdued, this citie also yeelded it selfe vnto the kings captaine, and for certaine yeeres paied tribute vnto the king. In our time the king of Fez attempted to set Duccala at libertie: howbeit not speeding of his purpose, he caused a certaine Christian (which was his owne treasurer) and a Iewe, to be hanged. And that companie which remained with him, he brought vnto Fez, giuing them a certaine portion of grounde to dwell vpon, which was destitute of inhabitants, being distant about twelue miles from Fez.

The citie of Tit tributarie vnto the King of Portugall.

Of the famous citie of Elmedina in Duccala.

ELmedina being in a manner the chiefe citie of the whole region, is (according to the manner there) enuironed with wals of no great force. The inhabitants are homely as well in witte and behauiour, as in apparell: wearing such cloth as is wouen in their owne countrie. Their women weare certaine siluer ornaments: the men are valiant, and haue great store of horses. They were all of them banished by the king of Fez out of his dominions, for that he suspected them to be friends to the Portugals. For he had heard that a certaine gouernour of that region had counselled his subiects to pay tribute vnto the Portugall king. This gouernour I sawe barefoote led so miserablie captiue, that I could scarce refraine from teares; becausse he did not ought vpon trecherie, but being constrained. For, good man, he thought it much better to pay a little tribute vnto the Portugals, then sodainly to lose both his life and his goods. For the restoring of whom vnto his former libertie, diuers noblemen greatly laboured: and so at length for a great summe of money he was released. But afterward the citie remained voide of inhabitants, about the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

Elmedina left desolate

Of the towne of Duccala called Centum putei.

THis towne is built vpon a rocke of excellent marble: in the suburbes whereof are certaine caues, wherein the inhabitants vse to lay vp their corne: which is there so woonderfully preserued, that it will continue an hundreth yeeres without any ill sauour or corruption. Of the number of

Corne preserued 100. yeers.

which caues resembling pits or wels, the towne it selfe is called Centum putei. The inhabitants are of small reckoning or account, hauing no artificers dwelling among them but certaine Iewes. When the king of Fez had forced the inhabitants of Elmadin to come into his dominions, he attempted also to bring thither the inhabitants of this towne: but they refusing to go into a strange place, chose rather to inhabite neere vnto the towne of Azafi, then to forsake their owne natiue soile. Which when the king vnderstoode, he presently caused the towne to be sacked; wherein nothing was found but corne, hony, and other things of small value.

Of the towne of Subeit in the same region.

SVbeit is a small towne built vpon the south side of the riuer of Ommirabih. It is distant from Elmadin about fortie miles, and is said to be subiect vnto certaine Arabians dwelling in Duccala. Honie and corne they haue great abundance: but such is their vnskilfulnes and ignorance, that they haue neither gardens nor vineyardes. At the same time when Bulahuan was woon, the king of Fez brought all the people of Subeit into his dominion, and allotted vnto them a certaine peece of grounde neere vnto Fez which was neuer before inhabited: so that Subeit remaineth waste and void of inhabitants euen vntill this day.

Of the towne of Temeracost.

ALso in Duccala neere vnto the riuer Ommirabih standeth a certaine small towne, which was built by the founder of Maroco, from whom the name thereof is thought to be deriued. Inhabitants it hath great store, and containeth more then fower hundreth families. It was subiect in times past vnto the people of Azamur; but Azamur being spoiled by the Portugales, this towne also came to nought, and the people heerof went to Elmadin.

Of the towne called Terga.

THis towne being distant about thirtie miles from Azamur, is situate neere vnto the riuer Ommirabih: it is well peopled, and containeth about three hundreth families. In times past it was subiect vnto the inhabitants of Duccala; but after the sacking of Azafi, *Hali* which fought against the Portugals, for certaine daies lay with his armie in this towne. But afterward being repelled thence by the king of Fez, the towne became so waste and desolate, that from thencefoorth it was an habitation for owles & bats.

Of the towne of Bulahuan.

THis towne likewise standeth vpon the banke of Ommirabih, & containeth about fiue hundreth families: in times past it had most noble and

woorthie

woorthie inhabitants, especially in that streete which lieth next vnto the riuer, vpon the high way to Maroco. In this towne was a famous hospitall built, which had manie roomes and mansions: wherein all strangers trauailing that way, were sumptuously and freely entertained at the common charge of the towne. The inhabitants are most rich both in cattell & corne. Euery cititizen almost hath an 100. yoke of oxen, and some of them yeerly reape two thousand, some three thousand measures of corne: so that the Arabians do carrie graine from thence sufficient to serue them all the yeere following. In the 919. yeere of the Hegeira, the king of Fez sent his brother to gouerne and defende the region of Duccala, who comming vnto this towne, was informed that the captaine of Azemur approched thither with a great armie, of purpose to destroy the towne and to lead the people captiue. Whereupon the king of Fez his brother sent immediately vnto the saide towne two captaines with two thousand horsemen, and eight hundreth archers. But the very same time when they entred the towne, they met there the Portugall soldiers accompanied with two thousand Arabians: by whom, being fewer in number, they were so miserablie slaine, that scarcely twelue archers of all the eight hundreth could escape with the horsemen vnto the next mountaines. Howbeit afterward the Arabians renewed the skirmish, & 150. of the Portugall horsemen being slaine, they put the enimie to flight. Whereupon the king of Fez his brother passed on to Duccala, requiring tribute of the people, and promising that as long as he liued he would stand betweene them and their enemies. Afterward being vanquished, he returned home to Fez vnto the king his brother. But the inhabitants seeing that the kings brother had receiued tribute of them and had stood them in no stead, they presently forsooke the towne, and fled vnto the mountaine of Tedles: for they feared least the Portugals armie would come vpon them, and exacting a greater summe, would lead them presently captiue which could not disburse it. At all these accidents I my selfe was present, and saw the foresaid slaughter of the archers: for I stood about a mile distant from them, and was mounted vpon a swift courser. At the same time I was trauelling to Maroco, being sent by the king of Fez, to declare vnto the king of Maroco, and vnto the Seriffo, that the king of Fez his brother was presently to depart vnto Duccala: for which cause they were requested to prouide soldiers for the better resistance of the Portugals armie.

Of the citie of Azamur.

AZamur, a towne of Duccala, was built by the Africans vpon that part of the Oceã sea shore where the riuer of *Ommirabih disemboqueth; being distant from Elmadina southward about thirtie miles. Very large it is, and well inhabited, and containeth to the number of fiue thousand families. Here

* *Or Marbea.*

doe the Portugall merchants continually reside. The inhabitants are very ciuill, and decently apparelled. And albeit they are diuided into two parts, yet haue they continuall peace among themselues. Pulse and corne they haue great plentie; though their gardens and orchards bring foorth nought else but figs. They haue such plentie of fishes, that they receiue yeerely for them sometime sixe thousand, and sometime seuen thousand duckats. And their time of fishing dureth from October to the end of Aprill. They vse to frie fishes in a certaine pan with oile, whereby they gather an incredible quantitie of trane: neither vse they any other oile to put into their lampes. Once a yeere the Portugals make a voiage hither, and doe carrie away so great abundance of fish, that they onely doe disburse the summe of duckats aforesaid. Hence it is, that the king of Portugal, being allured for gaine, hath often sent most warlike fleetes to surprise this towne: the first whereof, in regarde of the Generals indiscretion, was the greatest part dispersed and sunke vpon the sea. Afterward the king sent another nauie of two hundred saile well furnished, at the very sight whereof the citizens were so discomfited, that they all betooke themselues to flight; and the throng was so great at their entrance of the gates, that moe then fowerscore citizens were slaine therein. Yea a certaine prince which came to aide them, was, for his safetie constrained to let himselfe downe by a rope on the farther side of the citie. The inhabitants were presently dispersed hither and thither; some fleeing on horse-backe, and others on foote. Neither could you (I know) haue refrained from teares, had you seene the weake women, the silly old men, and the tender children run away bare-footed and forlorne. But before the Christians gaue any assault, the Iewes (which shortly after compounded with the king of Portugall, to yeeld the citie to him, on condition that they shoulde sustaine no iniurie) with a generall consent, opened the gates vnto them: and so the Christians obtained the citie, and the people went to dwell part of them to Sala, and part to Fez. Neither doe I thinke that God for any other cause brought this calamitie vpon them, but onely for the horrible vice of Sodomie, whereunto the greatest part of the citizens were so notoriously addicted, that they could scarce see any young stripling, who escaped their lust.

Azamur woon by the Portugals.

Of the towne called Meramei.

THis towne was built by the Gothes vpon a plaine, almost fourteene miles distant from Azafi, and it containeth to the number of fower hundred families: the soile thereabout aboundeth greatly with oliues and corne. It was gouerned in times past by the prince of Azafi; but afterward being surprised by the Portugals, and the inhabitants being all put to flight, it remained well nigh one whole yeere destitute of people. Howbeit soone after making a league with the Portugals, each man retired vnto his owne home. And now I thinke it not amisse to report as concerning the mountaines of Duccala those things which may seeme woorthie of memorie.

Of

Of the mountaine called Benimegher.

BEnimegher is distant from Azafi about twelue miles, containing diuers artizans of all sortes, euery one of which hath an house at Azafi. This mountaine is so exceeding fruitful for oile and corne, that a man would scarce beleeue it. It was once in subiection vnto the prince of Azafi, but the inhabitants of Azafi being put to flight, as hath beene aforesaid, had no other place for their refuge, but onely this mountaine of Benimegher. Afterward they paid tribute for certaine yeeres vnto the Portugals; but when the king of Fez came thither with his army, he caried with him part of them vnto Fez, and the residue returned to Azafi: for they were determined rather to indure any iniurie, then to submit themselues to the Christians gouernment.

Of the greene mountaine.

THis mountaine is of an exceeding height, beginning eastward from the riuer of Ommirabih, and extending westward to the hils called in their language Hasara, and it diuideth Duccala from some part of Tedles. Likewise this mountaine is very rough and full of woods, affoording great store of acornes and pine-apples, and a certaine kinde of red fruit which the Italians commonly call Africano. Many Hermites also doe inhabite vpon this mountaine, liuing with no other kind of victuals, but such as the woods yeeld vnto them. For they are aboue fiue and twenty miles distant from all townes and cities. Here are great store of fountaines and of altars built after the Mahumetan fashion, and many auncient houses also erected by the Africans. At the foot of this mountaine there is a notable lake, very like vnto the lake of Bolsena in the Roman territorie. In which lake are found infinite numbers of fishes, as namely eeles, pickrels, and of diuers other sorts, which, to my remembrance, I neuer saw in Italie: but there is no man that goeth about to take any fish in this lake, no maruell therefore though the number be so great. Vpon a certaine time when Mahumet the king of Fez trauelled that way towards the kingdome of Maroco, he encamped his armie eight daies vpon the side of this lake. Some of his companie he licenced to fish the same, amongst whom I saw certaine that tooke off their shirts and coats, sowing vp their sleeues and collars, and putting certaine hoops within them to keepe them from closing together, and so vsed them in steed of nets, wherewith notwithstanding they caught many thousand fishes: but others which had nets indeed, got more then they. And all by reason that the fishes (as we will now declare) were perforce driuen into the nets. For king Mahumet being there accompanied with fourteene thousand Arabian horsemen, which brought a great many more camels with them; and hauing fiue thousand horsemen vnder the conduct of his brother, with an huge armie of footemen, caused them all at once to enter the lake, insomuch that there

The fruit called by the Italians Frutto Africano.

Great plentie of fish.

was scarce water ynough to satisfie the camels thirst: wherefore it was no maruell though the fishes came so fast into the nets. Vpon the banks of this lake are many trees bearing leaues like vnto pine-leaues, among the boughes whereof, such abundance of turtles doe nestle, that the inhabitants reape woonderfull commoditie by them. Mahumet hauing refreshed himselfe eight daies by the foresaid lake, was then desirous to view The greene mountaine aforesaid: my selfe with a great number of courtiers and learned men attending vpon him. So often as he saw any altar, he would command his armie there to make a stand, and lowly kneeling on his knees, would say these words following: Thou knowest (oh Lord my God) that I came hither for
" none other cause, but to release the people of Duccala from the Arabians
" and cruell Christians: which attempt of mine if thou thinkest to be vniust,
" let me onely feele the punishment of this offence: for these my followers
" are guiltlesse. And thus we ranged vp and downe the greene hill one whole day: but at night we returned vnto our tents. The next day it was king Mahumets pleasure to goe on hunting and hauking, whereupon his hounds and haukes (which he had in great abundance) were brought foorth: howbeit that sport yeelded nought but wilde geese, duckes, turtle-doues, and other fowles. But the day following the king called for his hounds, faulcons, and eagles: their game were hares, deere, porcupikes, roe-deere, woolues, quailes and starlings: and by reason that none had hunted or hawked there an hundred yeeres before, they had very good pastime. And after we had here staied certaine daies, the king with his armie marching vnto the said Elmadin a towne of Duccala, willed all his learned men and priestes which hee had brought with him, to returne vnto Fez. But my selfe (as ambassadour) and a certaine number of soldiers he sent vnto Maroco: this was done in the 922. yeere of the Hegeira, and in the yeere of our Lord 1512.

Iohn Leo sent ambassadour from the King of Fez vnto Maroco.

A description of the region of Hascora.

THis region is bounded northward with certaine mountaines which adioine vpon Duccala; westward with a riuer running by the foote of mount Hadimmei, which we called before Tensift; and eastward by the riuer Quadelhabid, that is, the riuer of seruants, which riuer diuideth Hascora from Tedles. And so likewise the hils of Duccala doe separate Hascora from the Ocean sea. The inhabitants of this region are far more ciuil, then the people of Duccala. This prouince yeeldeth great abundance of oyle, of Marockin skinnes, and of goates, of whose haire they make cloath and sadles. And hither do all the bordering regions bring their goat-skins, whereof the foresaid Marockin or Cordouan leather is made. This people hath great traffique with the Portugals, with whom they exchange the foresaid leather and sadles, for cloath. Their coine is all one with the coine of Duccala. Also the Arabians vsually buy oyle and other necessaries out of

of this region. Now let vs in order describe all the townes and cities of the saide region.

Of Elmadin a towne in Hascora.

THis towne of Hascora being called by the inhabitants Elmadin, is built vpon the side of mount Atlas, and containeth moe then two thousand families. It standeth almost fourescore and ten miles eastward of Maroco, and about 60. miles from Duccala. Heere may you finde many leather-dressers, and all other kinde of artizans, with a great multitude of Iewish merchants. This towne is enuironed with a certaine wood, which is full of oliue, and walnut-trees. The inhabitants are continually, in a manner, oppressed with warres among themselues, and against a certaine little towne beeing fower miles distant from thence. Neither dare any come vpon the plaine lying betweene these two townes, (saue women onely and slaues) except he be well and strongly guarded. So that euerie man is faine to maintaine an harquebusier or archer for his defence, whom he monethly alloweth ten or twelue pieces of gold, which are woorth sixeteene ducates Italian. Likewise in Elmadin there are certaine men of great and profound learning, which are appointed to be iudges and notaries. Whatsoeuer tribute or custome strangers doe pay, is deliuered vnto certaine treasurers and customers of the towne; which imploy it afterward for the publike benefite. They are likewise constrained to pay certaine tribute vnto the Arabians, for sundrie possessions which they enioy in the foresaide valley; but that money gaineth them at the Arabians hand ten times so much, or more. In my returne from Maroco I thought good to trauell by this towne, where I was right sumptuously entertained by one of Granada my countrey-man, who was exceeding rich, hauing serued as an archer in this region for fifteene yeeres. And albeit the towne of Elmadin had a stately hospitall, wherein all merchants trauelling that way, were entertained at the common charge; yet my countrey-man would not suffer vs there to lodge, but for three daies together most curteously welcommed my selfe, nine courtiers, and all the seruants and retinue which we brought with vs: vnto which companie of ours the townesmen presented, some of them calues, some lambes, and some other brought hens. Seeing vpon a time so many goates in the towne, I merily demaunded of my countrey-man, why he gaue vs no kids-flesh to eate: hee answered that that was accounted among them of all others the most base and homely meate. Their faire and beautifull women are so fonde of strangers that if secret occasion be offered they will not refuse their dishoneſt companie.

Of the citie of Alemdin.

NEere vnto the foresaide towne standeth another commonly called Alemdin, being situate fower miles to the west thereof in a valley, amidst fower most high hils, whereupon the place is exceeding cold. The inhabitants are merchants, artizans, and gentlemen, & families it containeth to the number of one thousand. This towne hath been at continuall war with the towne last before mentioned: but in our time both of them were by the meanes of a certaine merchant brought in subiection vnto the King of Fez, as we will now declare. There was a merchant of Fez which had a paramour in this towne, whom he determined foorthwith to marrie; but when the marriage day was come, this merchant was beguiled of his loue by the gouernour of the towne himselfe, which disappointment grieued him full sore, albeit he dissembled the matter as well as he could. Returning home to the King of Fez, the said merchant presented vnto him most rich and costly gifts, making humble suite vnto his maiestie that hee would allow him an hundred principall archers, three hundred horsemen, and fower hundred footemen; saying, that himselfe would maintaine them all at his owne costs and charges, and would winne the said towne of Alemdin for the Kings behalfe, and would assure the King seuen thousand ducates for yeerely tribute. This offer pleased the King right well, and that he might declare his princely liberalitie, he would not suffer the merchant to giue wages vnto any, but onely to the archers. And so with all expedition he commanded his gouernour of Tedles to prouide the saide merchant so many horsemen and so many footmen, and two captaines ouer the armie. At length comming before Alemdin they besiged it sixe daies: which being expired, the townesmen told their gouernour in plaine termes, that they would not for his cause incur the king of Fez his displeasure, nor suffer any inconuenience. Whereupon he putting himselfe in a beggers weede, attempted to escape away: but being knowen and apprehended, he was brought before the merchant, who committed him to prison. And so the townesmen presently opening their gates receiued the merchant with all his troupes, & yeelded themselues to him & to the king of Fez. The parents of the foresaid maid protested vnto the merchant, that the gouernour by maine force had depriued them of his paramour. Howbeit she herselfe was big with childe by the gouernour; but after the merchant knew that she was deliuered of her childe, he bore her affection againe, and at length married her. And the wretched gouernour was the same day by the iudges pronounced guiltie of fornication, and was stoned to death. Well, the merchant remained gouernour and Lord of both townes, establishing most firme peace between them, & duely paying vnto the king of Fez all the yeerly tribute which he had promised. I my selfe afterward comming to the foresaide towne grew familiarly acquainted with this

By what means the townes of Elmadin and Alemdin became subiect vnto the King of Fez.

this famous merchant. The same yeere departing from Fez I tooke my iourney towards Constantinople.

Of Tagodast a towne in Hascora.

THis towne is built vpon the top of a certaine high mountaine, hauing fower other high mountaines round about it. Betweene which fower mountaines and the said towne are diuers most large and beautifull gardens repleniſhed with all kinde of fruits: quinces here are of an incredible bignes. Their vines disperſing themselues vpon the boughes of trees doe make most pleasant bowers and walkes: the grapes whereof being red, are for their bignes, called in the language of that people, hennes egs. They haue here great abundance of oile and most excellent honie: some of their honie being white, and some yellow. This towne hath many fountaines about it, which ioyning into one streame, do serue for many water-mils thereabouts. Here are likewise great store of artizans, who exercise themselues onely about things necessarie. The inhabitants are somewhat ciuill, their women are most beautifull, being most gorgeously decked with siluer iewels. Their oile they carrie vnto the next cities southward of them on this side Atlas: but they send their leather vnto Fez and Mecnasa. Their plaine is almost sixe miles long: the soile being most fruitfull for corne: in regard whereof the townes-men pay certaine yeerely tribute vnto the Arabians. This towne hath iudges, prieſtes, and a great number of gentlemen. Vpon a time as I trauelled this way, it was my hap to meete with a certaine ancient gouernour of the same place, who was growne blinde with extreme age. This aged sire (as by some I vnderstood) was in his youth a most valiant and stout person, insomuch that after many other noble exploits, he slew with his owne hand fower captaines which were most deadly enemies vnto the people of Tagodast. And afterward he handled the matter so wisely, that he ioyned those in perfect league which before time had waged continual warre. Here no commonwealth-matter is concluded by the magistrates of the towne without his speciall aduise and authoritie By this worthie Senatour my selfe with fower-score horsemen were honorably entertained, and had dainty meates euery day set before vs, of game which was newly hunted. He recounted most familiarly vnto vs all his labours which he had bestowed in concluding of the foresaid league: neither had this good man any so entire and hidden secrets, which he reuealed not vnto vs, as to his louing friends. At my departure I offered him money for my selfe and my companie: but he, like a liberall man, would by no meanes accept of it; saying, that albeit he ought the king of Fez much dutie and good will, yet did he not bestowe that liberalitie for his sake: but that whatsoeuer wealth he enioied, his parents bequeathed vnto him vpon this condition, that he should shew himselfe kinde and bountifull vnto all his kinred, acquaintance, and strangers trauelling that way: and although he were free from that condition, yet his loue towards God, and the

Grapes of marnellous bignes.
White honey.

the liberalitie which God had planted in him, could require no leſſe at his hands. Yea, he ſaid, that by Gods good bleſſing and prouidence he had reaped the ſame yeere ſeuen thouſand buſhels of corne: inſomuch, that himſelfe and all his neighbours were prouided for in abundance. Moreouer, that he poſſeſſed of ſheepe and goates moe then an hundred thouſand, the wooll whereof only, and ſome ſmall portion of butter, he reſerued to himſelfe, but as for the cheeſe and milke, he gaue it all frankly vnto his ſhepherds. In this towne there is none that ſelleth either cheeſe, butter, milk, or any other ſuch commoditie, though each one hath great abundance of cattell. Howbeit their hides, oile, and wooll they vtter in the prouinces thereabout. The reuerend ſire added this moreouer: If it ſhall pleaſe (ſaith he) the king of Fez to returne home from Duccala through this my region, I will come foorth to meete him, and will ſubmit my ſelfe wholly vnto him, as vnto my moſt liege and ſoueraigne prince. Thus my ſelfe a meere ſtranger being ſo honorably diſmiſſed by this woorthie Senatour, could not ſufficiently commend his courteſie and bounteous dealing towards ſtrangers.

Of the citie of Elgiumuha.

NEere vnto the foreſaid towne, within fiue miles, ſtandeth Elgiumuha. It was in our time built vpon the top of an high mountaine, and containeth to the number of fiue hundred families, beſides ſo many families compriſed in the villages of that mountaine. Here are innumerable ſprings and fountaines, and moſt pleaſant and fruitfull gardens in all places. Here are likewiſe walnut-trees huge and tall. The little hils enuironing this mountaine doe yeeld barlie and oliues in great abundance. In the ſaid towne are great numbers of artizans, as ſmithes, leather-dreſſers, and ſuch like. And becauſe they haue here notable yron-mines, they make plentie of horſeſhooes. And whatſoeuer commoditie proceedeth of their labour, they carrie it to forren regions where they thinke it is wanting: from whence they bring home ſlaues, woad, and the skins of certaine beaſtes, whereof they make moſt defenſiue and warlike ſhields: theſe ſhields they tranſport vnto Fez, exchanging them there for weapons, cloth, and other ſuch things as they ſtand in neede of. This towne ſtandeth ſo neere vnto the high way, that the boyes wil ſtand gazing and woondering at merchants as they come by, eſpecially if they weare any ſtrange attire. The reſidue of inhabitants vpon this mountaine are all commanded and gouerned by them of the towne. They ſay that the people of Tagodaſt aforeſaid were the firſt founders of this towne: for ſo vpon a time it befell, that whereas the principall men of Tagodaſt grew to diſſenſion among themſelues, the common ſort fauouring neither faction, built Elgiumuha, and left Tagodaſt to be inhabited by their gouernours: hence it is, that euen at this day they are here onely ignoble and baſe people, whereas there they are all gentlemen.

Of Bzo a towne in Hascora.

THE ancient towne of Bzo is built vpon an high hill about twenty miles westward from the towne last mentioned. Within three miles of Bzo runneth the foresaid riuer of Guadelhabid. The townesmen are honest people, exercising merchandize, and going decently apparelled: To them which inhabite the deserts they carie cloth, oile, and leather. Their mountaines abound with oliues, corne, and all kinde of fruits: and of their grapes they make euery yeere most excellent and sweete raisins. Figs they haue great plentie: and their walnut-trees are so high, that a puttocke may securely builde his nest vpon the tops: for it is impossible for any man to climbe vp. On each side of the way which leadeth from hence to the riuer Guadelhabid there are most pleasant and beautifull gardens. My selfe (I remember) was here present when their oranges, figs, and other fruits were growen to ripenes; and was entertained by a certaine priest, who dwelt not farre from a stately Mahumetan temple, standing by that riuer which runneth through the market-place of the towne.

Of the mountaine called Tenuenes.

THis mountaine is situate ouer against Hascora vpon that part of Atlas which trendeth southward. It hath many most valiant and warlike inhabitants both horsemen and footemen; and a great number of horses of small stature. It yeeldeth abundance of woad & barlie: but other graine they haue none at all, so that they haue no other but barlie bread to eate. At all times of the yeere you shal here see plenty of snow. Here are likewise sundry noblemē & gentlemen, all which are subiect vnto one prince. To this prince they pay great yeerely tribute for the maintenance of his soldiers, for he wageth continuall war with the inhabitants of mount Tensita. The said prince hath welnigh 1000. most valiant horsemen alwaies in a readines: & so many likewise do the noblemen of this mountaine continually keepe at their owne costs and charges. Moreouer the prince hath an hundreth soldiers part of them bowmen, and part harquebusiers, to guard and attend vpon his person in all places. Comming my selfe to see this mountaine, it was my chaunce to finde out the saide prince, who was desirous exceedingly to be praised of all men: but for liberalitie, curtesie, and ciuilitie, his like I thinke was not to be founde. Vnto the Arabian toong (albeit he were ignorant thereof) he bore a marueilous affection: and was greatly delighted to heare any man expound a sentence or verse, which was penned to his owne commendation. At the very same time when mine vncle was sent ambassadour from the king of Fez to the king of Tombuto, I my selfe also trauailed in his company: we were no sooner entred the region of Dara (which is an hundreth miles distant from the saide princes dominions) but he hearing of my vncles fame (who was an excellent Oratour, and a most wittie Poet) sent letters

The vncle of Iohn Leo sent ambassadour to the king of Tombuto.

letters vnto the prince of Dara, requesting him that he woulde perswade mine vncle to trauaile vnto Tombuto by mount Tenueues: for he had a great desire to see him, & to speake with him. Howbeit my vncle answered, that it beseemed not a kings ambassadour to visite any princes farre out of his way, and so to deferre his masters waightie affaires. But, to the end that he might in some sort satisfie the saide prince, he promised to sende me his nephew vnto him, which might in his name salute him and do him due honour. Afterward he deliuered me certaine costlie gifts to present the prince withall: as namely a curious paire of stirrups double gilt and finely wrought after the Morisco fashion, which cost (as I remember) fiue and twentie ducates; and a rich paire of spurs of fifteene ducates price. Moreouer he sent two bands of silke artificially entwined with gold, one whereof was tawnie, and the other blew. He sent also a most excellent booke, containing the liues of certaine famous and deuout men of Africa, togither with certaine verses in the commendation of the prince himselfe. Thus being furnished with the things aforesaid, I set foorth on my iourney, taking two horsemen to accompanie me vnto the foresaid mountaine: and so as I road, I inuented verses in the princes praise. At our first arriuall there, the prince with a great traine of his nobilitie was ridden foorth on hunting. Who being enformed of my comming, caused me foorthwith to be sent for, and after salutations had, he asked me how my vncle did: I answered that he was in good health, and at his highnes disposition. Then he commanded me to be carried vnto a stately lodging, where, after my tedious iourney, I might repose my selfe, till he were returned from hunting. And so within night returning from his game, he sent for me immediately to come into his chamber of presence: where, hauing first performed due obeisance vnto him, I presented him with mine vncles gifts: which (as I suppose) were most acceptable vnto him. At length I gaue him the verses which mine vncle had indited: which he presently commanded one of his secretaries to read. And as he was expounding each sentence and worde vnto the prince, it was a woonder to see, what exceeding alacritie and ioy appeered in his countenaunce. The verses being read, he sate downe to supper, willing me not onely to be his guest, but also to sit next vnto his person. His table was furnished with mutton, veale rosted and sodden, and with bread baked like a cake. Diuers other dishes likewise were serued in, but I remember not all the particulars. Supper being ended, I greeted the prince in this wise: Your highnes (my lord) hath receiued all those gifts, which your humble seruant mine vncle (in token of his loiall disposition, and that he might be had of your highnes in remembrance) hath sent you: Now I being both his sisters sonne and his scholler, haue nought else but a fewe wordes to present your princelines withall: may it please you therefore to accept of such homely stuffe as my witte could sodainly affoord in the time of my iourney. These words ended, I began to read my verses vnto him: and being as then but sixteene yeeres of age, the prince gaue right ioyfull and diligent eare vnto me;

The excellent wit & towardlinesse of Iohn Leo at 16. yeers of age.

and

and whatsoeuer he vnderstood not sufficiently, he woulde cause it to be interpreted. Now being wearie with his hunting, and perceiuing the night to be farre spent, he wished all of vs to goe to bed. Early the next morning I was sent for, to a stately breakefast, after the conclusion whereof, he caused an hundreth ducates to be deliuered me for a present vnto my vncle, togither with three slaues, which should attend vpon him in his iourney. But on me he bestowed fiftie ducates and a good horse; and to each of my two seruants he gaue ten ducates: giuing mine vncle to vnderstande, that his meane gift which he bestowed, was sent not in regard of his woorthy presents, but for a recompence of his excellent verses. For as touching mine vncles gifts, he saide he woulde deferre the requitall thereof till his returne from Tombuto, what time he would more fully manifest his good will towards him. Then commanding one of his secretaries to direct vs on our way, & most courteously bidding vs farewell; he told vs that the same day he was going to make an assault vpon his enimies. And so departing from him, I returned to mine vncle. Thus much I thought good to set downe, for to shewe, that euen Africa is not vtterly destitute of curteous and bountifull persons.

Of the mountaine called Tensita.

TEnsita is a part of Atlas, beginning westward from the mountaine last before mentioned, eastward extending to mount Dedes, and southward bordering vpon the desert of Dara. This mountaine is well stored with inhabitants, hauing moe then fiftie castles about it, the wals whereof are built of lime and rough stone: and by reason of the southerly situation it is euer almost destitute of raine. All the said castles stand not far from the riuer of Dara, some being three, and some fower miles distant there from. The greatest prince in all this region hath vnder his command well nigh fifteene hundreth horsemen, and about so many footemen as the prince of Tenueues before named. And albeit these two princes are most neerely conioined in bloud, yet can neither of them refraine from most cruel wars against the other. It is a woonder to see, what plentie of dates this mountaine affoordeth: the inhabitants giue themselues partly to husbandry, and partly to traffike. Barly they haue in great abundance: but of other graine and of flesh their scarcitie is incredible: for that region hath no flockes nor droues at all. The prince of this mountaine commonly receiueth for yeerly tribute twentie thousand peeces of golde: euery of which peeces containeth not so much by one third part, as an Italian ducate. There hath alwaies beene so great amitie betweene the king of Fez and this prince, that either often sendeth rich gifts vnto other. My selfe (I remember) once saw a most magnificent gift presented to the saide king in the name of this prince, to wit, fiftie men slaues, and fiftie women slaues brought out of the land of Negros, tenne eunuches, twelue camels, one Giraffa, sixteene ciuet-cats, one pound of ciuet, a pound of amber, and almost sixe hundreth skins

A most stately and rich present.

of a certaine beast called by them Elamt, whereof they make shieldes, euerie skin being woorth at Fez, eight ducates; twentie of the men slaues cost twentie ducates a peece, and so did fifteene of the women slaues; euery eunuch was valued at fortie, euery camell at fiftie, and euery ciuet-cat at two hundreth ducates: and a pound of ciuet and amber is solde at Fez for threescore ducates. Besides these were sent diuers other particulars, which for breuities sake I omit. I my selfe was in presence when these gifts were offred to the king: the princes ambassadour was a Negro borne, being grosse and of a lowe stature, and for his speech and behauiour most barbarous: this fellow deliuered a letter vnto the king, which was most absurdly and rudely penned: but the Oration which he made in the behalfe of his prince was well woorse; so that at the pronouncing thereof the king and all that were in presence could hardly refraine from laughter, but were faine to hold their hands and garments before their faces, least they should haue seemed too vnciuile. Howbeit his oration being ended, the king caused him to be most honorablie entertained by the priest of the chiefe temple; with whom himselfe and all his company hauing remained foureteene daies, were at length by the kings liberalitie frankely and freely dismissed.

Of the mountaine called Gogideme.

NEere vnto the foresaid mountaiue standeth another called Gogideme. This mountaine is inhabited only vpon the north part therof: but the south side is vtterly destitute of inhabitāts: the reason whereof they affirme to be, becausse that when *Abraham king of Maroco was vanquished and expelled out of his kingdome by his disciple *Elmaheli*, he fled vnto this mountaine. The inhabitants mooued with the kings distresse endeuoured (though to small purpose) all that they could, to succour him: whereof his disciple *Elmaheli* was no sooner enformed, but comming with an huge armie and with great furie vpon them, he destroyed all their mansions and villages, and the inhabitants he partly put to flight, and partly to the sword. And those which now remaine there are most base, beggerly and slauish people: Howbeit they sell some quantitie of oyle and barley: neither indeed will their soyle affoorde any other commodities. They haue plentie of goates and mules; but their mules and horses are but of meane stature. The situation and qualitie of this mountaine will not suffer the inhabitants to be liberall.

*Read of this Abraham before in the description of the citie of Maroco.

Of the two mountaines called Teseuon.

TEseuon consisteth of two mountaines standing together, beginning westward from Gogideme, & ending at the mountaine of Tagodast. The inhabitants are oppressed with extreme pouerty: for their ground will yeelde nothing but barley and mill. Forth of

of this mountaine springeth a certaine riuer, which runneth through most pleasant fields. But because the mountainers neuer descend into the same fields, hence it is that the Arabians onely enioy that riuer. To haue said thus much of these may suffice: now let vs come vnto the description of Tedles.

A description of the region of Tedles.

THE small region of Tedles beginneth westward at the riuer of Guadelhabid, and stretcheth to that part of the great riuer Ommirabih where Guadelhabid taketh his beginning; southward it bordereth vpon Atlas, and northward it extendeth vnto that place where Guadelhabid falleth into Ommirabih. This region is in a manner three square: for the said two riuers springing out of Atlas run northward, till approching by little and little, they meet all in one.

Of Tefza the principall towne in Tedles

TEfza the chiefe towne of all Tedles, was built by the Africans vpon the side of mount Atlas, some fiue miles from the plaine. The towne wals are built of most excellent marble, which is called in their language Tefza, and hereupon the towne was so called likewise. Heere doe reside most rich merchants of all sorts: of Iewes here are two hundred families, who exercise merchandise and diuers other trades. And here you shall finde many outlandish merchants which buy from hence certaine blacke mantles with hoods, commonly called *Ilbernus:* of these there are great numbers both in Italy and Spaine. Neither are there in Fez any kinde of wares, which are not heere to be bought: if any merchant will exchange his wares for other, hee may the sooner be dispatched: for the townesmen are furnished with diuers kindes of merchandise, as namely with slaues, horses, woad, leather, and such like: whereas if the forreiners were desirous to sell their wares for ready money, they should neuer attaine to the value of them. They haue golden coine without any image or superscription: their apparell is decent: and their women are beautifull and of good behauiour. In this towne are diuers Mahumetan temples, and many priests and iudges. Their commonwealth was woont alwaies to be most prosperous and well-gouerned; but degenerating from better to woorse, they were afterward so turmoyled with dissensions and wars, that certaine being expelled hence, came vnto the king of Fez, humbly beseeching him that by force he would restore them to their natiue countrey, conditionally that all matters wel succeeding on their side, they should deliuer the towne vnto the king. This condition was accepted, and the king hauing a thousand braue horsemen readie to doe the feat, ioyned fiue hundred horse, and two hundred gunners on horseback vnto them.

Ilbernus.

them. Moreouer he wrote vnto certaine Arabians (which are commonly called *Zuair*, and haue almoſt fower thouſand horeſemen at commaund) that, if need ſo required, they would come in, and ayde his troupes. Ouer the ſaide armie the king appointed as captaine one *Ezzeranghi*, a moſt valiant and redoubted warriour. Who hauing pitched his tents neere vnto the towne, began preſently to giue the towneſmen an aſſault. But when he had done his beſt, the warlike citizens eaſily gaue him the repulſe. Moreouer the Arabians called Benigeber were comming with fiue thouſand horſemen to ſuccour the towne. Which ſo ſoone as Captaine *Ezzeranghi* was aduertiſed of, he raiſed his ſiege, and went ſuddenly to meete with the foreſaid Arabians; whom after he had diſcomfited in three daies, he then ſafely returned to lay new ſiege. The citizens ſeeing themſelues cut off from all hope of the Arabians ayde, began ſeriouſly to treat of peace with the enemie; which the eaſlier to obtaine, they promiſed to defray all the kings charges layde out in this expedition, and to pay him for yeerly tribute moe then ten thouſand ducates: howbeit with this prouiſo, that they for whoſe cauſe the king had ſent the ſaid armie, if they entred the towne, ſhould bee ſecluded from all Magiſtracie and gouernment. But they hearing of theſe conditions, ſpake vnto the Captaine in manner following: Sir, if it ſhall pleaſe you to reſtore vs vnto our former dignitie and ſtate, we will procure you aboue an hundreth thouſand ducates. Neither is there cauſe why any man ſhould feare any iniurie or violence; for we proteſt vnto you that no man ſhall be a farthing endamaged by vs: onely we will exact at our aduerſaries handes the reuenues of our poſſeſſions which they haue theſe three yeeres vniuſtly detained from vs. The ſumme whereof will amount vnto thirtie thouſand ducates, all which we are moſt willing to beſtow vpon you, in regard of thoſe labours which you haue vndergone for our ſakes. Moreouer the reuenues of the whole region ſhall bee yours, which will come to twentie thouſand ducates. And the Iewes tribute ſhall yeeld you ten thouſand more. Vpon theſe ſpeeches the Captaine returned anſwere vnto the citizens, that his maſter the king of Fez had moſt faithfully promiſed thoſe which mooued him vnto this warre, that he would neuer forſake them till they had attained their harts deſire: for which cauſe he was more willing to haue them gouerne, then the towneſmen which were now in poſſeſſion, and that for many reaſons: wherefore (ſaith he) if you be determined to yeelde vnto the king, aſſure your ſelues, that no inconuenience ſhall light vpon you: but if you will to the ende remaine peruerſe and obſtinate, be yee aſſured alſo, that the king will deale moſt extremely with you. This meſſage was no ſooner knowen vnto the people, but foorthwith they began to be diſtracted into diuers factions: ſome there were which ſtood for the king, and others choſe rather manfully to fight it out, then that the king ſhould be admitted: inſomuch that the whole citie reſounded with brawlings, quarels, and contentions. This tumult came at length by ſpies vnto the Captaines eare, who preſently cauſed halfe his forces to take armes; and by their

meanes

meanes in three howers ſpace he wan the citie with little ſlaughter on his part. For thoſe townesmen that fauoured the king, did what they could on the inſide, to ſet open the gates, and ſo did the aſſailants on the outſide, neither did any reſiſt their attempts, by reaſon of the foreſaid ciuill diſſenſions. Whereupon Captaine *Ezzeranghi* entring the citie, cauſed the kings colours to be aduanced in the market-place, and vpon the wals, charging his horſemen to range about the citie, that no citizens might eſcape by flight; and laſt of all made a proclamation vnto all his ſouldiers, that they ſhould not vpon paine of death offer any iniurie vnto the townesmen. Then he cauſed all the chieftaines of the contrarie faction to be brought priſoners vnto him: to whom he threatned captiuitie and thraldome, till they ſhould diſburſe ſo much as the king had ſpent in that expedition: the totall ſumme was twelue thouſand ducates, which the wiues and kinsfolkes of the captiues preſently payde. Neither could they yet obtaine their libertie: for the exiles, for whoſe cauſe the king had ſent that armie, demaunded reſtitution of all their goods, which the other had for certaine yeeres detained from them. The captiues therfore were committed that night, & the next morning lawyers & atturnies came to plead on both ſides before a iudge & the captaine. Howbeit after a great deale of tedious ſending and prooving, hauing concluded nothing at all, the captaine was ſo weary, that he left them, and went to ſupper. Afterward he cauſed the captiues to be brought foorth, wiſhing them to pay the ſums demaunded; for (ſaith he) If you come before the king of Fez he wil make you to diſburſe more then twiſe the value. At which words being terrified, they wrote vnto their wiues, if they woulde euer ſee them aliue, to procure them money by ſome meanes. Eight daies after, the women brought as many golde rings, bracelets, and other ſuch iewels, as were valued at eight and twenty thouſand ducates: for they had rather beſtowe theſe for the ranſome of their husbandes, then to reueale their great wealth; bringing foorth all their coſtly ornaments, as if their money had beene quite exhauſt. When therefore the king and the exiles were fully ſatisfied, inſomuch that nothing ſeemed nowe to let the ſaid captiues from libertie, the captaine ſpake vnto them in this wiſe: Sirs, I haue ſignified (though vnwillingly) vnto my maſter the king all matters which haue here paſſed betweene vs: for I dare by no meanes releaſe you, till the kings letters authorize me ſo to do: Howbeit, I wiſh you to be of good cheere; for ſithens you haue honeſtly reſtored to euery man his owne, there is no doubt but your ſelues ſhall ſhortly be ſet at libertie. The ſame night the captaine called a friend of his, whoſe counſell he founde oftentimes to take good effect, and asked him by what meanes he might without ſuſpicion of guile or trechery, wring any more ſums of money from them. Whereunto his friend replied: make them beleeue (quoth he) that you are willed by the kings letters to put them all to death: howbeit, that you will not, for pitties ſake, deale ſo extremely with innocent perſons: but that you will ſend them to Fez to receiue puniſhment or pardon at the kings pleaſure. Heereupon

A notable and effectuall practiſe to wring more money out of the townesmens purſes.

the kings letters were counterfeited, which the day following the captaine with a lamẽtable voice publiſhed vnto his two & forty priſoners. My friends (quoth he) ſo it is, that the king hauing receiued ſome ſiniſter and wrong information, that you ſhould go about to make a conſpiracie: moſt firmely enioineth me by theſe his letters, to put each one of you to death: which, though it be ful ſore againſt my wil, yet needs I muſt obey my prince, if I wil not wittingly runne vpon mine owne deſtruction. And then ſhedding ſome fained teares: ſithens (quoth he) we can vpon the ſodaine deuiſe no better courſe, I thinke it moſt conuenient to ſend you with a troupe of horſemen vnto the king, whoſe wrath (perhaps) you may by ſome meanes pacifie. Whereupon the captiues growing farre more penſiue then before, recommended themſelues vnto God, and to the captaines clemencie, requeſting his good will with many teares. And foorthwith there comes one in among them, who aduiſed them to make vp ſome round ſumme of money, & therewithall to trie if they could appeaſe the king: and ſeemed likewiſe to intreat the captaine, that he woulde by his letters ſtande their friend to the king. Heereunto the captiues agreeing with one voice, promiſed that they would giue the king a great ſumme of golde, and woulde moſt liberally reward the captaine. The captaine, as though forſooth this condition much diſliked him, asked at length how much golde they ment to ſend the king: one ſaide that he woulde diſburſe a thouſand ducates, another, that he would giue fiue hundreth, and the third, eight hundreth. But the captaine making ſhew, that this was too little, ſaide that he was loth to make ſignification of ſo ſmall a ſumme vnto the king: howbeit, better it were for you (quoth the captaine) to goe your ſelues vnto the king, with whom perhaps you ſhall make a more reaſonable end then you are aware of. But they fearing hard meaſure, if they ſhould be caried vnto the king, were far more importunate with the captaine then before, that he would (to his power) be good vnto them. Wherefore the captaine (as though at length he had been mooued with their vehement petitions) ſpake vnto them in this wiſe: heere are of you (my maſters) two and fortie noble & rich perſons; if you wil promiſe two thouſand ducates a man, I will ſignifie on your behalfe ſo much vnto the king, and ſo I hope to perſwade him: but if this condition will not pleaſe him, then muſt I needs ſend you to make anſwere for your ſelues. This condition they al of them yeelded vnto; howbeit with this prouizo, that euery man ſhould giue proportionablie to his wealth, and that they might haue for the paiment fifteene daies of farther reſpite. The twelfth day following the captaine fained, that he had receiued letters from his king, ſignifying that the king, for his ſake, woulde ſhewe the captiues more fauour. The fifteenth day he had paied vnto him eightie fowre thouſand ducates: neither coulde he ſufficiently woonder, how in ſo ſmall a towne, among two and fortie inhabitants onely, ſuch huge ſums of money could ſo readily be found. Then wrote he vnto his king how all matters had paſſed, demaunding what ſhould be done with the gold. And ſo the king foorthwith ſent two of his ſecretaries with an hundreth horſe-

men

men to fetch home the saide golde vnto Fez. The captiues being restored to their libertie, presented the saide captaine with horses, slaues, ciuet, and such like gifts, to the value of two thousand ducates: giuing him exceeding thankes for their libertie; and requesting him to take their presents in good woorth: for, had not their treasure beene quite consumed, they saide, they woulde haue bestowed farre greater vpon him. Wherefore, from thence forward, that region was subiect vnto the king of Fez, and to the foresaide captaine *Ezzeranghi*, till he was trecherously slaine by certaine Arabians. Moreouer the king receiueth from that citie, euen at this present twentie thousand ducats for yeerely tribute. I haue in this narration beene indeede somewhat more large then neede required; howbeit perhaps I did it, bicause I my selfe was present in al the expedition, and was an earnest mediatour for the citizens release: neither saw I euer (to my remembrance) a greater masse of golde, then was by subtiltie drawne from them. Yea the king himselfe neuer had so much golde in his coffers at one time: for albeit he receiueth yeerely thirtie thousand ducates, yet neuer could he store himselfe with so much at once, nor his father before him. These things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 915. and in the yeere of our Lord 1506. And here I would haue the reader to consider, what mans industrie and wit may doe in getting of money. The King maruelled much at this summe of gold; but afterward he had greater cause to woonder at the wealth of a certaine Iewe, who payed more out of his owne purse, then all the forenamed captiues. And his riches were the cause, why the King of Fez exacted fiftie thousand ducates from the Iewes, for that they were said to fauour his enimies. I my selfe bare him companie, that went in the Kings name to receiue the sayd summe of the Iewes.

Of Efza a towne of Tedles.

THis towne standeth two miles from Tefza, and containeth almost sixe hundred families, being built vpon a little hill at the foote of mount Atlas. In this towne are many Moores and Iewes which make *Bernussi. The naturall inhabitants are either artificers or husbandmen, being in subiection to the gouernours of Tefza. Their women are excellent spinsters, wherby they are saide to gaine more then the men of the towne. Betweene this towne and Tefza runneth a certaine riuer called by the inhabitants Derne, which springing foorth of Atlas, runneth through the plaines of that region, till at length it falleth into Ommirabih. On both sides of this riuer are most beautifull and large gardens repleniſhed with all kindes of fruits. The townesmen here are most liberall and curteous people, and will permit merchants trauelling that way freely to come into their gardens, and to take thence as much fruit as they will. No people are slower then they for paying of debts: for albeit the merchants lay downe readie money to receiue

*Or Ilbernus, being a kinde of garment.

Bernuſſi

Bernuſſi within three moneths, yet are they ſometime faine to ſtay an whole yeere. My ſelfe was in this towne when the kings armie lay in Tedles, and then they yeelded themſelues to the king. The ſecond time that the kings generall of his armie came vnto them, they preſented him with fifteen horſes, and as many ſlaues. Afterward they gaue him fifteene kine, in token that they were the kings loyall ſubiects.

Of Cithiteb.

THis towne was built by the Africans vpon an high hill, almoſt tenne miles weſtward of Efza. Well peopled it is with rich and noble inhabitants: and becauſe Bernuſſi be here made, it is alwaies frequented with ſtore of merchants. The top of the ſaid high mountaine is continually couered with ſnow. The fields adioyning to the towne are full of vineyards and gardens, which bring foorth fruits in ſuch abundance, that they are nought woorth to be ſold in the markets. Their women are beautifull, fat, and comely, being adorned with much ſiluer: their eies and haire are of a browne colour. The inhabitants are ſo ſtout and ſullen, that when the other cities of Tedles yeelded to the king, they alone ſtood out: yea they aſſembled vnder a certaine captaine an armie of a thouſand horſemen, wherewith they ſo vexed the kings forces, that he was often in danger to haue loſt al that which he had got. Afterward the king ſent his brother with a new ſupply of men to aide his lieutenant; but he alſo had hard ſucceſſe. At length hauing maintained warre for three whole yeeres, the king commanded a Iew to poyſon their captaine. And ſo at laſt the king wan this citie alſo, in the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

* *Ilbernus.*

Of the towne of Eithiad.

THis towne being built by the Africans vpon a certaine hillocke of Atlas, containeth to the number of three hundred families. It is walled onely towards the mountaine; for that ſide which reſpecteth the plaine, is ſo fortified naturally with rocks, that it ſeemeth not to need any wall. From Cithiteb it is about twelue miles diſtant. The temple of this towne is little, but moſt beautiful, round about which runneth a mote, in manner of a riuer. The inhabitants are wealthie and noble: they haue great ſtore of merchants, as well townesmen as forreiners. The Iewes here inhabiting are partly artificers and partly merchants. About this towne are abundance of ſprings, which breaking through the rocks of the mountaine, doe fall into a certaine riuer vnder the towne. On both ſides of this riuer are diuers gardens woonderfully repleniſhed with grapes, figs, and walnuts. Likewiſe the ſides of the mountaine it ſelfe abound greatly with oliues. Their women are no leſſe beautifull then ciuil, being adorned with much ſiluer, and wearing fine rings vpon their fingers and armes. Their vallie is fruitfull for all kinde of graine,

but

but their hill is meete onely for barly, and for goates-pasture. In my time one *Raoman Benguihazzan* vsurped this towne, and enioied it to his dying day. My selfe was once entertained by a priest of this place, in the yeere of the Hegeira 921.

Of Seggheme a mountaine of Tedles.

ALbeit this mountaine standeth much southerly, yet is it to be accounted one of the mountaines of Tedles. Westward it beginneth from the mountaine of Tesauon, extending it selfe eastward to mount Magran, from whence the famous riuer of Ommirabih is said to take his beginning. The south part bordreth vpon mount Dedes. The inhabitants are said originally to bee descended from the people of Zanaga: they are personable, cheerefull, valiant, and warlike people. Their weapons are dartes, Turkish swords, and daggers. They sling stones likewise with great dexteritie and force. They are at continuall war with the inhabitants of Tedles, insomuch that no merchants can passe that way without publike safe-conduct, and without great expense of mony. Their houses are so homely built, that sometime three or fower roomes are contained in one. Of goates they haue great abundance, as likewise of mules scarcely so big as asses, which range so farre into the forrest to seeke their foode, that they are often deuoured of lions. They would neuer submit themselues to any prince; for their mountaine is so rough and steepe, that it seemeth almost impregnable. In my time the same captaine which had woon the townes of Tedles went about to assaile them in like manner. Which when the mountainers vnderstood, assembling a great armie, they shrowded themselues in a certaine part of the mountaine, neere which they knew their enemies would passe. And so soone as they saw all the enemies horsemen ascended vp the hill, suddenly rushing foorth, they gaue them the onset. The skirmish was not so long as bloodie: for the captaines armie being too weake for the mountainers, could neither march on, nor retire: wherefore they were constrained to fight it out by hand-blowes: many of them with their horses being throwen headlong downe the rocks, were miserably crushed in peeces: the residue were either taken or slaine, so that I thinke scarce one man of them escaped. But of all others the captiues were most miserable: for the mountainers themselues would not slay them, but deliuered them ouer to their wiues to be tormented, who, as if they had beene she-tigres or lioneses, put them to a most horrible and vile death. From thencefoorth they had no traffique nor familiaritie with the people of Tedles, neither seemed they greatly to stand in need of their friendship (for they haue great store of barlie, of cattell, and of sweet fountaines) vnlesse it bee for that they are excluded from all trade of merchandize.

Of

Of the mountaine called Magran.

SOmwhat beyond the foresaid mountaine of Seggheme standeth mount Magran. Southward it bordereth vpon the region of Farcala, neere vnto the Lybian desert: westward it beginneth at Seggheme, and extendeth eastward to the foote of mount Dedes. It is continually couered with snow. The inhabitants haue such abundance of small and great cattell that they cannot long remaine in one place together. They build their houses of the barke of certaine trees, the rooffe whereof dependeth on slender sparres, fashioned like vnto the hoops enuironing the lids of such chests or trunks, as the women of Italie, when they trauell, carrie vpon their mules. So likewise these people transport their whole houses vp and downe by the strength of mules, till they haue found a fit place of aboad; where, so soone as they arriue, they plant their said houses, remaining there with their whole families, so long as they haue grasse sufficient to feede their cattell. Howbeit all the spring time they settle themselues in one place, making certaine low stables or cottages, & couering the with the boughs of trees, which serue for their cattel to lie in a nights: and to the end that the cold may not pinch them ouermuch, they kindle certaine huge fires neere vnto their said stables, wherupon sometimes the winde so violently driueth the fire, that vnles the cattell escape by flight, they are in great danger to be consumed: and as their houses are destitute of walles, so are their stables. They are continually molested and haunted with lions and woolues. In their apparell and customes they wholy agree with the foresaid people of Seggheme, sauing that these haue houses of bark and wood, and the othes of stone. I my selfe, in the 917. yeere of the Hegeira, was in this mountaine, as I trauelled from Dara to Fez.

These people liue like the Tartars.

A description of mount Dedes.

THis high and cold mountaine greatly aboundeth with fountaines and woods. Westward it beginneth at mount Magran, extending thence almost as far as the mountaine of Adesan; and southward it bordereth vpon the plaines of Todga. The length thereof is almost fowerscore miles. Vpon the very top of this mountaine there was a citie built in ancient time, whereof a few ruinous monuments are to be seene at this present; namely certaine walles of white stone, wherein are diuers letters and wordes grauen, which the inhabitants themselues doe not vnderstand. Many are of opinion, that this citie was built long agoe by the Romans: howbeit I my selfe could neuer finde so much affirmed by any African writer, nor yet the citie it selfe mentioned. Sauing that *Seriffo Essacalli* in a certaine storie of his maketh mention of Tedsi, which he saith is neere vnto Segelmesse and Dara: but he declareth not whether it bee built vpon mount Dedes or no. Howbeit for mine owne part I thinke it to be the very same:

for

for there is no other citie in the whole region. The inhabitants of Dedes are in very deede moſt baſe people; of whom the greater part dwell in caues vnder the ground: their foode is barly and Elhaſid, that is to ſay, barly meale ſodden with water, and ſalt, which we mentioned before in our deſcription of Hea: For heere is nothing but barly to be had. Goates and aſſes they haue in great abundance. The caues wherein their cattell lodge are exceedingly full of *Nitre: ſo that I verily thinke if this mountaine were neer vnto Italy, the ſaide Nitre woulde yeerely be woorth fiue and twentie thouſand ducates. But ſuch is their negligence and vnskilfulnes, that they are vtterly ignorant to what purpoſes Nitre ſerueth. Their garments are ſo rude, that they ſcarce couer halfe their nakednes. Their houſes are very loathſome, being annoied with the ſtinking ſmell of their goates. In all this mountaine you ſhall finde neither caſtle nor walled towne: when they builde an houſe, they pile one ſtone vpon another without any morter at all, the roofe whereof they make of certaine rubbiſh, like as they doe in ſome places of Siſa and Fabbriano: the reſidue (as we haue ſaide) do inhabite in caues, neither ſawe I euer, to my remembrance, greater ſwarmes of fleas then among theſe people. Moreouer they are trecherous and ſtrong theeues, ſo giuen to ſtealing and quarrelling, that for one vnkinde worde they wil not onely contend, but ſeeke alſo the deſtruction one of another. They haue neither iudge, prieſt, nor any honeſt gouernour among them. No merchants reſort vnto them: for being giuen to continuall idlenes, and not exerciſing any trades or handie-crafts, they haue nothing meet for merchants to buy. If any merchant bring any wares into their region, vnleſſe he be ſafe conducted by their captaine, he is in danger to be robbed of altogither. And if the wares ſerue not for their owne neceſſarie vſes, they will exact one fourth part of them for cuſtome. Their women are moſt forlorne and fluttiſh, going more beggerly apparelled then the men. So continual and ſlauiſh are the toiles of theſe women, that for miſerie, the life of aſſes is not comparable to theirs. And, to be briefe, neuer was I ſo wearie of any place in all Africa, as I was of this: howbeit in the yeere of the Hegeira 918. being commanded by one, to whom I was in dutie bound, to trauell vnto Segelmeſſe, I could not chooſe but come this way.

*Or Salt-peter.

IOHN

IOHN LEO HIS THIRD BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

A most exact description of the kingdome of Fez.

THE kingdome of Fez beginneth westward at the famous riuer Ommirabih, and extendeth eastward to the riuer Muluia; northward it is enclosed partly with the Ocean, and partly with the Mediterran sea. The said kingdome of Fez is diuided into seuen prouinces; to wit, Temesna, the territorie of Fez, Azgar, *Elhabet, Errif, Garet, and *Elchauz: euery of which prouinces had in olde time a seuerall gouernour: neither indeed hath the citie of Fez alwaies beene the kings royall seate, but being built by a certaine Mahumetan apostata, was gouerned by his posteritie almost an hundred and fiftie yeeres. After which time the familie of Marin got the vpper hand, who here setling their aboad, were the first that euer called Fez by the name of a kingdome: the reasons why they did so, we will declare more at large in our small treatise concerning the Mahumetan religion. But now let vs as briefly as we may, describe the foresaid seuen prouinces.

*Habat.
*Chauz or Cheuz.

Of Temesna one of the prouinces of Fez.

WEstward it beginneth at the riuer Ommirabih, and stretcheth to the riuer Buragrag eastward; the south frontire thereof bordereth vpon Atlas, and the north vpon the Ocean sea. It is all ouer a plaine countrie, containing in length from west to east almost fowerscore miles, and in breadth from Atlas to the Ocean sea about threescore. This prouince hath euer almost beene the principall of the seuen before named: for it contained to the number of fortie great townes, besides three hundred castles, all which were inhabited by Barbarian Africans. In the 323. yeere of the Hegeira this prouince was by a certaine heretike against the Mahumetan religion called *Chemim* the sonne of *Mennal* freed from paying of tribute. This bad fellow perswaded the people of Fez to yeeld no tribute nor honour vnto their prince, and himselfe he professed to be a prophet: but a while after he dealt not onely in matters of religion,

A dangerous seducer.

religion, but in commonwealth-affaires also. At length waging war against the king of Fez (who was himselfe then warring with the people of Zenete) it so befell, that a league was concluded betweene them, conditionally that *Chemim* shoulde enioy Temesne, and that the king should containe himselfe within his signiorie of Fez, so that from thencefoorth neither should molest other. The said *Chemim* gouerned the prouince of Temesne about fiue and thirtie yeeres: and his successours enioyed it almost an hundred yeeres after his decease. But king *Ioseph* hauing built Maroco, went about to bring this prouince vnder his subiection. Whereupon he sent sundry Mahumetan doctors, and priestes to reclaime the gouernour thereof from his heresie, and to perswade him, if it were possible, to yeelde vnto the king by faire meanes. Whereof the inhabitants being aduertised, they consulted with a certaine kinsman of the foresaid gouernour, in the citie called *Anfa*, to murther the king of Maroco his ambassadours: and so they did. Soone after leuying an armie of fiftie thousand men, he marched towards Maroco, intending to expell thence the familie of Luntuna, and *Ioseph* their king. King *Ioseph* hearing of this newes, was driuen into woonderfull perplexitie of minde. Wherefore preparing an huge and mighty armie, he staied not the comming of his enemies: but on the sudden within three daies, hauing conducted his forces ouer the riuer of Ommirabih, he entred Temesne, when as the foresaid fiftie thousand men were so dismaied at the kings armie, that they all passed the riuer Buragrag, and so fled into Fez. But the king so dispeopled and wasted Temesne, that without all remorse he put both man, woman, and childe to the sword. This armie remained in the region eight daies, in which space they so razed and demolished all the townes and cities thereof, that there scarce remaine any fragments of them at this time. But the king of Fez on the other side hearing that the people of Temesne were come into his dominions, made a truce with the tribe of Zenete, and bent his great armie against the said Temesnites. And at length hauing found them halfe famished neere vnto the riuer of Buragrag, he so stopped their passage on all sides, that they were constrained to run vp the craggie mountaines and thickets. At last being enuironed with the kings forces, some of them were drowned in the riuer, others were throwne downe headlong from the rocks, and the residue were miserably slaine by their enemies. And for the space of ten moneths there was such hauock made among the Temesnites, that a fillie remnant of them was left aliue. But king *Ioseph* prince of the Luntunes returned foorthwith to Maroco for the repairing of his forces, to the end he might bid the king of Fez a battell. Howbeit Temesne being bereft of her people, was left to be inhabited of wilde beastes. Neither had that prouince any new colonie, or supply of inhabitants, till that about 150. yeeres after, king *Mansor* returning from Tunis, brought thence certaine Arabians with him, vnto whom he gaue the possession of Temesne. And these Arabians enioyed the said prouince for fiftie yeeres, till such time as king *Mansor* himselfe was expelled out of his kingdome;

The horrible desolation of Temesne.

and then were they also expelled by the Luntunes, and were brought vnto extreme miserie. Afterward the kings of the familie of Marin bestowed the said prouince vpon the people of Zenete and Haoara. Hence it came to passe that the said people of Zenete and Haoara were alwaies great friends vnto the Marin familie, and were thought to haue defended them from the furie of the king of Maroco. From which time they haue peaceably enioyed Maroco,& now they are growne in lesse then an hundred yeeres so mighty, that they stand not in feare of the king of Fez. For they are able to bring threescore thousand horsemen to the field, and haue two hundred castles at their command. My selfe had great familiaritie and acquaintance with them, and therefore I will not sticke to record all memorable things which I sawe among them.

Of Anfa a towne in Temesna.

THis famous towne was built by the Romans vpon the Ocean sea shore, northward of Atlas sixtie, eastward of Azamur sixtie, and westward of Rebat fortie miles. The citizens thereof were most ciuill and wealthie people: the fields thereto adioyning are exceeding fruitfull for all kinde of graine: neither doe I thinke, that any towne in all Africa is for pleasant situation comparable thereto. The plaine round about it (except it be to the sea northward) is almost fowerscore miles ouer. In olde time it was fraught with stately temples, rich ware-houses and shops, and beautifull palaces: which the monuments as yet remaining doe sufficiently testifie. They had also most large and faire gardens, out of which they gather great abundance of fruit, especially of melons, and pome-citrons euen at this day: all which are perfectly ripe by mid-Aprill. So that the inhabitants vsually carrie their fruits vnto Fez, by reason that the fruits of Fez are not so soone ripe. Their attire is trim and decent, and they haue alwaies had great traffique with the Portugals and the English. Likewise they haue many learned men among them. Howbeit two reasons are alleaged of the destruction of this towne: first, because they were too desirous of libertie; and secondly, for that they maintained certaine gallies or foistes, wherewith they daily molested the Iland of Cadiz and the Portugals. Wherefore at length the king of Portugall sent a strong nauie of fiftie sailes against them, the consideration whereof strooke such terrour into the inhabitants, that taking such goods as they could cartie, some fled to Rebat, and others to Sela, and so their towne was left naked to the spoile of the enemie. But the Generall of the kings fleete not knowing that they were fled, put all his forces into battell-array. Howbeit after a while being aduertised how the matter stood, he conducted his soldiers into the citie, which in one daies space they so defaced, burning the houses, and laying the walles euen with the ground, that vntill this day it hath remained voide of inhabitants. My selfe being in this place, I coulde scarce refraine from teares, when I seriously beheld the miserable ruine of

English traffique.

Anfa destroied by the Portugals.

so

ſo many faire buildings and temples, whereof ſome monuments are as yet extant. The gardens, albeit they bring foorth ſome fruit, yet are they more like vnto woods then gardens. And now by reaſon of the king of Fez his weaknes and default, this place is fallen into ſo great deſolation, as I vtterly deſpaire, that euer it will be inhabited againe.

Of the citie of Manſora.

THis towne was built by *Manſor* the king and Mahumetan patriarke of Maroco vpon a moſt pleaſant field, being two miles diſtant from the Ocean ſea, fiue and twenty miles from Rebat, and fiue and twenty from Anfa: it contained in times paſt almoſt fower hundred families. By this towne runneth a certaine riuer called by the inhabitants Guir, on both ſides whereof in times paſt were moſt beautifull gardens, but now there are no fruits at all to be found. For vpon the ſurprize of Anfa the inhabitants of this towne fled vnto Rebat, fearing leaſt they alſo ſhould haue beene aſſailed by the Portugals. Howbeit the wall of this towne remained all whole, ſauing that the Arabians of Temeſne brake it downe in certaine places. This towne alſo I could not but with great ſorrow behold; for eaſie it were to repaire it, and to furniſh it with new inhabitants, if but a few houſes were ſaued from ruine: but ſuch is the malice of the Arabians thereabout, that they will ſuffer no people to reedifie the ſame.

Of the towne of Nuchaila.

THis little towne called by the inhabitants Nuchaila, is built almoſt in the midſt of Temeſne. It was well peopled in times paſt, and then (ſo long as the foreſaid *Chemim* and his ſucceſſours bare rule) there were fayres yeerely holden, whereunto all the inhabitants of Temeſne vſually reſorted. The towneſmen were exceeding wealthie; for the plaines ſtretched almoſt fortie miles right foorth from each ſide of their towne. I red (as I remember) in a certaine ſtorie, that they had in times paſt ſuch abundance of corne, as they would giue a camels burthen thereof for a paire of ſhooes. Howbeit when king *Ioſeph* of Maroco deſtroied all the region of Temeſne, this towne was laid waſte, together with all the townes and cities of the ſame prouince: howbeit at this day certaine fragments thereof are to be ſeene, namely ſome partes of the towne-wall, and one high ſteeple. Here alſo in the large and pleaſant gardens you may ſee many vines and trees planted, which are ſo olde and ſear, that they yeeld no fruit at all. The huſbandmen thereabout hauing finiſhed their daies worke, doe lay vp their rakes and other ſuch countrey tooles in the ſaid ſteeple: ſuppoſing that by vertue of a certaine holy man which lieth there buried, no man dare remooue them out of their place. I haue often ſeene this towne, as I trauelled betweene Rebat and Maroco.

Of the towne of Adendum.

THis towne was situate among certaine hils almost fifteene miles from mount Atlas, and fiue and twenty miles from the towne last named. The soile neere vnto it is exceeding fruitfull for corne. Not farre from the walles thereof springeth a certaine riuer; about which place are great store of palme-trees, being but low and fruitles. The said riuer runneth through certaine vallies and rocks, where iron-mines are said to haue beene of olde, which may seeme probable, for the earth resembleth iron in colour, and the water in taste. Here is nothing now to be seene but a few reliques and ruines of houses and pillers ouerturned: for this towne was destroied at the same time, when the whole region (as is before declared) was laid waste.

Iron-mines.

Of the towne of Tegeget.

THis towne was built by the Africans vpon the banke of Ommirabih neere vnto the high way leading from Tedles to Fez. It had in times past ciuill and wealthie inhabitants, for it stood not far from the way which passeth ouer Atlas into the deserts: hither were all the neighbour-people woont to resort for to buy corne. And albeit this towne was razed with all the residue in the prouince, yet is it after long time replanted with inhabitants. Hither doe all the Arabians of Temesne bring their corne, deliuering it vnto the townesmen, to be kept. Here are no shops nor artificers at all, but certaine smithes onely, which make tooles of husbandrie and horseshooes. The townesmen are streightly inioyned by the Arabians their gouernours courteously to entertaine all strangers trauelling that way. Merchants pay custome there for each packe of cloth to the value of a riall: but for their horses and camels they giue no custome at all. Often trauelling the same way, the towne did not greatly please me, albeit the grounds about it doe plentifully abound with cattell and corne.

Of the towne called Hain Elchallu.

THis small towne standeth on a certaine plaine not farre from Mansora. About this towne grow abundance of wilde cherrie-trees, and of other thornie trees, bearing a round fruit not much vnlike to a cherrie, sauing that it is yellow: it is somewhat bigger then an oliue, and the vtter part thereof is nothing pleasant in taste. The fennes and marishes on all sides of the towne are full of snailes and toades: which toades (as the inhabitants told me) are no whit venemous. There is not any African historiographer which maketh description or mention of this towne; because perhaps they thought it not woorthie the name of a towne, or for that it was long since destroied. Neither was it (as I coniecture) built by the Africans, but either by the Romans or some other forren people.

A

A description of Rebat.

THis great and famous towne was built not many yeeres agoe by *Manſor* the king and Mahumetan patriarke of Maroco, vpon the Ocean ſea ſhore. By the eaſt part thereof runneth the riuer Buragrag beforenamed, and there diſchargeth it ſelfe into the maine ſea. The rocke whereon this towne is founded, ſtandeth neere the mouth of the ſaid riuer, hauing the riuer on the one ſide thereof, and the ſea on the other. In building it much reſembleth Maroco, which *Manſor* willed to be a paterne thereof: ſauing that it is a great deale leſſe then Maroco. Some ſay that the reaſon why it was built in this place was, for that king *Manſor* poſſeſſing the kingdome of Granada and a great part of Spaine beſides, and conſidering that Maroco was ſo far diſtant, that if any warres ſhould happen, he could not in due time ſend new forces againſt the Chriſtians, determined to built ſome towne vpon the ſea ſhore, where he and his armie might remaine all ſummer time. Some perſwaded him to lie with his armie at Ceuta a towne vpon the ſtreites of Gibraltar: but *Manſor* ſeeing that by reaſon of the barrennes of the ſoile he could not maintaine an armie royall for three or fower monethes in the towne of Ceuta, he cauſed this towne of Rebat in ſhort ſpace to be erected, and to be exceedingly beautified with temples, colleges, pallaces, ſhops, ſtoues, hoſpitals, and other ſuch buildings. Moreouer on the ſouth ſide without the walles he cauſed a certaine high tower like the tower of Maroco to be built, ſauing that the winding ſtaires were ſomewhat larger, inſomuch that three horſes a-breaſt might well aſcend vp: from the top whereof they might eſcrie ſhips an huge way into the ſea. So exceeding is the height thereof, that I thinke there is no where the like building to be found. And to the end that greater ſtore of artificers and merchants might hither from all places make reſort, he appointed, that euery man according to his trade and occupation ſhould be allowed a yeerely ſtipend: whereupon it came to paſſe that within few moneths, this towne was better ſtored with all kinde of artificers and merchants, then any towne in all Africa beſides, and that becauſe they reaped a double gaine. Here vſed *Manſor* with his troupes to remaine from the beginning of April, till the moneth of September. And whereas there was no water about the towne meete to be drunke (for the ſea runneth ten miles vp into the riuer, and the wels likewiſe yeeld ſalt-water) *Manſor* cauſed freſh water to be conueied to the towne by certaine pipes and chanels, from a fountaine twelue miles diſtant. And the conducts hee made arch-wiſe, like vnto the conducts of Italie in many places and ſpecially at Rome. So ſoone as the ſaid water-conduct was deriued vnto the towne, he cauſed it to be diuided and ſent into ſundry places, as namely ſome pipes thereof to the temples, ſome to the colleges, others to the kings pallace, and the reſt into the common ceſternes, throughout all the citie. Howbeit after king *Manſors* death this towne grew into ſuch decay, that ſcarce the tenth

Why king Manſor built the towne of Rebat vpon the ſea ſhore.

part thereof now remaineth. The said notable water-conduct was vtterly fordone in the warre betweene the Marin-familie and the successors of *Mansor*, and the famous towne it selfe decaieth euery day more then other: so that at this present a man shall hardly finde throughout the whole towne fower hundred houses inhabited; the residue are changed into fields and vineyards. About the foresaid rocke are two or three streetes with a few shops in them, which notwithstanding are in continuall danger, for they daily feare least the Portugals should surprize them; because the Portugall king often determined their ouerthrow, thinking if he might but win Rebat, that the kingdome of Fez were easie to be conquered. Howbeit the king of Fez hath alwaies endeuoured to defend the same, and strongly to fortifie it against the enemie. But comparing their former felicitie with the present alteration whereinto they are fallen, I cannot but greatly lament their miserable case.

Of the towne of Sella.

THis towne was built by the Romans vpon the riuer of Buragrag, two miles from the Ocean sea, and a mile from Rebat: from whence, if a man will goe to the sea, he must take Rebat in his way. This towne also was destroied when (as is aforesaid) king *Ioseph* spoyled all Temesne. Howbeit afterward king *Mansor* caused it to be walled round about, and built therein a faire hospitall and a stately pallace, into which his soldiers might at their pleasure retire themselues. Here likewise he erected a most beautifull temple, wherein he caused a goodly hall or chappell to be set vp, which was curiously carued, and had many faire windowes about it: and in this hall (when he perceiued death to seaze vpon him) he commanded his subiects to burie his corpes. Which being done, they laid one marble-stone ouer his head and another ouer his feete, whereon sundry epitaphes were engrauen. After him likewise all the honourable personages of his familie and blood, chose to be interred in the same hall. And so did the kings of the Marin-familie, so long as their commonwealth prospered. My selfe on a time entring the same hall, beheld there thirtie monuments of noble and great personages, and diligently wrote out all their epitaphes: this I did in the yeere of the Hegeira 915.

Where king Mansor was buried.

Of the towne called Mader Auuam.

THis towne was built in my time by a certaine treasurer of the Mahumetan prelate *Abdulmumen*, vpon the banke of Buragrag. Some say it was built onely for yron-mines. From mount Atlas it is ten miles distant, and betweene it and Atlas are certaine shadie woods, full of terrible lions and leopards. So long as the founders posteritie gouerned this towne, it was well stored with people, with faire buildings, temples, innes, and hospitals: but, the Marin-familie preuailing daily more and more, it was at length by them

Iron-mines.

Lyons, and leopards.

them vtterly destroyed. Part of the inhabitants were slaine, and part taken prisoners, and the residue by flight escaped to Sella. The king of Maroco sent forces to succour the towne, but the citizens being vanquished before their comming, were constrained to forsake the same, and to yeeld it vnto the Marin-soldiers. Howbeit the king of Maroco his captaine comming vpon the Marin-captaine with round forces, draue him and his foorth of the towne, and tooke possession thereof himselfe. At length the king of the said Marin-familie marching with an armie against Maroco, tooke his iourney by this towne: whereat the gouernour being dismaied left the said towne, and before the kings approch betooke himselfe to flight. But the king putting all the inhabitants to the sword, left the towne it selfe so defaced and desolate, that by report it hath lien dispeopled euer since. The towne-walles and certaine steeples are as yet to be seene. My selfe sawe this towne, when the king of Fez hauing concluded a league with his cozen, tooke his iourney to Thagia, for to visite the sepulchre of one accounted in his life time an holy man, called * *Seudi Buhasa*: which was in the yeere of the Hegeira 920. *Anno Dom.* 1511.

* Or Sidi.

Of Thagia a towne in Temesne.

THis little towne was in ancient time built by the Africans among certaine hils of mount Atlas. The aire is extreme cold, and the soile drie and barren. It is enuironed with huge woods, which are full of lions and other cruell beasts. Their scarcitie of corne is sufficiently counteruailed with abundance of hony and goates. Ciuilitie they haue none at all; and their houses are most rudely built; for they haue no vse of lime. In this towne is visited the sepulchre of one accounted for a most holy man, who is reported in the time of *Habdulmumen*, to haue wrought many miracles against the furie of lions: whereupon he was reputed by many as a great prophet. I remember that I read in a certaine writer of that nation commonly called *Etdedle*, a whole catalogue of the said holy mans miracles: which whether he wrought by arte-magique, or by some woonderfull secret of nature, it is altogether vncertaine. Howbeit his great fame and honorable reputation is the cause why this towne is so well fraught with inhabitants. The people of Fez hauing solemnized their passeouer, doe yeerely frequent this towne to visite the said sepulchre, and that in such huge numbers, that you woulde esteeme them to be an whole armie; for euery principall man carries his tent and other necessaries with him: and so you shall see sometime an hundred tents and sometimes more in that company. Fifteene daies they are in performing of that pilgrimage; for Thagia standeth from Fez almost an hundred and twenty miles. My selfe being a childe, went thither on pilgrimage oftentimes with my father; as likewise being growne vp to mans estate, I repaired thither as often, making supplication to be deliuered from the danger of lions.

Of

Of the towne of Zarfa.

THis towne the Africans built vpon a certaine large and beautifull plaine, watred with pleasant riuers, and christall-fountaines. About the ancient bounds of this citie you may behold many shrubs, together with fig-trees and cherrie-trees, which beare such cherries, as at Rome are called Marene. Here are likewise certaine thornie trees, the fruit whereof is by the Arabians called Rabich. Somewhat lesser it is then a cherie, resembling in taste the fruit called Ziziphum, or Iujuba. Here also may you finde great store of wilde palme-trees, from which they gather a kinde of fruit like vnto Spanish oliues, sauing that the stone or nut is greater, and not so pleasant in taste: before they be ripe they taste somewhat like vnto Seruice-apples. This towne was destroied when king *Ioseph* aforesaid spoiled Temesne. Now the Arabians of Temesne sow their corne where the towne stood, with great increase and gaine.

Of the territorie of Fez.

WEstward it beginneth at the riuer of Buragrag, and stretcheth eastward to the riuer called Inauen: which two riuers are almost a hundred miles distant asunder. Northward it bordereth vpon the riuer * Subu, and southward vpon the foote of Atlas. The soile both for abundance of corne, fruits, and cattell seemeth to be inferiour to none other. Within this prouince you shall see many exceeding great villages, which may for their bignes, not vnfitly be called townes. The plaines of this region haue beene so wasted with former warres, that very few inhabitants dwell vpon them, except certaine poore silly Arabians, some of whom haue ground of their owne, and some possesse ground in common, either with the citizens of Fez, or with the king, or else with some courtier. But the fields of Sala and Mecnase are tilled by other Arabians of better account, and are for the most part subiect to the king of Fez. And now those things which are woorthy of memorie in this region let vs here make report of.

* Orçebu.

Of the citie or towne of Sella.

THis most ancient citie was built by the Romans, and sacked by the Gothes. And afterward when the Mahumetans armie were entred into the same region, the Gothes gaue it to *Tarick* one of their captaines. But euer since the time that Fez was built, Sela hath beene subiect vnto the gouernours thereof. It is most pleasantly situate vpon the Ocean sea-shore, within halfe a mile of Rebat; both which townes the riuer Buragrag separateth insunder. The buildings of this towne carrie a shew of antiquitie on them,

them, being artificially carued and ſtately ſupported with marble pillers. Their temples are moſt beautifull, and their ſhops are built vnder large porches. And at the end of euery row of ſhops is an arch, which (as they ſay) is to diuide one occupation frō another. And (to ſay all in a word) here is nothing wanting, which may be required either in a moſt honourable citie, or in a flouriſhing commonwealth. Moreouer hither reſort all kinde of merchants both Chriſtians and others. Here the Genowaies, Venetians, Engliſh and lowe Dutch vſed to traffique. In the 670. yeere of the Hegeira this towne was ſurprized by a certaine Caſtilian captaine, the inhabitants being put to flight, and the Chriſtians enioying the citie. And when they had kept it ten daies, being on the ſudden aſſailed by *Iacob* the firſt king of the Marin-familie (who could not, they thought, ſurceaſe his warre againſt Tremizen) they were put to the woorſt, the greater part being ſlaine, and the reſidue put to flight. From thencefoorth that prince fauoured of all his ſubiects, enioyed the kingdome, after whom lineally ſucceeded thoſe of his owne race and blood. And albeit this towne was in ſo few daies recouered from the enemie; yet a worlde it was to ſee, what a woonderfull alteration both of the houſes and of the ſtate of gouernment happened. Many houſes of this towne are left deſolate, eſpecially neere the towne-walles: which, albeit they are moſt ſtately and curiouſly built, yet no man there is that will inhabit them. The grounds adioyning vpon this towne are ſandie: neither are they fit for corne, but for cotton-wooll in diuers places very profitable. The inhabitants, diuers of them, doe weaue moſt excellent cotton. Here likewiſe are made very fine combes, which are ſold in all the kingdome of Fez, for the region thereabout yeeldeth great plenty of box, and of other wood fit for the ſame purpoſe. Their gouernment is very orderly and diſcreet euen vntill this day: for they haue moſt learned iudges, vmpires, and deciders of doubtfull caſes in lawe. This towne is frequented by many rich merchants of Genoa, whom the king hath alwaies had in great regarde; becauſe he gaineth much yeerely by their traffique. The ſaid merchants haue their aboad and diet, partly here at Sella, and partly at Fez: from both which towns they mutually helpe the traffique one of another. Theſe Genowaies I found in their affaires of merchandize to be exceeding liberall: for they will ſpend frankly to get a courtiers fauour, not ſo much for their owne priuate gaine, as to be eſteemed bountifull by ſtrangers. In my time there was an honorable gentlemā of Genoa in the king of Fez his court, called *Meſſer Thomaſo di Marino*, a man both learned & wiſe, & highly reputed of by the king. This man hauing continued almoſt thirtie yeeres in the Feſſan court, hee there deceaſed, and requeſting on his death-bed to haue his corpes interred at Genoa, the king commanded the ſame to be tranſported thither. After his deceaſe he left many ſonnes in the Feſſan kings court, who all of them prooued rich, and were greatly fauoured by the king.

Engliſh traffique.

Sela woon by a captaine of Caſtilia, and recouered forthwith by the king of Fez.

A merchant of Genoa.

Of

Of the towne called Fanzara.

THis towne being not very large, was built by a certaine king of the familie called Muachidin, on a beautiful plaine almost ten miles from Sella. The soile thereabouts yeeldeth corne in great plenty. Without the towne-walles are very many cleere fountaines and wels, which *Albucheſen* the king of Fez caused there to be digged. In the time of *Abuſaid* the last king of the Marin-familie, his cozen called *Sahid* was taken by *Habdilla* the king of Granada; whereupon by letters he requested his cozen the king of Fez to send him a certaine summe of money required by the king of Granada for his ransome. Which when the Fessan king refused to yeeld vnto, *Habdilla* restored his prisoner to libertie, and sent him towardes Fez to destroy both the citie and the king. Afterward *Sahid*, with the helpe of certaine wilde Arabians besieged Fez for seuen yeeres together; in which space most of the townes, villages, and hamlets throughout the whole kingdome were destroied. But at length such a pestilence inuaded *Sahids* forces, that himselfe, with a great part of his armie, in the * 918. yeere of the Hegeira, died thereof. Howbeit those desolate townes neuer receiued from thencefoorth any new inhabitants, especially Fanzara, which was giuen to certaine Arabian captaines, that came to assist *Sahid*.

The occasion of the bloody warres moued by Sahid.

The citie of Fez besieged for seuen yeeres together.

** This number (as I take it) should rather be 819.*

Of the towne of Mahmora.

THis towne was built vpon the mouth of the great riuer Subu by a certaine king of the Muachidin-familie, being almost halfe a mile distant from the sea, and about twelue miles from Sella. The places neere vnto it are sandie and barren. It was built (they say) of purpose to keepe the enemies from entring the mouth of the said riuer. Not farre from this towne standeth a mighty wood, the trees whereof beare a kinde of nuts or acornes about the bignes of Damascen-plums, being sweeter in taste then chest-nuts. Of which nuts certaine Arabians, dwelling neer vnto the place, conuey great plenty vnto the citie of Fez, and reape much gaine thereby: howbeit in going to gather this fruit, vnles they take good heede vnto themselues, they are in great danger of the most cruell and deuouring lions in all Africa; which there oftentimes doe seaze vpon them. This towne a hundred and twenty yeeres agoe was razed in the foresaid warre of *Sahid* against the king of Fez, nothing but a few ruines thereof remaining, whereby it appeereth to haue beene of no great bignes. In the 921. yeere of the Hegeira the king of Portugal sent an armie to build a forte in the foresaid riuers mouth; which they accordingly attempted to doe. But hauing laide the foundations, and reared the walles a good height, the king of Fez his brother so defeated them of their purpose, that he slue of them in one night almost three thousand in maner following: on a certaine morning before sun-rise three thou-

Most cruell and deuouring lions.

The Portugals attempting to build a forte within the mouth of the riuer Subu, defeated of their purpose, and slaine.

sand

sand Portugals marching towards the king of Fez his campe, determined to bring thence all the ordinance and field-peeces vnto their new-erected fort: howbeit most rashly and inconsiderately, themselues being but three thousand, and the kings armie containing fiftie thousand footemen, and fower thousand horsemen. And yet the Portugals hoped so slyly and closely to performe this attempt, that before the Moores were ready to pursue them, they should conuey all their ordinance vnto the forte which was two miles distant. The Moores which kept the ordinance being seuen thousand men, were all asleepe when the Portugals came: whereupon the Portugals had so good successe, that they had carried the ordinance almost a mile, before the enemie was aware thereof. But at last, some rumour or alarme being giuen in the Moores campe, they all betooke themselues to armes, and fiercely pursued the Portugals, who likewise arranged their whole companie into battell-array. And albeit the enemie enuironed them on all sides; yet they made such stout and valiant resistance, that they had all escaped to their forte in safetie, had not certaine villains in the king of Fez his armie cried out amaine in the Portugall toong: Hold your hands (fellow soldiers) and throw downe your weapons, for the kings brother will make a truce. Which the Portugals no sooner yeelded vnto, but the sauage and merciles Moores put them euery one to the sword, sauing three or fower onely, who were saued at the request of a captaine in the Moores campe. The Portugals Generall being sore dismaied with this slaughter (for thereby he had lost all his principal soldiers) craued aide of a certaine other captaine, which by chance arriued there with a mightie fleete, being accompanied with a great number of noblemen and gentlemen. Howbeit, he was so hindred by the Moores (who daily did him all the villanie they could, and sunke diuers of his ships) that he was not able to performe that which he desired. In the meane space newes was published among the Portugals, of the king of Spaines death; whereupon diuers ships were prouided, and many Portugals were sent into Spaine. Likewise the captaine of the said new forte seeing himselfe destitute of all succour, leauing the forte, embarked himselfe in those ships, which then lay vpon the riuer. But the greatest part of the fleete were cast away at their setting foorth, and the residue, to escape the Moores shot, ran themselues a-ground on the flats and shouldes of the riuer, and were there miserably slaine by the Moores. Many of their ships were here burnt, and their ordinance sunke in the sea. So many Christians were then slaine (some say to the number of ten thousand) that the sea-water in that place continued red with their blood for three daies after. Soone after the Moores tooke vp fower hundred great peeces of brasse out of the sea. This huge calamitie befell the Portugals for two causes: first because they would with such a small number make so rash an assault vpon the Moores, whom they knew to be so strong: and secondly, whereas the Portugall-king might at his owne cost haue sent another fleete for a new supply, he would by no meanes ioine his owne people and Castilians together. For by reason of the diuersitie of

A lamentable slaughter.

counsels

counsels and of people, there is nothing more pernicious then for an armie to consist of two nations: yea the Moores certainly expect the vpper hand, when they are to fight with such an armie. I my selfe was present in the foresaid warre, and sawe each particular accident, a little before my voyage to Constantinople.

Iohn Leo his voiage to Constantinople.

Of the towne called Tefelfelt.

THis towne is situate vpon a sandie plaine, fifteene miles eastward of Mahmora, and almost twelue miles from the Ocean sea. Not far from this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof are thicke woods haunted with more fierce and cruell lions, then the last before mentioned, which greatly endanger those trauellers that haue occasion to lodge thereabout. Without this towne, vpon the high way to Fez, standeth an olde cottage with a plancherd chamber therein: here the mulettiers and carriers are said to take vp their lodging; but the doore of the said cottage they stop as sure as they can with boughes and thornes. Some affirme, that this rotten cottage (while the towne was inhabited) was a most stately inne. But it was defaced in the foresaid war of *Sahid*.

Fierce lions.

A description of Mecnase.

THis towne was so called after the name of the Mecnasites who were the founders thereof. From Fez it is 36. miles, about fiftie from Sella, and from Atlas almost 15. miles distant. It is exceeding rich, and containeth families to the number of six thousand. The inhabitants hereof while they dwelt in the fields liued a most peaceable life: howbeit at length they fell to dissension among themselues, and the weaker part hauing all their cattell taken from them, and hauing nothing in the fields to maintaine their estate, agreed among themselues to build this citie of Mecnase in a most beautifull plaine. Neere vnto this towne runneth a little riuer: and within three miles thereof are most pleasant gardens, repleniſhed with all manner of fruits. Quinces there are of great bignes, and of a most fragrant smell; and pomegranates likewise, which being very great and most pleasant in taste, haue no stones within them, and yet they are sold exceeding cheape. Likewise here are plentie of damascens, of white plums, and of the fruite called Iujuba, which being dried in the sunne, they eate in the spring, and carrie a great number of them to Fez. They haue likewise great store of figs and grapes, which are not to be eaten but while they are greene & new: for their figs being dried become so brittle, that they waste all to powder, and their grapes when they are made raisins, proue vnsauorie. Peaches and oranges they haue in so great quantitie, that they make no store of them: but their limons are wateriſh and vnpleasant. Oliues are sold among them for a duckat and a halfe the Cantharo, which measure containeth a hundred pounds

Italian.

Italian. Moreouer their fields yeeld them great plentie of hempe and flaxe, which they ſell at Fez and Sela. In this towne are moſt ſtately and beautifull temples, three colleges, and ten bath-ſtoues. Euery monday they haue a great market without the towne-walles, whereunto the bordering Arabians doe vſually reſort. Here are oxen, ſheepe, and other ſuch beaſtes to be ſold: butter and wooll are here plentifull and at an eaſie rate. In my time the king beſtowed this towne vpon a certaine noble man of his, where as much fruits are reaped as in the third part of the whole kingdome of Fez. This towne hath beene ſo afflicted by warres, that the yeerely tribute thereof hath beene diminiſhed ſometime fortie thouſand, and fiftie thouſand duckats, and ſomtimes more: and I haue red, that it hath beene beſieged for ſixe or ſeuen yeeres together. In my time the gouernour thereof the king of Fez his cozen, relying vpon the fauour of the people, rebelled againſt his kinſman and ſoueraigne. Whereupon the Feſſan king with a great armie beſieged the towne two moneths together, and, becauſe it would not yeeld, ſo waſted and deſtroied all the countrie thereabout, that the gouernour loſt by that means fiue and twentie thouſand duckats of yeerely reuenue. What then ſhall we thinke of the ſixe and ſeuen yeeres ſiege before mentioned? At length thoſe citizens which fauoured the king of Fez opened the gates, and ſtoutly reſiſting the contrarie faction, gaue the king and his ſoldiers entrance. Thus by their meanes the king wan the citie, carrying home to Fez the rebellious gouernour captiue, who within fewe daies eſcaped from him. This moſt ſtrong and beautifull citie hath many faire ſtreetes, whereinto by conducts from a fountaine three miles diſtant, is conueied moſt ſweet and holeſome water, which ſerueth all the whole citie. The mils are two miles diſtant from the towne. The inhabitants are moſt valiant, warlike, liberall, and ciuill people, but their wits are not ſo refined as others: ſome of them are merchants, ſome artificers, and the reſidue gentlemen. They count it vnſeemely for any man to ſend an horſe-lode of ſeede to his husbandman or farmer. They are at continuall iarre with the citizens of Fez; but whereupon this diſſenſion of theirs ſhould ariſe, I cannot well determine. Their gentlemens wiues neuer goe foorth of the doores but onely in the night ſeaſon, and then alſo they muſt be ſo vailed and muffeled that no man may ſee them: ſo great is the ielouſie of this people. This towne is ſo durtie in the ſpring-time, that it would irke a man to walke the ſtreetes.

Mecnaſe reduced vnder ſubiection by the king of Fez.

Of a towne called Gemiha Elchmen.

THis ancient towne ſtandeth on a plaine neere vnto certaine baths, being diſtant ſouthward of Mecnaſe fifteene miles, weſtard of Fez thirtie, and from Atlas about ten miles. By this towne lieth the common high way from Fez to Tedle. The fielde of this towne was poſſeſſed by certaine Arabians, and the towne it ſelfe vtterly deſtroied in the war of *Sahid*. Howbeit in certaine places the walles are yet remaining, and diuers towers and temples ſtanding without roofes.

Of the towne called Cannis Metgara.

THis towne was built by certaine Africans in the field of Zuaga almoſt fifteene miles weſtward from Fez. Without this towne for two miles together were moſt pleaſant and fruitfull gardens: but by the cruell warre of *Sahid* all was laide waſte; and the place it ſelfe remained void of inhabitants an hundred and twenty yeeres. Howbeit when part of the people of Granada came ouer into Africa, this region began to be inhabited anew. And whereas the Granatines are great merchants of ſilke, they cauſed, for the breeding of ſilkewormes, great ſtore of white mulberrie trees to be brought hither. Here likewiſe they planted abundance of ſugar-canes, which proſper not ſo well in this place as in the prouince of Andaluzia. In times paſt the inhabitants of this place were very ciuill people, but in our time they haue not beene ſo, by reaſon that all of them exerciſe husbandrie.

Of the towne of Banibaſil.

THis towne was built by the Africans vpon a certaine ſmall riuer iuſt in the mid way betweene Mecnaſe and Fez, being diſtant from Fez about eighteene miles weſtward. Out of their fields many riuers take their originall, which fieldes are by the Arabians ſowen all ouer with barlie and hempe: neither indeed will the ſoile yeeld any other commoditie, both by reaſon of the barrennes, and alſo for that it is for the moſt part ouerflowed with water. Whatſoeuer commoditie ariſeth out of this place redoundeth to the prieſtes of the principall Mahumetan temple in Fez, and it amounteth almoſt yeerely to twenty thouſand duckats. Here alſo in times paſt were moſt large, pleaſant, and fruitfull gardens, as appeereth by the monuments and reliques thereof, howbeit they were, like other places, laide waſte by the war of *Sahid*. The towne it ſelfe remained deſtitute of inhabitants an hundred and ten yeeres; but as the king of Fez returned home from Duccala, he commanded part of his people to inhabite the ſame: albeit their inciuilitie made them loth ſo to doe.

Of Fez the principall citie of all Barbarie, and of the founders thereof.

FEz was built in the time of one *Aron* a Mahumetan patriarke, in the yeere of the Hegeira 185. and in the yeere of our Lord 786. by a certaine heretike againſt the religion of Mahumet. But why it ſhould ſo be called ſome are of opinion, becauſe when the firſt foundations thereof were digged, there was found ſome quantitie of golde, which mettall in the Arabian language is called Fez. Which etymologie ſeemeth to me not improbable, albeit

albeit some would haue it so called from a certaine riuer of that name. But howsoeuer it be, we leaue that to be discussed by others, affirming for an vndoubted truth, that the founder of this citie was one *Idris*, being the foresaid *Aron* his neere kinsman. This *Idris* ought rather to haue beene Mahumetan patriarke, because he was nephew vnto *Hali* the cozen-german of Mahumet, who married *Falerna* Mahumets owne daughter, so that *Idris* both by father and mother was of Mahumets linage: but *Aron* being nephew vnto one *Habbus* the vncle of Mahumet, was of kinred onely by the fathers side. Howbeit both of them were excluded from the said patriarkship for certaine causes mentioned in the African chronicles, although *Aron* vsurped the same by deceit. For *Arons* vncle being a most cunning and craftie man, and fayning himselfe to beare greatest fauour vnto the familie of *Hali*, and to bee most desirous, that the patriarkship should light thereon, sent his ambassadours almost throughout the whole world. Whereupon the dignitie was translated from *Vmeve* to *Habdulla Seffec* the first patriarke. Which, *Vmeve* being informed of, waged warre against the familie of *Hali*, and so preuailed, that some of them he chased into Asia, and some into India. Howbeit an ancient religious man of the same familie remained still aliue at Elmadina, who being very olde, no whit regarded the dignitie. But this ancient sire left behinde him two sonnes, who when they were come to mans estate, grew into so great fauour with the people of Elmadin, that they were chased thence by their enemies; the one being taken & hanged; and the other (whose name was *Idris*) escaping into Mauritania. This *Idris* dwelling vpon mount Zaron about thirtie miles from Fez, gouerned not onely the commonwealth, but matters of religion also: and all the region adiacent paid him tribute. At length *Idris* deceasing without lawfull issue, left one of his maides big with childe, which had beene turned from the Gothes religion to the Moores. Being deliuered of her sonne, they called him after his fathers name, *Idris*. This childe the inhabitants chusing for their prince, caused him to be most carefully brought vp: and as he grew in yeeres, to the end they might traine him vp in feates of chiualrie, they appointed one *Rasid* a most valiant and skilfull captaine to instruct him. Insomuch, that while he was but fifteene yeeres of age, he grew famous for his valiant actes and stratagems, and began woonderfully to inlarge his dominions. Wherefore his troupes and familie increasing euery day more and more, he set his minde vpon building of a citie, and changing of his habitation. And so he sent for cunning builders into all nations, who hauing diligently perused all places in the region, at last made choise of that where the citie of Fez now standeth. For here they found great store of fountaines, and a faire riuer, which springing foorth of a plaine not far of, runneth pleasantly almost eight miles amidst the little hils, till at length it casteth it selfe vpon another plaine. Southward of the place they found a wood, which they knew would be right commodious for the towne. Here therefore vpon the east banke of the said riuer, they built a towne containing three thousand families: neither omitted they

Idris the first founder of Fez.

Idris his great valour at fifteene yeeres of age.

ought at al which might be required in a flouriſhing commonwealth. After the deceaſe of *Idris*, his ſonne erected another towne directly ouer againſt the foreſaid, on the other ſide of the riuer. But in proceſſe of time either towne ſo encreaſed, that there was but a ſmall diſtance betweene them: for the gouernours of each laboured might and maine to augment their owne iuriſdictions. An hundred and fowerſcore yeeres after, there fell out great diſſenſion and ciuill warre betweene theſe two cities, which by report continued an hundred yeeres together. At length *Ioſeph* king of Maroco of the Luntune-familie, conducting an huge armie againſt both theſe princes, tooke them priſoners, carried them home vnto his dominions, and put them to a moſt cruell death. And he ſo vanquiſhed the citizens, that there were ſlaine of them thirtie thouſand. Then determined king *Ioſeph* to reduce thoſe two townes into firme vnitie and concord: for which cauſe, making a bridge ouer the riuer, and beating downe the walles of either towne right againſt it, he vnited both into one, which afterward he diuided into twelue regions or wardes. Now let vs make report of all ſuch memorable things as are there to be ſeene * at this day.

*1526.

A moſt exact deſcription of the citie of Fez.

A World it is to ſee, how large, how populous, how well-fortified and walled this citie is. The moſt part thereof ſtandeth vpon great and little hils: neither is there any plaine ground but onely in the midſt of the citie. The riuer entreth the towne in two places, for it is diuided into a double branch, one whereof runneth by new Fez, that is, by the ſouth ſide of the towne, and another commeth in at the weſt ſide. And ſo almoſt infinitely diſperſing it ſelfe into the citie, it is deriued by certaine conducts and chanels vnto euery temple, college, inne, hoſpitall, and almoſt to euery priuate houſe. Vnto the temples are certaine ſquare conducts adioined, hauing celles and receptacles round about them; each one of which hath a cocke, whereby water is conueied through the wall into a trough of marble. From whence flowing into the ſinks and gutters, it carrieth away all the filth of the citie into the riuer. In the midſt of each ſquare conduct ſtandeth a lowe ceſterne, being three cubites in depth, fower in bredth, and twelue in length: and the water is conueied by certaine pipes into the foreſaid ſquare conducts, which are almoſt an hundred and fiftie in number. The moſt part of the houſes are built of fine bricks and ſtones curiouſly painted. Likewiſe their bay-windowes and portals are made of partie-coloured bricke, like vnto the ſtones of Majorica. The roofes of their houſes they adorne with golde, azure, and other excellent colours, which roofes are made of wood, and plaine on the top, to the end that in ſummer-time carpets may be ſpred vpon them, for here they vſe to lodge by reaſon of the exceeding heate of that countrie. Some houſes are of two and ſome of three ſtories high, whereunto they make

make fine staires, by which they passe from one roome to another vnder the same roofe: for the middle part of the house is alwaies open or vncouered, hauing some chambers built on the one side, and some on the other. The chamber-doores are very high and wide: which in rich mens houses are framed of excellent and carued wood. Each chamber hath a presse curiously painted and varnished belonging thereunto, being as long as the chamber it selfe is broad: some will haue it very high, and others but sixe handfuls in height, that they may set it on the tester of a bed. All the portals of their houses are supported with bricke-pillers finely plaistered ouer, except some which stand vpon pillers of marble. The beames and transoms vpholding their chambers are most curiously painted and carued. To some houses likewise belong certaine square cesternes, containing in bredth sixe or seuen cubites, in length ten or twelue, and in height but sixe or seuen handfuls, being all vncouered, and built of bricks trimly plaistered ouer. Along the sides of these cesternes are certaine cocks, which conuey the water into marble-troughes, as I haue seene in many places of Europe. When the foresaide conducts are full of water, that which floweth ouer, runneth by certaine secret pipes and conueiances into the cesternes: and that which ouerfloweth the cesternes, is carried likewise by other passages into the common sinks and gutters, and so into the riuer. The said cesternes are alwaies kept sweete and cleane, neither are they couered but onely in summer-time, when men, women, and children bathe themselues therein. Moreouer on the tops of their houses they vsually build a turret with many pleasant roomes therein, whither the women, for recreations sake, when they are wearie of working, retire themselues; from whence they may see well-nigh all the citie ouer.

The number and statelines of the Mahumetan temples in Fez.

Of Mahumetan temples and oratories there are almost seuen hundred in this towne, fiftie whereof are most stately and sumptuously built, hauing their conducts made of marble and other excellent stones vnknowen to the Italians; and the chapiters of their pillers be artificially adorned with painting and caruing. The tops of these temples, after the fashion of Christian churches in Europe, are made of ioises and planks: but the pauement is couered with mats which are so cunningly sowed together, that a man cannot see the bredth of a finger vncouered. The walles likewise on the inner side are lined a mans height with such mats. Moreouer, each temple hath a turret or steeple, from whence certaine are appointed with a lowd voice to call the people at their set-time of praier. Euery temple hath one onely priest to say seruice therin; who hath the bestowing of all reuenues belõging to his owne temple, as occasion requireth: for thereby are maintained lampes to burne in the night, and porters to keepe the doores are paid their wages out of it, and so likewise are they that call the people to ordinarie praiers in the night season: for those which crie from the said towers in the day-time haue no wages, but are onely released from all tributes and exactions. The chiefe Mahumetan temple in this towne is called *Caruven*, being of so incredible a bignes, that the circuit thereof and of the buildings longing vnto it, is a

The principall temple of Fez called Caruven.

good mile and a halfe about. This temple hath one and thirtie gates or portals of a woonderfull greatnes and height. The roofe of this temple is in length 150. and in bredth about fowerſcore Florentine cubites. The turret or ſteeple, from whence they crie amaine to aſſemble the people togither, is exceedingly high; the bredth whereof is ſupported with twentie, and the length with thirtie pillers. On the eaſt, weſt, and north ſides, it hath certaine walkes or galleries, fortie cubites in length, and thirtie in bredth. Vnder which galleries there is a cell or ſtorehouſe, wherein oile, candles, mats, and other ſuch neceſſaries for the temple are laid vp. Euery night in this temple are burnt nine hundred lightes; for euery arch hath a ſeuerall lampe, eſpecially thoſe which extend through the mid-quire. Some arches there are that haue 120. candles apeece: there are likewiſe certaine braſſe-candleſtickes ſo great and with ſo many ſockets, as they will holde each one fifteene hundred candles: and theſe candleſtickes are reported to haue beene made of bels, which the king of Fez in times paſt tooke from Chriſtians. About the wals of the ſaid temple are diuers pulpits, out of which thoſe that are learned in the Mahumetan lawe inſtruct the people. Their winter-lectures begin preſently after ſun-riſe, and continue the ſpace of an hower. But their ſummer-lectures holde on from the ſunne going downe, till an hower and a halfe within night. And here they teach as well morall philoſophie as the law of Mahumet. The ſummer-lectures are performed by certaine priuate and obſcure perſons; but in winter ſuch onely are admitted to read, as be reputed their greateſt clerkes. All which readers and profeſſours are yeerely allowed moſt liberall ſtipends. The prieſt of this great temple is inioined onely to read praiers, and faithfully to diſtribute almes among the poore. Euery feſtiuall day he beſtoweth all ſuch corne and money as he hath in his cuſtodie, to all poore people, according to their neede. The treaſurer or collector of the reuenues of this church hath euery day a duckat for his pay. Likewiſe he hath eight notaries or clerkes vnder him; euery one of which gaineth ſixe duckats a moneth: and other ſixe clerks who receiue the rent of houſes, ſhops, and other ſuch places as belong to the temple, hauing for their wages the twentith part of all ſuch rents and duties as they gather. Moreouer there belong to this temple twentie factors or bailies of husbandrie, that without the citie-walles haue an eie to the labourers, plowemen, vine-planters, and gardeners, and that prouide them things neceſſarie: their gaine is three duckats a moneth. Not far from the citie are about twentie lime-kils, and as many bricke-kils, ſeruing for the reparation of their temple, and of all houſes thereto belonging. The reuenues of the ſaid temple daily receiued, are two hundred duckats a day; the better halfe whereof is laid out vpon the particulars aforeſaid. Alſo if there be any temples in the citie deſtitute of liuing, they muſt all be maintained at the charges of this great temple: and then that which remaineth after all expences, is beſtowed for the behoofe of the commonwealth: for the people receiue no reuenues at all. In our time the king commanded the prieſt

The reuenues of the great temple, and how they are beſtowed.

of

of the said temple to lend him an huge summe of money, which he neuer repaied againe. Moreouer in the citie of Fez are two most stately colleges, of which diuers roomes are adorned with curious painting; all their beames are carued, their walles consisting both of marble and freestone. Some colleges here are which containe an hundred studies, some more, and some fewer, all which were built by diuers kings of the Marin-familie. One there is among the rest most beautifull and admirable to behold, which was erected by a certaine king called *Habu Henon*. Here is to be seene an excellent fountaine of marble, the cesterne whereof containeth two pipes. Through this college runneth a little streame in a most cleere and pleasant chanell, the brims and edges whereof are workmanly framed of marble, and stones of Majorica. Likewise here are three cloysters to walke in, most curiously and artificially made, with certaine eight-square pillers of diuers colours to support them. And betweene piller and piller the arches are beautifully ouercast with golde, azure, and diuers other colours; and the roofe is very artificially built of wood. The sides of these cloysters are so close, that they which are without cannot see such as walke within. The walles round about as high as a man can reach, are adorned with plaister-worke of Majorica. In many places you may finde certaine verses, which declare what yeere the college was built in, together with many epigrams in the founders commendation. The letters of which verses are very great and blacke, so that they may be red a far off. This college-gates are of brasse most curiously carued, and so are the doores artificially made of wood. In the chappell of this college standeth a certaine pulpit mounted nine staires high, which staires are of iuorie and eben. Some affirme, that the king hauing built this college, was desirous to knowe how much money he had spent in building it; but after he had perused a leafe or two of his account-booke, finding the summe of fortie thousand duckats, he rent it asunder, and threw it into the foresaid little riuer, adding this sentence out of a certaine Arabian writer: Each pretious and amiable thing, though it costeth deere, yet if it be beautifull, it cannot choose but be good cheape: neither is any thing of too high a price, which pleaseth a mans affection. Howbeit a certaine treasurer of the kings, making a particular account of all the said expences, found that this excellent building stood his master in 480000. duckats. The other colleges of Fez are somwhat like vnto this, hauing euery one readers and professors, some of which read in the forenoone, and some in the afternoone. In times past the students of these colleges had their apparell and victuals allowed them for seuen yeeres, but now they haue nothing gratis but their chamber. For the warre of *Sabid* destroied many possessions, whereby learning was maintained; so that now the greatest college of al hath yeerely but two hundred, and the second but an hundred duckats for the maintenance of their professors. And this perhaps may be one reason, among many, why the gouernment not onely of Fez, but of all the cities in Africa, is so base. Now these colleges are furnished with no schollers but such as are strangers, and liue

The suppression of learning and learned men, & principall cause of disorderly & base gouernment.

liue of the citie-almes: and if any citizens dwell there, they are not aboue two or three at the moſt. The profeſſor being ready for his lecture, ſome of his auditors readeth a text, whereupon the ſaid profeſſor dilateth, and explaneth obſcure and difficult places. Sometimes alſo the ſchollers diſpute before their profeſſor.

A deſcription of the hoſpitals and bathes in the citie of Fez.

MAny hoſpitals there are in Fez, no whit inferiour, either for building or beautie, vnto the foreſaid colleges. For in them whatſoeuer ſtrangers came to the citie were intertained at the common charge for three daies together. There are likewiſe as faire and as ſtately hoſpitals in the ſuburbes. In times paſt their wealth was maruellous great; but in the time of *Sahids* warre, the king ſtanding in neede of a great ſumme of money, was counſelled by ſome of his greedy courtiers to ſell the liuings of the ſaid hoſpitals. Which when the people would in no caſe yeeld vnto, the kings oratour or ſpeaker, perſwaded them that all thoſe liuings were giuen by his maieſties predeceſſours, and therefore (becauſe when the warres were ended, they ſhould ſoone recouer all againe) that it were far better for them by that meanes to pleaſure their ſoueraigne, then to let his kingly eſtate fall into ſo great danger. Whereupon all the ſaid liuings being ſold, the king was preuented by vntimely and ſudden death before he could bring his purpoſe to effect: and ſo theſe famous hoſpitals were depriued of all their maintenance. The poore indeede and impotent people of the city are at this day relieued; but no ſtrangers are entertained, ſaue only learned men or gentlemen. Howbeit there is another hoſpital for the releefe of ſick & diſeaſed ſtrangers, who haue their diet onely allowed them, but no phiſition or medicine: certaine women there are which attend vpon them, till they recouer their former health, or die. In this hoſpitall likewiſe there is a place for franticke or diſtraught perſons, where they are bound in ſtrong iron chaines; whereof the part next vnto their walks is ſtrengthened with mighty beames of wood and iron. The gouernour of theſe diſtraught perſons, when he bringeth them any ſuſtenance, hath a whip of purpoſe to chaſtiſe thoſe that offer to bite, ſtrike, or play any mad part. Sometimes it falleth out that theſe franticke people will call vnto them ſuch as paſſe by; declaring how vniuſtly they are there detained, and how cruelly they are handled by the officers, when as notwithſtanding they affirme themſelues to bee reſtored vnto their right minde. And hauing thus perſwaded the commers-by, approching neerer and neerer vnto them, at length they take hold with one hand on their garments, and (like villans) with the other hand they ſhamefully defile their faces and apparell with dung. And though all of them haue their priuies and cloſe ſtooles, yet would they be poyſoned in their owne filth, if the ſeruants did not often waſh their lodgings: ſo that their abhominable and continuall

ſtinke

ſtinke is the cauſe why citizens neuer viſite them. Likewiſe this hoſpitall hath many roomes for the purueiors, notaries, cookes, and other officers belonging to the ſicke perſons; who each of them haue ſome ſmall yeerely ſtipend. Being a yoong man I my ſelfe was notarie heere for two yeeres, which office is woorth three duckats a moneth.

John Leo in his youth a notarie of an hoſpitall for two yeeres together.

In this citie are moe then an hundred bath-ſtoues very artificially and ſtately built: which though they be not of equall bignes, yet are they all of one faſhion. Each ſtoue hath fower halles, without which are certaine galleries in an higher place, with fiue or ſixe ſtaires to aſcend vnto them: here men put off their apparell, and hence they goe naked into the bath. In the midſt they alwaies keepe a ceſterne full of water. Firſt therefore they that meane to bathe themſelues muſt paſſe through a cold hall, where they vſe to temper hot water and cold together, then they goe into a roome ſomewhat hotter, where the ſeruants clenſe and waſh them; and laſt of all they proceede into a third hot-houſe, where they ſweate as much as they thinke good. Of the ſaid water they giue vnto euery man two veſſels onely: but he that will haue more and will be extraordinarily waſhed, muſt giue to the ſeruant one Liardo at the leaſt, and to the maſter of the ſtoue but two farthings. The fire that heateth their water is made of nought elſe but beaſtes dung: for which purpoſe many boyes are ſet on worke to run vp and downe to ſtables, and thence to carrie all the dung, and to lay it on heapes without the towne-walles; which being parched in the ſunne for two or three monethes together, they vſe for fewell. Likewiſe the women haue their ſtoues apart from the men. And yet ſome hot-houſes ſerue both for men and women, but at ſundry times, namely for men from the third to the fourteenth hower of the day, and the reſidue for women. While women are bathing themſelues, they hang out a rope at the firſt entrance of the houſe, which is a ſigne for men, that they may then proceed no farther. Neither may huſbands here be permitted to ſpeake with their owne wiues; ſo great a regarde they haue of their honeſtie. Here men and women both, after they haue done bathing, vſe to banquet and make merrie with pleaſant muſicke and ſinging. Yoong ſtriplings enter the bath ſtarke naked without any ſhame, but men couer their priuities with a linnen cloth. The richer ſort will not enter the common bath, but that which is adorned and finely ſet foorth, and which ſerueth for noblemen and gentlemen. When any one is to be bathed, they lay him along vpon the ground, annointing him with a certaine ointment, and with certaine inſtruments doing away his filth. The richer ſort haue a carpet to lie on, their head lying on a woodden cuſhion couered with the ſame carpet. Likewiſe here are many barbers and chirurgions which attend to doe their office. The moſt part of theſe baths pertaine to the temples and colleges, yeelding vnto them a great ſumme of money for yeerely rent; for ſome giue an hundred, ſome an hundred and fiftie duckats a yeere. Neither muſt I here omit the feſtiuall day which the ſeruants and officers of the bathes yeerely celebrate. Who with trumpets and pipes calling their friendes

friendes together, goe foorth of the towne, and there gather a wilde onion, putting it in a certaine brazen veſſell, and couering the ſame with a linnen cloth wet in lee: afterward with a great noiſe of trumpets and pipes they ſolemnely bring the ſaid onion vnto the hot-houſe doore, and there they hang it vp in the little brazen veſſell or lauer, ſaying that this is a moſt happy boading or ſigne of good lucke vnto their ſtoue. Howbeit I ſuppoſe it to be ſome ſuch ſacrifice, as the ancient Moores were woont in times paſt, when they were deſtitute of lawes and ciuilitie, to offer, and that the ſame cuſtome hath remained till this very day. The like is to be ſeen euen among Chriſtians, who celebrate many feaſts whereof they can yeeld no reaſon. Likewiſe euery African towne had their peculiar feaſt, which, when the Chriſtians once enioied Africa, were vtterly aboliſhed and done away.

Of the Inues of Fez.

IN this citie are almoſt two hundred innes, the greateſt wherof are in the principall part of the citie neere vnto the chiefe temple. Euery of theſe innes are three ſtories high, and containe an hundred and twenty or moe chambers apeece. Likewiſe each one hath a fountaine together with ſinks and water-pipes, which make auoidance of all the filth. Neuer, to my remembrance, did I ſee greater buildings, except it were the Spaniſh college at Bologna, or the pallace of the Cardinall *di San Giorgio* at Rome: of which innes all the chamber-doores haue walkes or galleries before them. And albeit the innes of this citie are very faire and large, yet they affoord moſt beggerly entertainment to ſtrangers: for there are neither beds nor couches for a man to lie vpon, vnleſſe it be a courſe blanket and a mat. And if you will haue any victuals, you muſt goe to the ſhambles your ſelfe, and buie ſuch meate for your hoſt to dreſſe, as your ſtomack ſtands-to. In theſe innes certaine poore widowes of Fez, which haue neither wealth nor friends to ſuccour them, are relieued: ſometimes one, and ſometimes two of them together are allowed a chamber; for which courteſie they play both the chamberlaines and cookes of the inne. The inne-keepers of Fez being all of one familie called Elcheua, goe apparelled like women, and ſhaue their beards, and are ſo delighted to imitate women, that they will not only counterfeite their ſpeech, but will ſometimes alſo ſit downe and ſpin. Each one of theſe hath his concubine, whom he accompanieth as if ſhe were his owne lawfull wife; albeit the ſaid concubines are not onely ill-fauoured in countenance, but notorious for their bad life and behauiour. They buie and ſell wine ſo freely, that no man controules them for it. None reſort hither but moſt lewd & wicked people, to the end they may more boldly commit villany. The inne-keepers haue a conſul ouer them, and they pay tribute vnto the gouernour of the citie. And when the king hath occaſion to ſend foorth an armie, then they, as being moſt meete for the purpoſe, are conſtrained largely to victuall the

campe.

campe. Had not the ſtreit law of hiſtorie enforced me to make relation of the foreſaid particulars as they ſtand, I would much rather haue ſmothered ſuch matters in ſilence, as tend ſo extremely to the diſgrace of Fez; which being reformed, there is not any citie in al Africa, for the honeſtie and good demeanour of the citizens, comparable thereunto. For the very companie of theſe inne-keepers is ſo odious and deteſtable in the ſight of all honeſt men, learned men, and merchants, that they will in no wiſe vouchſafe to ſpeake vnto them. And they are firmely enioined not to enter into the temple, into the burſe, nor into any bath. Neither yet are they permitted to reſort vnto thoſe innes which are next vnto the great temple, and wherein merchants are vſually entertained. All men in a manner are in vtter deteſtation of theſe wretches: but becauſe the kings armie hath ſome vſe of them (as is aforeſaid) they are borne withall, whether the citizens will or no.

Of the mils of Fez.

IN this citie are mils in fower hundred places at leaſt. And euery of theſe places containeth fiue or ſixe mils; ſo that there are ſome thouſands of mils in the whole citie. Euery mill ſtandeth in a large roome * vpon ſome ſtrong piller or poſt; whereunto many countrie-people vſe to reſort. Certaine merchants there are in Fez, which hiring mils and ſhops, buie corne and ſell it ready ground vnto the citizens, whereby they reape exceeding gaine: for the greateſt part of the citizens being poore, and not able to lay vp corne ſufficient in ſtore, are faine to buie meale of them. But the richer ſort buie their owne corne, and ſend it to ſome common mill, where they pay a ſhilling for the grinding of each meaſure. All the ſaide mils pertaine either to the temples or colleges: for he muſt be very rich that hath a mill of his owne; for euery mill gaineth the owner two duckats.

* *Like vnto our horſe-mils.*

A deſcription of the occupations, the ſhops, and the market.

EAch trade or occupation hath a peculiar place allotted thereto, the principall whereof are next vnto the great temple: for there firſt you may beholde to the number of fowerſcore notaries or ſcriueners ſhops, whereof ſome ioine vpon the temple, and the reſidue ſtand ouer againſt them: euery of which ſhops hath alwaies two notaries. Then weſtward there are about thirtie ſtationers or booke-ſellers. The ſhoo-merchants which buie ſhooes and buskins of the ſhoomakers, and ſell them againe to the citizens, inhabite on the ſouth ſide of the temple: and next vnto them, ſuch as make ſhooes for children onely, their ſhops being about fiftie. On the eaſt ſide dwell thoſe that ſell veſſels and other commodities made of braſſe. Ouer againſt the great gate of the ſaid temple ſtands the fruit-market, containing fiftie ſhops, where no kinde of fruit is wanting. Next vnto them ſtand the waxe-

waxe-merchants, very ingenious and cunning workmen, and much to be admired. Here are merchants factors likewise, though they be but few. Then followes the herbe-market, wherein the pome-citrons, and diuers kindes of greene boughes and herbes doe represent the sweete and flourishing spring, and in this market are about twentie tauernes: for they which drinke wine, will shrowd themselues vnder the shadie and pleasant boughes. Next vnto them stand the milke-sellers, who haue great store of such earthen vessels by them, as the Italians call *Vasi di Maiolica*: but their milke they cause to be brought thither in certaine vessels of wood bound with iron-hoops, being narrow-mouthed and broad at the bottome. From these milke-sellers some there are which daily buie great store of milke to make butter thereof: and the residue of their milke they sell either crudded or sometimes sower vnto the citizens: so that I thinke there passeth scarce one day ouer their heads, wherein they vtter not fiue and twentie tunnes of milke. Next vnto these are such as sell cotton, and they haue about thirtie shops: then follow those that sell hempe, ropes, halters, and such other hempen commodities. Then come you to the girdlers, and such as make pantofles, and leather-bridles embrodered with silke: next, their shops adioine that make sword-scabberds and capariſons for horses. Immediately after dwell those that sell salt and lime. And vpon them border an hundred shops of potters, who frame all kinde of earthen vessels adorned with diuers colours. Then come you to the sadlers-shops: and next of all to the street of porters, who (as I suppose) are aboue three hundred: these porters haue a consul or gouernour, who euery weeke allotteth vnto part of them some set busines. The gaine which redoundeth thereof they put into a coffer, diuiding it at the weekes end among them, which haue wrought the same weeke. Strange it is to consider how exceedingly these porters loue one another; for when any of them deceaseth, the whole companie maintaineth his widow and fatherlesse children at their common charge, till either she die, or marrieth a new husband. The children they carefully bring vp, till they haue attained to some good arte or occupation. Whosoeuer of them marrieth and hath children by his wife, inuiteth most part of his companie vnto a banquet: who being thus inuited, present each of them some gift or other vnto the good man, or his wife. No man can be admitted into their companie, vnlesse first he banqueteth the principall men thereof: otherwise he is to haue but halfe a share of the common gaine. Free they are from all tributes and exactions: yea their bread is baked of free cost. If any of them be taken in any hainous offence, he is not publikely but priuately punished. While they are at worke they all weare short garments of one colour: and at vacant times they are apparelled as themselues thinke good: but howsoeuer it be, they are most honest and faire-conditioned people. Next vnto the porters companie dwell the chiefe cookes and victuallers. Here also stands a certaine square house couered with reed, wherein pease and turnep-rootes are to be sold, which are so greatly esteemed of in Fez, that none may buie them of the countrie-

The porters of Fez.

people

people at the first hand, but such as are appointed, who are bound to pay tole & tribute vnto the customers: & scarcely one day passeth, wherein mo then 500. sacks of pease and turneps are not sold. And albeit (as we haue said) they are so much esteemed of, yet are they sold at a most easie price: for a man may buie 30, or at least 20. pound weight for one * Liardo. Greene beanes likewise in time of yeere are sold good cheape. Not far frō the place before mentioned are certaine shops, wherein lumps or steakes of flesh beaten in a morter, & thē fried with oile, & seasoned with much spice, are to be bought, euery one of the said lumps or steakes being about the bignes of a fig, & being made only of dried beefe. On the north side of the temple is a place whither all kind of herbes are brought to make sallets withall: for which purpose there are 40. shops appointed. Next wherunto is The place of smoke, so called by reason of continuall smoke: here are certaine fritters or cakes fried in oile, like vnto such as are called at Rome *Pan Melato*. Of these fritters great store are daily vttered: for euery day they vse to breake their fasts therwith, & especially vpon festiual daies: vnto which fritters they adde for a conclusion either roastmeat or honie: somtimes they steepe them in an homely kinde of broth made of bruised meat, which being sodden, they bray the second time in a morter, making pottage therof, & colouring it with a kinde of red earth. They roste their flesh not vpon a spit, but in an ouen: for making two ouens one ouer another for the same purpose, in the lower they kindle a fire, putting the flesh into the vpper ouen when it is wel het. You would not beleeue how finely their meat is thus rosted, for it cannot be spoiled either by smoke, or too much heat: for they are all night rosting it by a gentle fire, and in the morning they set it to sale. The foresaid steakes & fritters they sell vnto the citizens in so great abūdance, that they daily take for them mo thē 200. duckats. For there are 15. shops which sell nothing else. Likewise here are sold certaine fishes & flesh fried, & a kind of excellent sauorie bread, tasting somwhat like a fritter: which being baked with butter, they neuer eat but with butter and honie. Here also are the feet of certaine beasts sodden; wherewith the husbandmen betimes in the morning breake their fast, and then hie them to their labour. Next vnto these are such as sell oile, salt, butter, cheese, oliues, pome-citrons & capers: their shops are full of fine earthen vessels, which are of much greater value then the things contained in them. Their butter and honie they sell by certaine criers, which are porters appointed for the same office. Neither doe they admit euery one to fill their vessels; but that worke is reserued for certaine porters appointed to doe it, which also fill the measures of oile when merchants buie the same. The said vessels are sufficient to containe an hundred and fiftie pounds of butter; for so much butter the countrie-people put into each vessell. Then follow the shambles, consisting of about fortie shops, wherein the butchers cut their flesh a peeces, and sell it by weight. They kill no beastes within the shambles, for there is a place allotted for this purpose neere vnto the riuer, where hauing once dressed their flesh, they send it to the shambles by certaine seruants appointed for

* *Ramusius in his Italian copie calleth it Baioco.*

that end. But before any butcher dare ſell his fleſh vnto the citizens, he muſt carrie it to the gouernour of the ſhambles, who ſo ſoone as he ſeeth the fleſh, he ſets downe in a peece of paper the price thereof, which they ſhew together with their meate vnto the people; neither may they in any caſe exceed the ſaid price. Next vnto the ſhambles ſtandeth the market where courſe cloathes are ſold, which containeth at leaſt an hundred ſhops: the ſaid cloth is deliuered vnto certaine criers (which are about threeſcore in number) who carrying the cloth from ſhop to ſhop tell the price thereof, and for the ſelling of euery duckats-woorth they haue two * Liardos allowed them. This traffique of cloth indureth from noone till night, to the merchants great aduantage. Then follow their ſhops that ſcowre and ſell armour, ſwordes, iauelings, and ſuch like warlike inſtruments. Next vnto them ſtand the fiſhmongers, who ſell moſt excellent and great fiſh, taken both in the riuer of Fez and in other waters, exceeding cheape; for you may buie a pound of fiſh for two farthings onely. There is great abundance of the fiſh called in Rome *Laccia*, and that eſpecially from the beginning of October till the moneth of Aprill, as we will declare more at large when we come to ſpeake of the riuers. Next vnto the fiſhmongers dwell ſuch as make of a certaine hard reed, coopes and cages for fowles; their ſhops being about fortie in number. For each of the citizens vſeth to bring vp great ſtore of hennes and capons. And that their houſes may not be defiled with hennes-dung, they keepe them continually in coopes and cages. Then follow their ſhops that ſell liquide ſope, but they be not many, for you ſhall finde more of them in other partes of the citie. Neither make they ſope at Fez onely, but alſo in the mountaines thereabout, from whence it is brought vnto the citie vpon mules backes. Next of all are certaine of their ſhops that ſell meale, albeit they are diuerſly diſperſed throughout the whole citie. Next vnto them are ſuch as ſell ſeed-graine and ſeed-pulſe: which you cannot buie of any citizen, becauſe that euery one had rather keepe his corne in ſtore: many there are likewiſe in the ſame place, that will carrie pulſe or corne to mules or horſes, whitherſoeuer you will haue them. A mule vſeth to carrie three meaſures of pulſe vpon his backe (which the muliter is enioined to meaſure) in three ſacks lying one vpon another. Then are there ten ſhops of them that ſell ſtraw. Next them is the market where threed and hempe is to be ſold, and where hempe vſeth to be kempt: which place is built after the faſhion of great houſes, with fower galleries or ſpare-roomes round about it: in the firſt whereof they ſell linnen-cloth, and weigh hempe: in two other ſit a great many women hauing abundance of ſale-threed, which is there ſolde by the criers, who carrie the ſame vp and downe from noone till night. In the midſt of this place growe diuers mulberie-trees, affoordiug pleaſant ſhade and ſhelter vnto the merchants: and hither ſuch ſwarmes of women reſort, that a man ſhall hardly withdraw himſelfe from among them: good ſport it is ſometime to ſee how they will barret and ſcould one at another: yea and oftentimes you ſhall ſee them fall together by the eares. Let vs now

The gouernour of the ſhambles in Fez.

* *In the Italian copie they are called Baiochi.*

come to the west part, which stretcheth from the temple to that gate that leadeth vnto Mecnase. Next vnto the smokie place before mentioned, their habitations directly stand, that make leather-tankards, to draw water out of wels; of whom there are some fourteene shops. Vnto these adioine such as make wicker-vessels and other, to lay vp meale and corne in: and these enioy about thirtie shops. Next them are 150. shops of tailors. And next the tailors are those that make leather-shieldes, such as I haue often seene brought into Europe. Then follow twenty shops of laundresses or washers, being people of a base condition; to whom the citizens that haue not maids of their owne, carrie their shirtes and other fowle linnen, which after few daies are restored vnto them so cleane and white as it is woonderfull. These laundresses haue diuers shops adioining together in the same place: but here and there throughout the citie are aboue two hundred families of such persons. Next vnto the laundresses are those that make trees for saddles; who dwell likewise in great numbers eastwarde right in the way to the college founded by king *Abuhinan*. Vpon these adioine about fortie shops of such as work stirrops, spurres, and bridles, so artificially, as I thinke the like are not to be seene in Europe. Next standeth their street, that first rudely make the said stirrops, bridles, and spurres. From thence you may go into the street of sadlers, which couer the saddles before mentioned threefold with most excellent leather: the best leather they lay vppermost, and the woorst beneath, and that with notable workmanship; as may be seene in most places of Italie. And of them there are moe then an hundred shops. Then follow their long shops that make pikes and launces. Next standeth a rocke or mount, hauing two walks thereupon; the one whereof leadeth to the east gate, and the other to one of the kings pallaces, where the kings sisters, or some other of his kinred are vsually kept. But this is by the way to be noted, that all the foresaid shops or market begin at the great temple: howbeit, that I might not inuert my set-order, I haue onely described those places that are round about the said temple, minding last of all to speake of the merchants station or burse.

Of the station or burse of merchants in Fez.

THis burse you may well call a citie, which being walled round about hath twelue gates, & before euery gate an iron chaine, to keepe horses & cartes from comming in. The said burse is diuided into 12. seuerall wards or partes: two whereof are allotted vnto such shoomakers as make shooes onely for noblemen and gentlemen, and two also to silke-merchants or haberdashers, that sell ribands, garters, skarfes, and such other like ornaments; and of these there are about fiftie shops. Others there are that sell silke onely for the embrodering of shirts, cushions, and other such furniture made of cloth, possessing almost as many shops as the former. Then follow those that make womens girdles of course wooll (which some make of silke)

but very grossely, for I thinke they are moe then two fingers thicke, so that they may serue almost for cables to a ship. Next vnto these girdlers are such as sell woollen and linnen cloth brought out of Europe: which haue also silke-stuffes, caps, and other like commodities to sell. Hauing passed these, you come to them that sel mats, mattresses, cushions, and other things made of leather. Next adioineth the customers office; for their cloth is sent about by certaine criers to be solde, who before they can passe, must goe to the customers to haue the said cloth sealed, and to pay toll vnto the customers. Criers here are, to the number of sixtie, which for the crying of euery cloth haue one * Liardo allowed them. Next of all dwell the tailors, and that in three seuerall streetes. Then come you to the linnen-drapers, which sell smocks and other apparell for women: and these are accounted the richest merchants in all Fez, for their wares are the most gainful of all others. Next vnto these are certaine woollen garments to be sold, made of such cloth as is brought thither out of Europe. Euery afternoone cloth is sold in this place by the criers, which is lawfull for any man to doe, when necessarie occasion vrgeth him. Last of all is that place where they vse to sell wrought shirts, towels, and other embrodered works; as also where carpets, beds, and blankets are to be sold.

* Or Baiocho.

The reason why this part of the citie was called Cæsaria.

THe foresaid burse or station of merchants was in times past called Cæsaria, according to the name of that renowmed conquerour *Iulius Cæsar*: the reason whereof some affirme to be; because all the cities of Barbarie were in those daies first subiect to the Romans, and then to the Goths. And each citie alwaies had either Romans or Goths to receiue and take charge of the tribute. Howbeit because the people often made ciuill wars and assaults vpon them, their determination was in euery citie to build some strong walled place, where both the tribute and the principall goods of the citizens might remaine in safetie: hoping by this meanes that the citizens would be as carefull of the princes goods as of their owne. Which course had the Italians imitated, they had neuer beene spoiled so often of their goods. For in ciuill wars it many times befalleth, that the greedie soldiers not being satisfied with the enimies goods, will prey vpon the wealth of their friendes.

A meanes vsed in Africa how to keepe the princes tribute and merchants goods in securitie.

Of the grocers, apothecaries, and other tradesmen, and artizans of Fez.

NExt vnto the said burse, on the north side, in a streight lane, stand an hundred and fiftie grocers and apothecaries shops, which are fortified on both sides with two strong gates. These shops are garded in the night season by certaine hired and armed watchmen, which keepe their station with

with lanternes and maſtiues. The ſaid apothecaries can make neither ſirups, ointments, nor electuaries: but ſuch things are made at home by the phiſitions, and are of them to be bought. The phiſitions houſes adioine for the moſt part vnto the apothecaries: howbeit very few of the people knowe either the phiſition or the vſe of his phiſicke. The ſhops here are ſo artificially built and adorned, that the like (I thinke) are no where elſe to be found. Being in Tauris a citie of Perſia, I remember that I ſaw diuers ſtately ſhops curiouſly built vnder certaine galleries, but very darke, ſo that (in my iudgement) they be far inferiour vnto the ſhops of Fez. Next the apothecaries are certaine artificers that make combes of boxe and other wood. Eaſtward of the apothecaries dwell the needle-makers, poſſeſſing to the number of fiftie ſhops. Then follow thoſe that turne iuorie, and ſuch other matter, who (becauſe their craft is practiſed by ſome other artizans) are but few in number. Vnto the turners adioine certaine that ſell meale, ſope, & brooms: who dwelling next vnto the threed-market beforementioned, are ſcarce twenty ſhops in all: for the reſidue are diſperſed in other places of the citie, as we will hereafter declare. Amongſt the cotton-merchants are certaine that ſell ornaments for tents, and beds. Next of all ſtand the fowlers, who, though they be but few, yet are they ſtored with all kinde of choiſe and daintie fowles: whereupon the place is called the fowlers market. Then come you to their ſhops that ſell cords and ropes of hempe: and then to ſuch as make high corke ſlippers for noblemen and gentlemen to walke the ſtreetes in, when it is fowle weather: theſe corke-ſlippers are finely trimmed with much ſilke, and moſt excellent vpper leathers, ſo that the cheapeſt will coſt a duckat, yea ſome there are of ten duckats, and ſome of fiue and twentie duckats price. Such ſlippers as are accounted moſt fine and coſtly are made of blacke and white mulberie-tree, of blacke walnut-tree, and of the Iujuba-tree, albeit the corke-ſlippers are the moſt durable and ſtrong. Vnto theſe adioine ten ſhops of Spaniſh Moores, which make croſſe-bowes: as alſo thoſe that make broomes of a certaine wilde palme-tree, ſuch as are daily brought out of Sicilie to Rome. Theſe broomes they carrie about the citie in a great basket, either ſelling them, or exchanging them for bran, aſhes, or olde ſhooes: the bran they ſell againe to ſhepherds, the aſhes to ſuch as white threed, & the old ſhooes to coblers. Next vnto them are ſmithes that make nailes; & coopers which make certaine great veſſels in forme of a bucket, hauing corne-meaſures to ſell alſo: which meaſures, when the officer, appointed for the ſame purpoſe, hath made triall of, he is to receiue a farthing apeece for his fee. Then follow the wooll-chapmen, who hauing bought wooll of the butchers, put it foorth vnto others to be ſcowred and waſhed: the ſheepe-skins they themſelues dreſſe: but as for oxe-hides they belong to another occupation, and are tanned in another place. Vnto theſe adioine ſuch as make certaine langols or withs, which the Africans put vpon their horſes feete. Next of all are the braziers; then ſuch as make weights and meaſures; and thoſe likewiſe that make inſtruments to carde

Iohn Leo was at Tauris in Perſia.

woollor flaxe. At length you descend into a long streete, where men of diuers occupations dwell together, some of which doe polish and enamell stirrops, spurres, and other such commodities, as they receiue from the smithes roughly and rudely hammered. Next whom dwell certaine cart-wrights, plow-wrights, mill-wrights, and of other like occupations. Diers haue their aboad by the riuers side, and haue each of them a most cleere fountaine or cesterne, to wash their silke-stuffes in. Ouer against the diers dwell makers of bulwarkes or trenches, in a very large place, which being planted with shadie mulberie-trees is exceeding pleasant in the summer-time. Next them are a companie of farriers, that shooe mules and horses: and then those that make the iron-worke of crosse-bowes. Then followe smithes that make horse-shooes; and last of all those that white linnen-cloth: and here the west part of the citie endeth, which in times past (as is aforesaid) was a citie by it selfe, and was built after the citie on the east side of the riuer.

A description of the second part of Fez.

THe second part of Fez situate eastward, is beautified with most stately palaces, temples, houses, and colleges; albeit there are not so many trades and occupations as in the part before described. For here are neither merchants, tailors, shoomakers, &c. but of the meaner sort. Here are notwithstanding thirtie shops of grocers. Neere vnto the walles dwell certaine bricke-burners and potters: and not far from thence is a great market of white earthen vessels, platters, cups, and dishes. Next of all standes the corne-market, wherein are diuers granaries to lay vp corne. Ouer against the great temple there is a broad street paued with brick, round about which diuers handy-crafts and occupations are exercised. There are likewise many other trades diuersly dispersed ouer this east part of the citie. The drapers and grocers haue certaine peculiar places allotted vnto them. In this east part of Fez likewise there are fiue hundred and twenty weauers houses, very stately and sumptuously built: hauing in each of them many worke-houses and loomes, which yeeld great rent vnto the owners. Weauers there are (by report) in this citie twenty thousand, and as many millers. Moreouer in this part of Fez are an hundred shops for the whiting of threed; the principall whereof being situate vpon the riuer, are exceedingly well furnished with kettles, cauldrons, and other such vessels: here are likewise many great houses to saw wood in, which worke is performed by Christian captiues, and whatsoeuer wages they earne, redoundeth vnto their Lordes and masters. These Christian captiues are not suffered to rest from their labours, but only vpon fridaies, and vpon eight seuerall daies of the yeere besides, whereon the Moores feastes are solemnized. Here also are the common stewes for harlots, which are fauoured by great men, and sometime by the cheefe gouernours of the citie. Likewise there are certaine vintners, who are freely permitted to keepe harlots, and to take filthie hire for them. Here are also

moe

moe then sixe hundred cleere fountaines walled round about and most charily kept, euery one of which is seuerally conueied by certaine pipes vnto each house, temple, college, and hospitall: and this fountaine-water is accounted the best: for that which commeth out of the riuer is in summer oftentimes dried vp: as likewise when the conducts are to be cleansed, the course of the riuer must of necessitie be turned out of the citie. Wherefore euery familie vseth to fetch water out of the said fountaines, and albeit in summer-time the chiefe gentlemen vse riuer-water, yet they will often call for fountaine-water, because it is more coole and pleasant in taste. But in the spring-time it is nothing so. These fountaines haue their originall for the most part from the west and south, for the north part is all full of mountains and marble-rocks, containing certaine caues or cels, wherein corne may be kept for many yeeres; of which caues some are so large, that they will holde two hundred bushels of corne. The citizens dwelling neere those caues, and such as possesse them, do sufficiently maintaine themselues in taking yeerely euery hundred bushell for rent. The south part of east Fez is almost halfe destitute of inhabitants: howbeit the gardens abound with fruites and flowers of all sortes. Euery garden hath an house belonging thereunto, and a christall-fountaine enuironed with roses and other odoriferous flowers and herbes; so that in the spring-time a man may both satisfie his eies, and solace his minde in visiting this part of the citie: and well it may be called a Paradise, sithence the noblemen doe here reside from the moneth of April till the end of September. Westward, that is, toward the kings palace, standeth a castle built by a king of the Luntune-familie, resembling in bignes an whole towne: wherein the kings of Fez, before the said palace was built, kept their royal residence. But after new Fez began to be built by the Marin-kings, the said castle was left onely to the gouernour of the citie. Within this castle standes a stately temple built (as aforesaid) what time it was inhabited by princes and nobles, many places being afterward defaced and turned into gardens: howbeit certaine houses were left vnto the gouernour, partly to dwell in, and partly for the deciding of controuersies. Here is likewise a certaine prison for captiues supported with many pillers, and being so large, that it will hold (as diuers are of opinion) three thousand men. Neither are there any seuerall roomes in this prison: for at Fez one prison serueth for all. By this castle runneth a certaine riuer very commodious for the gouernour.

Of the magistrates, the administration of iustice, and of the apparell vsed in Fez.

IN the citie of Fez are certaine particular iudges and magistrates: and there is a gouernour that defineth ciuill controuersies, and giueth sentence against malefactors. Likewise there is a iudge of the canon law, who hath to doe with all matters concerning the Mahumetan religion. A third

iudge

iudge there is also that dealeth about marriages and diuorcements, whose authoritie is to heare all witnesses, and to giue sentence accordingly. Next vnto them is the high aduocate, vnto whom they appeale from the sentence of the saide iudges, when as they doe either mistake themselues, or doe ground their sentence vpon the authoritie of some inferiour doctor. The gouernour gaineth a great summe of money by condemning of parties at seuerall times. Their manner of proceeding against a malefactor is this: hauing giuen him an hundred or two hundred stripes before the gouernour, the executioner putteth an iron-chaine about his necke, and so leadeth him starke-naked (his priuities onely excepted) through all partes of the citie: after the executioner followes a sergeant, declaring vnto all the people what fact the guiltie person hath committed, till at length hauing put on his apparell againe, they carrie him backe to prison. Sometimes it falleth out that many offenders chained together are led about the citie: and the gouernour for each malefactor thus punished, receiueth one duckat and one fourth part; and likewise at their first entrance into the iaile, he demaunds of each one a certaine dutie, which is paid particularly vnto him by diuers merchants and artificers appointed of purpose. And amongst his other liuings, he gathereth out of a certaine mountaine seuen thousand duckats of yeerely reuenue: so that when occasion serueth, he is at his proper costs to finde the king of Fez three hundred horses, and to giue them their pay. Those which follow the canon-lawe haue neither stipend nor rewarde allowed them: for it is forbidden by the law of Mahumet, that the iudges of his religion should reape any commoditie or fees by their office; but that they shoulde liue onely by reading of lectures, and by their priesthood. In this facultie are many aduocates and proctors, which are extreme idiotes, and vtterly voide of all good learning. There is a place also in Fez whereinto the iudges vse to cast the citizens, for debt, or for some light offence. In all this citie are fower officers or sergeants onely; who from midnight till two a clocke in the morning doe walke about all partes of the citie; neither haue they any stipend, but a certaine fee of such malefactors as they lead about in chaines, according to the qualitie of euery mans crime; moreouer, they are freely permitted to sell wine, and to keepe harlots. The saide gouernour hath neither scribes nor notaries, but pronounceth all sentences by word of mouth. One onely there is that gathereth customes and tributes ouer all the citie, who daily paieth to the kings vse thirtie duckats. This man appointeth certaine substitutes to watch at euery gate, where nothing, be it of neuer so small value, can passe before some tribute be paid. Yea sometime they goe foorth of the citie to meete with the carriers and muliters vpon the high waies, to the end they may not conceale nor closely conuey any merchandize into the citie. And if they be taken in any deceite, they pay double. The set order or proportion of their custome is this, namely to pay two duckats for the woorth of an hundred: for Onix-stones, which are brought hither in great plentie, they pay one fourth part: but for wood, corne,

The punishment of malefactors in Fez.

corne, oxen, and hennes, they giue nothing at all. Neither at the entring of the citie doe they pay any tribute for rammes, but at the shambles they giue two * Liardos apeece, and to the gouernour of the shambles one. The said gouernour of the shambles hath alwaies twelue men waiting vpon him, and oftentimes he rideth about the citie to examine the weight of bread, and finding any bread to faile of the due waight, he causeth the baker to be beaten with cudgels, and to be led in contempt vp and downe the citie. The said office was woont to be allotted vnto men of singular honestie; but now adaies euery ignorant and lewd person enioieth it. The citizens of Fez goe very ciuilly and decently attired, in the spring-time wearing garments made of outlandish cloth: ouer these shirtes they weare a iacket or cassocke being narrow and halfe-sleeued, whereupon they weare a certaine wide garment, close before on the breast. Their caps are thinne and single, like vnto the night-caps vsed in Italie, sauing that they couer not their eares: these caps are couered with a certaine skarfe, which being twise wreathed about their head and beard, hangeth by a knot. They weare neither hose nor breeches, but in the spring-time when they ride a iourney they put on bootes: mary the poorer sort haue onely their cassocke, and a mantle ouer that called * Barnussi, and a most course cap. The doctors and ancient gentlemen weare a certaine garment with wide sleeues, somewhat like to the gentlemen of Venice. The common sort of people are for the most part clad in a kinde of course white cloth. The women are not altogether vnseemely apparelled, but in sommer-time they weare nothing saue their smocks onely. In winter they weare such a wide sleeued garment, being close at the breast, as that of the men before mentioned. When they goe abroad, they put on certaine long breeches, wherewith their legs are all couered, hauing also, after the fashion of Syria, a vaile hanging downe from their heads, which couereth their whole bodies. On their faces likewise they weare a maske with two little holes onely for their eies, to peepe out at. Their eares they adorne with golden eare-rings & with most pretious iewels: the meaner sort weare eare-rings of siluer and gilt only. Vpon their armes the ladies and gentlewomen weare golden bracelets, and the residue siluer, as likewise gold or siluer-rings vpon their legs, according to each ones estate and abilitie.

* *Or Baiochi.*

* *Or Ilbernus.*

Of their manner of eating and drinking.

LEt vs now speake somewhat of their victuals and manner of eating. The common sort set on the pot with fresh meat twise euery weeke: but the gentlemen and richer sort euery day, and as often as they list. They take three meales a day: their breakefast consisteth of certaine fruits and bread, or else of a kinde of liquid pap made like vnto frumentie: in winter they sup off the broth of salt flesh thickened with course meale. To dinner they haue flesh, sallets, cheese, and oliues: but in summer they haue greater cheere. Their supper is easie of digestion, consisting of bread, melons, grapes, or milke:

milke: but in winter they haue ſodden fleſh, together with a kinde of meate called Cuſcuſu, which being made of a lumpe of dowe is ſet firſt vpon the fire in certaine veſſels full of holes, and afterwarde is tempered with butter and pottage. Some alſo vſe often to haue roſte-meat. And thus you ſee after what ſort both the gentlemen & common people lead their liues: albeit the noblemen fare ſomewhat more daintily: but if you compare them with the noblemen and gentlemen of Europe, they may ſeeme to be miſerable and baſe fellowes; not for any want or ſcarcitie of victuals, but for want of good manners and cleanlines. The table whereat they ſit is lowe, vncouered, and filthie: ſeats they haue none but the bare ground, neither kniues or ſpoones but only their ten talons. The ſaid Cuſcuſu is ſet before them all in one only platter, whereout as well gentlemen as others take it not with ſpoones, but with their clawes fiue. The meat & pottage is put al in one diſh; out of which euery one raketh with his greaſie fiſts what he thinkes good: you ſhall neuer ſee knife vpon the table, but they teare and greedily deuoure their meate like hungrie dogs. Neither doth any of them deſire to drinke before he hath well ſtuffed his panch; and then will he ſup off a cup of cold water as big as a milke-bowle. The doctors indeede are ſomewhat more orderly at meales: but, to tell you the very truth, in all Italie there is no gentleman ſo meane, which for fine diet and ſtately furniture excelleth not the greateſt potentates and lords of all Africa.

A kinde of meate called Cuſcuſu.

The manner of ſolemnizing mariages.

AS touching their mariages, they obſerue theſe courſes following. So ſoone as the maides father hath eſpouſed her vnto her louer, they goe foorthwith like bride and bridegroome to church, accompanied with their parents and kinsfolkes, and call likewiſe two notaries with them to make record before all that are preſent of the couenants and dowrie. The meaner ſort of people vſually giue for their daughters dowrie thirtie duckats and a woman-ſlaue of fifteene duckats price; as likewiſe a partie-coloured garment embrodered with ſilke, and certaine other ſilke skarfs or iags, to weare vpon her head in ſtead of a hood or vaile; then a paire of fine ſhooes, and two excellent paire of ſtartups; and laſtly many pretie knackes curiouſly made of ſiluer and other metals, as namely combes, perfuming-pans, bellowes, and ſuch other trinkets as women haue in eſtimation. Which being done, all the gueſts preſent are inuited to a banket, whereunto for great dainties is brought a kinde of bread fried and tempered with honie, which wee haue before deſcribed; then they bring roſte-meate to the boord, all this being at the bridegroomes coſt: afterward the brides father maketh a banket in like ſort. Who if he beſtow on his daughter ſome apparell beſides her dowrie, it is accounted a point of liberalitie. And albeit the father promiſeth but thirtie duckats onely for a dowrie, yet will he ſometimes beſtow, in apparell and other ornaments belonging to women, two hundred, yea ſometimes

times three hundred duckats beſides. But they ſeldome giue an houſe, a vine-yarde, or a field for a dowrie. Moreouer vpon the bride they beſtowe three gownes made of coſtly cloth; and three others of ſilke chamlet, or of ſome other excellent ſtuffe. They giue her ſmockes likewiſe curiouſly wrought, with fine vailes, and other embrodered veſtures; as alſo pillowes and cuſhions of the beſt ſort. And beſides all the former giftes, they beſtow eight carpets or couerlets on the bride, fower whereof are onely for ſeemelines to ſpread vpon their preſſes and cupboords: two of the courſer they vſe for their beds; and the other two of leather, to lay vpon the floore of their bed-chambers. Alſo they haue certaine rugs of about twenty elles compaſſe or length; as likewiſe three quilts being made of linnen and woollen on the one ſide, and ſtuffed with flockes on the other ſide, which they vſe in the night in manner following. With the one halfe they couer themſelues, and the other halfe they lay vnder them: which they may eaſily doe, when as they are both waies about ten elles long. Vnto the former they adde as many couerlets of ſilke very curiouſly embrodered on the vpper ſide, and beneath lined double with linnen and cotton. They beſtow likewiſe white couerlets to vſe in ſummer-time onely: and laſtly they beſtow a woollen hanging diuided into many partes, and finely wrought, as namely with certaine peeces of gilt leather; whereupon they ſowe iags of partie-coloured ſilke, and vpon euery iag a little ball or button of ſilke, whereby the ſaide hanging may for ornaments ſake be faſtened vnto a wall. Here you ſee what be the appurtenances of their dowries; wherein ſome doe ſtriue ſo much to excell others, that oftentimes many gentlemen haue brought themſelues vnto pouertie thereby. Some Italians thinke that the husband beſtowes a dowrie vpon his wife; but they altogether miſtake the matter. The bridegroome being ready to carrie home his bride, cauſeth her to be placed in a woodden cage or cabinet eight-ſquare couered with ſilke, in which ſhe is carried by porters, her parents and kinſfolkes following, with a great noiſe of trumpets, pipes, and drums, and with a number of torches; the bridegroomes kinſmen goe before with torches, and the brides kinſfolkes followe after: and ſo they goe vnto the great market place, and hauing paſſed by the temple, the bridegroome takes his leaue of his father in lawe and the reſt, hying him home with all ſpeed, and in his chamber expecting the preſence of his ſpouſe. The father, brother, and vncle of the bride lead her vnto the chamber-doore, and there deliuer her with one conſent vnto the mother of the bridegroome: who, as ſoone as ſhe is entred, toucheth her foote with his, and foorthwith they depart into a ſeuerall roome by themſelues. In the meane ſeaſon the banket is comming foorth: and a certaine woman ſtandeth before the bride-chamber doore, expecting till the bridegroome hauing defloured his bride reacheth her a napkin ſtained with blood, which napkin ſhe carrieth incontinent and ſheweth to the gueſtes, proclaiming with a lowd voice, that the bride was euer till that time an vnſpotted and pure virgine. This woman together with other women her companions, firſt the parents of the bride-

groome

groome and then of the bride doe honourably entertaine. But if the bride be found not to be a virgine, the mariage is made fruſtrate, and ſhe with great diſgrace is turned home to her parents. At complete mariages they make for the moſt part three bankets: the firſt the ſame day when the bride-groome and bride are ioined in wedlocke; the ſecond the day following for women onely; and the third ſeuen daies after; whereat all the kinsfolks and friends of the bride are preſent; and this day the brides father, according to his abilitie, ſendes great ſtore of daintie diſhes vnto his ſonne in lawe: but ſo ſoone as the new married man goeth foorth of the houſe (which is for the moſt part on the ſeuenth day after the mariage) he buieth great plentie of fiſhes, which he cauſeth his mother or ſome other woman to caſt vpon his wiues feete; and this they, from an ancient ſuperſtitious cuſtome, take for a good boading. Likewiſe at the bridegroomes fathers they vſe to make two other feaſts; the one vpon the day before the bride is married; and ſo that night they ſpend in dauncing and diſport. The morrow after a companie of women goe to dreſſe the bride, to combe her locks, and to paint her cheekes with vermillion; her hands and her feete they die blacke, but all this painting preſently looſeth the freſh hew; and this day they haue another banket. The bride they place in the higheſt roome that ſhe may be ſeene of all, and then thoſe that dreſſed the bride are condignely entertained. Being come to the bridegroomes houſe, his parents ſalute the new bride with certaine great cups full of new wine and cakes, with other iuncats, (which wee wil here paſſe ouer in ſilence) all which are beſtowed vpon the bridegroomes companions. The ſame night which we ſaid was ſpent in dauncing, there are preſent at the bridall-houſe certaine minſtrels and ſingers, which by turnes ſometimes vſe their inſtruments and ſometimes voice-muſicke: they daunce alwaies one by one, and at the end of each galliard they beſtow a largeſſe vpon the muſitions. If any one wil honour the dancer, he bids him kneele downe before him, and hauing faſtened peeces of money all ouer his face, the muſitions preſently take it off for their fee. The women daunce alone without any men, at the noiſe of their owne muſitions. All theſe things vſe to be performed when the bride is a maide. But the mariages of widowes are concluded with leſſe adoe. Their cheere is boiled beefe and mutton, and ſtued hens, with diuers iuncating diſhes among. In ſtead of trenchers, the gueſtes being ten or twelue in number, haue ſo many great round platters of wood ſet before them. And this is the common cuſtome of gentlemen and merchants. The meaner ſort preſent their gueſtes with certaine ſops or brueſſe of bread like vnto a pan-cake, which being dipped in fleſh-pottage, they eate out of a great platter not with ſpoones but with their fingers onely: and round about each great platter ſtand to the number of ten or twelue perſons. Likewiſe they make a ſolemne feaſt at the circumciſion of their male children, which is vpon the ſeuenth day after their birth; and at this feaſt the circumciſer, together with all their friends and kinsfolks is preſent: which being done, each one, according to his abilitie, beſtoweth

The mariage of widowes.

The circumciſion of their children.

a gift vpon the circumciser in manner following. Euery man laies his money vpon a lads face which the circumciser brought with him. Whereupon the lad calling euery one by his name, giueth them thanks in particular: and then the infant being circumcised, they spend that day with as great iollitie as a day of mariage. But at the birth of a daughter they shew not so much alacritie.

Of their rites obserued vpon festiuall daies, and their manner of mourning for the dead.

Among the people of Fez there haue remained certaine reliques of festiuall daies instituted of olde by the Christians; whereupon they vse certaine ceremonies which themselues vnderstande not. Vpon Christmas euen they eate a sallet made of diuers herbs: they seeth likewise that night all kind of pulse, which they feede vpon for great dainties. Vpon New-yeeres day the children goe with maskes and vizards on their faces to the houses of gentlemen and merchants, and haue fruits giuen them for singing certaine carols or songs. When as the feast of Saint *Iohn* Baptist is hallowed among Christians, you shall here see all about great store of fires made with straw. And when their childrens teeth begin to grow, they make another feast called, according to the Latines, *Dentilla*. They haue also many other rites and customes of diuining or soothsaying, the like wherof I haue seene at Rome and in other cities of Italie. As touching their feasts prescribed by the Mahumetan lawe, they are at large set downe in that briefe treatise which we haue written concerning the same law. The women hauing by death lost their husbands, fathers, or any other of their deere friends, assemble foorthwith a great multitude of their own sexe together, who stripping themselues out of their owne attire, put on most vile sackcloth, and defile their faces with much durt: then call they certaine men clad in womens attire, bringing great fower-square drums with them, at the noise of which drums the women-mourners sing a funerall song, tending as much as may be, to the commendation of the partie deceased: and at the end of euery verse, the said womẽ vtter most hideous shrikes & outcries, tearing their haire, & with much lamentation beating their cheekes & breasts, till they be all-imbrued with blood: and so these heathenish superstitions continue for seuen whole daies together. At which seuen daies ende they surcease their mourning for the space of 40. daies, & then they begin anew to torment thẽselues for three daies togither in maner aforesaid: howbeit these kinds of obsequies are obserued onely by the baser people, but the gentlemen and better sort behaue themselues more modestly. At this time all the widowes friends come about her to comfort her, and send diuers kinds of meats vnto her: for in the mourning house they may dresse no meate at all, till the dead corpes be carried foorth. The woman her selfe that looseth her husband, father, or brother,

Reliques of Christian ceremonies obserued among the Moores.

Their funerals.

neuer goeth foorth with the funerall. But how they waſh and burie the dead corpes, and what ſuperſtitions they vſe thereabout, you ſhall finde recorded in my little treatiſe aboue mentioned.

Of their doue-houſes.

DIuers there are in this citie, that take much pleaſure in keeping of doues, which are here in great plentie, of all colours. Theſe doues they keepe in certaine cages or lockers on the tops of their houſes, which lockers they ſet open twiſe a day, to wit, morning and euening, delighting greatly to ſee them flie, for thoſe that out-flie the reſidue are accounted the beſt. Oftentimes it falleth out, that neighbours doues will be mingled together, for which cauſe you ſhall ſee the owners goe together by the eares. Some haue a certaine net bound vnto two long canes, wherewith they vſe to take their neighbours doues, as they come flying foorth of their louers. Amongſt the colliers you ſhall find ſeuen or eight ſhops onely of thoſe that ſel doues.

Their manner of gaming at Fez.

THe citizens vſe moſt of all to play at cheſſe, and that from ancient times. Other games there are alſo, but very rude, and vſed onely by the common people. At certaine times of the yeere the boies of one ſtreet wil fight with clubs againſt the boies of another ſtreet, and that ſometimes with ſo great furie, that they betake themſelues to other weapons and ſlay one another, eſpecially vpon their feſtiuall daies, what time they will challenge and prouoke one another foorth of the citie-walles. And hauing fought hard all the whole day, at night they fall to throwing of ſtones: till at length the citie-officers come vpon them, taking ſome, and beating them publiquely throughout the citie. Sometimes it falleth out, that the yoong ſtriplings arming themſelues, and going by night out of the citie, range vp and downe the fields and gardens: and if the contrarie faction of yoonkers and they meete, it is woonderfull what a bloodie skirmiſh enſueth: howbeit they are often moſt ſeuerely puniſhed for it.

Of the African poets.

IN Fez there are diuers moſt excellent poets, which make verſes in their owne mother toong. Moſt of their poems and ſongs intreat of loue. Euery yeere they pen certaine verſes in the commendation of Mahumet, eſpecially vpon his birthday: for then betimes in the morning they reſort vnto the palace of the chiefe iudge or gouernour, aſcending his tribunall-ſeate, and from thence reading their verſes to a great audience of people: and hee whoſe verſes are moſt elegant and pithie, is that yeere proclaimed prince of the

Rewards for poets in Fez.

the poets. But when as the kings of the Marin-familie prospered, they vsed to inuite all the learned men of the citie vnto their palace; and honourably entertaining them, they commanded each man in their hearing to recite their verses to the commendation of Mahumet: and he that was in all mens opinions esteemed the best poet, was rewarded by the king with an hundred duckats, with an excellent horse, with a woman-slaue, and with the kings owne robes wherewith he was then apparelled: all the rest had fiftie duckats apeece giuen them, so that none departed without the kings liberalitie: but an hundred and thirtie yeeres are expired since this custome, together with the maiestie of the Fessan kingdome, decaied.

A description of the grammar-schooles in Fez.

OF schooles in Fez for the instructing of children, there are almost two hundred, euery one of which is in fashion like a great hall. The schoolemasters teach their children to write and read not out of a booke, but out of a certaine great table. Euery day they expound one sentence of the Alcoran: and hauing red quite through they begin it againe, repeating it so often, til they haue most firmely committed the same to memorie: which they doe right well in the space of 7. yeeres. Then read they vnto their scholers some part of orthographie: howbeit both this and the other parts of Grammar are far more exactly taught in the colleges, then in these triuiall schooles. The said schoolemasters are allowed a very small stipend; but when their boies haue learned some part of the Alcoran, they present certaine gifts vnto their master, according to each ones abilitie. Afterward so soon as any boy hath perfectly learned the whole Alcaron, his father inuiteth all his sonnes schoole-fellowes vnto a great banket: and his sonne in costly apparell rides through the street vpon a gallant horse, which horse and apparell the gouernour of the royall citadell is bound to lend him. The rest of his schoole-fellowes being mounted likewise on horse-backe accompany him to the banketing house, singing diuers songs to the praise of God and of Mahumet. Then are they brought to a most sumptuous banket, whereat all the kinsfolkes of the foresaid boyes father are vsually present: euery one of whom bestoweth on the schoolemaster some small gift, and the boyes father giues him a new sute of apparell. The said scholers likewise vse to celebrate a feast vpon the birth-day of Mahumet, and then their fathers are bound to send each man a torch vnto the schoole: whereupon euery boy carrieth a torch in his hand, some of which waigh thirty pound. These torches are most curiously made, being adorned round about with diuers fruits of waxe, which being lighted betimes in the morning doe burne till sun-rise, in the meane while certaine singers resound the praises of Mahumet, and so soone as the sunne is vp, all their solemnitie ceaseth: this day vseth to be very gainfull vnto the schoolemasters, for they sell the remnant of the waxe vpon the torches for an hun-

dred duckats, and sometimes for more. None of them paies any rent for his schoole: for all their schooles were built many yeeres agoe, and were freely bestowed for the training vp of youth. Whatsoeuer ornaments or toyes are vpon the torches, the schoolemasters diuide them among their scholers and among the singers. Both in these common schooles and also in the colleges they haue two daies of recreation euery weeke, wherein they neither teach nor studie.

Of the fortune-tellers and some other artizans in Fez.

WE haue said nothing as yet of the leather-dressers, who haue diuers mansions by the riuers side, paying for euery skin an halfepeny custome, which amounteth yeerely almost vnto three hundred duckats. Here are likewise chirurgions & barbers, whom, because they are so few, I thought not to haue mentioned in this place. Now let vs speake of the fortune-tellers and diuiners, of whom there is a great number, and three kindes. For one sort vseth certaine Geomanticall figures. Others powring a drop of oile into a viall or glasse of water, make the saide water to bee transparent and bright, wherein, as it were in a mirrour, they affirme that they see huge swarmes of diuels that resemble an whole armie, some whereof are trauelling, some are passing ouer a riuer, and others fighting a land-battell, whom when the diuiner seeth at quiet, he demandeth such questions of them as he is desirous to be resolued of: and the diuels giue them answere with beckning, or with some gesture of their hands or eies: so inconsiderate and damnable is their credulitie in this behalfe. The foresaid glasse-viall they will deliuer into childrens hands scarce of eight yeeres old, of whom they will aske whether they see this or that diuell. Many of the citie are so besotted with these vanities, that they spend great summes vpon them. The third kinde of diuiners are women-witches, which are affirmed to haue familiaritie with diuels: some diuels they call red, some white, and some blacke diuels: and when they will tell any mans fortune, they perfume themselues with certaine odours, saying, that then they possesse themselues with that diuell which they called for: afterward changing their voice, they faine the diuell to speake within them: then they which come to enquire, ought with great feare & trembling aske these vile & abominable witches such questions as they meane to propound, and lastly offering some fee vnto the diuell, they depart. But the wiser and honester sort of people call these women *Sahacat*, which in Latin signifieth *Fricatrices*, because they haue a damnable custome to commit vnlawfull Venerie among themselues, which I cannot expresse in any modester termes. If faire women come vnto them at any time, these abominable witches will burne in lust towardes them no otherwise then lustie yoonkers doe towards yoong maides, and will in the diuels behalfe demaunde for a rewarde, that they may lie with them: and so by this meanes it often falleth out, that thinking thereby to fulfill the diuels

Three sorts of diuiners in Fez.

command

command they lie with the witches. Yea some there are, which being allured with the delight of this abominable vice, will desire the companie of these witches, and faining themselues to be sicke, will either call one of the witches home to them, or will send their husbands for the same purpose: and so the witches perceiuing how the matter stands, will say that the woman is possessed with a diuell, and that she can no way be cured, vnlesse she be admitted into their societie. With these words her silly husband being perswaded, doth not onely permit her so to doe, but makes also a sumptuous banket vnto the damned crew of witches: which being done, they vse to daunce very strangely at the noise of drums: and so the poore man commits his false wife to their filthie disposition. Howbeit some there are that will soone coniure the diuell with a good cudgell out of their wiues: others faining themselues to be possessed with a diuell, wil deceiue the said witches, as their wiues haue been deceiued by them.

Of the coniurers, inchanters, and iuglers in Fez.

IN Fez likewise there are a kinde of iuglers or coniurers called *Muhazzimin:* who of all others are reported to be most speedie casters out of diuels. And because their Necromancie sometimes taketh effect, it is a wonder to see into what reputation they grow thereby: but when they cannot cast foorth a diuell, they say it is an airie spirite. Their manner of adiuring diuels is this: first they drawe certaine characters and circles vpon an ashheape or some other place; then describe they certaine signes vpon the hands and forehead of the partie possessed, and perfume him after a strange kinde of manner. Afterward they make their inchantment or coniuration; enquiring of the diuell, which way or by what meanes he entred the partie, as likewise what he is, and by what name he is called, and lastly charging him to come foorth. Others there are that worke by a certaine Cabalisticall rule called *Zairagia:* this rule is contained in many writings, for it is thought to be naturall magique: neither are there any other Necromancers in all Fez, that will more certainly and truly resolue a doubtfull question; howbeit their arte is exceeding difficult: for the students thereof must haue as great skill in Astrologie, as in Cabala. My selfe in times past hauing attained to some knowledge in this facultie, continued (I remember) an whole day in describing one figure onely: which kinde of figures are described in manner following. First they draw many circles within the compasse of a great circle: in the first circle they make a crosse, at the fower extremities whereof they set downe the fower quarters of the world, to wit, East, West, North, and South: at each end of one of the said crosse lines, they note either pole: likewise about the circumference of the first circle, they paint the fower elements: then diuide they the same circle and the circle following into fower partes: and euery fourth part they diuide into other seuen, each one being distinguished with certaine great Arabian characters, so that

euery element containeth eight and twentie characters. In the third circle they set downe the seuen planets; in the fourth the twelue signes of the Zodiacke; in the fift the twelue Latine names of the moneths; in the sixt the eight and twentie houses of the moone; in the seuenth the 365. daies of the yeere, and about the conuexitie thereof, the fower cardinall or principall windes. Then take they one onely letter of the question propounded, multiplying the same by all the particulars aforenamed, & the product or summe totall they diuide after a certaine manner, placing it in some roome, according to the qualitie of the character, and as the element requireth wherein the said character is found without a figure. All which being done, they marke that figure which seemeth to agree with the foresaid number or sum produced, wherewith they proceed as they did with the former, till they haue found eight and twentie characters, whereof they make one word, and of this word the speech is made that resolueth the question demanded: this speech is alwaies turned into a verse of the first kinde, which the Arabians call *Ethauil*, consisting of eight *Stipites* and twelue *Chordi*, according to the meeter of the Arabian toong, whereof we haue intreated in the last part of our Arabian grammar. And the verse consisting of those characters, comprehendeth alwaies a true and infallible answer vnto the question propounded, resoluing first that which is demanded, and then expounding the sense of the question it selfe. These practitioners are neuer found to erre, which causeth their arte of Cabala to be had in great admiration: which although it be accounted naturall, yet neuer saw I any thing that hath more affinitie with supernaturall and diuine knowledge. I remember that I saw in a certaine open place of king *Abulunan* his college in Fez, vpon a floore paued with excellent smooth marble, the description of a figure. Each side of this floore or court was fiftie elles long, and yet two third parts thereof were occupied about the figure, and about the things pertaining thereto: three there were that made the description, euery one attending his appointed place, and they were an whole day in setting it downe. Another such figure I saw at Tunis, drawen by one that was maruellous cunning in the arte, whose father had written two volumes of commentaries or expositions vpon the precepts of the same arte, wherein whosoeuer hath exact skill, is most highly esteemed of by all men. I my selfe neuer sawe but three of this profession, namely one at Tunis, and two other at Fez: likewise I haue seene two expositions vpon the precepts of the said arte, together with a commentarie of one *Margian* father vnto the foresaid Cabalist which I sawe at Tunis: and another written by *Ibnu Caldim* the historiographer. And if any were desirous to see the precepts and commentaries of that arte, he might doe it with the expence of fiftie duckats: for sailing to Tunis a towne neere vnto Italie, he might haue a sight of all the particulars aforesaid. I my selfe had fit oportunitie of time, and a teacher that offered to instruct me gratis in the same arte: howbeit I thought good not to accept his offer, because the said arte is forbidden and accounted hereticall by the law of Mahumet: for Mahumets

An Arabian grammar written by Iohn Leo.

Diuination and soothsaying forbidden by the lawe of Mahumet.

law

law affirmeth all kinde of diuinations to be vaine, and that God onely knoweth secrets and things to come: wherefore sometimes the saide Cabalistes are imprisoned by the Mahumetan inquisitours, who cease not to persecute the professours of that arte.

Of certaine rules and superstitions obserued in the Mahumetan law.

HEre also you may finde certaine learned men, which will haue themselues called wizards and morall philosophers. They obserue certaine rules which Mahumet neuer prescribed. By some they are accounted catholique or true Mahumetans, and by others they are holden for heretiks, howbeit the greatest part of the common people reuerence them as if they were gods, notwithstanding they commit many things vnlawfull and forbidden by the Mahumetan lawe, as namely; whereas the said lawe forbiddeth any loue-matters to be expressed in any musicall ditties or songs, these moralists affirme the contrarie. In the foresaid Mahumetan religion are a great number of rules or sectes, euery of which hath most learned patrones and protectours. The foresaid sect sprang vp fowerscore yeeres after Mahumet, the first author thereof being called *Elhesen Ibnu Abilhasen*, and being borne in the towne of Basora: this man taught his disciples & followers certaine precepts, but writings he left none behinde him. About an hundred yeeres after there came another notable doctor of that sect from Bagaded, called *Elharit Ibnu Esed*, who left volumes of writings vnto his disciples. Afterward those that were found to be his followers, were all condemned by the Mahumetan patriarks and lawyers. Howbeit 80. yeeres after, that sect began to reuiue againe vnder a certaine famous professour, who drew after him many disciples, vnto whom he published his doctrine. This man at length and all his followers were by the patriarke and lawyers condemned to die. Which he vnderstanding, wrote foorthwith vnto the patriarke, requesting that hee might be licenced to dispute with the lawyers as touching his doctrine, of whom if he were conuinced, he would most willingly suffer death; otherwise that it would be against all equitie, that so many innocents should perish vpon an vniust accusation. The patriarke thinking his demand to be reasonable, condescended wholy thereunto. But when the matter came to disputation, the partie condemned soone put all the lawyers to silence. Which when the patriarke perceiued, he reuoked the sentence as vniust, and caused many colleges and monasteries to be erected for the said partie and his followers. After which time this sect continued about an hundred yeeres, till the emperour *Malicsach* of the Turkish race came thither out of Asia the greater, and destroied all the maintainers thereof. Whereupon some of them fled vnto Cairo, and the rest into Arabia, being dispersed here and there for the space of twenty yeeres, till in the raigne of *Caselsah* nephew vnto *Malicsach*, *Nidam Elmule* one of his counsellers, and a man of an high spirit,

Diuers Mahumetan sects.

ſpirit, being addicted vnto the ſaid ſect, ſo reſtored, erected, and confirmed the ſame, that by the helpe of one *Elgazzuli* a moſt learned man (who had written of the ſame argument a notable worke diuided into ſeuen partes) he reconciled the lawyers with the diſciples of this ſect, conditionally, that the lawyers ſhould be called Conſeruers of the prophet Mahumet his lawes, & the ſectaries Reformers of the ſame. This concord laſted betweene them, til Bagaded was ſacked by the Tartars; which befell in the yeere of the Hegeira 656. at what time thoſe ſectaries ſo increaſed, that they ſwarmed almoſt ouer all Africa and Aſia. Neither would they admit any into their ſocietie, but ſuch as were very learned, and trained vp in all kinde of liberall ſciences; to the end they might the better defend their owne opinions, and confute their aduerſaries: but now adaies they admit all kinde of rude and ignorant perſons, affirming all ſortes of learning to be needleſſe; for the holy ſpirit (ſay they) reuealeth the knowledge of the truth vnto ſuch as are of a cleane hart; and they alleage many reaſons for the confirmation of this their opinion, though not very forcible. Wherefore deſpiſing their anceſters rites, and the ſtrict obſeruations of the law, they addict themſelues to nought elſe but delights and pleaſures, feaſting often & ſinging laſciuious ſongs. Sometimes they will rend their garments, either alluding thereby to the verſes that they ſing, or being mooued thereunto by their corrupt and vile diſpoſition; ſaying falſly that they are then rauiſhed with a fit of diuine loue: but I rather impute it to their abundance of meat, and gluttonie. For each one of them will deuoure as much meate, as may well ſuffice three. Or (which is more likely) they vtter thoſe paſſionate clamours and out-cries, becauſe they are inflamed with vnlawfull and filthie luſt. For ſometimes it happeneth that ſome one of the principall of them, with all his ſcholers and diſciples, is inuited to the mariage of ſome gentleman, and at the beginning of the banket they will rehearſe their deuout orizons and ſongs, but ſo ſoone as they are riſen from the table, the elder of the companie being about to daunce, teare their garments: and if any one in the middeſt of their dauncing, that hath drunke immoderately, chaunceth to fall downe, he is taken vp foorthwith by one of the ſcholers, and to too laſciuiouſly kiſſed. Whereupon this prouerbe grew among the people of Fez: *The heremites banket.* Which they vſe in reproch of thoſe maſters, that make their ſcholers their minions.

Bagdet ſacked by the Tartars.

Of diuers other rules and ſectes, and of the ſuperſtitious credulitie of many.

AMongſt theſe ſectes there are ſome, that haue not onely a diuers law, but alſo a different beleefe from the reſidue, whereupon by ſome others they are called heretikes. Some there are alſo which hold, that a man by good works, by faſting and abſtinence, may attaine vnto the nature of an angell, which good works, faſtings, &c. doe (ſay they) ſo purge and free the minde from all contagion of euill, that by no meanes it can ſinne any more, though

though it would neuer so faine. Howbeit they thinke themselues not capable of this felicitie, before they haue ascended thereunto by the degrees of fiftie disciplines or sciences: and although they fall into sinne before they be come to the fiftith degree, yet they say that God will not impute that sinne vnto them. These fellowes indeed in the beginning leade a most strict life, and doe euen macerate and consume themselues with fasting; but afterward they giue themselues to al licentiousnes and pleasure. They haue also a most seuere forme of liuing set downe in fower bookes, by a certaine learned man of their faction, called *Essehrauar de Sehrauard*, and borne in the citie of Corasan. Likewise there was another author called *Ibnul Farid*, that described all their religion in wittie verses, which being fraught with allegories seemed to intreate of nought but loue: wherefore one *Elfargani* expounded the said verses with a commentarie, and thereout gathered the canons and orders of the sect, and shewed the degrees to the attainment of felicitie. Moreouer the said verses are so sweet and elegant, that the maintainers of this sect will sing and repeate none other in their bankets: for these three hundred yeeres no author hath so adorned their language as the said *Ibnul*. These sectaries take the heauens, the elements, the planets, and the fixed starres to be one god, and that no law nor religion is erronious: for euery man (say they) may lawfully worship that which his mind is most addicted to worship. They thinke that all the knowledge of God was infused into one man, whom they call in their language *Elcorb*; this man, they say, was elect by god, and was made equall in knowledge to him. Fourtie there are among them called all by the name of *Elauted*, which signifieth in our language, a blocke, or stocke of a tree: out of this number, when their Elcoth deceaseth, they create another in his roome, namely seuentie persons that haue the authoritie of election committed vnto them. There are likewise 765. others (whose names I doe not well remember) who are chosen into the said electors roomes, when any of them decease. These 765. being bound thereunto by a certaine canon or rule of their order, are constrained alwaies to goe vnknowen, and they range almost all the world ouer in a most vile and beggerly habite, so that a man would take them for mad men and estranged from all sense of humanitie: for these lewd miscreants vnder pretence of their religion run like roagues naked and sauage throughout all Africa, hauing so little regarde of honestie or shame, that they will like brute beastes rauish women in publike places; and yet forsooth the grosse common people reuerence them as men of woonderfull holines. Great swarmes of these filthie vagabonds you may see in Tunis, but many more in Egypt, and especially at Alcair, whereas in the market called Bain Elcasrain I saw one of these villaines with mine owne eies, in the presence of much people, deflowre a most beautifull woman as she was comming foorth of the bath: which being done, the fond people came flocking about the said woman, striuing to touch her garment as a most holie thing: saying that the adulterer was a man of great sanctitie, and that he did not commit the sinne, but onely seemed to commit it:

which

which when the sillie cuckold her husband vnderstood, he shewed himselfe thankfull to his false god with a solemne banket, and with liberall giuing of almes. The magistrates of the citie would haue punished the adulterer, but they were in hazard to be slaine of the people for their labours, who (as is before said) adore these varlets for saints and men of singular holines. Other more villanous actes I saw committed by them, which I am ashamed to report.

Of the Caballistes and certaine other sectes.

LIkewise there is another sort of men, which we may fitly call Caballists. These fast most streitly, neither doe they eate the flesh of any liuing creature, but haue certaine meates and garments allotted vnto them: they rehearse likewise certaine set-praiers appointed for euery hower of the day and for the night, according to the varietie of daies and monethes, and they vse to carrie about certaine square tables with characters and numbers engrauen therein. They faine themselues to haue daily conference with the angels, of whom they learne (they say) the knowledge of all things. They had once a famous doctor of their sect called *Boni*, who was author of their canons, praiers, and square tables. Which when I saw, me thought their profession had more affinitie with magique then with Cabala. Their arte was diuided into eight partes; whereof the first was called *Elumha Enormita*, that is, the demonstration of light: the which contained praiers and fastings. The second called *Semsul Meharif*, that is, the sunne of sciences, contained the foresaid square tables, together with their vse and profit. The third part they call *Sirru Lasmei Elchusne*; this part contained a catalogue of those 99. vertues, which (they say) are contained in the names of God, which I remember I saw at Rome in the custodie of a certaine Venetian Iew. They haue also a certaine other rule called *Suvach*, that is, the rule of heremites, the professors and followers whereof inhabite woods and solitarie places, neither haue they any other food, but such as those wilde deserts wil affoord: the conuersation of these heremites no man is able exactly to describe, because they are estranged from all humane societie. But if I should take vpon me to describe the varietie of Mahumetan sectes, I should digresse too farre from my present purpose. He that desireth to know more of this matter, let him read ouer the booke of *Elefacni*, who discourseth at large of the sectes belonging to the Mahumetan religion, the principall whereof are 72. euery one of which defend their opinions to be true and good, and such as a man may attaine saluation by. At this day you shall finde but two principall sects onely, the one of *Leshari* being dispersed ouer all Africa, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Turkie: the other of *Imamia*, which is authorized throughout the whole kingdome of Persia, and in certaine townes of *Corasan*; and this sect the great Sophi of Persia maintaineth, insomuch that all Asia had like to been destroied thereabout. For whereas before they followed the sect of *Leshari*,

72. principall sectes in the religion of Mahumet.

Leshari, the great Sophi by force of armes established his owne of *Imamia*: and yet one onely sect stretcheth ouer all the Mahumetans dominions.

Of such as search for treasures in Fez.

MOreouer in the citie of Fez there are certaine men called *Elcanesin*, who supposing to finde treasure vnder the foundations of old houses, doe perpetually search and delue. These grosse fellowes vse to resort vnto certaine dennes and caues without the citie-walles, certainly perswading themselues, that when the Romans were chased out of Africa, and driuen into Bætica or Granada in Spaine, they hid great abundance of treasure in the bowels of the earth, which they could not carrie with them, and so enchanted the same by art-magique, that it can by no meanes be attained vnto but by the same arte; wherefore they seeke vnto inchanters to teach them the arte of digging vp the said treasures. Some of them there are that will stedfastly affirme, that they sawe gold in this or that caue: others, that they saw siluer, but could not digge it out, by reason that they were destitute of perfumes and enchantments fit for the purpose; so that being seduced with this vaine opinion, and deepely deluing into the earth, they turne vpside downe the foundations of houses and sepulchers, and sometimes they proceede in this manner ten or twelue daies iourney from Fez: yea so fond they are and so besotted, that they esteeme those bookes that professe the arte of digging gold, as diuine oracles. Before my departure from Fez these fantasticall people had chosen them a consul, and getting licence of certaine owners to dig their grounds, when they had digged as much as they thought good, they paid the said owners for all dammages committed.

Of the Alchymistes of Fez.

IN this citie likewise there are great store of Alchymists which are mightily addicted to that vaine practise: they are most base fellowes, and contaminate themselues with the steam of Sulphur, and other stinking smels. In the euening they vse to assemble themselues at the great temple, where they dispute of their false opinions. They haue of their arte of Alchymie many bookes written by learned men, amongst which one *Geber* is of principall account, who liued an hundred yeeres after Mahumet, and being a Greeke borne, is said to haue renounced his owne religion. This *Geber* his works and all his precepts are full of allegories or darke borrowed speeches. Likewise they haue another author, that wrote an huge volume of the same arte, intituled by the name of Attogrehi: this man was secretarie vnto the Soldan of Bagaded, of whom we haue written in the liues of the Arabian philosophers. Also the songs or articles of the said science were written by one *Mugairibi* of Granada, whereupon a most learned Mamaluch of Damasco wrote a commentarie; yet so, that a man may much more easily vnderstand the text then

A booke written by Iohn Leo of the liues of the Arabian philosophers.

then the expoſition thereof. Of Alchymiſtes here are two ſorts; whereof the one ſeeke for the *Eliſſir*, that is, the matter which coloureth braſſe and other metals; and the other are conuerſant about multiplication of the quantities of metals, whereby they may conueniently temper the ſame. But their chiefeſt drift is to coine counterfeit money: for which cauſe you ſhall ſee moſt of them in Fez with their hands cut off.

Of charmers and inchanters of ſnakes.

IN this citie likewiſe there is a great ſwarme of baſe people, ſuch as the Italians commonly call Ciurmatori: theſe ſing fooliſh ſongs and rimes in all the ſtreets of the citie, and broching meere trifles with the muſicke of drums, harpes, and citterns, they ſell vnto the rude people certaine ſcroules or briefe charmes inſtead of preſeruatiues. Vnto theſe you may adde another kinde of reffuſe people of one family and diſpoſition with the former, who carrie dauncing apes vp and downe, and haue their neckes and armes all entwined with crawling ſnakes. Theſe alſo profeſſe Geomancie, and perſwade women that they can foretell them their fortune. Likewiſe they carrie ſtone-horſes about with them, which for a certaine fee, they will let others haue to couer their mares. I coulde heere reckon vp more ſorts of people; but let it ſuffice to haue admoniſhed in this place, that the greateſt part of the forenamed are people of moſt baſe condition, and ſuch as beare little good will to ſtrangers, albeit there are but a fewe in this citie, by reaſon it is diſtant more then an hundreth miles from the ſea, the way thither alſo being rough and dangerous. Their gentle men are very ſtately and high minded, and will haue little or no familiaritie at all with the citizens: ſo likewiſe the doctors and iudges of principall account will admit but fewe vnto their acquaintance. This citie it ſelfe is moſt beautifull and right commodiouſly ſituate; where albeit in winter time the ſtreetes are ſo mirie, that you cannot walke in them without ſtartups, yet they let paſſe ſuch abundance of water out of their conducts, that all the filth is waſhed cleane away. Where conducts are wanting, they carry all the durt in carts vnto the next part of the riuer.

A deſcription of the ſuburbes without the foreſaid citie of Fez.

WIthout the wals of this citie weſtward ſtandeth a ſuburbe containing almoſt fiue hundreth families, the houſes whereof are but meane, and the inhabitants baſe, as namely driuers of camels, water-bearers, and cleauers of woode for the kings pallace. Yet here you may finde diuers ſhops, and all kinds of artificers. Here likewiſe dwell all the charmers and roguiſh minſtrels before named; as alſo great ſwarmes of fluttiſh and filthie harlots. In the principall ſtreete of this ſuburbe, you ſhall finde certaine caues moſt artificially hewen out of excellent marble, wherein the noble

men

men of Fez were woont to lay vp their corne: but after that by reason of the warres it was often taken from thence, they haue since vsually conueied their corne into new Fez, and there stored it vp: and from that time to this the marble-caues haue remained desolate. It is a woonder to see howe wide and large these caues are; for the least of them will containe more then a thousand measures of corne, there being aboue an hundreth and fiftie of them in all, but now they lie waste and open, insomuch that diuers fall into them at vnawares, for which cause their brimmes are enuironed with wals. Here euery one may play the vintener and the baud; so that this suburbe may iustly be called the sinke of Fez. From the twentith hower you shall see none at all in their shops: for then euery man runs to the tauerne to disport, to spend riotously, and to bee drunken. Another suburbe there is allotted vnto the lepers, of whom there are two hundreth families: these leprous persons haue a gouernour, which gathereth certaine yeerely reuenues from the noble-men, and taketh such care of the saide lepers, that they want no necessarie thing. He is bound by his office to discharge the citie of all leprous persons, and to compell all such as he vnderstandes to be infected with that disease, to depart into the foresaide suburbes. If any leper chanceth to die without issue, part of his goods are emploied to the common benefite of the lepers, and part fall to the gouernours share: but if he hath any children, they enioy his goods. Among the lepers also those are placed, which are infected with white botches, or with any other incurable maladie. Next beyond standeth another suburbe inhabited onely with muleters, plaisterers, and wood-mongers: which although it be but little, yet containeth it about an hundreth and fiftie families. Moreouer vpon the way leading westward from the citie there is another great suburbe of moe then fower hundreth houses: howbeit they are low & base, and the inhabitants are beggerly, which neither can nor will dwell among any other people. By this suburbe there is a certaine broad plaine which leadeth to the riuer two miles off, and extendeth westward almost three miles. Vpon this plaine euery weeke there is an exceeding great market of cattell. Likewise the shopkeepers of the citie resort hither and sell their wares in tents. Also a certaine companie of gentlemen vse to come hither, and to diuide a ramme among themselues, leauing the head vnto the butcher for his fee, but the feete and the skin they sell vnto the wooll-chapmen. For those wares that are heere sold they pay so little tribute to the king, that it is not woorth the mentioning. But this one thing I must in no wise passe ouer in silence, namely, that I neuer sawe neither in Asia, Africa, nor Italy, a market either more populous, or better furnished with wares. Not farre from Fez stand certaine high rockes enuironed with a ditch of two miles compasse, out of which rockes certaine matter is hewed to make lime withall. Neere vnto the saide ditch are many furnaces, some whereof are so large, that they will containe moe then sixe thousand measures of lime: and this lime is made at the costes of the richest citizens in Fez. Westward without the wals of Fez by the riuers side stande about an hun-

The habitation of lepers in Fez and their gouernour.

dred cottages, which are onely inhabited by them that white linnen cloth. Hither in the spring and in summer vse the citizens to bring their linnen cloth, spreading it vpon the medowes, and as often as they see it drie in the sunne, casting water thereupon, which water they fetch either out of the riuer or out of some cesterne in certaine lether tankards made for the same purpose: but at night each one carrieth his cloth into the foresaid cottages. Neither are the medowes wherein they bleach their cloth euer destitute of grasse. A most gallant prospect it is to beholde a farre off the white clothes dispersed ouer the greene medow, and the christall streames of the riuer, which seeme to be of an azure hue, running along: all which the Poets haue celebrated in their verses.

A description of the common place of buriall without the citie.

MAny fieldes there are without the citie, which haue been giuen by certaine noblemen for the buriall of the dead. Vpon their sepulchers for the most part they lay a long three-square stone. When any noble man or any principall citizen deceaseth, they lay one stone ouer his head and another ouer his feete, whereon vseth to bee engrauen some epitaph, with the day and yeere when the partie deceased. I my selfe bestowed much labour in gathering of epitaphes, which I sawe both about Fez and in other places of Barbary; all which being set downe in a booke I gaue vnto the kings brother. The matter of their epitaphes is diuers, some tending to consolation, and others to sorrow.

Of the sepulchres of the kings of Fez.

NOrthward of the citie vpon a certaine high hill stands a palace, wherein are the monuments of diuers Marin kings, being most artificially hewen out of marble with epitaphes vpon them, so that I cannot condignely expresse the maiestie and beautie thereof.

A description of their gardens.

WIthout the north, east, and south parts of the citie are great store of gardens, repleniſhed with all kinde of fruite and with stately trees. Through the midst of these gardens, they deriue some small vaine of the riuer, some whereof are so full of trees, that you woulde take them for groues rather then for gardens. These gardens they manure not at all, but only water them continually in the moneth of May, whereupon they haue great abundance of fruit. All their fruits, saue their peaches onely, are of a most delicate taste, whereof, so soone as they are ripe, aboue fiue hundreth cart-loades are daily carried into the market, besides grapes, which here I do not mention.

tion. But the saide fruits are carried vnto a certaine place in Fez, where tribute being paide for them, they are solde by criers vnto the fruiterers there present. In the same place likewise after paying of tribute, they sell certaine Negro-slaues. Towards the east of Fez lieth a plaine fifteene miles broad, and thirtie miles long: this plaine is full of fountaines and freshets, and is reserued for the vse of the great temple. It is farmed out vnto gardiners, who sowe thereupon such abundance of hemp, melons, turneps or nauewes, radish, and other such like rootes and herbes, that euery summer there are saide to be gathered thereof aboue fifteene thousand cart-loads, and as many in winter. Howbeit the aire is verie vnholsome thereabout, for the inhabitants are continually vexed with feuers, and are of a yellowish colour.

Of that part of Fez which is called new Fez.

NEW Fez beeing enuironed with an high and impregnable wall, and situate on a most beautifull plaine not farre from the riuers side, is almost a mile distant from old Fez, and that vpon the east and south side thereof. Betweene the wals of either towne, to the northward, entereth a certaine arme of the riuer, where the foresaid milles do stande, and the other part of the riuer is seuered into two branches, one whereof runneth betweene new Fez and old Fez, not farre from the edge of the rocke, and the other passing through certaine vallies and gardens, trendeth at length southward. The other part of the riuer holdeth on his course by the rocke, and so by the college of king * *Abutiman*. This citie of new Fez *Iacob* the sonne of *Abdultach* caused to bee built, who was the first king of the Marin family, and expelled the kings of Maroco, and vsurped the kingdome vnto himselfe: but the king of Telensin, to the end he might make the people of Maroco beholding vnto him, and might subuert the prosperous successe of the Marin family, went about to hinder the king of Fez his attempts against Maroco: wherefore king *Iacob* hauing finished the wars of Maroco, determined to reuenge himselfe to the vttermost for the iniuries offered by them of Telensin. But considering with himselfe, that the strong townes of his owne kingdome were farre distant from Telensin, he thought it a better course to builde this citie, whereunto the seate roiall of all Maroco might be translated: which being erected, he called The white citie, but it was afterward named by the inhabitants new Fez. This citie king *Iacob* the founder diuided into three parts, whereof the first contained his roiall pallace, and diuers noble mens houses, vnto euery one of which he allotted a most pleasant garden. Not farre from his pallace he built a most stately and sumptuous temple. In another part of this citie he built a large and faire stable for the kings horses to stande in. Then also he caused other palaces to be erected for his captaines and principall courtiers. From the west gate to the east he appointed the market place, the distance betweene which gates is a mile and an halfe, and on both sides he placed artificers and merchants shops. At

* *Or Aburinan.*

The founder of new Fez.

the west gate he caused a faire portall to be set vp, to harbour the watchmen and warders of the citie. Not far from thence he erected two stables sufficient to containe three hundreth horses, which he might vse for the protection of his owne palace. The third part of the citie was appointed for the kinges guarde and attendants, which were most of them borne eastwarde of Fez, neither had they any other weapons but hand-bowes (for crosse-bowes were not then vsed in that kingdome) vnto which attendants the king allowed a large stipend: but now the same place is full of beautifull temples and stoues. Neere vnto the kings palace standes the mint, hauing in the midst a fower-square court with certaine portals or cels rounde about it, wherein the money-minters dwell. Likewise there is another lodging in the midst of the same court, where the gouernor of the mint with his scribes and notaries haue their aboad. Here, as well as in any other places, whatsoeuer commoditie is raised, redoundeth wholy to the king. Neere vnto the mint stande the gold-smiths shops, whose Consul or gouernour keepes the seale and stamps of the coine. In Fez neither ring nor any other Iewell or commoditie can bee made of siluer or golde, before the metall bee sealed, for the offenders are most seuerely punished. And, the metall being sealed, whatsoeuer is made thereof is weighed as if it were money. The greatest part of goldsmiths dwelling in new Fez are Iewes, who carrie their vessels of gold and siluer vnto a certaine place of old Fez, neere vnto the grocers shops, and there sell them. For in old Fez neither gold nor siluer is coined, nor any Mahumetans are suffered to be goldsmiths, bicause they haue vsurers among them, which will sell any peece of wrought siluer or golde deerer then the weight requireth; albeit the same priuilege is by the gouernours of the citie granted vnto the Iewes. Some there are also that onely make plate for the citizens, who are paied hire onely for their worke. That part of the citie which the kings attendants or guard once possessed, is now inhabited by Iewes: for now a daies the kings vse no such guard. The Iewes indeed first dwelt in old Fez, but vpon the death of a certaine king they were all robbed by the Moores: whereupon king *Abusabid* caused them to remoue into new Fez, and by that meanes doubled their yeerely tribute. They therefore euen till this day doe occupie a long street in the said new citie, wherin they haue their shops and synagogues, and their number is maruellously encreased euer since they were driuen out of Spaine. These Iewes are had in great contempt by all men, neither are any of them permitted to weare shooes, but they make them certaine socks of sea-rushes. On their heads they weare a blacke * dulipan, and if any will goe in a cap, he must fasten a red cloth thereunto. They pay vnto the king of Fez monethly fower hundred duckats. At length within the space of an hundred and forty yeeres this new citie was enuironed with most impregnable walles, and adorned with temples, colleges, palaces, and other such buildings as serue to beautifie a citie, so that I thinke there was more bestowed in garnishing of the citie, then in building of the walles. Without the citie-walles are built many huge wheeles or engins

* *Or turbant.*

Engins for the conueiance of water.

gins, for the conueying of riuer-water ouer the said walles into cesternes, from whence it is conueied in certaine chanels and pipes vnto the temples, gardens, & palaces. The said wheeles were built not fully an hundred yeeres past, before which time water was brought vnto the citie by a certaine conduct, from a fountaine ten miles distant. Of which artificiall conduct a certaine Genoueſe, beeing then in great fauour with the king, is reported to haue been the author: but the wheeles (they say) were inuented by a Spaniard: and in them there is maruellous cunning workmanship: for to the conueiance of so huge a quantitie of water, each wheele is turned about but fower and twentie times onely in a day and a night. To conclude, here are but few gentlemen in this citie, except such as attend vpon the court, for the residue are base and mechanicall people: but such as carie any shew of honestie, doe so hate and disdaine the kings courtiers and gentlemen, that they will by no meanes vouchsafe to marie their daughters vnto them.

Of the fashions and customes vsed in the kings court.

AMongst all the princes of Africa, I neuer red of any that was created by the common suffrages and consent of the people vnto his kingdome or princedome, or that was called from any strange prouince or citie to beare rule. Also by the law of Mahumet no man may beare any secular authoritie, which may be called lawfull, saue onely the Mahumetan patriarkes and prelates: howbeit the saide patriarkes authoritie decreasing daily more and more, the ringleaders of such people as ranged vp and downe the deserts began to inuade places inhabited & ciuilized, and by force of armes, against Mahumets lawe, and maugre his prelates, to ordaine sundrie princes: As for example in the East, whereas the Turkes, Cordians, and Tartars, haue vsurped dominion ouer such as were not able to repell them. So likewise in the west parts first the families of Zeneta and Luntuna, then the seditious Mahumetan preachers, and afterward the family of Marin got the vpper hand. Howbeit the family of Luntuna is reported to haue aided the western regions, & to haue released them from the furie of the seditious heretiques, wherein they shewed themselues friends and not enimies: but afterward their tyrannie began to shew it selfe. And this is the reason why they do not now a daies attaine vnto gouernment by hereditarie succession or by election of the people, or of the nobilitie. But the prince himselfe when he feeles death seazing vpon him, calleth about him all his peeres and nobles, and bindeth them by oath, to establish his sonne, brother, or anie other whom he most fauoureth, in his kingdome. But they after the princes decease neglecting their oath, will chuse any other whom they list. And this is ordinarily the election of the king of Fez, who, so soone as he is proclaimed king, chuseth foorthwith some one of his nobles to be his chiefe counsellour, and on him he bestoweth the thirde part of all his kingly reuenues. Then chuseth another to be his secretarie, treasurer, and high steward of his houshold. Then is created the captaine of the horsemen appointed

The manner of chooſing officers in the court of Fez.

for the kings guard, and theſe horſemen with their horſes liue moſt commonly in the fieldes. Laſtly he appointeth a new gouernour ouer euery citie, vnto whom all the tributes and reuenues of the ſame place redound, with condition, that as often as any warres betide, he ſhall maintaine a certaine companie of horſes to the kings ſeruice. After a while alſo he placeth certaine deputies and commiſſioners ouer his people inhabiting the mountaines, and ouer the Arabians ſubiect vnto him. The gouernours of cities diuerſly adminiſter iuſtice, according to the cuſtome of the place. Some there are alſo appointed by the king to collect all the tributes and reuenues of his kingdome, and duly to paie the ſame vnto him. Likewiſe there are others choſen, whom they call in their language keepers or guardians, and vnto euery one of theſe the king giueth ſome caſtle or village, whereby he may procure his owne maintenance, and be able to ſerue the king in time of warre. Moreouer the king of Fez maintaineth a troupe of light horſemen, who ſo long as they ſerue the king in his campe, haue their diet allowed them out of the kings prouiſion: but in time of peace, he findeth them corne, butter, and pouldered fleſh for the whole yeere, but money they haue very ſeldome. Once a yeere they are apparelled at the kings coſt; neither do they prouide for their horſes either within the citie or without, for the king furniſheth them with all neceſſaries. Thoſe that giue attendance to their horſes are Chriſtian captiues, which go ſhackled in great chaines and fetters. But when the armie remooueth any whither, the ſaide Chriſtians are carried vpon camels backes. Another officer there is that giueth attendance onely to the camels, aſſigning certaine paſtures vnto the heards-men, and diuiding fields among them, and making ſuch prouiſion for the kings camels, as himſelfe ſhall thinke expedient. Each camel-driuer hath two camels, which are laden with the kings furniture, according to the appointment of the gouernour. Likewiſe the king hath a certaine purueiour or ſteward, whoſe office is to prouide, keepe, and diſtribute corne both to the kings houſhold and to his armie. This man in time of warre hath tenne or twelue tents to lay vp corne in, and euery day with change of camels he ſendeth for newe corne, leaſt the armie ſhoulde be vnprouided of victuals: he hath alſo cooks at his command. Moreouer there is a gouernour or maſtergroome of the ſtables, who prouideth for the kings horſes, mules, and camels, and is furniſhed with all neceſſaries by the ſteward. There is another alſo appointed ouerſeer of the corne, whoſe dutie it is to prouide barly and other prouender for the beaſts: and this man hath his ſcribes and notaries about him, who diligently ſet downe all particular expenſes, for they muſt giue vp a perfect account vnto the chiefe ſteward. They haue alſo a certaine captaine ouer fiftie horſemen, which horſemen may well be called purſeuants, for they are ſent by the ſecretarie in the kings name to do his buſines. Likewiſe the Fezzan king hath another captaine of great name, being as it were gouernour of his guard, who in the kings name, may compell the iudges to do iuſtice, and to put their ſentences in execution. This mans

authoritie

authoritie is so great, that sometimes he may commit principal noblemen to ward, & may seuerely punish them, according to the kings commandement. Moreouer the said king hath a most trusty chancelor, who keepeth the great sea'e, and writeth and signeth the kings letters. He hath also a great number of footemen, the gouernour of whom accepteth and dismisseth whom he thinkes good, and giueth to euery one wages according to his agilitie and desert. And whensoeuer the king commeth in place of iudgement, the saide gouernour alwaies attendeth vpon him, and is in a manner his high chamberlain. Also there is another that taketh charge of the carriages and baggage of the armie, and causeth the tents of the light horsemen to be carried vp and downe on mules, and the tents of the other soldiers on camels. There are likewise a company of ensigne-bearers, who in marching on a iourney carrie their colours wrapped vp: but he that goeth before the armie hath his banner displaied, and of a great height. And euery one of the saide standard-bearers knoweth most exactly alwaies, fords of riuers, and passages through woods, wherefore they are for the most part appointed to guide the armie. The drummers (of whom there are great store in the kings host) plaie vpon certaine drums of brasse as bigge as a great kettle, the lower part whereof is narrow, & the vpper broad, being couered with a skin. These drummers ride on horsebacke, hauing alwaies on the one side of their horses a great waight hanging downe, to counterpoize the heauines of their drums on the other side. They are allowed most swift horses, bicause the Moores account it a great disgrace to loose a drum. The said drums make such a loude and horrible noise, that they are not onely heard a farre off, but also strike exceeding terrour both vpon men and horses, and they are beaten onely with a buls pizzle. The musitions are not maintained at the kings charge, for the cities are bounde at their costs to send a certaine number of them to the warres, who, according to their demeanour in the warres, are admitted or not admitted vnto the kings table. This king hath also a certaine master of ceremonies, who sitteth at his feete in the senate-house, and commandeth each man to sit downe, and to speake according to his dignitie. All the maide-seruants in the kings familie are Negro-slaues, which are partly chamberlains, and partly waiting-maids. And yet his Queene is alwaies of a white skin. Likewise in the king of Fez his court are certaine Christian captiues, being partly Spanish, and partly Portugale women, who are most circumspectly kept by certaine Eunuchs, that are Negro-slaues. The king of Fez hath very large dominions, but his reuenues are small, to wit, scare three hundreth thousand ducats, the fift part whereof redoundeth not to the king: for the remainder is diuided into sundrie portions, as we haue before signified. Yea, the greater part of the said reuenues is paide in corne, cattle, oile, and butter, all which yeeld but small store of money. In some place they pay a ducate and one fourth part, tribute for euery acre, but in other places a whole family paieth but so much. In some other regions each man aboue fifteene yeeres of age paieth as much tribute also. Neither are the people

of

of this great citie more vexed with any thing then with paying of their tributes and impoſitions. Heere alſo is to be noted, that the Mahumetan gouernours (the prieſts onely excepted) may not exact greater reuenues then thoſe that Mahumet hath allotted vnto them, namely of euery of their ſubiects which poſſeſſeth 100. ducates in ready money, they are to haue two ducates & an halfe for yeerely tribute. Euery husbandman likewiſe is bound to pay for tribute the tenth part of all his corne. And all the ſaide tributes he appointed to be paied vnto the patriarke, who ſhould beſtow that which was ſuperfluous for the Prince to haue, vpon common vſes; namely for the releeuing of poore impotent people and widowes, and for maintaining of wars againſt the enimie. But ſince the Patriarches began to decay, the Princes (as we haue beforeſaide) exerciſed tyrannie. For it was not ſufficient for them to exact all the forenamed tributes, and riotouſly to conſume the ſame, but alſo to vrge people vnto greater contributions; ſo that all the inhabitants of Africa are ſo oppreſſed with daily exactions, that they haue ſcarcely wherewithall to feed and apparell themſelues: for which cauſe there is almoſt no man of learning or honeſty, that will ſeeke any acquaintance with courtiers, or will inuite them to his table, or accept any gifts (bee they neuer ſo pretious) at their hands: thinking that whatſoeuer goods they haue, are gotten by theft and briberie. The King of Fez continually maintaineth ſixe thouſand horſemen, fiue hundreth croſſebowes, and as manie Harquebuſiers, being at all aſſayes prepared for the warres, who in time of peace, when the king goeth on progreſſe, lye within a mile of his perſon: for being at home in Fez, he needeth not ſo ſtrong a guard. When he wageth warre againſt the Arabians that be his enemies, becauſe the forenamed gariſon is not ſufficient, he requireth ayde of the Arabians his ſubiects, who at their owne coſts finde him a great armie of men better trained to the warres, then his owne ſouldiers before-mentioned. The pompe and ceremonies of this king are but meane, neither doth he willingly vſe them, but onely vpon feſtiuall daies, and when meere neceſſitie requireth. When the king is to ride foorth, the maſter of ceremonies ſignifieth ſo much vnto certaine herbengers or poſtes, whereupon the herbengers giue notice thereof vnto the kings *parents, vnto his nobilitie, his ſenatours, captaines, guardians, and gentlemen, who preſently arrange themſelues before the palace gate. At the kings comming foorth of the palace, the herbengers appoint vnto each man his place and order of riding. Firſt and foremoſt go the ſtandard-bearers, next the drummers, then followeth the chiefe groome of the ſtable with his ſeruants and family; after him comes the kings penſioners, his guard, his maſter of ceremonies, his ſecretaries, his treaſurer, and laſt of all his chiefe Iudge and his captaine generall, at length comes the king accompanied with his principall counſeller, or with ſome other great peere. Before the king alſo ride certaine officers belonging to his perſon, whereof one carries his ſword-royall, another his ſhield, and the third his croſſe-bowe. On each ſide of him march his footemen, one carrying a payer

The king of Fez his guard.

How the king of Fez rideth on progreſſe.

**Or kinesfolkes.*

of

of stirrups, another the kings partizan, the third a couering for his saddle, and the fourth a halter for his horse. And so soone as the king is dismounted, they foorthwith couer his saddle, and put the foresaide halter vpon his horse-head. Likewise there is another footeman that carrieth the kings pantofles most artificially wrought. After the king followeth the captaine of the footemen, then the eunuches, the kings family, the light horsemen, and last of all the crosse-bowes and Harquebusiers. The apparell of the king is then verie moderate and plaine: insomuch that if a man knew him not, he would thinke him to be absent: for the attendants be far more sumptuously attired. Moreouer no Mahumetan king or prince may weare a crowne, diademe, or any such like ornament vpon his head, for that is forbidden by the law of *Mahumet*. When the king lyeth with his armie in the fields, first his owne great tent is pitched in a fower square forme like vnto a castle, each side of the saide square being fiftie elles in length. At euerie of the fower corners standeth a little sharpe turret made of cloth, with a gallant spheare on the top which glistereth like gold. This royall pauilion hath fower gates, euerie one of which is kept by eunuches. Within the said pauilion are contained diuers other tents, among which is the kings lodging, being framed in such wise, that it may easily be remooued from place to place. Next vnto it stand the tents of the noblemen, and of such as are most in the kings fauour; then the lodgings of the principall guard beeing made of goates-skinnes, after the Arabian fashion; and in the middest of all stands the kings kitchin and his pantrie. Not farre from hence the light horsemen haue their aboade, who all of them are victualled out of the kings storehouse, notwithstanding their attire be verie base. Next of all are the stables, wherein their horses are maruellous well tended. Without this circuit keepe such as carrie the tents and the kings furniture from place to place. Here are also butchers, victuallers, and such like. All merchants & artificers that resort hither, take vp their aboad next vnto the tent-carriers: so that the kings pauilion is pitched like a strong citie, for it is so enuironed with the lodgings of the guarde, and with other tents adioining, that there is very difficult passage to the king. Round about the saide roiall pauilion, there are certaine appointed to watch and ward all night long, howbeit they are base and vnarmed people. In like sort there is a watch kept about the stables, but sometimes so negligently, that not onely some horses haue beene stolne, but there haue beene founde enimies in the kings owne pauilion, that came to murther him. The king liueth the greatest part of the yeere in the fieldes, both for the safegard of his kingdome, and also that he may keepe his Arabian subiects in obedience, and sometimes he recreateth himselfe with hunting, and sometime with playing at chesse. I know right well how tedious I haue beene in the description of this citie: but bicause it is the metropolitan not onely of Barbary, but of all Africa, I thought good most particularly to decypher euerie parcell and member thereof.

The king of Fez his maner of warfare.

Of

Of the towne of Macarmeda.

THis towne ſtandeth almoſt twentie miles eaſtward of Fez, and was built by the familie of Zeneta, vpon the banke of a moſt beautifull riuer. It had in times paſt a large territorie, and great ſtore of inhabitants. On both ſides of the ſaide riuer are many gardens and vineyards. The kings of Fez were woont to aſſigne this towne vnto the gouernour of their camels; but in the warre of Sahid it was ſo deſtroied and waſted, that at this day ſcarce is there any mention of wals to be found. But the fields thereof are now in the poſſeſſion of certaine gentlemen of Fez, and of the peſants.

Of the caſtle of Hubbed.

THis caſtle ſtandeth vpon the ſide of an hill, about ſixe miles from Fez, and from hence you may beholde the citie of Fez, and all the territorie adiacent. It was founded by a certaine hermite of Fez, being reputed for a man of ſingular holines. The fields thereto belonging are not verie large, bicauſe the houſes being demoliſhed, it is vtterly deſtitute of inhabitants, the wals onely and the temple as yet remaining. In this caſtle I liued fower ſummers, bicauſe it ſtandeth in a moſt pleaſant aire, being ſeparate from concurſe of people, and a ſolitarie place fitte for a man to ſtudie in: for my father had got a leaſe of the ground adioining to this caſtle from the gouernour of the temple, for many yeeres.

Of the towne of Zauia.

THe towne of Zauia was founded by *Ioſeph* the ſecond king of the Marin-family, and is diſtant from Fez about fowerteene miles. Heere king *Ioſeph* built a ſtately hoſpitall, and commanded that his corps ſhoulde be interred in this towne. But it was not his fortune heere to be buried, for he was ſlaine in the warres againſt Tremizen. From thencefoorth Zauia fell to decay and grew deſtitute of inhabitants, wherein at this preſent the hoſpitall onely remaineth. The reuenues of this place were giuen vnto the great temple of Fez, but the fielde thereof was tilled by certaine Arabians dwelling in the region of Fez.

Of the caſtle of Chaulan.

A hot bathe

THe ancient caſtle of Chaulan is built vpon the riuer Sebu, eight miles ſouthward of Fez. Not farre from this caſtle there is a certaine hot bath, whereunto *Abulhezen* the fourth king of the Marin-family added a faire building, vnto this bath once a yeere in the moneth of Aprill the gentlemen of Fez vſually reſort, remaining there fower or fiue daies together.

There

There is no ciuilitie to be found in this castle: for the inhabitants are base people, and exceeding couetous.

Of the mountaine of Zelag.

THis mountaine beginneth eastward from the riuer of Sebu, extending thence almost fowerteene miles westward, and the highest part thereof to the north, is seuen miles distant from Fez. The south part of this mountaine is vtterly destitute of inhabitants; but the north side is exceeding fertile, and planted with great store of castles and townes. Most of their fields are imployed about vineyards, the grapes whereof are the sweetest that euer I tasted, and so likewise are their oliues, and other fruits. The inhabitants being verie rich, haue most of them houses in the citie of Fez. And so likewise most part of the gentlemen of Fez haue vineyards vpon the saide mountaine. At the north foote of this mountaine the fields are repleniſhed with all kinde of graine and fruits. For all that plaine is watered southward with the riuer Sebu: and here the gardiners with certaine artificiall wheeles and engines draw water out of the riuer to moisten their gardens. In this plaine are wel-nigh two hundreth acres of ground, the reuenues whereof are giuen vnto the kings master of ceremonies, howbeit he maketh thereof not aboue fiue hundreth ducates a yeere: the tenth part of all which reuenues, amounting to three thousand bushels of corne, belongeth to the kings prouision.

Of mount Zarhon.

THis mountaine beginneth from the plaine of Esais lying ten miles distant from the citie of Fez; westward it extendeth thirtie miles, and is almost ten miles broad. This mountaine is all couered with waste and desert woods, being otherwise well stored with oliues. In this mountaine there are of sheepe-foldes and castles to the number of fiftie, and the inhabitants are very wealthy, for it standeth betweene two flouriſhing cities, that is to say, Fez on the east, and Mecnase on the west. The women weaue woollen cloth, according to the custome of that place, and are adorned with many siluer rings and bracelets. The men of this mountaine are most valiant, and are much giuen to pursue and take lions, whereof they send great store vnto the king of Fez. And the king hunteth the said lions in manner following: in a large field there are certaine little cels made, being so high, that a man may stand vpright in them: each one of these cels is shut fast with a little doore; and containe within euery of them an armed man, who opening the doore presents himselfe to the view of the lion: then the lion seeing the doores open, comes running toward them with great furie, but the doores being shut againe, he waxeth more furious then before: then bring they foorth a bull to combate with the lion, who enter a fierce and bloudie

Hunting of lions vsed by the king of Fez.

bloudie conflict, wherein if the bull kill the lion, that daies sport is at an end; but if the lion get the victorie, then all the armed men, being ordinarily twelue, leape foorth of their cels, and inuade the lion: each one of them hauing a iauelin with a pike of a cubite and an halfe long. And if these armed men seeme to bee too hard for the lion, the king causeth their number to be diminished: but perceiuing them too weake, the king with his companie from a certaine high place, where he standeth to behold the sport, kill the lion with their crossebowes. And oftentimes it falleth out, that before the lion be slaine, some one of the men dies for it, the residue being sore wounded. The reward of those that encounter the lion is ten duckats apeece, and a new garment: neither are any admitted vnto this combat but men of redoubted valour, and such as come from mount Zelagi: but those that take the lions first are inhabitants of mount Zarhon.

Of Gualili a towne of mount Zarhon.

THis towne was built by the Romanes vpon the top of the foresaide mountaine, what time they were lordes of Granada in south Spaine. It is enuironed around with mighty thicke walles made of smoothe and hewen stones. The gates are large and high, and the fields are manured for the space of sixe miles about: howbeit this towne was long sithence destroied by the Africans. But afterward when the schismatike *Idris* came into this region, he began to repaire this desolate towne, and to replant it so with inhabitants, that within short time it grew very populous: howbeit after his decease it was neglected by his sonne, being wholy addicted (as is beforesaid) vnto the building of Fez. And yet *Idris* lieth buried in this towne, whose sepulchre is visited with great reuerence almost by all the people of Barbarie, for he is as highly esteemed as if he had been some patriarke, because he was of the linage of Mahumet. At this present there are but two or three houses in all the towne, which were there built for the honour and maintenance of the sepulchre. The fields adiacent are exceedingly well husbanded: and their gardens are most pleasant by reason of two sweet freshets running through them, the which diuersly winding themselues about the little hils and vallies, doe water all that plaine.

Of a certaine towne called the palace of Pharao.

THis towne was founded by the Romans vpon the top of an hill, about eight miles distant from Gualili. The people of this said mountaine, together with some historiographers are most certainly perswaded, that this towne was built by *Pharao* king of Egypt in the time of *Moses*, and tooke the name from the first founder, which notwithstanding I thinke to be otherwise: for I can read in no approoued author that either *Pharao* or any other Egyptians euer inhabited these regions. But I suppose that this fond

opinion

opinion was taken out of that booke which one *Elcabi* wrote concerning the words of Mahumet. For the said booke affirmeth from the authoritie of Mahumet, that there were fower kings onely that gouerned the whole world, two whereof were faithfull, and the other two ethnikes: the faithfull he saith were *Alexander* the great, and *Salomon* the sonne of *Dauid*: and the ethnikes were *Nimrod* and *Pharao*. But I am rather of opinion, by the Latine letters which are there engrauen in the walles, that the Romanes built this towne. About this towne run two small riuers on either side thereof. The little hils and vallies adiacent doe greatly abound with oliues. Not far from hence are certaine wilde deserts frequented with lions and leopards.

Of the towne called Pietra Rossa or The red rocke.

PIetra Rossa is a small towne built by the Romans vpon the side of the foresaid mountaine, being so neere the forrest, that the lions will come daily into the towne and gather vp bones in the streets, yea, they are so tame and familiar, that neither women nor children are afeard of them. The wals of this towne are built very high and of great stones, but now they are ruined in many places, and the whole towne is diminished into one streete. Their fields being ioyned vnto the plaines of Azgara, abound with oliues and all kinde of pulse. *Tame lions.*

Of the towne of Maghilla.

MAghilla is a little towne founded of old by the Romans vpon that side of the foresaid hill which looketh toward Fez. About this towne are most fertill fields, and greatly enriched with oliues: there is a plaine likewise containing many fresh fountaines, and well stored with hempe and flaxe.

Of the castle of Shame.

THis ancient castle is built at the foote of the said mountaine neer vnto the high way from Fez to Mecnase: and it was called by this name, because the inhabitants are most shamefully addicted to couetise, like vnto all the people thereabouts. In old time it is reported that a certaine king passed by, whom the inhabitants of the castle inuited to dinner, requesting him to change the ignominious name of the place: which when the king had condescended vnto, they caused, according to their custome, a companie of rams to be slaine, and certaine bladders and vessels to be filled with milke, to serue for the kings breakfast the morrow after. But because the said vessels were very large, they consulted together to put in halfe milke and halfe water, hoping that the king should neuer perceiue it. The day following albeit the king was not very hastie of his breakfast, yet, his seruants vrging him thereunto, he perceiued the milke to be halfe water; whereat smiling he said: Friends, that which nature hath giuen, no man can take away. And with that

saying he departed. Now this castle is razed to the ground & vtterly destroied, but the territorie thereof is occupied by certaine miserable Arabians.

Of the region of Beni Guariten.

THe region of Beni Guariten lieth eastward of Fez about eighteene miles. It is altogether hillie and mountainous, abounding with all kind of pulse, and with store of good pasture and medow-ground, and containing almost two hundred villages. Their houses are in all places rudely built, and the inhabitants are base people, neither haue they any vineyards or gardens, nor any tree that beareth fruit. This region the king of Fez vsually diuideth among his yoongest brothers and sisters. The inhabitants haue great store of corne and wooll: and albeit they are passing rich, yet go they very meanly attired: they ride onely vpon asses, for which cause they are had in great derision by their neighbours.

Of the region called Aseis.

THis region is distant to the west of Fez almost twentie miles, and is by the inhabitants called Aseis; it consisteth of a perpetuall plaine, whereupon some coniecture, that it hath had in olde time many villages and castles, whereof now there is no mention at all, nor so much as a signe of any building, onely the names of places yet remaine. This region extendeth westward eighteene, and southward almost twenty miles. The soile is most fertile, and bringeth foorth blacke and small graines. Wels and fountaines are here very rare. It was woont to be subiect vnto certaine Arabian husbandmen, but now it is assigned by the king vnto the gouernor of that citie.

Of mount Togat.

THis mountaine standeth almost seuen miles westward of Fez, being very high, and but of small bredth. Eastward it extendeth to the riuer Bunafe being about fiue miles distant. All that side which looketh towards Fez, and the top thereof, and that part which lieth ouer against Essich are woonderfully repleniſhed with vines, and with all kinde of graine. Vpon the top of this mountaine are diuers caues and hollow places, where the searchers of treasure suppose that the Romans hid vp their wealth, as we haue before signified. The said treasure-searchers, so soone as the vintage is past, vse to take great paines in digging of the rocke, and albeit they finde nothing, yet will they not giue ouer. All the fruits of this mountaine are most vnpleasant both to the eie and to the taste, and yet they are sooner ripe, then the fruits of other places thereabout.

of

Of mount Guraigura.

THis mountaine being neer vnto Atlas is almoſt fortie miles diſtant from Fez. From hence ſpringeth a certaine riuer, which running weſtward falleth into the riuer Bath. This mountaine ſtandeth betweene two moſt large and ſpatious plaines, whereof the one to Fez ward is (as we haue before ſaid) called Aſeis: and the other lying ſouthward is named Adecſen. Which Adecſen is moſt fertile both for corne and paſture. And they are poſſeſſed by certaine Arabians called Zuhair being vaſſals vnto the king of Fez: but the king aſſigneth for the moſt part this plaine vnto his brother or ſome other of his kinsfolkes, out of which they yeerely gather ten thouſand duckats. The foreſaid Arabians are continually moleſted by certaine other Arabians called Elhuſein, which liue in the deſerts: for in ſummer-time they vſually inuade the plaines: wherefore the king of Fez for the defence of this region maintaineth a certaine number of horſemen and of croſſe-bowes. This plaine is watered with chriſtall-fountaines and pleaſant riuers. Neere vnto the ſaid plaine are diuers woods and forreſts, where lions keepe which are ſo gentle and tame, that any man may driue them away with a ſtaffe, neither doe they any harme at all. Now let vs proceede vnto the deſcription of Azgara. *Tame lions.*

A deſcription of Azgara, one of the ſeuen principall regions belonging to the kingdome of Fez.

THis region bordereth northward vpon the Ocean-ſea; weſtward vpon the riuer of Buragrag; eaſtward vpon the mountaines partly of Gumera, partly of Zarhon, and partly of Zalag; and ſouthward it is incloſed with the riuer of Bunaſar. This region conſiſteth altogether of plaine ground being a moſt fertile ſoile, and in olde time very populous, and adorned with many townes and caſtles, which are now ſo defaced and ruined by reaſon of wars, that ſmall villages onely are left for the inhabitants to hide their heads in. The length of this region is about fowerſcore, and the bredth almoſt three ſcore miles. Through the midſt thereof runneth the riuer of Subu. The Arabian inhabitants are called Elculoth, being deſcended from the familie of Muntafic; they are ſubiect to the king of Fez, and pay vnto him large tributes: howbeit they are rich, and curious in their apparell, and are ſuch valiant ſoldiers, that the king of Fez leuieth his whole armie of them onely, when he hath any warres of great moment to atchieue. This region abundantly furniſheth not onely Fez, but all the mountaines of Gumera with victuals, horſes, and other cattell; and here the king of Fez vſually remaineth all winter and the ſpring, by reaſon of the temperature and holeſomnes of the aire. Here is great plentie of roes and hares, and yet very few woods.

Of Giumha a towne in Azgara.

THis towne the Africans built in our time by a riuers side vpon that plaine ouer which the way lieth from Fez to the citie of Harais, and it is distant from Fez about thirtie miles. It was in times past very populous, but now it lieth so desolate by reason of the war of *Sahid*, that it serueth onely for caues and receptacles for the Arabians to lay vp their corne in, for the sauegard whereof they pitch certaine tents neere vnto the place.

Of the towne of Harais.

THis towne was founded by the ancient Africans vpon the Ocean sea shore, neere vnto the mouth of the riuer Luccus, one side thereof adioining vpon the said riuer, and the other side vpon the maine Ocean. When the Moores were lords of Arzilla and Tangia, this towne was well inhabited: but those two townes being woon by the Christians, Harais remained destitute of inhabitants, almost twentie yeeres together: howbeit afterward the king of Fez his sonne, fearing the Portugals inuasion, caused it strongly to bee fortified and kept with a perpetuall garrison. The passage vnto this towne by the riuers mouth is very dangerous and difficult. Likewise the kings sonne caused a castle to be built, wherein is maintained a garrison of two hundred crosse-bowes, an hundred Harquebusiers, & three hundred light horsemen. Neere vnto the towne are diuers medowes and fennes where the townesmen take great store of eeles and of water-fowles. Vpon this riuers side are huge and solitarie woods haunted with lions and other wilde beastes. The inhabitants of this towne vse to transport coales by sea to Arzilla and Tangia, whereupon the Moores vse for a common prouerbe, A ship of Harais, which they alleage when a man after great brags and promises performeth trifles; for these ships hauing sailes of cotton, which make a gallant shew, are laden with nought but base coales: for the territorie of this citie aboundeth greatly with cotton.

Of the towne called Casar Elcabir, that is, The great palace.

THis large towne was built in the time of *Mansor* the king and patriarke of Maroco; of whom this notable historie is reported, namely, that the said king, as he rode on hunting, being separated from his companie by tempestuous weather, came vnto a certaine vnknowen place, where if he continued all night, fearing least he should die in the fens, he looked round about him, and at length espied a fisher getting of eeles: can you, my friend (quoth the king) conduct me to the court? The court (saith the fisher) is ten miles distant. Howbeit, the king intreating hard to be conducted;

A pleasant discourse how king Mansor was entertained by a fisher.

ted; if king *Manſor* himſelfe were preſent (quoth the fiſher) I could not at this preſent conduct him, for feare leaſt he ſhould be drowned in the fennes. Then anſwered *Manſor:* what haſt thou to doe with the kings life or ſafetie? Marie (quoth the fiſher) I am bound to loue the king as well as mine owne life. Then haue you obtained ſome ſingular benefite at his hands, ſaid the king. What greater benefit (quoth the fiſher) can be expected at the kings hand, then iuſtice, loue, and clemencie, which he vouchſafeth vnto his ſubiects; by whoſe fauour and wiſedome I ſillie fiſher with my poore wife and children liue a moſt quiet and contented life, ſo that I can euen at midnight haue free egreſſe and regreſſe vnto this my cottage amidſt theſe vallies and deſert fennes, no man lying in wait to doe me iniurie? But (gentle Sir) whatſoeuer you be, if you pleaſe to be my gueſt for this night, you ſhall be right welcome, and to morrow morning betimes I will attend vpon you at your pleaſure. Then the king went vnto the fiſhers cottage, where after his horſe was prouided for, the fiſher cauſed ſome eeles to be roſted for his ſupper, while he ſate drying of his garments by the fire: but the king not being contented with this fare, demanded if his hoſt had any fleſh in the houſe: Sir (quoth he) I haue a ſhee-goate and a kid, and they are all my ſubſtance of cattell: but becauſe by your countenance you ſeeme to be ſome honourable perſonage, I will aduenture my kid for your ſake; and ſo without any more words he cauſed his wife to kill it & roſte it. Thus the king remained the fiſhers gueſt all night: and the next morning about ſun-riſe, being ſcarcely gone out of the doores with his liberall hoſt, he eſpied a great companie of his gentlemen and hunters whooping and hallowing for their king amidſt the fennes, but when they ſaw him, they all greatly reioiced. Then *Manſor* turning him to the fiſher, told him what he was, promiſing that his liberalitie ſhould not be vnrewarded. Neere vnto the place were certaine faire caſtles and palaces, which the king at his departure gaue vnto the fiſher in token of thankfulnes; and being by the fiſher requeſted, for declaration of his farther loue, to enuiron the ſaid buildings with wals, he condeſcended thereunto. From thencefoorth the fiſher remained lord and gouernour of that new citie, which in proceſſe of time grew ſo large, that within theſe fewe yeeres it contained fower hundred families. And becauſe the ſoile neer vnto it is ſo fertile, the king vſed to make his aboad thereabout all ſummer time, which was a great benefit to the towne. By the walles of this towne runneth the riuer Luccus, which ſometimes encreaſeth ſo, that it floweth to the citie-gates. In this towne are practiſed diuers manuarie artes and trades of merchandize: alſo it hath many temples, one college of ſtudents, and a ſtately hoſpitall. They haue neither ſprings nor wels, but onely ceſternes in ſtead thereof. The inhabitants are liberall honeſt people, though not ſo wittie as ſome others. Their apparell is but meane, being made of cotton-cloth, and wrapped often about their bodies. In the ſuburbes are great ſtore of gardens repleniſhed with all kinde of fruits. Their grapes are vnſauourie, becauſe the ſoile is fitter for medow-ground. Euery munday they haue a market vpon

Read Oſorius lib. 2. de rebus geſtis Eman. concerning this towne.

the next plaine, whither their neighbours the Arabians vsually resort. In the moneth of May they goe foorth of their towne a fowling, and take great store of turtles. Their ground is exceeding fruitfull, and yeeldeth thirtie fold increase: but it cannot be tilled for sixe miles about, bicause the Portugals garrison at Arzilla which is but eighteene miles distant, doth so molest and endomage them: whom likewise the gouernour of this towne with three hundred horsemen continually encountereth, and sometime proceedeth euen to the gates of Arzilla.

Of the region of Habat.

THis region beginneth southward from the riuer of Guarga, and bordereth northward vpon the Ocean, westward it adioineth vnto the fennes of Argar, and eastward it abutteth vpon those mountaines which are next vnto the streites of Gibraltar. In bredth it stretcheth fower score, and in length almost an hundreth miles. The fruitefulnes of the soile, and the abundance of corne cannot easily be described: it is almost a perpetuall plaine, watered with many riuers: howbeit heretofore it hath beene more noble and famous, by reason of the ancient cities built partly by the Romans & partly by the Goths: and I thinke it to be the same region which *Ptolemey* calleth Mauritania; but since Fez was first built, it hath fallen into woonderfull decay. Moreouer *Idris* the founder of Fez leauing ten sonnes behinde him, bestowed this region vpon the eldest: afterward ensued a rebellion of diuers Mahumetan heretiques and lords, one faction of whom suing for aide at the gouernour of Granada, and others seeking aide from certaine gouernours of Cairaoan, they were all vanquished and put to flight by the Mahumetan patriark of Cairaoan: who hauing thus subdued the region, left it vnder garrison and returned home. Afterward the great chancelour of Cordoua leuying an huge armie, conquered all this countrey euen to the borders of the region of Zab. Fiftie yeeres after king *Ioseph* of the Luntune family, chasing out the people of Granada, obtained the saide prouince by force: and last of all the king of Fez enioied it.

Of Ezaggen a towne of Habat.

THis towne was built by the ancient Africans vpon the side of a mountaine, almost ten miles distant from Guarga: all which distance being plaine ground, serueth for corn-fields and gardens: howbeit the hilles are farre more fruitfull. This towne is distant from Fez almost threescore and ten miles, and containeth to the number of fiue hundred families, out of the territorie whereof there is the summe of tenne thousand ducates yeerely gathered for tribute, with which tribute the gouernour of the same towne is bound to maintaine on the kings behalfe fower hundred horsemen, for the defence of the whole region. For they are often molested with inua-

sions

sions of the Portugals, who proceed wasting and spoiling the countrey, sometimes fortie, and sometimes fiftie miles. Here is but little ciuility to be found, neither are the people but homely apparelled, though they be verie rich. They haue a priuilege granted them by the ancient kings of Fez to drinke wine, which is otherwise forbidden by the law of Mahumet, and yet none of them all will abstaine from drinking it.

Of the towne called Bani Teude.

THis ancient towne was built also by the Africans on a large plaine by the riuer of Guarga, fiue and fortie miles from the citie of Fez. In the prosperitie thereof it contained to the number of eight thousand families, but afterward it was so destroied by the wars of the Patriarkes of Cairaoan, that now the towne wall is only remaining. At my being there I sawe diuers monuments and sepulchres of noblemen, and certaine conducts curiously built of excellent marble. From this towne mount Gumera is almost fowerteene miles distant: the fieldes adiacent being good arable, and very fruitfull.

Of the towne of Mergo.

MErgo standing vpon the toppe of a mountaine is from Bani Teude about ten miles distant. Some thinke that the Romans were founders of this towne, bicause there are found vpon the ancient ruines certaine Latine letters ingrauen. But now it is quite destitute of inhabitants, howbeit vpon the side of the same mountaine standeth another small towne inhabited with weauers of course cloth; from whence you may behold the riuer Subu to the south, and the riuer Guarga to the north, from which riuers the saide towne is fiue miles distant. The inhabitants loue to bee accounted gentlemen, albeit they are couetous, ignorant, and destitute of all goodnes.

Of the towne of Tansor.

TAnsor standeth vpon a little hill, almost ten miles from Mergo, and containeth three hundreth families, but very fewe artificers. The inhabitants are rude and barbarous people, hauing neither vineyardes nor gardens, but onely exercising husbandry, and possessing abundance of cattle. This towne standeth in the midde way between Fez and mount Gumera, which (I thinke) is the occasion, that the inhabitants are so couetous and void of humanitie.

Of the towne of Agla.

THis ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon the banke of the riuer Guarga. The fruitfull fields thereof are manured by the Arabians: but the towne it selfe hath beene so wasted with warre, that nowe there

there is nothing to be seene but in a few places the ruines of houses & wals, & certaine pits. In the suburbes there is euery weeke a great market, whereunto the next Arabians vsually resort; and so do some merchants of Fez likewise, to buie oxe-hides, wooll, and waxe, which are the principall commodities of that place. Hereabouts keepe great store of lions, but they are by nature so fearefull, that they will flee at the voice of a childe: hence commeth the prouerbe so rife in Fez; A lion of Agla; which they applie vnto such a one as maketh great brags, and is but a meere dastard.

The occasion of a prouerbe.

Of the castle of Narangia.

THe castle of Narangia built by the Africans vpon a little hill not farre from the riuer Luccus, is almost ten miles distant from Ezaggen. It hath most fruitfull corn-fields, but no plaines belonging vnto it. Along the riuers side are huge deserts, wherein grow great store of wilde fruits, especially cherries, such as the Italians call *Ciriegie marine*. This castle was surprised and sacked by the Portugals in the yeere of the Hegeira 895. which was in the yeere of our Lord, 1486.

Of the Isle of Gesira.

THe Isle of Gesira lying not farre from the mouth of the riuer Luccus, is distant from the sea about ten, and from Fez about an hundreth miles. There was in times past a little ancient towne vpon this Island, which was abandoned when the Portugals first made warres vpon Barbarie. About the saide riuer are many deserts, but very fewe corn-fields. In the yeere of the Hegeira 894. the king of Portugall sent hither a great armie, which being landed on the Isle, the generall of the field built a strong fort thereupon, by meanes whereof he hoped to be free from the enimies inuasion, and to enioy the fields adiacent. But the king of Fez, namely his father that *nowe reigneth, foreseeing the damage that he shoulde sustaine, if he permitted the saide fort to be finished, leuied a mightie armie to withstand the Portugals proceedings. Howbeit, so great was the force of their ordinance, that the Moores durst not approch within two miles of the Portugal campe. Wherefore the Fessan king being almost out of hope, was perswaded by some that were about him to stoppe vp the riuer with postes and rastes two miles from the Island: by which meanes the Moores being defended, and hauing cut downe all the woodes adioining, the Portugals perceiued the passage of the riuer in short time to be choaked and stopped vp with great trees, and that there was no possibilitie for them to depart. Then the king hoping easily to ouercome the Portugales, determined to assaile their fort: but considering he could not do it without great slaughter of his people, he couenanted with the Portugall generall, that besides a great summe of money paide vnto him, the saide generall shoulde obtaine

An attempt and defeate of the Portugals.

*1562.

obtaine of the Portugall king to haue certaine daughters of the king of Fez his gouernour (which were at that time prisoners in Portugall) to be restored, and that then he would freely dismisse him and his companie: which being done, the Portugall armie returned home.

Of the towne of Basra.

THis towne containing almost two thousand families, was built by Mahumet the sonne of *Idris*, which was the founder of Fez, vpon a certaine plaine betweene two mountaines, being distant from Fez about fowerscore, and from Casar southward almost twentie miles. And it was named Basra for the memorie of a citie in Arabia Fœlix called by that name, where *Hali* the fourth Mahumetan patriarke after *Mahumet*, and great grandfather vnto *Idris* was slaine. It was in times past enuironed with most high and impregnable wals: and so long as it was gouerned by the posteritie of *Idris*, the people were verie ciuill; for *Idris* his successours vsed alwaies to remaine there in sommer time, by reason of the pleasant situation of the place, the hils and valleies being beautified with sweete gardens, and yeelding corne in abundance: and that both by reason of the vicinitie of the towne, and of the neighbour-hood of the riuer Luccus. Moreouer, in old time this towne was verie populous, being adorned with many faire temples, and inhabited with most ciuill people: but the family of *Idris* decaying, it became a pray vnto the enemie. At this present the ruines of the wals are onely to be seene, and certaine forlorne gardens, which, because the ground is not manured, bring foorth naught, but wilde fruits.

Of the towne called Homar.

THis towne was built by one *Hali* a disciple of the foresaid Mahumet vpon a little hill, and by a riuers side, being situate about fourteene miles to the north of Casar, and sixteen miles to the south of Arzilla: which although it be but a small towne, yet is it well fortified and fairely built, and enuironed with fruitfull fieldes, vineyardes, and gardens replenished with woonderfull varietie of fruits. The inhabitants being most of them linnen-weauers, gather and prouide great store of flaxe. But euer since the Portugals woon Arzilla, this towne hath remained desolate.

A description of the citie of Arzilla.

THe great citie of Arzilla called by the Africans Azella, was built by the Romans vpon the Ocean sea shore, about seuentie miles from the streits of Gibraltar, and an hundred and fortie miles from Fez. It was in times past subiect vnto the prince of Septa or Ceuta, who was tributarie to the Romans, and was afterward taken by the Goths, who established the said

said prince in his former gouernment: but the Mahumetans wan it in the yeere of the Hegeira 94. and helde the same for two hundred and twenty yeeres, till such time as the English at the persuasion of the Goths besieged it with an huge armie; and albeit the Goths were enemies to the English, because themselues were Christians, and the English worshippers of idols, yet the Goths perswaded them to this attempt, hoping by that meanes to draw the Mahumetans out of Europe. The English hauing good successe tooke the citie, and so wasted it with fire and sword, that scarce one citizen escaped, so that it remained almost thirtie yeeres voide of inhabitants. But afterward when the Mahumetan patriarks of Cordoua were lords of Mauritania, it was againe reedified, and by all meanes augmented, enriched and fortified. The inhabitants were rich, learned, and valiant. The fields adiacent yeeld graine and pulse of all sorts in great abundance, but because the towne standeth almost ten miles from the mountaines, it sustaineth great want of wood; howbeit they haue coales brought them from Harais, as is aforesaid. In the yeere of the Hegeira 882. this citie was suddenly surprised and taken by the Portugalles, and all the inhabitants carried prisoners into Portugall, amongst whom was *Mahumet* the king of Fez that now is, who together with his sister being both children of seuen yeeres old, were taken and led captiue. For the father of this *Mahumet* seeing the prouince of Habat reuolt from him, went and dwelt at Arzilla, the very same time, when *Esserif* a great citizen of Fez, hauing slaine *Habdulac* the last king of the Marin-familie, was by the fauour of the people aduanced vnto the Fessan kingdome. Afterward one *Saic Abra* being pricked forward with ambition, went about to conquer the citie of Fez, and to make himselfe king; howbeit *Esserif* by the aduise of a certaine counsellour of his, being couzin vnto *Saic*, vanquished and put to flight the saide *Saic* to his great disgrace. Moreouer while *Esserif* had sent his said counsellour to Temesna, to pacifie the people of that prouince being about to rebell, *Saic* returned, and hauing for one whole yeere besieged new Fez with eight thousand men, at length by treason of the townesmen he easily wan it, and compelled *Esserif* with all his familie, to flee vnto the kingdome of Tunis. The same time therefore that *Saic* besieged Fez, the king of Portugall (as is aforesaid) sending a fleete into Africa, tooke Arzilla, and then was the king of Fez that now is with his yoong sister caried captiue into Portugall, where he remained seuen yeeres, in which space he learned the Portugall-language most exactly. At length with a great summe of money his father ransomed him out of Portugall, who afterward being aduanced to the kingdome, was by reason of his long continuance in Portugall called king *Mahumet* the Portugall. This king afterward attempted very often to be auenged of the Portugals, and to recouer Arzilla. Wherefore suddenly encountring the said citie he beat down a great part of the wall, and entring the breach, set all the captiue-Moores at libertie. The Christians retired into the castle, promising within two daies to yeeld vnto the king. But *Pedro Nauarro* comming in the meane season with

The taking of Arzilla by the English.

Arzilla taken by the Portugals.

Habdulac the last king of the Marin family.

Read Osorius lib. 5. de rebus gestis Eman.

a great fleet, they compelled the king with continuall discharging of their ordinance, not onely to relinquish the citie, but also to depart quite away with his whole armie: afterward it was so fortified on all sides by the Portugals, that the said king attempting often the recouerie thereof, had alwaies the repulse. I my selfe seruing the king in the foresaid expedition could find but fiue hundred of our companie slaine. But the warre against Arzilla continued from the yeere of the Hegeira 914. to the yeere 921.

John Leo serued the king of Fez in his wars against Arzilla.

Of the citie of Tangia.

THe great and ancient citie of Tangia called by the Portugals Tangiara, according to the fond opinion of some historiographers, was founded by one *Sedded* the sonne of *Had*, who (as they say) was emperour ouer the whole world. This man (say they) determined to build a citie, which for beautie might match the earthly paradise. Wherefore he compassed the same with walles of brasse, and the roofes of the houses he couered with gold and siluer, for the building whereof he exacted great tributes of all the cities in the world. But the classicall and approoued authors affirme that it was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean sea shore, at the same time when they subdued the kingdome of *Granada. From the streites of Gibraltar it is distant almost thirtie, and from Fez an hundred and fiftie miles. And from the time that the Goths were first lordes of Granada, this citie was subiect vnto *Septa* or *Ceuta*, vntill it and Arzilla were woon by the Mahumetans. It hath alwaies beene a ciuill, famous, and well-peopled towne, and very stately and sumptuously built. The field thereto belonging is not very fertill, nor apt for tilth: howbeit not far off are certaine vallies continually watred with fountaines, which furnish the said citie with all kinde of fruits in abundance. Without the citie also growe certaine vines, albeit vpon a sandie soile. It was well stored with inhabitants, till such time as Arzilla was surprized by the Portugals: for then the inhabitants being dismaied with rumours of warres, tooke vp their bag and baggage and fled vnto Fez. Whereupon the king of Portugall his deputie at Arzilla sent one of his captaines thither, who kept it so long vnder the obedience of the king, till the king of Fez sent one of his kinsmen also to defend a region of great importance neere vnto the mountaines of Gumera, being enemie to the Christians. Twentie fiue yeeres before the Portugall king wan this citie, he sent foorth an armada against it, hoping that the citie being destitute of aide, while the king of Fez was in warres against the rebels of Mecnase, would soone yeeld it selfe. But contrarie to the Portugals expectation the Fessan king concluding a sudden truce with them of Mecnase, sent his counsellour with an armie, who encountring the Portugals, made a great slaughter of them, and amongst the rest slue their generall, whom he caused to be caried in a case or sacke vnto new Fez, and there to be set vpon an high place where all men might behold him. Afterward the king of Portugall sent a

* Or Bætica.

new

new ſupply, who ſuddenly aſſailing the citie in the night, were moſt of them ſlaine, and the reſidue enforced to flee. But that which the Portugall-king could not bring to paſſe with thoſe two Armadas, he atchieued at length (as is aforeſaid) with ſmall forces and little diſaduantage. In my time *Mahumet* king of Fez left no meanes vnattempted for the recouerie of this citie, but ſo great alwaies was the valour of the Portugals, that he had euer ill ſucceſſe. Theſe things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 917, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1508.

Of the towne called Caſar Ezzaghir, that is, the little palace.

THis towne was built by *Manſor* the king and Patriarke of Maroco vpon the Ocean ſea ſhore, about twelue miles from Tangia, and from Septa eighteene miles. It was built (they ſay) by *Manſor*, becauſe euerie yeere when he paſſed into the Prouince of Granada, hee was conſtrained with his whole armie to march ouer the rough and ragged mountaines of Septa, before he could come vnto the ſea ſhore. It ſtandeth in an open and pleaſant place ouer againſt the coaſt of Granada. It was well peopled in times paſt, part of the inhabitants beeing weauers and merchants, and the reſt mariners, that vſed to tranſport the wares of Barbarie into Europe. This towne the king of Portugall tooke by a ſudden ſurpriſe. And the Feſſan king hath laboured by all meanes to recouer it, but euer with ill ſucceſſe. Theſe things were done in the yeere of the Hegeira 863.

Caſar Ezzaghir taken by the king of Portugall.

Of the great citie of Septa.

SEpta, called by the Latines, *Ciuitas*, and by the Portugals, *Seupta*, was (according to our moſt approoued Authors) built by the Romanes vpon the ſtreits of Gibraltar, being in olde time the head citie of all Mauritania; wherefore the Romanes made great account thereof, inſomuch that it became verie ciuill, and was throughly inhabited. Afterward it was woone by the Gothes, who appointed a gouernour there; and it continued in their poſſeſſion, till the Mahumetans inuading Mauritania ſurpriſed it alſo. The occaſion whereof was one *Iulian* Earle of Septa; who being greatly iniuried by *Roderigo* king of the Gothes and of Spaine, ioyned with the infidels, conducted them into Granada, and cauſed *Roderigo* to looſe both his life and his kingdome. The Mahumetans therefore hauing taken Septa, kept poſſeſſion thereof on the behalfe of one *Elgualid*, ſonne of *Habdulmalic* their Patriarke, who then was reſident at Damaſco, in the yeere of the Hegeira 92. From thencefoorth till within theſe fewe yeeres, this citie grew ſo ciuill and ſo well ſtored with inhabitants, that it prooued the moſt worthie and famous

The entrance of the Moores into Granada.

citie

citie of all Mauritania. It contained many temples and colledges of ſtudents, with great numbers of artizans, and men of learning and of high ſpirite. Their artizans excelled eſpecially in workes of braſſe, as namely in making of candleſticks, baſons, ſtandiſhes, and ſuch like commodities, which were as pleaſant to the eie, as if they had beene made of ſiluer or gold. The Italians haue great cunning in making of the like, but their workmanſhip is nothing comparable to theirs of *Septa. Without the citie are diuers faire villages and granges, eſpecially in that place which for the abundance of vines is called The vineyards: howbeit the fields are verie barren and fruitles, for which cauſe their corne is exceeding deere. Both without and within the citie there is a pleaſant and beautifull proſpect to the ſhore of Granada vpon the ſtreits of Gibraltar, from whence you may diſcerne liuing creatures, the diſtance being but 12. miles. Howbeit this famous citie not many yeeres ſince was greatly afflicted by *Habdulmumen* the king and patriarke: who hauing ſurpriſed it, razed the buildings, and baniſhed the principal inhabitants thereof. And not long after it ſuſtained as great damage by the king of Granada, who (beſides the foreſaide harmes) carried the nobles and chiefe citizens captiues into Granada. And laſtly in the yeere of *Mahumet* his Hegeira 818. being taken by a Portugall-armada, all the citizens did abandon it. *Abu Sahid* being then king of Fez, and a man of no valour, neglected the recouerie thereof: but in the midſt of his dauncing and diſport being aduertiſed that it was loſt, he would not ſo much as interrupt his vaine paſtime: wherefore by gods iuſt iudgement, both himſelfe and his ſixe ſonnes were all ſlaine in one night by his Secretarie, in whom he repoſed ſingular truſt, becauſe hee would haue defloured the ſaid Secretaries wife. Theſe things came to paſſe in the yeere of the Hegeira 824. Afterward, the kingdome of Fez being eight yeeres deſtitute of a king, a ſonne of the murthered king whom he begot of a Chriſtian woman, and who the ſame night that his father was ſlaine fled vnto Tunis, ſucceeded in the gouernment: this was *Habdulac* the laſt king of the Marin family, who likewiſe (as is aforeſaide) was ſlaine by the people.

* Or ſeuta.

The ſtreits of Gibraltar from Septa but 12. miles broad.

Septa taken by the Portugal.

Abu Sahid king of Fez and his ſixe ſonnes ſlaine all in one night.

Of the towne of Tetteguin, now called Tetuan.

THis towne being built by the ancient Africans eighteene miles from the ſtreits of Gibraltar, and ſixe miles from the maine Ocean, was taken by the Mahumetans at the ſame time when they woon Septa from the Gothes. It is reported that the Gothes beſtowed the gouernment of this towne vpon a woman with one eie, who weekly repairing thither to receiue tribute, the inhabitants named the towne Tetteguin, which ſignifieth in their language an eie. Afterward being often aſſayled and encountered by the Portugals, the inhabitants forſooke it, and it remained fowerſcore and fifteene yeeres deſolate: which time being expired, it was reedified and replanted a new with

inhabitants by a certaine captaine of Granada, who together with his king being expelled thence by *Ferdinando* king of Caſtile, departed vnto Fez. This famous captaine that ſhewed himſelfe ſo valiant in the warres of Granada was called by the Portugals Almandali. Who hauing obtained the gouernment of this towne, and gotten licence to repaire it, enuironed the ſame with new wals, and built an impregnable caſtle therein compaſſed with a deepe ditch. Afterward making continuall warre againſt the Portugals, he extremely moleſted and endamaged their townes of Septa, Caſar, and Tangia: for with three hundred valiant horſemen of Granada he made daily incurſions and inroades vpon the Chriſtians, and thoſe that he tooke, he put to continuall labour and toile about the building of his forts. Vpon a time I my ſelfe trauelling this way ſaw three thouſand Chriſtian captiues, who being clad in courſe ſacke-cloth, were conſtrained in the night to lye fettered in deepe dungeons. This captaine was exceeding liberall vnto all African and Mahumetan ſtrangers that paſſed by: howbeit within theſe few yeeres one of his eies being thruſt out with a dagger, and the other waxing dim with age, he deceaſed; leauing the towne after his death vnto his nephew, who was a moſt valiant man.

Of the mountaines of Habat.

AMongſt the mountaines of Habat there be eight more famous then the reſt, all which are inhabited by the people of Gumera, who vſe one generall forme and cuſtome of liuing: for all of them maintaine Mahumets religion, albeit they drinke wine contrarie to his precept. They are proper men of perſonage and much addicted to induſtrie & labour, but for the wars they are verie vnfit. Subiect they are vnto the king of Fez, who impoſeth ſuch heauie tribute vpon them, ſo that beſides a few (of whom we will ſpeake hereafter) the reſidue are ſcarce able to finde themſelues apparell.

Of mount Rahona.

THis mountaine being neere vnto Ezaggen, containeth in length thirtie miles, and in breadth twelue miles. It aboundeth with oyle, hony, and vines. The inhabitants are principally imployed about making of ſope and trying of waxe. Wines they haue great ſtore both browne and white. They pay vnto the king of Fez for yeerely tribute three thouſand ducates, which being allowed vnto the gouernour of Ezaggen, he maintaineth fower hundred horſemen in the kings ſeruice.

Of the mountaine called Beni-Feneſcare.

THis mountaine of Feneſcare adioyning vnto mount Rahon, is about fiue and twentie miles long, and eight miles broad. It is better peopled then

then Rahon, hauing many leather-dreſſers, and weauers of courſe cloth, and yeelding great abundance of waxe. Euery ſaturday they haue a great market, where you may finde all kinde of chapmen and of wares; inſomuch that the Genoueſes come hither to buy oxe-hides and waxe, which they conuey into Portugall and Italy. Out of this mountaine is yeerely collected for tribute the ſumme of ſixe thouſand ducates, three thouſand whereof are allowed vnto the gouernour of Ezaggen, the reſidue being payd into the kings exchequer.

Of the mountaine called Beni-Haros.

THis mountaine ſtanding neer vnto Caſar extendeth northward eight, and weſtward 20 miles. It containeth but ſixe miles only in bredth. It was wont to be well peopled and inhabited with gentlemen, who, when the Portugals woon Arzilla, cruelly vſurping ouer the people, compelled them to flee and leaue the mountaine deſolate. There are at this preſent certaine cottages vpon the mountaine; but all the reſidue lyeth waſt. While this mountaine continued in good eſtate, it allowed yeerely vnto the gouernor of Caſar three thouſand ducates.

Of mount Chebib.

VPon this mountaine are ſixe or ſeuen caſtles inhabited with ciuill and honeſt people: for when the Portugals wan Tangia, the citizens fled vnto this mountaine beeing but twentie miles diſtant. The inhabitants are perpetually moleſted with the Portugals inuaſions: the tributes of this mountaine being halfe diminiſhed ſince the loſſe of Tangia, waxe euery day woorſe and woorſe, becauſe the garriſon is thirtie miles diſtant, and cannot come to ſuccour them ſo often as the Portugals come to waſte and ſpoyle their territories.

Of the mountaine called Beni Cheſſen.

THis mountaine is of an exceeding height, and very hard to be encountred: for beſides the naturall fortification thereof, it is inhabited with moſt valiant people. Theſe inhabitants being oppreſſed with the tyrannie of their gouernours, roſe vp at length in armes againſt them, & brought them to great miſerie and diſtreſſe. Whereupon a yoong gentleman, one of their ſaid gouernours, diſdaining to ſubmit himſelfe vnto the yoke of his inferiours, went to ſerue in the king of Granada his warres, where being trained vp a long time in martiall diſcipline againſt the Chriſtians, he prooued an expert warriour: and ſo at length returning vnto one of his natiue mountaines, he gathered a certaine troupe of horſemen, and valiantly defended the ſaid mountaine from the Portugals inuaſions: whereof the king of Fez

being aduertiſed, ſent him an hundred and fiftie croſſebowes: which he imploied to the ſubduing of that mountaine, and to the conqueſt of the mountaines of his enemies. But after he began to vſurpe the kings tribute in the ſame mountaine, the king waxing wroth ſent foorth an huge armie againſt him. Howbeit vpon his repentant ſubmiſſion, the king pardoned him, and ordained him gouernour of Seuſauon, and of all the region adiacent. After him ſucceeded in the ſame gouernment one of the linage of *Mahumet*, and of *Idris* the founder of Fez. This man became very famous among the Portugals, and by reaſon of his nobilitie (for he was of the familie called Helibenres) he grew vnto great renowme.

Of mount Angera.

IT ſtandeth ſouthward of Caſar the leſſe almoſt eight miles, being tenne miles long and three miles broad. The ſoile thereof is exceeding fruitful, and in times paſt greatly abounded with woods, which being cut downe by the inhabitants, were ſent to Caſar for the building of ſhips: which at that time had a great fleete belonging thereunto. This mountaine likewiſe yeelded abundance of flaxe; and the inhabitants were partly weauers and partly mariners. Howbeit when the foreſaid towne of Caſar was woon by the Portugals, this mountaine alſo was forſaken by the inhabitants: and yet at this day all the houſes ſtand ſtill, as if the inhabitants had not forſaken it at all.

Of mount Quadres.

THis high mountaine ſtanding in the midſt betweene Septa and Tetteguin, is inhabited with moſt valiant and warlike people, whoſe valour ſufficiently appeered in the warres betweene the king of Granada, and the Spanyards; where the inhabitants onely of this mountaine preuailed more then all the armed Moores beſide. Vpon the ſaid mountaine was borne one called by them *Hellul*: this *Hellul* atchieued many woorthie exploits againſt the Spanyards; the hiſtorie whereof is ſet downe partly in verſe and partly in proſe, and is as rife in Africa and Granada, as is the ſtorie of *Orlando* in Italie. But at length in the Spaniſh warre (wherein *Ioſeph Eneſir* king and patriarke of Maroco was vanquiſhed) this *Hellul* was ſlaine in a caſtle of Catalonia, called by the Moores, The caſtle of the eagle. In the ſame battell were ſlaine threeſcore thouſand Moores, ſo that none of them eſcaped ſaue the king and a few of his nobles. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 609. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1160. From thenceforth the Spanyards had alwaies good ſucceſſe in their warres, ſo that they recouered all thoſe cities which the Moores had before taken from them. And from that time till the yeere wherein king *Ferdinando* conquered Granada, there paſſed (according to the Arabians account) 285. yeeres.

Threeſcore thouſand Moores ſlaine.

Of the mountaine called Beni Guedarfeth.

THis mountaine standing not farre from Tetteguin (although it be not very large) is well fraught with inhabitants. The people are very warlike, being in pay vnder the gouernour of Tetteguin, whom they greatly honour and attend vpon him in all his attempts against the Christians: for which cause they pay no tribute vnto the king of Fez, vnlesse it be for their fieldes, which is very little. They reape much commoditie out of those mountaines, for there groweth great abundance of boxe, whereof the Fessan combes are made.

A description of Errif one of the seuen regions of Fez.

WEstward this region beginneth neere vnto the streites of Gibraltar, and extendeth eastward to the riuer of Nocor, which distance containeth about an hundred and fortie miles. Northward it bordereth vpon the Mediterran sea, and stretcheth fortie miles southward vnto those mountains which lie ouer against the riuer Guarga and the territorie of Fez. This region is very vneeuen, being full of exceeding colde mountaines and waste deserts, which are repleniſhed with most beautifull and straight trees: Here is no corne growing, they haue great store of vines, figs, oliues, & almonds. The inhabitants of this region are valiant people, but so excessiuely giuen to drinking, that they scarcely reserue wherewithall to apparell themselues. Head-cattell they haue but fewe: howbeit vpon their mountaines they haue great plentie of goates, asses, and apes. Their townes are but few: and their castles and villages are very homely built without any plancher or stories, much like to the stables of Europe, and are couered with thatch or with the barke of trees. All the inhabitants of this region haue the balles of their throat-pipes very great, and are vnciuill and rude people.

Of the towne of Terga.

THis small towne (as some thinke) built by the Goths vpon the shore of the Mediterran sea, is distant from the streites of Gibraltar about fowerscore miles, and containeth to the number of fiue hundred families. The towne wall is of no force. The inhabitants are most part of them fishers; who getting great abundance of fish, salt them, and carrie them to sell almost an hundred miles southward. This towne was in times past well stored with people, but since the Portugals entered the same region, it hath fallen greatly to decay. Not farre from this towne groweth abundance of wood vpon the ragged and cold mountaines. And albeit the inhabitants are valiant, yet are they rusticall and void of all humanitie.

Of Bedis, otherwiſe called Velles de Gumera.

THis ancient towne built vpon the Mediterran ſea ſhore, & called by the Spaniards *Velles de Gumera*, containeth about ſixe hundred families. Some writers there are that affirme it to be built by the Africans, and others by the Gothes; ſo that it remaineth as yet vncertaine who were the true founders therof. It ſtandeth betweene two high mountaines: and not farre from it there is a faire and large valley, from whence commeth a little riuer or ſtreame to the towne, alwaies when it raineth. In the midſt of the towne ſtandeth the market place, which containeth great ſtore of ſhops. Here is alſo a verie ſtately temple to be ſeene. Water for drinke is exceeding ſcarce among them, for they are all conſtrained to reſort vnto one pit or well, being in the ſuburbes, neere vnto the ſepulchre of a certaine man, that was in times paſt very famous among them. Howbeit in the night it is dangerous to fetch water from thence, becauſe it is ſo full of blood-ſuckers or horſe-leeches. The townesmen are of two ſorts: for ſome be fiſhers, and the reſidue are pirates, which daily doe great harme vnto the Chriſtians. Vpon the mountaines grow great ſtore of wood, verie commodious for the building of ſhips and of galleies. The inhabitants of which mountaines are almoſt wholly employed about carrying of the ſaid wood from place to place. They haue very little corne growing, for which cauſe moſt of them eate barley bread. Their principall foode are certaine fiſhes (which the Italians call *Sardelli*) together with other like fiſhes. They haue ſuch abundance of fiſh, that one man alone is not able to draw vp a net; wherefore whoſoeuer will aſſiſt the fiſhermen in that buſines, are rewarded with good ſtore of fiſhes for their labour: yea ſometimes they will freely beſtow fiſhes vpon ſuch as paſſe by. They ſalt the foreſaid Sardelli, and ſend them to the mountaines to be ſold. In this towne there is a long ſtreet inhabited with Iewes, wherin dwell ſundry vintners that ſell excellent wines. So that in calme euenings the citizens vſe to carrie wine aboord their barkes in the ſea, and to ſpend their time in drinking and ſinging. In this towne ſtandeth a faire caſtle, but not ſtrong, wherein the gouernour hath his aboad. And neere vnto this caſtle the ſaide gouernour hath a palace, whereunto belongeth a moſt pleaſant garden. Vpon the ſhore the gouernour buildeth galleies and other ſhips wherewith they greatly moleſt the Chriſtians. Whereupon *Ferdinando* king of Spaine taking a certaine Iland within a mile of the towne, built a fort thereon, and ſo planted it with ordinance and ſouldiers, that neither their temples nor themſelues walking in the ſtreets were free therefrom, but were daily ſlaine. Wherefore the gouernour of the towne was conſtrained to craue ayde from the king of Fez, who ſent out a great armie againſt the Chriſtians; but they were partly taken, and partly ſlaine, ſo that verie few eſcaped backe vnto Fez. The Chriſtians kept this iſle almoſt two yeeres: and then

it

it was betrayed by a falſe trecherous Spaniard (who ſlew the gouernour of the iſle, becauſe he had taken his wife from him) into the Moores poſſeſſion, and all the Chriſtians were ſlaine: not a man of them eſcaped, ſaue onely the Spaniſh traitour, who in regard of his treaſon was greatly rewarded, both by the gouernour of Bedis, and alſo by the king of Fez. Being at Naples I heard the whole relation of this matter from a certaine man that was preſent at all the former exploits, who ſaid that they were done about the yeere of our Lord 1520. But now the ſaid iſland is moſt diligently kept by a garriſon of ſouldiers ſent from Fez: for Bedis is the neereſt hauen-towne vnto Fez vpon the Mediterran ſea ſhore, although it be an hundred and twenty miles diſtant. Euerie yeere or euerie ſecond yeere the Venetian galleies vſe to reſort vnto this iſle, and to exchange wares for wares with the inhabitants, or ſometimes to buy for readie money: which wares the Venetians tranſport vnto Tunis, Venice, Alexandria, and ſometime to Barutto.

Of the towne of Ielles.

THis towne being built vpon the Mediterran ſea ſhore is almoſt ſixe miles diſtant from Bedis: the hauen thereof is very commodious and much frequented by ſhips in fowle and tempeſtuous weather. Not farre from this towne are diuers mountaines and waſte deſerts growing full of pine trees. In my time it remained voide of inhabitants, by reaſon of certaine Spaniſh pyrates which haunted the ſame; and now there are but a few poore cottages of fiſhers, who ſtanding in dayly dread of the Spaniards, keepe continuall and circumſpect watch to ſee if they can eſcrie any ſhips making towards them, which if they do, they flee foorthwith vnto the next mountaines, bringing from thence a ſufficient number of armed men to withſtand the attempts of the Spaniards or Portugals.

Of the towne of Tegaſſa.

THis towne though it be but little is well ſtored with inhabitants, and ſtandeth vpon a riuers ſide, about two miles from the Mediterran ſea. Families it containeth to the number of fiue hundreth, the buildings thereof being very rude and homely: all the inhabitants are fiſhers and ſeafaring men, who from thence carrie victuals vnto other cities; for their own towne being enuironed with mountaines and woods, they haue no corne at all. Howbeit certaine vines there are, and very fruitfull trees, without which the whole region were in a miſerable caſe. Beſides barly-bread the inhabitants haue nought to liue on, ſauing a fewe little fiſhes and onions. I my ſelfe coulde hardly for one day endure the extreme ſtinking ſmell of their fiſhes, which ſtinch miſerablie infecteth the whole prouince.

Of

Of the towne of Gebha.

GEbha is a little towne walled round about, and built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran ſea ſhore. From Bedis it is aboue fower and twentie miles diſtant. Sometimes it hath inhabitants and ſometimes none, according to the cuſtome of that region. All the fields adiacent are vnfitte for corne, being full of fountaines and woods. Here alſo are certaine vines and other fruits, but no buildings of any account.

Of the towne of Mezemme.

IT is a very large ſea-towne ſtanding vpon a certaine hill which bordereth vpon the prouince of Garet. Neere vnto this towne lieth a verie large plaine, the length whereof ſtretching ſouthward is eight and twentie, and the breadth almoſt ten miles, and through the midſt of it runneth the riuer called Nocore, which diuideth the region of Errif from that of Garet. This plaine is occupied by certaine Arabian husbandmen, who reape ſuch plentie of corne there, that they are conſtrained to pay about fiue thouſand buſhels a yeere vnto the gouernour of Bedis. This citie was woont in times paſt to be well peopled, and was the metropolitan of the whole region, although it were continually moleſted with inconueniences. For firſt it was almoſt vtterly deſtroied by the patriarke of Cairaoan: who, bicauſe the towneſmen refuſed to pay him his woonted tribute, burnt it downe, and beheaded the gouernour thereof: whoſe head was carried to Cairaoan vpon the pike of a iaueline. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 318. From thencefoorth for fifteene yeeres after it remained deſtitute of inhabitants: and then vnder the ſame patriarke the foreſaide towne was by certaine noblemen inhabited a newe. Laſtly it was taken by a certaine great man of Cordoua. He ſeeing this citie ſtande within fower-ſcore miles of his confines (for ſo broad is the ſea betweene Malaga in Granada, and this part of Barbarie) began to demaund tribute of the citizens: which when they refuſed to pay, he tooke their towne with a ſmall number of men: for the patriark coulde not in ſo ſhort ſpace ſuccour it, by reaſon that Cairaoan is diſtant from thence aboue *three and twentie hundreth miles. Wherefore this towne being taken and vtterly razed, the gouernour thereof was ſent captiue vnto Cordoua, where he ſpent the reſidue of his daies in priſon. And now the wals of this towne are onely to be ſeene. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 892. Now let vs ſpeake ſomewhat of the mountaines of Errif.

*Here ſeemeth to be an error in the originall.

Of mount Benigarir.

THis mountaine is inhabited by certaine people which came first from the mountaines of Gumera. It standeth neere vnto Terga, and is ten miles long, and almost fower miles broad. Vpon this mountaine are great store of woods, as likewise abundance of vines and oliues. The inhabitants are miserable and poore people. Cattell are very scarce among them: they vse to make much wine and sodden must. Neither haue they any store of barly growing vpon this mountaine.

Of mount Beni Mansor.

THis mountaine containeth in length fifteene, and in bredth almost fiue miles. Vpon this mountaine are great store of woods and fountaines: All the inhabitants are most valiant, and yet poore and miserable people, for the whole mountaine yeeldeth nothing but vines: they haue indeed some small number of goats. Euery weeke they haue a market, whereunto is brought nothing but garlike, onions, raisins, salt fishes called before Sardelli, togither with some corne and panicke, whereof they make bread. This hill is subiect to the gouernour of Bedis.

Of mount Bucchuia.

THis mountaine is fowerteene miles long, and almost eight miles broad. The inhabitants are richer and somewhat better apparelled then they of other mountaines, & possesse great store of horses. Corne it yeeldeth in abundance: neither are the people constrained to pay any great tribute, by reason of a certaine holy man buried at Bedis, and borne vpon this mountaine.

Of mount Beni Chelid.

BY this mountaine lieth the high way from Bedis to Fez. It is a verie cold place, and containeth great store of wood and fountaines. It yeeldeth no corne, but vines onely. The inhabitants being subiect to the gouernour of Bedis, are by reason of continuall exactions so impouerished, that they are faine to rob and steale for their liuing.

Of mount Beni Mansor.

THis mountaine extendeth eight miles, standing an equall distance from the sea with the mountaines aforesaid. The inhabitants are valiant and stout people, but too much addicted to drunkennes. Wine they haue great store, and but little corne. Their women keepe goates and spinne

ſpinne vpon the diſtaffe both at one time: the greater part of whom will not refuſe the diſhoneſt company of any man.

Of mount Beni Ioſeph.

THE length of this mountaine is twelue miles, and the bredth about eight miles. The inhabitants are poore, and baſely apparelled: neither haue they any corne but panicke, whereof they make blacke and moſt vnſauorie bread. They liue alſo vpon onions, and garlike. Their fountaines are very muddie. They haue great ſtore of goates, the milke whereof they keepe as a moſt precious thing.

Of mount Beni Zaruol.

VPon this mountaine are great ſtore of vines, olines, and other fruites. The inhabitants are poore miſerable people, being ſubiect to the gouernour of Seuſaoen, who exacteth ſo great tribute at their handes, that all which they can ſcrape and get out of the mountaine will hardly maintaine them. Euery weeke they haue a market, wherein nothing is to be ſolde, but onely dried figs, raiſins, and oile. Likewiſe they vſe to kill their hee and ſhee goats, whoſe fleſh is ſo vnſauorie, that it cannot be eaten, vnleſſe it be fried.

Of mount Beni Razin.

THis mountaine bordereth vpon the Mediterran ſea, not farre from Terga. The inhabitants liue a ſecure and pleaſant life; for the mountaine is impregnable, and aboundeth with all kinde of graine, neither are they conſtrained to pay any tribute at all. They haue likewiſe good plentie of oliues and wine; and their ground is exceeding fruitfull, eſpecially vpon the ſide of the mountaine. Their women partly keepe goates, and partly till the ground.

Of mount Seuſaoen.

THere is no mountaine in all Africa for pleaſant ſituation comparable to this: hereon ſtandeth a towne inhabited with all kinde of artificers and merchants. Vpon this mountaine dwelleth one called *Sidi Heli Berraſed*, being lord ouer many mountaines. This *Sidi Heli* brought ſome ciuilitie into this mountaine, rebelled againſt the king of Fez, and maintained continuall warre againſt the Portugals. The inhabitants of the villages of this and the foreſaid mountaines, are free from all taxation and tribute, becauſe they ſerue vnder their captaine as well for horſemen as for footemen. Corne heere groweth ſmall ſtore, but great plentie of flaxe. There are great woods, and many fountaines vpon this hill: and the inhabitants go all decently apparelled.

Of

Of mount Beni Gebara.

THis mountaine is very ſteepe, and of a woonderfull height, out of the foote whereof ſpring certaine riuers. Vines and figges here are great ſtore, but no corne at all: and the inhabitants weare moſt baſe attire. They haue abundance of goats, & oxen of ſo little a ſtature, that a man would take them to be calues of halfe a yeere olde. Euery weeke they haue a market, being furniſhed with very few commodities. Hither doe the merchants of Fez reſort, and the muletters or carriers, which conueie fruits out of this mountaine vnto Fez. In times paſt it was ſubiect vnto a certaine prince of the king of Fez his kinred: and there were collected out of this mountaine almoſt two thouſand ducates of yeerely tribute.

Of mount Beni Ierſo.

THis mountaine in times paſt was exceedingly well peopled. Heere was likewiſe a faire colledge built, wherein the Mahumetan lawe was publikely taught, for which cauſe the inhabitants were freed from all tributes and exactions. Afterward a certaine tirant being aſſiſted by the king of Fez, made this mountaine to become tributarie vnto him; but firſt he put the inhabitants to flight, and then deſtroied the colledge, wherein were founde bookes woorth more then fowre thouſand ducates, and the learned and famous men he cruelly put to the ſword. This was done in the 918. yeere of the Hegeira, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1509.

Of mount Tezarin.

THis mountaine called by the inhabitants Tezarin, ſtandeth neer vnto the foreſaid Beni Ierſo, & aboundeth greatly with fountaines, deſerts, & vineyards. Vpon the top thereof ſtand diuers ancient buildings, which (ſo farre foorth as I can conieƈture) were erected by the Romains. And here (as is before ſignified) certaine fond people continually ſearch in caues and holes of the earth for the Romains treaſure. All the inhabitants of this mountaine are moſt ignorant people, and greatly oppreſſed with exactions.

Of mount Beni Buſibet.

THis is a moſt cold mountaine, and therefore it yeeldeth neither corne nor cattell, both by reaſon of the extreme coldnes, and the barrennes thereof. Moreouer the leaues of the trees are not fit for goates to feede vpon. They haue ſo great plentie of nuts, that they abundantly furniſh the citie of Fez, and all other neighbour cities and townes therewith. All their grapes are blacke, whereof they make a certaine pleaſant meate called Zibibbo.

Zibibbo. Zibibbo. They make likewiſe great ſtore of muſt and wine. They are clad in certaine woollen clokes or mantles, ſuch as are vſed in Italy: theſe mantles haue certaine hoods, which couer their heads and viſages ſo, that you can ſcarce diſcerne them to be men: and they are particoloured with blacke and white ſpots. In winter the merchants that reſort vnto this mountaine to carrie away nuts and raiſins vnto Fez, can ſcarce finde any meate to eate, for there is neither corne nor fleſh, but onely onions and certaine ſalt fiſhes, which are extreme deere. They vſe likewiſe to eate ſodden muſt and beanes dreſſed after their manner, and this is the daintieſt fare that this mountaine can affoord; and their ſodden muſt they eate with much bread.

Of mount Beni Gualid.

IT is an exceeding high and ſteepe hill, and the inhabitants are very rich, for of their blacke grapes they make the foreſaid meate called Zibibbo. Almonds, figges, and oliues they haue in great abundance: neither pay they any tribute vnto the king of Fez, but onely each family one fourth part of a ducate, to the end they may haue free libertie to buie and ſell in Fez market. And if any citizen of Fez doth them any wrong, when they take him or anie of his kinred in their mountaine, they will not ſuffer him to returne home to Fez, till ſufficient recompence be made. Theſe people go decently apparelled, and they haue a priuilege granted, that whatſoeuer perſons are baniſhed out of Fez, may freely remaine in their mountaine; yea, they will beſtow their liuing gratis vpon ſuch baniſhed perſons, ſo long as they continue amongſt them. And doubtles if this mountaine were ſubiect vnto the king of Fez, it would affoord him yeerely for tribute ſixe thouſand ducates: for it containeth mo then ſixe hundreth rich families.

Of mount Merniza.

THis mountaine ſtandeth iuſt by the former, the inhabitants being endued with the ſame nobilitie, libertie, and wealth, that the people of the former are endued with. The women of this mountaine for any light iniurie offered by their husbands, leauing foorthwith their ſaide husbands and children, will depart vnto ſome other mountaine, and ſeeke them newe paramours fit for their humor. For which cauſe they are at continuall warre one with another: neither will they be reconciled till he that is laſt poſſeſſed of the woman pay her former husband all ſuch money as he ſpent in the ſolemnizing of her marriage: and for this purpoſe they haue certaine iudges, that make their poore clients ſpend almoſt all their whole ſubſtance.

Of mount Hauguſtian.

IT is an exceeding high and a cold mountaine, containing great ſtore of ſprings, and abundance of vines bearing blacke grapes, togither with plen-

plentie of figs, of honie, and of quinces: howbeit the sweetest and faireſt quinces grow vpon a plaine at the foote of the hill. Likewise they are well stored with oile, and are free from all tribute, and yet there is not one of them, but in token of a thankefull minde will sende great gifts vnto the king of Fez: hence it is that they may freely and securely traffique with the people of Fez, of whom they buie great store of corne, wooll, and cloth. They are most ciuilly and decently apparelled, especially such as dwell vpon the principall part of this mountaine, who are most of them either merchants or artificers, and a great many of them gentlemen.

Of Mount Beni Iedir.

THis is a great and well peopled mountaine, but it yeeldeth nought but grapes, whereof they vse to make the foresaid Zibibbo and wines. The inhabitants were in times past free from all tribute; howbeit in regard of their daily robberies and outrages committed against other people, the gouernour of Bedis being aided with some souldiers of Fez, subdued them all, and depriued them of their libertie: in this mountaine there are about fiftie farmes or granges, which scarcely pay fower hundred ducates for tribute.

Of Mount Lucai.

THis mountaine is of a wonderfull height, and verie difficult to ascend. The inhabitants are exceeding rich, hauing great abundance of raisins, figs, almonds, oyle, quinces, and pome-citrons: and dwelling but fiue and thirtie miles distant from Fez, they carrie all their fruits and commodities thither. They are almost all gentlemen, and verie proude and high minded, so that they would neuer pay any tribute at all: for they know that their mountaine is so fortified by nature, that it cannot easily be subdued: here likewise all such as are banished out of Fez, except onely adulterers, are friendly entertained: for the inhabitants are so iealous, that they will admit no adulterers into their societie. The king of Fez granteth them many priuileges and fauours, in regard of the great commodities which he reapeth out of their mountaine.

Of mount Beni Guazeuall.

THis mountaine is almost thirtie miles long, and about fifteen miles broad: it is diuided into three parts, and betweene this and the mountaines aforesaid run certaine little riuers. The inhabitants are most valiant & warlike people, but extremely oppressed and burthened with exactions by the gouernor of Fez, who euery yeere demaundeth of this mountaine for tribute eighteen

thousand ducates: the mountaine indeed aboundeth with grapes, oliues, figs, and flaxe, whereby great summes of mony are raised; howbeit whatsoeuer they can gather goeth presently to the gouernour of Fez, who hath his officers and receiuers in the mountaine, which doe miserably oppresse and bribe the inhabitants: in this mountaine are a great number of villages and hamlets, that containe some an hundred, and some two hundred families and aboue: of most expert & trained soldiers they haue aboue fiue & twentie thousand, & are at continuall war with those that border vpon them. But the king of Fez for those that are slaine on both parts requireth great sums of mony, so that he gaineth much by their dissensions. In this mountaine there is a certaine towne indifferently well peopled, and furnished with all kinde of artificers; whereunto the fields belonging maruellously abounde with grapes, quinces, and pome-citrons, all which are sold at Fez: here are likewise great store of linnen weauers, and manie iudges and lawyers. They haue also a good market, whereunto the inhabitants of the neighbour mountaines resort. Vpon the top of this mountaine there is a certaine caue or hole that perpetually casteth vp fire. Some woondering greatly at the matter, haue cast in wood, which was suddenly consumed to ashes: I my selfe neuer saw the like miracle in any other place, so that a great manie thinke it to be hell-mouth.

A caue or hole that perpetually casteth vp fire.

Of mount Benigueriaghell.

IT standeth neer vnto the mountaine last mentioned, and yet the inhabitants of these mountaines are at continnall warre and discord. At the foot of this mountaine there is a large plaine which extendeth to the territorie of Fez, and through the same runneth that riuer which the inhabitants call Guarga. This mountaine greatly aboundeth with oyle, corne, and flaxe, for which cause here are great store of linnen-weauers. The greatest part of al their commodities is gathered for the kings vse, so that they which otherwise would prooue exceeding rich, becom by this meanes starke beggers, and that especially by reason of the courtiers continuall extortions. They are people of an ingenuous and valiant disposition. Souldiers they haue almost twelue thousand, and to the number of threescore villages.

Of mount Beni Achmed.

THis mountaine is eighteene miles long and seuen miles broad. It is verie steepe and containeth many waste deserts, and yeeldeth likewise great store of grapes, oliues, & figs: howbeit the soile is not so apt for corne. All the inhabitants are continually oppressed with the exactions of the Fessan king. At the foote of this mountaine are diuers springs and small streames, the water whereof is muddie and vnpleasant in taste, for in regard

gard of the nature of the sande or earth it tasteth of chalke. There are many in this place, the balles of whose throte-pipes are verie great and sticke farre out, like vnto those abouementioned. All of them drinke pure wine, which being boyled will last fifteene yeeres, howbeit they boyle not all their wine, but some they keepe vnboyled, and they yeerely make great quantity of boiled wine, which they vse to put in vessels, that are narrow at the bottome, and broad at the top. They haue euerie weeke a great market, where wine, oyle, and raisins are to bee sold. The people of this mountaine likewise are extreme poore and beggerly, as a man may coniecture by their apparell. They haue had continuall and ancient quarrels among themselues, which make them oftentimes fall together by the eares.

Wine that will last fifteene yeeres.

Of mount Beni Iegineſen.

THis mountaine bordereth vpon Beni Achmed, & stretcheth in length almost ten miles. And betweene it and mount Beni Achmed runneth a certaine small riuer. The inhabitants are too much addicted to drunkennes, by reason that their wines are so excellent. No fruits grow vpon this mountaine but onely great abundance of grapes. Goates they haue which liue continually in the woods, neither haue they any other flesh to eate but goates-flesh. I my selfe had great acquaintance with the inhabitants, by reason that my father had some possessions vpon the mountaine: but he hardly got any rents or money at their hands: for they are the woorst paymasters that euer I knew.

Of mount Beni Meſgalda.

THis mountaine bordereth vpon the mountaine last mentioned, and vpon the riuer of Guarga. The inhabitants make great store of liquid sope, for they know not how to make hard sope. At the foote of this mountaine there is a large plaine possessed by certaine Arabians, who haue often combates with them of the mountaine. They pay yeerly to the K. of Fez an huge summe of mony, and it is a woonder to see with what new exactions they are daily burthened. In this mountaine are many Doctors of the Mahumetan lawe, and diuers inferior students: who put the inhabitants to great damage. Themselues forsooth will drinke wine, and yet they perswade the people that it is vnlawfull for them to drinke it, albeit some do giue them little credit. The inhabitants of this mountaine pay in respect of others no great tribute, and that perhaps, because they maintaine the foresaid Doctors and students.

Of mount Beni Guamud.

THis mountaine ſtandeth ſo neere vnto the territorie of Fez, that they are diuided onely by a riuer. All the inhabitants make ſope, out of which commoditie the king of Fez reapeth ſixe thouſand ducates of yeerely tribute. The villages of this mountaine are about fiue and twentie in number. All the ſides thereof bring foorth corne and cattell in great abundance, ſauing that they are ſometimes deſtitute of water. The inhabitants are verie rich and carrie all kinde of wares to Fez, where they gaine exceedingly by them. This mountaine yeeldeth nothing, but is commodious for mans vſe. From Fez it is almoſt ten miles diſtant.

Of Garet, one of the ſeuen Prouinces of the Feſſan kingdome.

HAuing deſcribed all the chiefe townes and mountaines of the prouince of Errife, it now remaineth that we ſay ſomewhat of Garet, which is the ſixt Prouince of Fez. This Prouince beginneth weſtward from the riuer Melulo, and bordereth eaſtward vpon the riuer Muluia; ſouthward it is encloſed with the mountaines next vnto the Numidian deſert, and northward it extendeth to the Mediterran ſea. The bredth of this region along the ſea ſhore ſtretcheth from the riuer Nocor to the foreſaide riuer of Muluia: the ſouthern bredth is bounded with the riuer Melulo, & weſtward with the mountaines of Chauz. The length of this Prouince is fiftie, and the bredth fortie miles. The ſoyle is rough, vntilled, and barren, not much vnlike to the deſerts of Numidia. The greater part hath beene deſtitute of inhabitants, eſpecially euer ſince the Spaniards tooke two of the principall townes in all the Prouince, as we will in due place record.

Of the towne of Melela in Garet.

THis great and ancient towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine bay or hauen of the Mediterran ſea, containeth almoſt two thouſand families. It was in times paſt well ſtored with inhabitants, as being the head-citie of the whole prouince. It had a great iuriſdiction or territorie belonging thereto, and collected great abundance of yron and honie, whereupon the towne it ſelfe was called Mellela, which word in their language ſignifieth honie. In the hauen of this towne they fiſh for pearles, and get great ſtore of oiſters wherein pearles doe breed. This towne was once ſubiect vnto the Goths, but fell afterward into the Mahumetans poſſeſſion. The Goths being chaſed thence, fled ouer to Granada, which citie is almoſt an hundred miles diſtant, to wit, ſo farre as the bredth

of

of the sea is ouer. In my time the king of Spaine sent a great armie against this towne: before the arriuall whereof, the townesmen sent vnto the king of Fez for aide, who making warre as then against the people of Temesna, could send but small forces to succour them. Which the townesmen being aduertised of, and fearing least their small forces would prooue too weake for the Spanyards great armada, they tooke all the bag and baggage that they could carrie, and fled vnto the mountains of Buthoia. Howbeit the captaine of the Fessan soldiers, both to be reuenged vpon the townesmens cowardice, and also to leaue nothing for the Spanyards to inioy, burnt downe all the houses, temples, and buildings. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 896, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1487. But the Spanyards, for all they found the citie so wasted, would not depart thereupon, but first built a strong castle, and afterward by little and little repaired the towne-walles, and by that meanes haue kept possession thereof euen till this day.

Mellela enioyed and reedified by the Spaniards.

Of the towne of Chasasa.

THis towne is from Mellela aboue twenty miles distant. It hath beene a famous towne and strongly walled, with a royall hauen belonging thereunto, which was yeerely frequented by Venetian ships. The townesmen haue alwaies had great traffique with the people of Fez, to the exceeding commoditie of them both. At length, while the king of Fez was seriously imployed in the warres, Don *Ferdinando* king of Spaine came with great forces against it, and wan it very easily; for the inhabitants being aduertised of the Spanyards approch, betooke themselues wholy to flight.

Chasasa taken by the Spaniards.

Of the towne of Tezzota.

IT standeth vpon an high grauelly hill almost fifteene miles from Chasasa, and hath but a narrow passage to ascend vp vnto it. Within the towne they haue no water but onely out of one cesterne. The founders hereof are reported to haue beene some of the familie of *Beni Marin*, before they attained vnto great dominions, and in this towne they laid vp their corne and other of their commodities. At that time were all the deserts of the region adiacent void of danger, for the Arabians were not as yet possessed of Garet: but after the familie of *Beni-Marin* began to flourish, they left this towne and all the region of Garet vnto their neighbours, and went to inhabit better prouinces. Howbeit in the meane season *Ioseph* the sonne of king *Iacob* of the Marin-familie (I know not vpon what occasion) in a manner vtterly destroied Tezzota: but after the Christians were possessed of Chasasa, one of the king of Fez his captaines being a valiant man and borne in Granada, got licence of his prince to reedifie it againe. The inhabitants of this reedified towne are Moores, and are at continuall warre with the Christians of Chasasan.

Of the towne of Meggeo.

THis little towne ſtandeth vpon the top of an exceeding high mountaine, being weſtward from Tezzota ten miles, & almoſt 6. miles ſouthward of the Mediterran ſea. Founded it was by the Africans, and is inhabited with people of a noble and liberall diſpoſition. At the foote of this mountaine there are moſt fruitfull corne-fields. Likewiſe great ſtore of iron is digged out of the mountaines adioining. The gouernment of this towne was committed vnto one of the blood-royall, namely of the familie of *Muachidin*, whoſe father was not very rich, but being a weauer, he taught his ſonne the ſame occupation. Afterward the valiant yoong man being aduertiſed of the eſtate and nobilitie of his anceſtors, left his loome, and went to ſerue the king at Bedis, where he continued an horſeman for a certaine time: but becauſe he was an excellent muſitian, the king loued him moſt intirely for his skill in muſick. A while after, the gouernour of Tezzota requiring the kings aide againſt the Chriſtians, this woorthie yoong gentleman with three hundred horſemen was ſent to ſuccour him, who as he had valiantly behaued himſelfe oftentimes before, ſo now alſo he appeered to be a moſt reſolute commander. Howbeit the king regarded not his valour ſo much as his excellent skill in muſicke: which the yoong gallant diſdaining, went at length to Garet vnto certaine gentlemen of his acquaintance there, who ioining fiftie horſemen vnto him, appointed him gouernour of the caſtle of Meggeo: and afterward he was ſo wel beloued by all the inhabitants of the next mountaines, that each man according to his abilitie pleaſured and gratified him. At length the gouernour of Bedis hauing aſſembled an armie of three hundred horſemen and a thouſand footmen, went about to expell the foreſaid yoong gouernour out of Meggeo; who preſently with that ſmall troupe which he had, ſo valiantly encountred his enemies, that he put them to flight, and ſo growing famous in regarde of his manifolde victories, the king of Fez beſtowed very large reuenues vpon him (which he had giuen before-time vnto the gouernours of Bedis) to the ende he might wholy indeuour himſelfe to expell the Spanyards out of that region. And of this noble gouernour the Moores learned great skill in warlike affaires. The king of Fez hath now doubled his yeerely allowance, ſo that at this preſent he hath two hundred horſemen at command, who are of greater force, then two thouſand ſoldiers of any other captaines thereabout.

Yron-mines.

Of mount Echebdeuon.

THis mountaine extendeth from Chaſaſa eaſtward as farre as the riuer Muluia; and from the Mediterran ſea ſouthward it ſtretcheth vnto the deſert of Garet. The inhabitants are exceeding rich and valiant; and the mountaine it ſelfe aboundeth with honie, barlie, and all kinde of cattel. Here

are

are likewise great store of pleasant and greene pastures. But since that Chasasa was taken by the Spanyards, the people of this mountaine seeing that for want of soldiers they were not able to withstande the violence of their enemies, abandoned their owne mountaine, burnt their houses, and fled vnto the mountaines next adioining.

Of mount Beni Sahid.

WEstward this mountaine extendeth almost to the riuer Nocor, for the space of fower and twentie miles. The inhabitants are rich, valiant, and liberal, and entertaine all strangers with great courtesie and bountie. They haue abundance of iron and of barlie; and their pastures are very commodious, abounding with store of cattell; and yet in those pastures are their iron-mines, where they sometime lacke water; neither pay they any tribute at all. Their houses that dig the iron are not farre distant from the iron-mines. This iron the merchants sell at Fez in rude lumpes, because they vse not to frame it into barres, neither indeede haue they the cunning so to frame it. Also they make culters, spades, and such like tooles of husbandrie, and yet their iron hath no steele at all in it.

Of mount Azgangan.

THis mountaine beginning southward from Chasasa is inhabited with most rich and valiant people: for besides the great plentie of all things in the mountaine it selfe, it hath the desert of Garet adioining vpon it. The inhabitants of which desert haue great familiaritie and traffique with the people of the said mountaine: howbeit this mountaine also hath remained void of inhabitants, euer since the taking of Chasasa.

Of mount Beni Teuzin.

THe south part of this mountaine bordereth vpon the mountaine last mentioned, the length whereof from the desert of Garet to the riuer Nocor is almost ten miles; and on the one side thereof lie most beautifull & pleasant plaines. The inhabitants are all free, paying no tribute at all, and that perhaps, because they haue more soldiers, then Tezzota, Meggeo, and Bedis can affoord. Moreouer they are thought in times past so to haue assisted the gouernour of Meggeo, that by their aide he attained vnto that gouernment. They haue alwaies been great friends with the people of Fez, by reason of that ancient familiaritie which they had, before Fez was gouerned by a king. Afterward a certaine lawyer dwelling at Fez, who was borne in this mountaine, so represented vnto the king the said ancient familiaritie, that he obtained freedome for his countrie-men. At length also they were greatly beloued by the Marin-familie, perhaps bicause the mother of *Abu-*

Sahid

ſahid the third king of the ſaide familie was borne of noble parentage in the foreſaide mountaine.

Of mount Guardan.

THe north part of this mountaine ioineth vnto the former; and it ſtretcheth in length toward the Mediterran ſea twelue miles, and in bredth to the riuer of Nocor, almoſt eight miles. The inhabitants are valiant & rich. Euery ſaturday they haue a great market vpon the banke of a certaine riuer: and hither reſort many people from the mountaines of Garet, and diuers merchants of Fez, who exchange iron and bridles for oile, for in theſe mountaines grow great plentie of oliues. They haue little or no wine at all, notwithſtanding they are ſo neere vnto mount Arif, where the people carouſe wine in abundance. They were for a certaine time tributarie to the gouernour of Bedis, but afterward by the meanes of a learned Mahumetan preacher, the king granted them fauour, to pay each man ſo much tribute as themſelues pleaſed. So that ſending yeerely to the king ſome certaine ſum of money, with certaine horſes and ſlaues, they are put to no further charge.

Of the extreme part of the deſert of Garet.

THe prouince of Garet is diuided into three parts: the firſt whereof containeth the cities and townes, the ſecond the foreſaide mountaines, (the inhabitants whereof are called Bottoia) and the thirde comprehendeth the deſerts, which beginning northwarde at the Mediterran ſea, and extending ſouth to the deſert of Chauz, are bounded weſtward with the foreſaide mountaines, and eaſtward with the riuer of Muluia. The length of theſe deſerts is 60. miles, and the bredth thirty. They are vnpleaſant and dry, hauing no water but that of the riuer Muluia. There are many kinds of beaſts in this deſert, ſuch as are in the Lybian deſert next vnto Numidia. In ſommer time many Arabians take vp their abode neere vnto the riuer Muluia; and ſo do another kinde of fierce people called Bataliſa, who poſſeſſe great abundance of horſes, camels, and other cattell, and maintaine continuall warre againſt the Arabians that border vpon them.

A deſcription of Chauz, the ſeuenth prouince of the kingdome of Fez.

THis prouince is thought to comprehend the thirde part of the kingdome of Fez. It beginneth at the riuer Zha from the eaſt, & extendeth weſtward to the riuer Guruigara: ſo that the length thereof is an hundred fowerſcore and tenne, and the bredth an hundred threeſcore and ten miles: for all that part of mount Atlas which lieth ouer againſt Mauritania, ioineth vpon the bredth of this region. Likewiſe it

containeth

containeth a good part of the plaines and mountaines bordering vpon Lybia. At the same time when *Habdulach* the first king of the Marin-family began to beare rule ouer Mauritania and those other regions, his kinred began also to inhabite this region. This king left fower sonnes behinde him, whereof the first was called *Abubdar*, the second *Abuichia*, the third *Abusahid*, and the fourth *Iacob*: this *Iacob* was afterward chosen king, bicause he had vanquished *Muachidin* the king of Maroco, & had conquered the city of Maroco it selfe: the other three brethren died in their nonage: howbeit before *Iacob* had woon Maroco, the old king assigned vnto each of them three, one region a peece. The other three parts were diuided into seuen, which were distributed among the fower kinreds of the Marin-family, and two other tribes or families that were growen in great league with the same family: insomuch that this region was accounted for three regions. They which possessed the kingdome were ten in number, and the regions onely seuen. The foresaid king *Habdulach* was author of the saide partition, who left the region of Chauz after his decease in such estate, as we will foorthwith orderly describe.

Of the towne of Teurerto.

THis ancient towne was built vpon a mountaine by the Africans not farre from the riuer Zha. The fields hereof not being very large, but exceeding fruitfull, adioine vpon a certaine dry and barren desert. The north part of the same bordereth vpon the desert of Garet, and the south vpon the desert of Adurha: eastward thereof lieth the desert of Anghad, which is neere vnto the kingdome of * Telensin, and westward it is enclosed with the desert of Tafrata, which bordereth likewise vpon the towne of Tezza. This Teurerto was in times past a most populous and rich towne, and contained about three thousand families: heere also are stately palaces, temples, and other such buildings to be seene. The towne wall is built of most excellent marble. Euer since the Marin-familie enioied the westerne kingdome of Fez, this towne was an occasion of great warres: for the Marin-family woulde haue it belong to the crowne of Fez: but the king of Telensin chalenged it as his owne.

* *Or Tremisen.*

Of the towne of Haddagia.

THis towne was built by the Africans in manner of an Isle, for it is enuironed with the riuer Mululo, which not far from hence falleth into the riuer Muluia. It was in times past a most populous & flourishing towne: but after the Arabians became lords of the west, it fell by little and little to decay: for it bordereth vpon the desert of Dahra, which is inhabited with most lewde and mischieuous Arabians. At the same time when Teurerto was sacked, this towne was vtterly destroied also, whereof nothing remaineth at this day but the towne wals onely.

Of

Of the castle of Garsis.

IT standeth vpon a rocke by the riuer Muluia, fifteene miles distant from Teurerto. Here, as in a most impregnable place, the familie of Beni Marin laide their prouision of corne; when as they inhabited the deserts. Afterward it became subiect vnto *Abuhenan* the fift king of the Marin-familie. It hath no great quantitie of arable or pasture ground belonging thereto: but it hath a most pleasant garden repleni shed with grapes, peaches, and figges, and enuironed on all sides with most thicke and shadie woods, so that it is a paradise in respect of other places thereabout. The inhabitants are rude and vnciuill people, neither do they ought, but keepe such corne as the Arabians commit vnto their custodie. If a man behold the castle a farre off, he woulde thinke it rather to be a cottage then a castle: for the wall being in many places ruined, maketh shew of great antiquitie, and the roofe is couered with certaine blacke stones or slates.

Of the towne of Dubdu.

THis ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon an exceeding high and impregnable mountaine, and is inhabited by certaine people of the familie of Zeneta. From the top of this mountaine diuers springs come running into the towne. From this towne the next plaines are distant almost fiue miles, and yet they seeme to be but a mile and an halfe off; for the way is very crooked and winding. All the iurisdiction longing to this towne is onely vpon the toppe of the mountaine, for the plaine vnderneath is vnpleasant and barren; except certaine gardens on either side of a little riuer running by the foote of the hill: neither haue the townesmen corne growing vpon the same hill sufficient for their prouision, vnlesse they were supplied with great store of corne from Tezza: so that this towne was built for a fortresse onely by the family of Marin, what time they were dispossessed of the westerne kingdome. Afterward it was inhabited by a certaine family called Beni Guertaggen, who are lords of the saide towne euen till this day. But when the Marin-family were expelled out of the kingdome of Fez, the next Arabians endeuoured to winne the towne: howbeit by the aide of one *Mose Ibnu Chamu*, who was one of the saide family, the Arabians were so valiantly resisted, that they concluded a truce with the people of Marin: and so *Mose Ibnu* remained gouernour of the towne; after whose death his sonne *Acmed* succeeded him, who treading iust in his fathers vertuous steps, kept the saide towne in great tranquillitie euen till his dying day. After him succeeded one *Mahumet*, a man highly renowmed for his noble valour and great skill in martiall affaires. This *Mahumet* had before time conquered many cities and castles vpon the foote of the mount Atlas, southward whereof bordereth the land of Numidia. But hauing gotten this

towne

towne in possession, he beautified it exceedingly with store of faire houses and buildings: likewise he greatly altered and reformed the gouernment of this towne; and shewed such extraordinarie curtesie vnto al strangers, that he grew very famous. Moreouer the saide *Mahumet* consulted howe to get Tezza from the king of Fez, & offered great matters to the performance of his intent: and that he might the easlier attaine his purpose, he determined to go to the market of Tezza in a simple habite, and so to make an assault vpon the captaine of the towne: for he hoped that a great part of the townesmen, whom he knew to be his friends, woulde assist him in that enterprise. Howbeit this practise was at length discouered vnto the king of Fez (which king was called *Saich*, and was the first of the family of Quattas, and father vnto the king that *now reigneth) who presently assembled an huge armie, and marched of purpose against Dubdu, vtterly to destroy it: and so comming vnto the foote of the mountaine he there encamped. The people of the mountaine hauing gathered an armie of sixe thousand men, hid themselues craftilie behinde the rockes, suffering their enimies to ascende by certaine difficult & streite passages, from whence they were sure they could hardly escape, & so at length they brake foorth on the sodaine & encountred their said enemies being wearie of ascending; and because the way was very troublesome and narrow, the king of Fez his soldiers could not endure their assaults, but being constrained to giue backe, were moe then a thousand of them throwne downe headlong and slaine. In this skirmish were slaine in all to the number of three thousand Fessan soldiers: and yet the king not being dismaied with so great an ouerthrow, prepared foorthwith a band of fiue hundred crossebowes, and three hundred Harquebuziers, and determined to make a newe assault vpon the towne. But *Mahumet* seeing that he could no longer withstand the king, resolued to goe himselfe vnto him, that he might, if it were possible, obtaine peace, and to release his countrie from the furie of the enemie. Wherefore putting on the habit of an ambassadour, he went and deliuered a letter with his owne hand vnto the king. Which the king hauing perused, asked him what he thought concerning the gouernour of Dubdu? Mary I thinke (quoth *Mahumet*) he is not well in his wits, in that he goeth about to resist your Maiestie. Then said the king, if I had conquered him (as I hope to doe within these few daies) I would cause him to be dismembred and torne in peeces. But what if he should come hither (saith *Mahumet*) to submit himselfe, and to acknowledge his offence; might it then please the king to admit him into fauour? Then the king answered: I sweare vnto thee by this my head, that if he will come and acknowledge his fault in manner as thou hast said, I will not onely receiue him into fauour, but will espouse my daughters vnto his sonnes, and will bestowe most ample and princely dowries vpon them. But I am sure, being distraught of his wits (as thou hast said) that he will by no meanes come and submit himselfe. Then said *Mahumet*: he would soone come (I assure you) if it pleased the king to protest this for a certaintie vnto his nobles. I thinke (said the king) it hath beene

The great curtesie of Mahumet toward strangers.

*1526.

beene sufficiently protested and affirmed, sithence I haue bound it with a solemne oath in the presence of these fower; for heere stande my chiefe secretarie, the generall of my forces, my father in lawe, and the chiefe iudge and patriarke of Fez; the testimonie of which fower may well satisfie you. Whereupon *Mahumet* humblie falling at the kings feete: lo heere the man (quoth he) that submissely acknowledgeth his fault, and craueth the kings gratious pardon. With that the king himselfe lifted him from the ground, embraced him, and saluted him with friendly speeches. Then caused he both his daughters to be called, which he bestowed vpon *Mahumets* sonnes: all which being done, he remooued his armie from that mountaine, and returned conquerour vnto Fez. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 904. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1495. And in the yeere of the Hegeira 921. I my selfe was at the citie of Dubdu, where I was most curteously entertained by the foresaid *Mahumet*, in regard of certaine letters of commendation which I brought from the king of Fez and his brother. Neither would he cease enquiring how all things passed at the king of Fez his court.

Of the citie of Teza or Tezza.

THis great, noble, and rich citie of Tezza was built by the Africans, fiue miles from mount Atlas, being distant from Fez fiftie, from the Ocean an hundred and thirtie, and from the Mediterran sea seuen miles, and standing in the way from Garet to Chasasan. It contained in times past about fiue thousand families: the buildings of this towne are not very stately, except noblemens palaces, colleges, and temples, which are somewhat beautifull. Out of Atlas springeth a little riuer which runneth through the chiefe temple of this citie: and sometimes it falleth out, that certaine people bordering vpon the citie, vpon some quarrell with the citizens will cut off this riuer from the citie, and turne the course thereof some other way, which breedeth great inconueniences vnto the citizens: for then they can neither builde houses, nor get any water to drinke, but onely corrupt water which they take out of certaine cesterns, for which cause they are often constrained to make a league with those borderers. This citie both for wealth, ciuilitie, and abundance of people is the thirde citie of all the kingdome, and hath a greater temple then that at Fez: heere are likewise three colleges, with diuers bath-stoues, and a great number of hospitals. Each trade and occupation hath a seuerall place in this citie, like as they haue in Fez: the inhabitants are of a more valiant and liberall disposition, then they of Fez: heere are also great store of learned and rich men: and the fieldes adiacent are exceeding fruitfull. Without the citie wals are verie large plaines, and many pleasant streames, that serue to water their gardens which are replenished with all kinde of fruits: heere are abundance of vines also yeelding verie sweete grapes, whereof the Iewes (being fiue hundreth families) make excellent wine, such as I thinke all Africa scarce affoordeth better. In this

towne

towne ſtandeth a faire caſtle, where the gouernour hath his abode. The king of Fez aſſigned the gouerment of this towne vnto his ſecond ſonne, being rather a meete place for the kings owne reſidence, in regard of the wholeſome aire both in ſommer and winter: heere were the nobles of the Marin-family woont to remaine all ſummer, both in reſpect of the holeſomenes of the place, and alſo that they might defend thoſe regions from the Arabians dwelling in the deſerts: which Arabians reſorted yeerely to Tezza, to the end they might there furniſh themſelues with victuals and other neceſſaries, and brought dates thither from Segelmeſe to exchange for corne: the citizens alſo receiued of the Arabians for corne great ſummes of money, whereupon all of them in a manner grow exceeding rich, neither are they annoied ſo much with any inconuenience, as with durtie ſtreetes in winter. I my ſelfe was acquainted in this citie with a certaine aged ſire, whom the towneſmen adored as if he had beene a god: he was maruelous rich both in fruits, grounds, and other commodities, which the people beſtowed vpon him in great abundance. The citizens of Fez vſed to come fiftie miles (for ſo farre is Fez diſtant) onely to viſite the ſaide olde man. My ſelfe conceiued ſome great opinion of this aged ſire: but after I had ſeene him, I could finde no ſuch ſuperexcellencie in him, ſaue onely that he deluded the fonde people with ſtrange deuiſes. The iuriſdiction of this citie is very large, containing diuers mountaines vnder it, as we will foorthwith declare in order.

Of mount Margara.

THis mountaine is very high & difficult to aſcend, both by reaſon of the vaſt deſerts & the narrow paſſages, and it is diſtant from Teza almoſt fiue miles: the top of this hill is moſt fruitefull grounde, and full of cleere fountaines: the inhabitants being burthened with no exactions, gather yeerely great ſtore of corne, flaxe, and oile: they haue likewiſe abundance of cattell, and eſpecially of goates: neither doe they any whit regard princes. Hauing vpon a day vanquiſhed the king of Fez in battell, they carried a certaine captaine of Fez taken priſoner vnto the toppe of the hill, where in the kings owne preſence they put him to a moſt cruell, and miſerable death: whereupon the ſaide inhabitants haue beene at continuall diſcord with the people of Fez: they haue almoſt a thouſand ſoldiers, and their mountaine containeth about fiftie villages and hamlets.

Of mount Gauara.

THis mountaine being as difficult to aſcende as the former, ſtandeth weſtward of Fez, almoſt fifteene miles: both the ſides and top of this mountaine are very fruitefull for barly and flaxe: it is extended in length from eaſt to weſt eight miles, and in bredth about fiue miles: manie deſerts here are, haunted with apes and leopards. The greater part of the

inhabitants are linnen-weauers; people they are of a franke diſpoſition, neither can they till the fields adioining to their mountaine, by reaſon of their continuall diſſenſion with the king of Fez, vnto whom they will pay no tribute nor cuſtome at all, perhaps becauſe of the ſtrong ſituation of their mountaine,& for that it aboundeth with all things neceſſarie for mans ſuſtenance: ſo that albeit this mountaine were beſieged ten yeeres together, yet could it by no meanes be woon;neither is it euer deſtitute of water,for thereupon are two huge fountaines, which running downe into the plaine, become the heads of two riuers.

Of mount Megeſa.

THis mountaine alſo is ſomewhat difficult to aſcend: it is rough and full of woods,and yeeldeth little corne, but great plentie of oliues. The inhabitants being moſt part weauers (for their ſoile yeeldeth good ſtore of flaxe)are in the warres right valiant both on foote and horſebacke. Their faces are white, and that perhaps for the coldnes of the mountaine: neither doe theſe pay any tribute at all. Here alſo the exiles of Fez and Teza haue ſafe aboad, and albeit they haue great ſtore of gardens and vineyards, yet are they no wine drinkers. Soldiers they haue to the number of ſeuen thouſand, and almoſt fortie villages.

Of mount Baronis.

THis mountaine ſtandeth fifteene miles northward of Teza. The inhabitants are rich and mighty, and poſſeſſe great ſtore of horſes: neither doe they pay any tribute at all. This hill aboundeth with plentie of corne, fruits, and grapes, and yet they make no wine at all. Their women are white and fat, and adorne themſelues with much ſiluer. In this place alſo they entertaine exiles,but if any of them offer to haue familiaritie with their wiues, they puniſh him moſt ſeuerely; for of all iniuries they cannot indure this.

Of the mountaine called Beni Guertenage.

THis is an exceeding high and impregnable mountaine,both in regard of the ragged rocks, and of the vaſt deſertes, being diſtant from Teza about thirtie miles. This mountaine affoordeth great ſtore of corne, flaxe,oliues, pome-citrons, and excellent quinces. They haue likewiſe all ſorts of cattell in great abundance, except horſes and oxen. The inhabitants are valiant and liberall,and as decently apparelled as any citizens. The villages and hamlets of this mountaine are about thirtie fiue, and the ſoldiers almoſt three thouſand.

Of mount Gueblen.

THis high,cold,and large mountaine containeth in length about thirty, and in bredth about fifteene miles. Eaſtward it bordereth vpon the mountaine

mountaine of Dubdu, and westward vpon mount Beni-Iazga, and it is distant from Teza almost fiftie miles southward. At all times of the yeere the top of this mountaine is couered with snowe. The inhabitants in times past were most rich and valiant people, and liued in great libertie: but afterward when they began to play the tyrants, the people of all the mountaines adioyning hauing gathered great forces, inuaded this mountaine, slew them euerie one, and so burned and wasted their townes and villages, that vnto this day it hath remained voide of inhabitants: except onely a few, which detesting the cruell tyrannie of their parents, conueied themselues and all their goods vnto the top of the mountaine, where they liued an abstinent and vertuous life; wherefore these were spared, and their posteritie remaineth in the mountaine till this present: they are all learned and of honest conuersation, and well esteemed of by the king of Fez: one of them in my time being a very learned and famous old man was vsed by the king of Fez, both about treaties of peace, and in other serious affaires: and in this man the king reposed all his confidence, as if he had beene some petie-god: for which cause all the courtiers had him in great detestation.

Of mount Beni Iesseten.

THis mountaine is subiect vnto the gouernour of Dubdu, being inhabited with most base and beggerly people. Their houses are made of sea-rushes, and so likewise are their shooes made of such rushes when they trauel any iourney, whereby a man may coniecture the miserable estate of this people. The mountaine yeeldeth nought but panicke, whereof they make bread and other victuals: but at the foote thereof are certaine gardens repleniſhed with grapes, dates, and peaches. Their peaches they cut into fower quarters, and casting away the nuts or stones, they drie them in the sunne, and keepe them an whole yeere, which they esteeme for great dainties. Vpon this mountaine are many iron-mines: and they frame their iron in manner of horse-shooes, which serueth them sometimes in stead of money, whereof they haue great want in this mountaine, vnlesse the smithes by their arte keepe this money in store: who, besides horse-shooes, make certaine daggers with blunt points. Their women weare iron-rings vpon their fingers and eares for a great brauerie, but they are more basely apparelled then the men, and remaine continually in the woods, both to keepe goates, and to gather fewell. They haue neither ciuilitie nor learning, but liue after a brutish manner without all discretion and humanitie. *Iron-mines.*

Of mount Selelgo.

THis woodie mountaine is full of pine-trees and fountaines. Their houses are not made of stone, but of sea-rushes, so that they may easily be remooued from place to place, which is very commodious to

the inhabitants, for euery ſpring they leaue the mountaine and deſcend into the vallies, from whence about the end of May they are expelled by the Arabians which inhabit the deſerts: who by reaſon of their abundance of goates and other cattell, forſaking the ſaid deſerts, ſeeke vnto the fountaines and moiſt places: but in winter, becauſe their camels are ſo impatient of cold, they reſort vnto the woods, and warme regions. In this mountaine are great ſtore of lions, leopards, and apes. And from the ſaid mountaine runneth a certaine ſtreame of water with ſuch violence, that I haue ſeene a ſtone of an hundred pound waight carried with the force thereof: and here Subu taketh his beginning, which is the greateſt riuer of all Mauritania.

Lions, leopards, and apes.

Of mount Beni Iaſga.

THe inhabitants of this mountaine are rich, and ciuil people: it ſtandeth ſo neere the mountaine laſt mentioned, that they are onely ſeparated with the foreſaid riuer: and to the end they may the eaſilier paſſe from one moũtaine to another, they haue made a certaine ſtrange bridge in the midſt, and that in manner following: on either ſide ſtand certaine poſtes, through the which runneth a rope vpon a truckle or pulley, vnto which rope is faſtened a great basket, that will containe ten perſons, and that in ſuch ſort, that ſo often as they will paſſe ouer to the oppoſite mountaine, they enter into the basket, and drawing the rope whereon it hangeth, they are eaſily carried aloft in the aire ouer the riuer by the helpe of the foreſaid pulleyes, but ſomtimes with great hazard of their liues, eſpecially if the basket or the rope be worne in any place: yea and the diſtance of place is often an occaſion of great terrour. In this mountaine there is great ſtore of cattel, but little wood. It aboundeth likewiſe with moſt excellent fine wooll, whereof their women make cloth comparable vnto ſilke, which is ſolde at Fez for a great price. Here alſo is great plentie of oile. The king of Fez is lord of this mountaine, the yeerely tribute whereof amounting wel nigh to eight thouſand duckats, is paid to the gouernour of old Fez.

A wonderful bridge.

Of mount Azgan.

THis mountaine bordring eaſtward vpon Selelgo, weſtward vpon mount Sofroi, ſouthward vpon the mountaines by the riuer Maluia, and northward vpon the territorie of Fez, containeth in length fortie, and in bredth about fifteene miles. It is of an exceeding height, and ſo intolerably cold, that onely that ſide therof is habitable which looketh towards Fez. It aboundeth greatly with oliues and other fruites: and from thence alſo run great ſtore of fountaines into the plaines and fields adiacent, which are moſt fruitfull for barlie, flaxe, and hempe. In my time there were abundance of mulberie-trees planted vpon this plaine, which beare white berries, and bring foorth ſilke-wormes. The inhabitants in winter dwell in moſt baſe cottages.

Their

Their water is most extremely cold: insomuch that I my selfe knew one, who with drinking onely a cup thereof, suffered most intolerable gripings and tortures in his bowels for three moneths after.

Of the towne of Sofroi.

THis towne being situate at the foote of mount Atlas, and standing about fifteene miles southward of Fez, almost in the way to Numidia, was built by the Africans betweene two riuers, on either sides whereof grow great abundance of grapes and all kinde of fruites. The towne for fiue miles compasse is enuironed with oliue-trees: but the fieldes are apt onely for hempe and barlie. The inhabitants are very rich, notwithstanding they goe in meane apparell, and greazie with oile, the occasion whereof is in that they carie oile vnto Fez to sell. There is no memorable thing in all their towne, saue onely a certaine temple, through the midst whereof runneth a large riuer; and at the doores standeth a fountaine of most pure water. Howbeit the greatest part of this towne is fallen to decay by the negligence of one of the kings brothers that now raigneth, & is ruined in many places.

Of the towne of Mezdaga.

THis towne being situate likewise at the foote of Atlas; and standing about eight miles westward of Sofroi, is compassed with a faire wall, and albeit the houses thereof are but meane, yet euery one hath a fountaine of cleere water belonging vnto it. Most of the inhabitants are potters, because they haue such abundance of porcellan earth, whereof they make great store of earthen vessels, and send them to be sold at Fez, from whence they are but twelue miles distant southward. Their fields are most fruitfull for barlie, flaxe, and hempe: and they gather yeerely great abundance of figs, and of other fruits. In the forrests about this towne, as also about the former, are maruellous store of lions, being not very hurtfull, for any man may driue them away with a little sticke. *Porcellan.*

Of the towne of Beni Bahlul.

THis little towne standing vpon the side of Atlas towards Fez, is distant from Fez about twelue miles, not farre from the high way leading to Numidia. Through the midst of this towne run certaine little riuers from the next mountaine, neither doth it differ much in situation from Mezdaga, sauing that the south frontier thereof is ful of woods, whereout the inhabitants get timber and fewell, and carrie it vnto Fez to be solde. They are oppressed with continuall exactions of courtiers and others, neither haue they any ciuilitie at all among them.

Of the towne called Ham Lisnan.

THis towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine enuironed with mountaines, in the way from Sofroi to Numidia, borrowed the name thereof from the fountaine of an idoll, vpon the occasion following. At the same time while the Africans were as yet idolaters, they had a temple standing neere vnto this towne, whither at certaine times of the yeere resorted in the night great multitudes of people both men and women: where hauing ended their sacrifices, they vsed to put out their lights, and euerie man to commit adulterie with that woman which hee first touched. But the women which were present at this abominable sport, were forbidden to lie with any man for a yeere after: and the children begotten in the saide adulterie, were kept and brought vp by the priest of the temple, as being dedicated to sacred vses. In the same temple there was a fountaine which is to be seene at this day: but neither the temple it selfe, nor any monument or mention of the towne is remaining, because they were vtterly demolished by the Mahumetans.

Of the towne of Mahdia.

THis towne being situate vpon a plaine, betweene mount Atlas, and certaine woods and riuers, is about ten miles distant from the former. The founder thereof was a certaine Mahumetan preacher of that nation, which was borne in the next mountaine: and it began to be built at the same time when the familie of Zeneta were lords of the Fessan kingdome. But when king *Ioseph* of the Luntune family got possession of the said kingdom, this towne was so wasted and destroyed, that the beautifull temple with some part of the towne wall onely was left standing, and the inhabitants became tributarie to the king of Fez: this was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 515.

Of Sahblel Marga, that is, The plaine of the valiant man.

THis plaine containeth in length fortie, and in bredth almost thirtie miles, neere vnto it are certaine mountains which border vpon mount Atlas: and in these mountaines are waste deserts ful of goodly timber: here are likewise a great number of cottages inhabited with colliers for the most part, who carrie abundance of coales from the said mountaines to Fez. The lions that are here doe so haunt the poore colliers, that sometimes they deuour them. From hence likewise are carried to Fez store of excellent and great beames of timber. All the plaine is so barren and drie, that it will scarce bring foorth any good thing at all.

Of

Of the plaine called Azgari Camaren.

THis plaine also is inuironed around with woodie mountaines, being a kinde of medowe-ground, for it is couered all ouer with most pleasant herbes and grasse: wherfore in the sommer time they vse to keepe their cattell heere, and to defend them with high and strong hedges from the fury of the lions.

Of mount Centopozzi.

VPon this high mountaine are great store of most ancient buildings, neere vnto the which there is a hole or drie pit of so great a depth, that the bottome thereof can in no wise be seene. Into this pit some mad fellowes will haue themselues let downe by ropes, carrying a candle or torch in their hands: and beneath they say it is diuided into manie roumes, and as it were, chambers; and last of all they come to a most large place hewen out of the rocke with instruments, and compassed about as it were with a wall, in which wall are fower doores which lead to other more narrow places, where they say that fountaines of springing water are. And sometimes it falleth out that some miserably ende their liues here: for if their lights chaunce to be blowen out with anie sudden blast of wind, they can by no meanes finde the place where the rope hangeth, but are there constrained to die for extreme famine. It was told me by a certaine nobleman of Fez, that there were ten persons, who being desirous to see the woonders of this pit, and being prepared for the same purpose, went first three of them downe, who when they were come to the foresaid fower doores, two of them went one way, and the third went alone another way. And being thus diuided, after they had proceeded almost a quarter of a mile, there came great swarmes, of bats flying about their lights, insomuch that one light was put out; at length being come to the springing fountaines, they found there certaine white bones of men, and fiue or sixe candles, whereof some were new, and others were olde and worne with long lying there: but hauing found nothing but water in the said fountaines, they returned backe againe the same way that they came: and they had scarce gone halfe way, but their other light also was blowen out with a sudden blast. Afterward seeking earnestly vp and downe, and being wearie of manie falles that they caught among the rockes, they found that there was no hope of returne: wherefore in this desperate case committing themselues with teares into the hands of God, they vowed, if they once escaped this danger, neuer to aduenture any more. They that stood at the caues mouth being ignorant of their companions misshappe expected their returne, and hauing staide ouer long, at length they let downe themselues by the rope, and began with lights to seeke their fellowes, making a great

great noiſe, and at length found them heauie and ſad. But the third who was wandring vp and downe thoſe darke places, they could by no meanes finde, wherefore leauing him, they returned foorth of the caue. And he that was left behinde heard at length a noiſe like the barking of little dogs, and ſhaping his courſe toward them, he found immediately fower ſtrange, and (as it ſhould ſeeme) new-borne beaſts, after which followed the *damme being not much vnlike to a ſhee-woolfe, ſauing that ſhe was bigger: wherefore he began exceedingly to feare; howbeit there was no danger, for being about to flee, the beaſt came towards him, fawning gently vpon him with her taile. And ſo at length, after long ſeeking, he found the holes mouth with great ioy, and eſcaped the danger. For within a while he ſaide that he began to ſee ſome glimmering of light, as they do which haue long bin in the darke. But after a certaine time this caue was filled with water vp to the top.

* *The beaſt called Dabah.*

Of the mountaine of rauens, called Cunaigel Gherben.

THis mountaine ſtandeth verie neere the former, and is full of woods and lions. Here is no citie, nor any other place of habitation, perhaps by reaſon of the extreme coldnes of the place. From this mountaine runneth a certaine little riuer: and here is a rocke of an exceeding height, whereupon keepe infinit ſwarmes of crowes and rauens, which ſome thinke to haue beene the occaſion of the name of this mountaine. Sometime the terrible northerly windes bring ſuch abundance of ſnow vpon this mountaine, that ſuch as trauell from Numidia towards Fez looſe their liues thereby, as hath beene ſignified in the firſt booke. Euerie ſommer the Arabians next inhabiting, beeing called Beni Eſſen, vſually reſort vnto this mountaine, in regard of the coole water and pleaſant ſhadowes, notwithſtanding they knowe it to be haunted with great ſtore of lions and leopards.

Of the towne of Tezerghe.

THis little towne was by the Africans built in manner of a fort vpon the ſide of a ſmall riuer which runneth by the foote of the foreſaid mountaine: both the inhabitants and their houſes are moſt baſe and deſtitute of all ciuilitie. Their fields being enuironed with the mountaines adioyning, bring foorth ſome ſmall quantitie of barley and peaches. The inhabitants are all ſubiect vnto certaine Arabians called Deuil Chuſein.

Of the towne called Vmen Giunaibe.

THis auncient towne beeing deſtroyed by the Arabians was ſituate about twelue miles from Tezerghe vpon the ſouth ſide of Atlas. It is ſo dangerous a place by reaſon of the often inuaſions of certaine Arabians, that none almoſt dare trauell that way. There lyeth a way neere this towne, which

which a man may not passe without dauncing and leaping, vnlesse he will fall into an ague: the certaintie whereof I haue heard many auouch.

Of mount Beni Merasen.

THe inhabitants of this exceeding high and colde mountaine haue great plentie of horses and asses: here are store of mules likewise, which carie wares vp and downe without either bridle or saddle. Their houses are built not with walles of stone, but of rushes. The people are very rich, and pay no tribute to the king, perhaps in regard of the strong situation of their mountaine.

Of mount Mesettaza.

THis mountaine extendeth in length from east to west almost thirtie miles, and twelue miles in bredth. The west part thereof adioineth vpon the plaine of Edecsen, which bordereth vpon Temesna. It is like vnto the foresaid mountaine, both in regard of the inhabitants, and also for plentie of horses and mules. At Fez there are great store of learned men which were borne in this mountaine: they pay no tribute at all, but onely send the king such gifts as themselues please.

Of the mountaines of Ziz.

THese mountaines are thought to haue borrowed their name from a certaine riuer springing out of them. Eastward they begin at Mesettaza, and extend westward to the mountaines of Tedla and Dedis, southward they border vpon that part of Numidia which is called Segelmesse, and northward vpon the plaines of Edecsen and Guregra: in length they containe an hundred, and in bredth almost fortie miles: in number they are fifteene, being extremely cold and difficult to ascend, and sending foorth many streames of water. The inhabitants are called Sanaga, and are men most patient of all boisterous and cold weather. They weare but one coate at all seasons of the yeere, ouer which they cast a kinde of cloke or mantle: their legs and feete they wrap in certaine clothes as it were in swathing bands, and they goe at all times bare-headed. In this mountaine are great store of mules, asses, and other cattell, but very few deserts. The inhabitants are a most lewd and villanous generation, being wholy addicted to theft and robberie. They are at continuall dissension with the Arabians, and practise daily mischiefes and inconueniences against them, and to the end they may prouoke them to greater furie, they will sometimes throwe their camels downe headlong from the top of some high mountaine. In these mountains there happeneth a certaine strange and incredible matter, for there are serpents so familiar with men, that at dinner-time they wil come like dogs & cats

Domestical and tame serpents.

cats, and gather vp the crums vnder the table, neither wil they hurt any body, vnleſſe they be offered ſome iniurie. The walles of their houſes are made of chalke, and the roofes are couered with thatch. There are alſo another kinde of inhabitants in theſe mountaines, who poſſeſſe more droues of cattell then the former, and dwell for the moſt part in cottages made of ruſhes. And theſe carrie vnto Segelmeſe butter and wool to be ſold, but at that time only when the Arabians inhabite the deſerts, for it often falleth out that they are encoũtred by them, & ſpoiled of their goods. Theſe people are moſt valiant warriours, for they will fight euen to the laſt gaſpe, rather then be taken of their enemies: they carrie fower or fiue iauelins about with them, wherewith they know right well how to defend themſelues from the enemie. They fight alwaies on foote, neither can they be vanquiſhed but with a great number of horſemen, and they vſe to carrie ſwords and daggers with them alſo. In my time they obtained ſafe conduct of the Arabians, and the Arabians of them likewiſe, which was a cauſe, that the merchants of both partes trauelled more ſecurely.

Of the towne of Gerſeluin.

THis ancient towne was built by the Africans at the foote of one of the foreſaid mountaines, not farre from the riuer of Ziz. It is enuironed with an impregnable and ſtately wall, the founder whereof was a certaine king of the Marin-familie. In regard of the walles and bulwarks it is a moſt beautifull towne. But being once entred thereinto, you ſhall ſee moſt baſe and beggerly houſes, and ſcarce any inhabitants dwelling in them, and that by the iniurie of certaine Arabians, who when they reuolted from the Marin-familie, tooke this towne and grieuouſly oppreſſed the citizens. Their drie and barren fields lie open to the north. Vpon the riuer are diuers mils, and by the ſide thereof are many gardens repleniſhed with grapes and peaches, which they vſe to drie in the ſunne, and to keepe an whole yeere. They haue great ſcarcitie of cattell, which cauſeth them to liue a moſt miſerable life. This towne was built by the familie of Zeneta in ſtead of a fort, to the end it might be a place of refuge onely in their iournie to Numidia, but afterward it was ſurpriſed and vtterly deſtroied by the familie of Luntuna. Here alſo are great ſtore of ſuch domeſticall ſerpents, as we reported to be in the mountaines of Ziz.

Here endeth the third booke.

IOHN

IOHN LEO HIS FOVRTH BOOKE OF the Hiſtorie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

A deſcription of the kingdome of Telenſin.*

* Or Tremizen.

THis kingdome beginneth weſtward from the riuers of Zha & Muluia, eaſtward it bordereth vpon The great riuer, ſouthward vpon the deſert of Numidia, and northward vpon the Mediterran ſea. This region was called by the Romanes Cæſaria, and was by them inhabited: howbeit after the Romanes were expelled, it was fullie poſſeſſed by the ancient gouernours thereof called Beni Habdulguad, and being a generation of the familie of Magraua. And it remained vnto them and their ſucceſſors three hundred yeeres, vntill ſuch time as a certaine mightie man called *Ghamrazen* the ſonne of *Zeÿen* tooke poſſeſſion thereof. His poſteritie changing at length their ancient name were called *Beni Zeÿen*, that is, the ſonnes of *Zeÿen*: and they enioied this kingdome for the ſpace almoſt of 380. yeeres. At length the kings of Fez of the Marin-familie greatly moleſted them, ſo that thoſe ten kings which ſucceeded *Zeÿen* were ſome of them vnfortunate in battell, ſome ſlaine, ſome taken captiue, and others expelled their kingdome, and chaſed to the next mountaines. Neither were they free from vexation of the kings of Tunis: howbeit the kingdome of Telenſin remained ſtill to this familie, and they continued in peace for almoſt an hundred and twentie yeeres, being endammaged by no forren power; ſauing that one *Abu Feris* king of Tunis, and his ſonne *Hutmen* made them to pay tribute for certaine yeeres vnto Tunis, till the deceaſe of the ſaid *Hutmen*. This kingdome ſtretcheth in length from eaſt to weſt 380. miles, but in bredth from north to ſouth, that is, from the Mediterran ſea to the deſerts of Numidia not aboue fiue and twentie miles: which is the occaſion that it is ſo often oppreſſed by the Arabians inhabiting the Numidian deſerts. The kings of Telenſin haue alwaies endeuoured by great gifts to gaine the good will and friendſhip of the Numidians, but they could neuer ſatisfie their inſatiable couetice. A man ſhall ſeldome trauell ſafely through this kingdome: howbeit here are great ſtore of merchants, perhaps either becauſe it adioineth to Numidia, or elſe for that the way to the land of Negros

gros lieth through it. It hath two most famous & frequented hauen-townes, the one called *Horam, and the other *Marsa Elcabir, whither vse to resort great store of Genoueses, and Venetians. But afterward both these townes were taken by Don *Ferdinando* the Catholike king, to the great inconuenience of all this kingdome: for which cause the king then raigning called *Abuchemmeu*, was expelled his kingdome and put to flight by his owne subiects: afterward *Abuzeiien* was restored to the kingdome, who had for certaine yeeres been imprisoned by his nephew *Abuchemmeu*: howbeit he enioied the kingdome but a very short space. For he was at length miserably slaine by *Barbarossa* the Turke, who conquered the kingdome of Tremizen by force of war. Whereof *Abuchemmeu*, that was expelled by his owne subiects, hauing intelligence, sent to craue aide of the emperour *Charles* the fift, whereby he hoped to recouer his kingdome. Which request being granted, he leuied a puissant armie, and made warre against *Barbarossa*, and hauing driuen him out, he recouered his kingdome, and seuerely punished them that had conspired his banishment. And then he gaue the Spanish soldiers their pay, sent the captaines home with great rewardes, and allowed *Charles* the emperour a large yeerely reuenue so long as he liued. After his decease succeeded his brother *Habdulla*, who neglecting the league made before betweene the emperour and his brother, and relying vpon *Soliman* the great Turke, refused to pay any more tribute vnto the emperour *Charles*, and hath kept possession of the kingdome, till *this present. The greater part of this region is vntilled, drie, and barren, especially towards the south. Howbeit the sea coast is somewhat more fertill. The territorie adiacent to the citie of Telensin is full of woods, sauing that the westerne part towardes the sea is mountainous. Likewise the regions of Tenez and Alger containe mountaines abounding with all kinde of commodities. In this part ate but few cities and castles, howbeit it is a most fruitfull and blessed place, as we will hereafter declare in particular.

* Or Oran.
* Or Mersalcabir.

Abuchemmeu king of Tremizen restored to his kingdome by the emperour Charles the fift.

*1526

Of the desert of Angad.

THis barren, drie, and vntilled desert being vtterly destitute of water and wood, is situate vpon the westerne frontire of the kingdome of Telensin; and extendeth in length fowerscore, and in bredth almost fiftie miles. Here are great store of roes, deere, and ostriches. Such merchants as trauell from Fez to Telensin passe ouer this desert not without great danger, by reason of certaine Arabians which liue onely vpon theft and robberie, especially in winter, when as the soldiers appointed to defend the said desert from those lewd vagabonds, doe vsually retire themselues into Numidia. Many shepherds there are in this desert, who are daily vexed with multitudes of fierce lions, which sometime seaze not onely vpon cartell, but also vpon men.

Great store of ostriches.

Of the castle of Temzegzet.

THis castle standing in the same place, where the foresaid desert adioineth vnto the territorie of Telensin, and built by the Africans vpon a rocke, was in times past very strong, and often annoied by the people of Fez; for it standeth in the high way from Fez to Telensin. Through the fields adiacent runneth a certaine riuer called in their language *Tefme*. The said fields adiacent sufficiently abound with all things necessarie for the sustenance of the inhabitants. Heretofore being subiect vnto the kings of Telensin it well deserued the name of a citie, but since the Arabians got possession thereof, it hath prooued more like to a stable: for here they keepe their corne onely, and the naturall inhabitants are quite expelled by reason of their bad demeanour.

Of the castle of Izli.

THis ancient castle of Izli built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine bordering vpon the foresaid desert, hath some fieldes adioining vnto it, apt only for barlie and panicke. It was in times past well stored with inhabitants, and enuironed with stately walles: but afterward by the iniurie of warre it was razed to the ground, and the inhabitants expelled. Howbeit a few yeeres after it began to be inhabited anew by certaine religious persons had in great reuerence both by the kings of Telensin and by all the Arabians. These religious persons with great courtesie and liberalitie giue entertainment for three daies vnto all strangers that passe by, and then dismisse them without paying of ought. All their houses are very base and low built, their walles being of claye, and the roofes of straw. Not far from this castle runneth a riuer; out of which they water all their fields: for this region is so hot and dry, that vnlesse the fields were continually watered, they would yeeld no fruit at all.

Of the towne of Guagida.

THis ancient towne built by the Africans vpon a large plaine, standeth southward of the Mediterran sea fortie miles, and about the same distance from the citie of Telensin. The southwest part of the said plaine bordereth vpon the desert of Angad, and it containeth most fruitfull fields and pleasant gardens, exceedingly repleniſhed with figs and grapes. Through the midst of this towne runneth a certaine riuer, which affoordeth good water to drinke and to seeth meate withall. In times past the towne-walles and all the buildings were most sumptuous and stately, and the inhabitants exceeding rich, ciuill, and valiant: but afterward by reason of certaine warres waged by the king of Fez against the king of Telensin, this towne was left desolate, and the inhabitants all put to flight: but the said warres being en-

ded, new inhabitants reedified it and dwelt therein: howbeit they could not reduce it to the former ſtate, neither doth it now containe aboue fifteene hundred families. The townesmen lead now a miſerable life, being conſtrained to pay tribute both to the king of Telenſin and alſo to the Arabians of Angad, and wearing moſt baſe apparell: aſſes and mules they haue great ſtore, whereof they make round ſummes of money. They ſpeake after the ancient manner of the Arabians, neither is their language ſo corrupt as the language of the people round about them.

Of the citie called Ned Roma.

THis ancient towne built by the Romans, while they were lords of Africa, ſtandeth vpon a large plaine, almoſt two miles from a certaine mountaine, and about twelue miles from the Mediterran ſea, and neere vnto it runneth a little riuer. The hiſtoriographers of thoſe times report, that this towne was in all reſpects built after the faſhion of Rome, whereupon they ſay it borrowed the name. For *Ned* in the Arabian toong ſignifieth like. The wall of this towne is as yet to be ſeene: but all the ancient buildings of the Romans are ſo deſtroied, that now there ſcarcely remaine any ruines thereof. It began in ſome places to be repaired and reedified anew, but nothing comparable to the former buildings. The fieldes adiacent are exceeding fruitfull, and containe many gardens repleniſhed with ſuch trees as beare Carobs (being a fruit like vnto *Caſſia fiſtula*) which in the ſuburbes they vſe for foode. This towne is indifferently well inhabited, eſpecially with weauers, who make great ſtore of cotton-cloth, and are free from all tribute. The gouernours of the towne are choſen onely at their aſſignement: and that they may haue more free traffique with the people of Telenſin, they ſende many gifts vnto the king.

Of the towne of Tebecrit.

THis little towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine rocke neere vnto the Mediterran ſea, is almoſt twelue miles diſtant from the former. All the next mountaines are exceeding high and barren, and yet well ſtored with inhabitants. In this towne dwell great ſtore of weauers; and here they haue abundance of Carobs and honie. Being in continuall feare of the Chriſtians, they keepe euery night moſt diligent watch and ward: for they are not of ſufficient abilitie to maintaine a garriſon of ſoldiers. Their fields are no leſſe barren then vntilled; and yeelde onely very ſmall quantitie of barlie and panicke. The townesmen are moſt baſely apparelled, and vtterly deſtitute of humanitie.

Of the towne of Hunain.

THis towne being founded by the Africans, and being famous both for ſtately building and ciuill inhabitants, hath a little hauen belonging thereunto

thereunto well fortified with two turrets ſtanding one on the one ſide, and another on the other ſide. The towne-wall alſo is very high and beautifull, eſpecially on that ſide which ſtandeth next vnto the ſea. Hither doe the Venetians yeerely bring great ſtore of merchandize, and doe traffique with the merchants of Telenſin; for the citie of Telenſin is but fourteene miles from hence. Since the time that Oran was ſurprized by the Chriſtians, the Venetians would no longer frequent Oran, fearing leaſt the Spanyards hauing it in poſſeſſion ſhould worke them ſome miſchiefe: wherfore then they began to repaire vnto this port. The towneſmen in times paſt were moſt ciuill people, the greateſt part being weauers of cotton and of linnen. Their houſes are moſt ſtately built, and haue euery one fountaines belonging vnto them: likewiſe here are many vines running pleaſantly vpon bowers or arbours. Their houſes are paued with mats of diuers colours, and their chambers and vaults are curiouſly painted and carued. Howbeit, ſo ſoone as the inhabitants were aduertiſed of the loſſe of Oran, they fled from Hunain and left it void of inhabitants; ſauing that the king of Telenſin maintaineth here a gariſon of footemen, who giue notice when any merchants ſhips approch. Their fields abound with cherries, peaches, figs, oliues, and other fruites: howbeit they reape but little commoditie thereby. I my ſelfe paſſing this way could not but bewaile the extreme calamitie whereinto the inhabitants of this towne were fallen: at the ſame time there arriued a certaine ſhip of Genoa, which one ſhip brought commodities ſufficient to ſerue Telenſin for fiue yeeres: the tenth part whereof amounting to fifteene thouſand duckats, was paid for tribute to the king.

A ſhip of great value.

Of the towne of Hareſgol.

THe great and ancient towne of Hareſgol was built vpon a rocke enuironed on all ſides with the Mediterran ſea, ſauing on the ſouth, where lieth a way from the firme land to the towne. It ſtandeth northward of Telenſin fourteene miles; and was in times paſt well ſtored with inhabitants. The gouernour thereof was one *Idris*, vncle vnto that *Idris* that was the founder of Fez; the poſteritie of whom enioied the ſame gouernment for the ſpace of an hundred yeeres. At length there came a certaine king and patriarke of Cairaoan who vtterly deſtroied this towne, ſo that it remained voide of inhabitants almoſt an hundred yeers: after which time it was reinhabited by certaine people of Granada, which came thither with *Manſor*; which *Manſor* repaired the towne, to the end it might alwaies be a place of refuge for his ſoldiers. After whoſe deceaſe, and the death of his ſonne *Mudaffir*, all the ſoldiers were expelled by the tribes or people of Zanhagia and Magraoa: and this ſecond deſolation of that towne happened in the yeere of the Hegeira 410.

Of the great citie of Telenſin, otherwiſe called Tremizen.

TElenſin is a great citie and the royall ſeate of the king; but who were the firſt founders thereof it is vncertaine: howbeit moſt certaine it is, that this citie was very ſmall at the beginning, and began greatly to be augmented at the ſame time when Hareſgol was laid waſte. For then, a certaine family called Abdulguad bearing rule, it increaſed ſo exceedingly, that in the raigne of king *Abu Teſſin* it contained ſixteene thouſand families. And then it was an honourable and well-gouerned citie: howbeit *Ioſeph* king of Fez continually moleſted it, and with an huge armie beſieged it for ſeuen yeeres together. This *Ioſeph* hauing built a fort vpon the eaſt ſide of the towne, put the beſieged citizens to ſuch diſtreſſe, that they could no longer endure the extreme famine: wherefore with one accord they all went vnto their king, beſeeching him to haue compaſſion vpon their want. The king, to make them acquainted with his daintie fare, which he had to ſupper, ſhewed them a diſh of ſodden horſe-fleſh and barlie. And then they well perceiued how little the kings eſtate was better then the eſtate of the meaneſt citizen of them all. Soone after the king hauing procured an aſſemblie, perſwaded his people that it was much more honourable to die in battel for the defence of their countrie, then to liue ſo miſerable a life. Which words of the king ſo inflamed all their mindes to the battell, that the day following they reſolued to encounter the enemie, and valiantly to fight it out. But it fell out farre better for them then they expected; for the ſame night king *Ioſeph* was ſlaine by one of his owne people: which newes being brought vnto the citizens, with greater courage they marched all out of the towne, eaſily vanquiſhing and killing the confuſed multitude of their enemies; after which vnexpected victorie they found victuals ſufficient in the enemies campe to relieue their long and tedious famine. About fortie yeeres after, the fourth king of Fez of the Marin-familie called *Abulheſen*, built a towne within two miles weſtward of the citie of Telenſin. Then he beſieged Telenſin for thirty moneths together, making daily and fierce aſſaults againſt it, and euery night erecting ſome new fort, ſo that at length the Feſſan forces next vnto Telenſin eaſily entred the citie, and hauing conquered it, caried home the king thereof captiue vnto Fez, where he was by the king of Fez beheaded, and his carcaſe was caſt foorth among the filth of the citie: and this was the ſecond and the greater dammage that Telenſin ſuſtained. After the decay of the Marin-familie Telenſin began in many places to be repaired, and repleniſhed with new inhabitants, inſomuch that it increaſed to twelue thouſand families. Here each trade and occupation hath a peculiar place, after the manner of Fez, ſauing that the buildings of Fez are ſomewhat more ſtately. Here are alſo many and beautifull temples, hauing their Mahumetan prieſtes and preachers. Likewiſe here are fiue colleges moſt ſumptuouſly built, ſome by

The king of Telenſin taken priſoner and beheaded.

the

the king of Telenſin, and ſome by the king of Fez. Here alſo are ſtore of goodly bathes and hot-houſes, albeit they haue not ſuch plentie of water as is at Fez. Alſo here are very many innes built after the manner of Africa: vnto two of which innes the merchants of Genoa and Venice doe vſually reſort. A great part of this citie is inhabited with Iewes, who were in times paſt all of them exceeding rich: vpon their heads they weare a * Dulipan to diſtinguiſh them from other citizens: but in the yeere of the Hegeira 923, vpon the death of king *Abuhabdilla*, they were all ſo robbed and ſpoiled, that they are now brought almoſt vnto beggerie. Moreouer in this citie there are many conducts, the fountaines whereof are not farre from the citie-walles, ſo that they may eaſily be ſtopped by any forren enemie. The citie-wall is very high and impregnable, hauing fiue great gates vpon it, at euery one of which there is placed a garde of ſoldiers, and certaine receiuers of the kings cuſtome. On the ſouth ſide of the citie ſtandeth the kings palace, enuironed with moſt high walles, and containing many other palaces within it, which are none of them deſtitute of their fountaines and pleaſant gardens: this royall palace hath two gates, one leading into the fields, and the other into the citie, and at this gate ſtandeth the captaine of the garde. The territorie of Telenſin containeth moſt pleaſant habitations, whither the citizens in ſummer-time vſe to retire themſelues: for beſides the beautifull paſtures and cleere fountaines, there is ſuch abundance of all kinde of fruites to delight both the eies and the taſte, that to my remembrance I neuer ſawe a more pleaſant place: their figs they vſe to drie in the ſunne and to keepe vntill winter: and as for almonds, peaches, melons, and pome-citrons, they grow here in great plentie. Three miles eaſtward of this citie are diuers mils vpon the riuer of Seſſif; and ſome other there are alſo not far from the citie vpon the mountaine of Elcalha. The ſouth part of the citie is inhabited by Iewes, lawyers, and notaries: here are alſo very many ſtudents, and profeſſours of diuers artes, which haue maintenance allowed them out of the fiue forenamed colleges. The citizens are of fower ſorts, to wit, ſome artificers, ſome merchants, others ſchollers and doctors, and all the reſidue ſoldiers. The merchants are men moſt iuſt, truſtie, liberall, and moſt zealous of the common good; who for the moſt part exerciſe traffique with the Negros. The artificers liue a ſecure, quiet, and merrie life. The kings ſoldiers being all of a comely perſonage and of great valour, receiue very large and liberall pay, for they are monethly allowed three peeces of the gold-coine of Telenſin, which are worth three Italian duckats and one ſecond part. All ſtudents before they attaine to the degree of a doctor liue a bare and miſerable life, but hauing attained thereunto, they are made either profeſſours or notaries, or prieſtes. The citizens and merchants of this citie are ſo neate and curious in their apparell, that ſometimes they excell the citizens of Fez in brauerie. The artificers weare ſhort garments carrying ſeldome a Dulipan vpon their heads, and contenting themſelues with plaine caps: their ſhooes reach vp to their mid-leg. Of all others the ſoldiers go worſt apparelled, for wearing

* Or Turbant.

a ſhirt or iacket with wide ſleeues, they caſt ouer it a large mantle made of cotton, and thus they are clad both ſommer and winter: ſauing that in winter they haue certaine iackets of leather with hoods vpon them, ſuch as trauellers vſe in Italie, and by this meanes their heads are defended from raine and from ſnow. The ſchollers and ſtudents are diuerſly apparelled, according to their abilitie, and according to the faſhion of their natiue countrie: the doctors, iudges, and prieſtes goe in more ſumptuous and coſtly attire.

The cuſtomes and rites obſerued in the King of Telenſin his court.

A Woonder it is to ſee how ſtately and magnificently the King of Telenſin behaueth himſelfe, for no man may ſee him nor be admitted to parle with him, but onely the principall nobles of his court, each one of whom are aſſigned to beare offices according to their place and dignitie. In this court are ſundry offices and dignities, and the Kings lieutenant beeing principall officer, allotteth vnto each one ſuch places of dignitie, as may be correſpondent to their honour: and this lieutenant leuieth the kings armies, and ſometime conducteth them againſt the enemie. The ſecond officer is the Kings chiefe Secretarie, who writeth and recordeth all things pertaining to the King. The third is the high treaſurer, who is bound by his office to receiue tributes and cuſtomes. The fourth is the kings diſpenſator or almoner, who beſtoweth ſuch liberalitie as the king vouchſafeth. The fift is the captaine of the kings garde, who ſo often as any nobles are admitted to the kings preſence, conducteth the garde vnto the palace-gate. Then are there other meaner officers, as namely, the maſter of the kings ſtable, the ouerſeer of his ſaddles & ſtirrops, and his chiefe chamberlaine, who giueth attendance onely at ſuch times as any courtiers are admitted vnto the kings audience. For at other times the kings wiues, with certaine Chriſtian captiues, and eunuches doe performe that dutie. The king ſometimes in ſumptuous and coſtly apparell rideth vpon a ſtately ſteed richly trapped and furniſhed. In riding he obſerueth not much pompe nor many ceremonies; neither indeede doth he carrie ſo great a traine; for you ſhall ſcarcely ſee a thouſand horſemen in his companie, except perhaps in time of warre, when as the Arabians and other people giue attendance. When the king goeth foorth with an armie, there are not many carriages tranſported therein, neither can you then diſcerne the king by his apparell from any meane captaine: and though he conducteth neuer ſo great a garde of ſoldiers, yet a man would not thinke how ſparing he is of his coine. Gold-money he coineth of baſer golde, then that whereof the Italian money called *Biſſacchi* is coined, but it is of a greater ſize, for one peece thereof waigheth an Italian ducket and one fourth part. He ſtampeth likewiſe coine of ſiluer & of braſſe. His dominions are but ſlenderly inhabited: howbeit becauſe the way from Europe to Aethiopia lieth through his kingdome, he reapeth much benefit by

A paſſage from Europe to Aethiopia through the kingdome of Tremizen.

by the wares that passe by, especially since the time that Oran was surprized by the Christians. At the same time Telensin it selfe was made tributarie, which was euer before a free citie: whereupon the king that was the author thereof, was extremely hated of his subiects till his dying day. Afterward his sonne that succeeded him, demanded customes and tributes likewise: for which cause being expelled out of his kingdome by the people, he was enforced to craue aide of the emperour *Charles* the fift, by whose meanes (as is beforesaid) he was restored vnto his said kingdome. When Oran was subiect vnto the king of Telensin, the region therabout paid vnto the king for yeerly tribute sometime three thousand, and sometime fower thousand duckats, the greatest part whereof was allowed vnto the kings garde, and to the Arabian soldiers. I my selfe continuing certaine monethes in this kings court, had good experience of his liberalitie. I haue indeede omitted many particulars in the description of this court of Telensin: but because they agreed for the most part with those things which we reported of Fez, I haue here passed them ouer, least I should seeme too tedious vnto the reader.

Of the towne of Hubbed.

THis towne being built in manner of a castle standeth about a mile and an halfe southward of Telensin. It containeth store of inhabitants, who are for the most part dyers of cloth. In this towne was buried one *Sidi Bu Median* being reputed a man of singular holines, whom they adore like a god, ascending vp to his monument by certaine steps. Here is likewise a stately college, and a faire hospitall to entertaine strangers in; both which were built by a king of Fez of the Marin-familie, as I finde recorded vpon a certaine marble stone.

Of the towne of Tefesra.

THis towne standing vpon a plaine fifteene miles from Telensin hath great store of smiths therein, by reason of the iron-mines which are there. The fields adiacent are exceeding fruitfull for corne: and the inhabitants being for the most part blacke-smithes are destitute of all ciuilitie. *Mines of iron.*

Of the towne of Tessela.

THis ancient towne was built by the Africans vpon a certaine plaine, extending almost twenty miles in length. Here groweth such abundance of excellent corne, as is almost sufficient for the whole kingdome of Telensin. The inhabitants liue in tents, for all the buildings of this towne are destroied, though the name remaineth still. These also in times past paide a great yeerely tribute vnto the king of Telensin.

Of

Of the prouince called Beni Rasid.

THis region extendeth in length from east to west fiftie, and in bredth almost fiue and twentie miles. The southerne part thereof is plaine ground, but toward the north it is full of fruitfull mountaines. The inhabitants are of two sorts: for some of them dwell vpon the mountaines in houses of indifferent good building: and these imploy themselues in husbandry and other necessarie affaires. Others being of a more noble condition liue onely vpon the plaines in tents, and there keepe their camels, horses, and other cattell. They are molested with daily inconueniences, and pay yeerely tribute vnto the king of Telensin. Vpon the foresaid mountaines are sundrie villages, among which there are two principall, whereof the one called Chalath Haoara, and built in manner of a castle vpon the side of a certaine hill, containeth to the number of fortie merchants and artificers houses: the other called Elmo Hascar is the seate of the kings lieutenant ouer those regions; and in this village euery thursday there is a great market, where abundance of cattell, corne, raisins, figs, and honie is to be sold: here are likewise cloth-merchants and diuers other chapmen, which for breuities sake I passe ouer in silence. I my selfe continuing for some time among them, found to my hinderance what cunning theeues they were. The king of Telensin collecteth yeerely out of this prouince the summe of fiue and twenty thousand duckats; and it containeth so many most expert soldiers.

Of the towne of Batha.

THis great, rich, and populous towne was built in my time vpon a most beautifull and large plaine, which yeeldeth great abundance of corne. The tribute which the king of Telensin hath here, amounteth to the summe of twentie thousand duckats. Howbeit this towne was afterward destroied in that warre which happened betweene the king and certaine of his kinsmen. For they growing mightie by the king of Fez his aide, woon many townes in the kingdome of Telensin: and whatsoeuer towne they thought themselues not able to keepe by force of armes, they burnt it quite downe: and thus they serued Batha, whereof now there remaine but very few ruines. Not far from this towne runneth a little riuer, on both sides whereof there are many gardens and fields repleniſhed with all kinde of fruites. Moreouer the foresaid plaine was vtterly destitute of inhabitants, till a certaine heremite with his followers, whom they reuerenced as a man of singular holines, repaired thither. This heremite in short time grew so rich in oxen, horses, and other cattell, that no man almost throughout the whole region was comparable vnto him. Neither he nor his followers pay any tribute at all, when as notwithstanding (as I heard of his disciples) he reapeth yeerly eight thousand bushels of corne, and at this time possesseth fiue hundred horses,

A famous heremite.

ten

ten thousand small cattell, and two thousand oxen; and besides all the former hath yeerely sent vnto him from diuers partes of the world fower or fiue thousand duckats: so greatly hath the fame of his false holines spread ouer all Africa and Asia. Disciples he hath to the number of fiue hundred, whom he maintaineth at his owne cost: neither emploieth he them to ought else, but daily to read a few praiers: for which cause many resort vnto him, desiring to be of the number of his disciples, whom after he hath instructed in certaine ceremonies, he sendeth them thither from whence they first came. He hath about an hundred tents pitched, whereof some are for strangers, others for shepherds, and the residue for his owne familie. This holy heremite hath fower wiues, and a great many women-slaues wearing most sumptuous apparell. His sonnes likewise haue their wiues and families: insomuch that the whole familie of this heremite and of his sonnes containeth fiue hundred persons. He is greatly honoured by all the Arabians, and by the king of Telensin himselfe. My selfe was once desirous to trie what manner of man this heremite was: and for three daies I was entertained by him in the most secrete places of his habitation, where amongst other things he shewed me certaine bookes intreating of art-Magique and of Alchymie: and he endeuoured by all meanes to perswade me, that Magique was a most true and vndoubted arte, whereby I perceiued that himselfe was a magician, albeit he neuer vsed nor regarded the arte, except it were in inuocating of God by certaine names.

Of the towne of Oran.

THis great and populous towne containing about sixe thousand families, and built many yeeres agoe by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea shore, is distant from Telensin an hundreth and fortie miles. Heere may you see great store of stately buildings, as namely of temples, colledges, hospitals, bath-stoues, and innes. The towne is compassed with most high and impregnable walles, hauing on the one side a faire plaine, and on the other side diuers mountaines. The greatest part of the inhabitants were weauers, and the residue liued of their yeerely reuenues. The territorie of this towne yeeldeth but small store of corne, so that the townesmen make all their bread of barley: howbeit they are most courteous and friendly to all strangers. This towne was greatly frequented with merchants of Catalonia, and of Genoa: and one street thereof is at this present called the street of the Genoueses. They were at perpetuall enmitie with the king of Telensin, neither would they euer accept of any gouernor, but one which receiued the kings tribute. But the townesmen chose one of their chiefe Burgo-masters to iudge of cases ciuill and criminall. The merchants of this towne maintained at their owne costs certaine foists and brigandines of warre, which committed many piracies vpon the coast of Catalonia, Geuisa, Maiorica, and Minorica, insomuch that Oran was full of Christian captiues.

tiues. Afterward Don *Ferdinando* king of Spaine encountring Oran with a great Armada, determined to releaſe the ſaid Chriſtians out of captiuitie: but he had verie hard ſucceſſe. Howbeit within a few moneths after beeing ayded by the Biſcaines and the Cardinall of Spaine, he tooke Oran. For the Moores iſſuing foorth with great furie vpon the Chriſtians armie, left the towne vtterly deſtitute of ſouldiers, which the Spaniards perceiuing, began to aſſayle the towne on the other ſide; where being reſiſted by none but by women, they had eaſie entrance. Whereupon the Moores ſeeing the chriſtians banners aduanced vpon their wals, they returned backe into the town, and were there put to ſo great a ſlaughter, that few of them eſcaped. Thus was Oran taken by the Spaniards in the yeere of *Mahomet* his Hegeira 916.

Oran taken by the Spaniards.

Of the towne Merſalcabir.

THis towne was built in my time by the king of Telenſin vpon the Mediterran ſea, not farre from Oran. And Merſalcabir in the Moores language ſignifieth a great or large hauen: for I thinke there is not the like hauen to be found in the whole world beſides: ſo that here infinite numbers of ſhips and galleies may finde moſt ſafe harbour in any tempeſtuous weather. Hither the Venetians ſhips made often reſort, when they perceiued any tempeſt to approach: and from hence they would cauſe all their wares to be tranſported to Oran in other veſſels. This towne alſo was at length taken by the Spaniards as well as Oran.

Merſalcabir ſurpriſed by the Spaniards.

Of the towne of Mezzagran.

THis towne alſo was built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran ſea, neere vnto the place where the riuer Selef diſemboqueth. It is well peopled and much moleſted by the Arabians. The gouernour thereof hath little authoritie within the towne, and leſſe without.

Of the towne of Muſtuganin.

MVſtuganin beeing founded by the Africans vpon the Mediterran ſea, ſtandeth almoſt three miles from Mezzagran, on the other ſide of the riuer Selef. It was in times paſt verie populous; but ſince the kingdome of Telenſin began to decay, this towne hath beene ſo vexed by the Arabians, that at this preſent the third part thereof ſcarce remaineth. Families it containeth to the number of fifteene hundred: and it hath a moſt beautifull and ſtately temple. In this towne are great ſtore of weauers: and the houſes are moſt ſumptuouſly built, hauing cleere fountaines belonging vnto them. Through the midſt of the towne runneth a riuer, on each ſide whereof ſtand diuers milles. Not far from the towne there are moſt pleaſant

sant gardens; but they lie now vntilled and desolate. Their fields are exceeding fruitfull. There belongeth an hauen vnto this towne, whereunto many merchants of Europe vse to resort, albeit they finde not much traffick here, because the townesmen are so destitute of money.

Of the towne of Bresch.

THis ancient towne built by the Romanes vpon the Mediterran sea, standeth many miles distant from Mustuganin. It containeth great store of inhabitants, which are many of them weauers. The people of this towne vse to paint a blacke crosse vpon their cheeke, and two other blacke crosses vpon the palmes of their hands: and the like custome is obserued by all the inhabitants of the mountaines of Alger, and Bugia: the occasion whereof is thought to be this, namely that the Gothes when they first began to inuade these regions, released all those from paying of tribute (as our African historiographers affirme) that would imbrace the Christian religion. But so often as any tribute was demanded, euery man to eschew the payment thereof, would not sticke to professe himselfe a Christian: wherefore it was then determined, that such as were Christians indeed should be distinguished from others by the foresaid crosses. At length the Gothes being expelled, they all reuolted vnto the Mahumetan religion; howbeit this custome of painting crosses remained still among them, neither doe they know the reason thereof. Likewise the meaner sort of people in Mauritania vse to make such crosses vpon their faces, as we see vsed by some people of Europe. This towne aboundeth greatly with figs, and the fields thereof are exceeding fruitfull for flaxe and barley. The townesmen haue continued in firme league and friendship with the people of the mountaines adioyning; by whose fauour they liued an hundred yeeres togither without paying of any tribute at all: but *Barbarossa* the Turke hauing woon the kingdome of Telensin put them to great distresse. From hence they vse to transport by sea great store of figs and flaxe vnto Alger, Tunis, and Bugia, whereby they gaine great store of money. Here also you may as yet behold diuers monuments of the Romans ancient buildings.

Of the towne of Sersell.

THis great and ancient towne built by the Romanes vpon the Mediterran sea, was afterward taken by the Gothes and lastly by the Mahumetans. The wall of this towne is exceeding high, strong, and stately built, and containeth about eight miles in circuit. In that part of the towne next vnto the Mediterran sea standeth a most beautifull and magnificent temple built by the Romans, the inward part whereof consisteth of marble. They had also in times past an impregnable fort standing vpon a rock by the Mediterran sea. Their fields are most fruitfull: and albeit this towne was much

oppressed

oppreſſed by the Gothes, yet the Mahumetans enioyed a great part thereof for the ſpace almoſt of fiue hundred yeeres. And then after the warre of Telenſin it remained voide of inhabitants almoſt three hundred yeeres. At length when Granada was woon by the Chriſtians, diuers Moores of Granada fled hither, which repaired the houſes and a good part of the caſtle: afterward they began to build ſhips, wherewith they tranſported their merchantable commodities into other regions: and they increaſed ſo by little and little, that now they are growne to twelue hundred families. They were ſubiect not long ſince vnto *Barbaroſſa* the Turke, vnto whom they paide but three hundred ducates for yeerely tribute.

Of the citie of Meliana.

THis great and ancient citie, commonly called now by the corrupt name of Magnana, and built by the Romanes vpon the top of a certaine hill, is diſtant from the Mediterran ſea almoſt fortie miles. Vpon this mountaine are many ſprings, and woods abounding with walnuts. The citie it ſelfe is enuironed with moſt ancient and high wals. One ſide thereof is fortified with impregnable rockes, and the other ſide dependeth ſo vpon the mountaine as *Narnia* doth, which is a citie neere Rome: it containeth verie ſtately houſes, euerie one of which houſes hath a fountaine. The inhabitants are almoſt all weauers: and there are diuers turners alſo which make fine cups, diſhes, and ſuch like veſſels. Many of them likewiſe are husbandmen. They continued many yeeres free from all tribute and exaction, till they were at length made tributarie by *Barbaroſſa*.

Of the towne of Tenez.

THis ancient towne built by the Africans vpon the ſide of an hill not far from the Mediterran ſea, is enuironed with faire walles, and inhabited with many people. The inhabitants are exceeding ruſticall and vnciuill; and haue alwaies beene ſubiect to the king of Telenſin. King *Mahumet* that was grandfather vnto the king which now raigneth, left three ſonnes behinde him; the eldeſt being called *Abuabdilla*, the ſecond *Abuzeuen*, and the third *Iahia*. *Abuabdilla* ſucceeded his father, whom his brethren being ayded by the citizens went about to murther. But afterward, the treaſon being diſcouered, *Abuzeuen* was apprehended and put in priſon. Howbeit, king **Abuchemmeu* being after that expelled out of his kingdome by the people, *Abuzeuen* was not onely reſtored to his former libertie, but was alſo choſen king, and enioyed the kingdome ſo long, till (as is beforementioned) he was ſlaine by *Barbaroſſa*. *Iahia* fled vnto the king of Fez, who being at length proclaimed king by the people of Tenez, raigned for certaine yeeres. And his yoong ſonne that he left behinde him being vanquiſhed by *Barbaroſſa*, fled vnto *Charles* who was then onely king of Spaine.

* Perhaps *Abuabdilla*.

But

But when as the ayde promiſed by *Charles* the Emperour ſtayed long, and the Prince of Tenez was too long abſent, a rumour was ſpread abroad, that hee and his brother were turned Chriſtians: whereupon the gouernment of Tenez fell immedially to the brother of *Barbaroſſa*. Their fields indeed yeeld abundance of corne; but of other commodities they haue great want.

Of the towne of Mazuna.

THis towne (as ſome report) was built by the Romanes, and ſtandeth about fortie miles from the Mediterran ſea. It hath fruitfull fields, ſtrong walles, but moſt baſe and deformed houſes. Their temple indeed is ſomewhat beautiful: for it was in times paſt a moſt ſtately towne, but being often ſacked, ſometime by the king of Telenſin, and ſometime by his rebels; and at length falling into the hands of the Arabians, it was brought vnto extreme miſerie, ſo that at this preſent there are but few inhabitants remaining, all being either weauers or husbandmen, and moſt grieuouſly oppreſſed by the Arabians. Their fields abound plentifully with all kinde of corne. Neere vnto this towne there haue beene in times paſt many houſes, ſtreets, and villages, which may probably be coniectured by the letters engrauen vpon marble ſtones. The names of which villages are not to bee found in any of our hiſtories or Chronicles.

Of Gezeir, otherwiſe called Alger.

GEzeir in the Moores language ſignifieth an iſland, which name is thought to haue beene giuen vnto this citie, becauſe it lieth neere vnto the iſles of Maiorica, Minorica, and Ieuiza: howbeit the Spanyards call it Alger. It was founded by the Africans of the familie of Meſgana, wherefore in old time it was called by the name of Meſgana. It is a large towne, containing families to the number of fower thouſand, and is enuironed with moſt ſtately and impregnable walles. The buildings thereof are very artificiall and ſumptuous: and euery trade and occupation hath here a ſeuerall place. Innes, bath-ſtoues, and temples here are very beautifull; but the ſtatelieſt temple of all ſtandeth vpon the ſea-ſhore. Next vnto the ſea there is a moſt pleaſant walke vpon that part of the towne wall, which the waues of the ſea beat vpon. In the ſuburbes are many gardēs repleniſhed with all kind of fruits. On the eaſt ſide of the towne runneth a certaine riuer hauing many mils thereupon: and out of this riuer they draw water fit for drinke, and for the ſeruices of the kitchin. It hath moſt beautifull plaines adioining vpon it, and eſpecially one called Metteggia, which extendeth fortie fiue miles in length, and almoſt thirtie miles in bredth, and aboundeth mightily with all kindes of graine. This towne for many yeeres was ſubiect vnto the kingdome of Telenſin: but hearing that Bugia was alſo gouerned by a king, and being neerer thereunto, they ſubmitted themſelues vnto the king of Bugia.

For they saw that the king of Telensin could not sufficiently defend them against their enemies, and also that the king of Bugia might doe them great dammage, wherefore they offered vnto him a yeerely tribute of their owne accord, and yet remained almost free from all exaction. But certaine yeeres after, the inhabitants of this citie building for themselues gallies, began to play the pirates, and greatly to molest the foresaid islands. Whereupon king *Ferdinando* prouided a mightie armada, hoping thereby to become lorde of the citie. Likewise vpon a certaine high rocke standing opposit against the towne, he caused a strong forte to be built, and that within gun-shot of the citie, albeit the citie walles could not be endammaged thereby. Wherefore the citizens immediately sent ambassadours into Spaine, to craue a league for ten yeeres, vpon condition that they should pay certaine yeerely tribute; which request was granted by king *Ferdinando*. And so they remained for certaine moneths free from the danger of warre: but at length *Barbarossa* hastening to the siege of Bugia, and hauing woon one fort built by the Spaniards, determined to encounter another, hoping if he could obtaine that also, that he should soone conquer the whole kingdome of Bugia. Howbeit all matters fell not out according to his expectation: for a great part of his soldiers being husbandmen, when they perceiued the time of sowing corne to approch, without any leaue or licence they forsooke their generall, and returned home to the plough-taile. And many Turks also did the like, so that *Barbarossa* failing of his purpose, was constrained to breake vp the siege. Howbeit before his departure, he set on fire with his owne handes twelue gallies, which lay in a riuer but three miles from Bugia. And then with fortie of his soldiers he retired himselfe to the castle of Gegel being from Bugia about sixtie miles distant, where he remained for certaine daies. In the mean while, king *Ferdinando* deceasing, the people of Alger released themselues from paying any more tribute: for seeing *Barbarossa* to be a most valiant warriour, and a deadly enemie vnto Christians, they sent for him, and chose him captaine ouer all their forces; who presently encountred the fort, but to little effect. Afterward this *Barbarossa* secretly murthered the gouernour of the citie in a certaine bath. The said gouernour was prince of the Arabians dwelling on the plaines of Mettegia, his name was *Selim Etteumi*, descended of the familie of *Telaliba*, and created gouernour of Alger at the same time when Bugia was taken by the Spanyards: this man was slaine by *Barbarossa*, after he had gouerned many yeeres. And then *Barbarossa* vsurped the whole gouernment of the citie vnto himselfe, and coined money, and this was the first entrance into his great and princely estate. At all the foresaid accidents I my selfe was present, as I trauelled from Fez to Tunis, and was entertained by one that was sent ambassadour from the people of Alger into Spaine, from whence he brought three thousand bookes written in the Arabian toong. Then I passed on to Bugia, where I found *Barbarossa* besieging the foresaid fort: afterward I proceeded to Constantina, and next to Tunis. In the meane while I heard that *Barbarossa* was slaine at Tremizen, and

Alger become tributarie to the king of Spaine.

A voyage performed by Iohn Leo.

and that his brother called *Cairadin* succeeded in the gouernment of Alger. Then we heard also that the emperour *Charles* the fift had sent two armies to surprize Alger; the first whereof was destroied vpon the plaine of Alger, and the second hauing assailed the towne three daies together, was partly slaine and partly taken by *Barbarossa*, insomuch that very few escaped backe into Spaine. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira nine hundred twentie two.

Of the towne of Tegdemt.

THis ancient towne was built (as some thinke) by the Romanes; and Tegdemt signifieth in the Arabian language Ancient. The wall of this towne (as a man may coniecture by the foundations thereof) was ten miles in circuite. There are yet remaining two temples of an exceeding height, but they are very ruinous, and in many places fallen to the ground. This towne when it was possessed by the Mahumetans, was maruellous rich, and abounded with men of learning and poets. It is reported that *Idris* vncle to the same *Idris* that founded Fez, was once gouernour of this towne, and that the gouernment thereof remained to his posteritie almost an hundred and fiftie yeeres. Afterward it was destroied in the warres betweene the schismaticall patriarks of Cairaoan, in the yeere of the Hegeira 365: but now there are a few ruines onely of this towne to be seene.

Of the towne of Medua.

THis towne standing not farre from the borders of Numidia, is distant from the Mediterran sea almost an hundred and fowerscore miles; and it is situate on a most pleasant and fruitfull plaine, and is enuironed with sweete riuers and beautifull gardens. The inhabitants are exceeding rich, exercising traffique most of all with the Numidians; and they are very curious both in their apparell and in the furniture of their houses. They are continually molested with the inuasions of the Arabians; but because they are almost two hundred miles distant from Telensin, they can haue no aide sent them by the king. This towne was once subiect vnto the gouernour of Tenez, afterward vnto *Barbarossa*, and lastly vnto his brother. Neuer was I so sumptuously entertained as in this place: for the inhabitants being themselues vnlearned, so often as any learned man comes amongst them, they entertaine him with great honour, and cause him to decide all their controuersies. For the space of two moneths while I remained with them, I gained aboue two hundred duckats, and was so allured with the pleasantnes of the place, that had not my dutie enforced me to depart, I had remained there all the residue of my life.

Of the towne of Temendfust.

THis towne also was built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, and is about twelue miles distant from Alger. Vnto this towne belongeth a faire hauen, where the ships of Alger are safely harboured, for they haue no other hauen so commodious. This towne was at length destroied by the Goths, and the greatest part of the wall of Alger was built with the stones which came from the wall of this towne.

Of the towne of Teddeles.

THis towne built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, and being thirtie miles distant from Alger, is enuironed with most ancient and strong walles. The greatest part of the inhabitants are dyers of cloth, and that by reason of the many riuers and streames running through the midst of the same. They are of a liberall and ingenuous disposition, and can play most of them vpon the citterne and lute. Their fields are fertill, and abounding with corne. Their apparell is very decent: the greatest part of them are delighted in fishing, and they take such abundance of fishes, that they freely giue them to euery bodie, which is the cause that there is no fish-market in this towne.

Of the mountaines contained in the kingdome of Telensin.

Of the mountaine of Beni Iezneten.

THis mountaine standeth westward of Telensin almost fiftie miles, one side thereof bordering vpon the desert of Garet, and the other side vpon the desert of Angad. In length it extendeth fiue and twentie, and in bredth almost fifteene miles, and it is exceeding high and difficult to ascend. It hath diuers woods growing vpon it, wherein grow great store of Carobs, which the inhabitants vse for an ordinarie kinde of foode: for they haue great want of barly. Here are diuers cottages inhabited with valiant and stout men. Vpon the top of this mountaine standeth a strong castle, wherein all the principall men of the mountaine dwell, amongst whom there are often dissentions, for there is none of them all but woulde be sole gouernour of the mountaine. I my selfe had conuersation with some of them, whom I knew in the king of Fez his court, for which cause I was honorably intertained by them. The soldiers of this mountaine are almost ten thousand.

Of

Of mount Matgara.

THis exceeding high and colde mountaine hath great ſtore of inhabitants, and is almoſt ſixe miles diſtant from Ned Roma. The inhabitants are valiant, but not very rich: for this mountaine yeeldeth nought but barly and Carobs. They ſpeake all one language with the people of Ned Roma, and are ioined in ſuch league with them, that they will often aide one another againſt the king of Telenſin.

Of mount Gualhaſa.

THis high mountaine ſtandeth nigh vnto the towne of Hunain. The inhabitants are ſauage, rude, and vnciuill people, and are at continuall warre with the people of Hunain, ſo that oftentimes they haue almoſt vtterly deſtroied the towne. This mountaine yeeldeth great ſtore of Carobs, and but little corne.

Of mount Agbal.

THis mountaine is inhabited with people of baſe condition, and ſubiect to the towne of Oran. They all exerciſe husbandrie, and carrie woode vnto Oran. While the Moores enioied Oran, their ſtate was ſomewhat better: but ſince the Chriſtians got poſſeſſion thereof they haue beene driuen to extreame miſerie.

Of mount Beni Guerened.

THis mountaine being three miles diſtant from Tremiſen, is well peopled, and aboundeth with all kinde of fruits, eſpecially with figges and cherries. The inhabitants are ſome of them colliers, ſome wood-mongers, and the reſidue husbandmen. And out of this onely mountaine (as I was informed by the king of Telenſin his Secretarie) there is yeerely collected for tribute, the ſumme of twelue thouſand ducats.

Of mount Magraua.

THis mountaine extending it ſelfe fortie miles in length towardes the Mediterran ſea is neer vnto the towne of Muſtuganin before deſcribed. The ſoile is fertile, and the inhabitants are valiant and warrelike people, and of a liberall and humaine diſpoſition.

Of mount Beni Abuſaid.

THis mountaine ſtanding not farre from Tenez, is inhabited with great multitudes of people, which lead a ſauage life, and are notwithſtanding moſt valiant warriors. They haue abundance of honey, barly, and goats. Their waxe and hides they carrie vnto Tenez, and there ſell the ſame to the merchants of Europe. When as the king of Tremizen his kinſemen were lords of this mountaine, the people paied for tribute certaine thouſands of ducats.

Of mount Guanſeris.

THis exceding high mountaine is inhabited with valiant people, who being aided by the king of Fez, maintained warre againſt the kingdome of Telenſin, for aboue three-ſcore yeeres. Fruitefull fields they haue, and great ſtore of fountains. Their ſoldiers are almoſt twentie thouſand in number, whereof 2500. are horſemen. By their aide *Iahia* attained to the gouernment of Tenez: but after Tenez began to decay, they gaue themſelues wholy to robberie and theft.

Of the mountaines belonging to the ſtate of Alger.

NEre vnto Alger on the eaſt ſide and on the weſt are diuers mountains well ſtored with inhabitants. Free they are from all tribute, and rich, and exceeding valiant. Their corne fields are very fruitefull, and they haue great abundance of cattell. They are oftentimes at deadly warre togither, ſo that it is dangerous trauailing that way, vnleſſe it be in a religious mans company. Markets they haue and faires vpon theſe mountaines, where nought is to be ſolde but cattle, corne, and wooll, vnleſſe ſome of the neighbour cities ſupplie them with merchandiſe now and then.

Here endeth the fourth booke.

IOHN LEO HIS FIFTH BOOKE OF the Hiſtorie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

A deſcription of the kingdomes of Bugia and Tunis.

WHen as in the former part of this my hiſtorie I diuided Barbaria into certaine parts, I determined to write of Bugia as of a kingdome by it ſelfe: and I found indeed that not many yeeres ago it was a kingdome. For Bugia was ſubiect to the king of Tunis, and albeit for certaine yeeres the king of Telenſin was Lord thereof, yet was it at length recouered againe by the king of Tunis, who committed the gouernment of the city vnto one of his ſons, both for the tranquillitie of Bugia, and alſo that no diſcord might happen among his ſonnes after his deceaſe. He left behinde him three ſonnes, the eldeſt whereof was called *Habdulhaziz*, and vnto him he bequeathed the kingdome of Bugia, as is aforeſaide: vnto the ſecond, whoſe name was *Hutmen*, he left the kingdome of Tunis: and the third called *Hammare*, he made gouernour of the region of dates. This *Hammare* began foorthwith to wage warre againſt his brother *Hutmen*, by whom being at length taken in the towne of Aſfaqos, & depriued of both his eies, he was carried captiue vnto Tunis, where he liued many yeeres blinde: but his brother *Hutmen* gouerned the kingdome of Tunis full fortie yeeres. The prince of Bugia being moſt louing and dutifull to his brother, raigned for many yeeres with great tianquilitie, till at length he was by king *Ferdinand* of Spaine, and by the meanes of one *Pedro de Nauarra*, caſt out of his kingdome.

A deſcription of the great citie of Bugia.

THis auncient citie of Bugia built (as ſome thinke) by the Romans, vpon the ſide of an high mountaine, neere vnto the Mediterran ſea, is enuironed with walles of great height, and moſt ſtately in regard of their antiquitie. The part thereof now peopled containeth aboue eight thouſand families: but if it were all repleniſhed with buildings, it were capeable of more then fower and twentie thouſand houſholds, for it is of a great length. The houſes, temples, and colleges of this citie are moſt ſumptuouſly built. Profeſſors of liberall ſciences heere

are

are great ſtore, whereof ſome teach matters pertaining to the lawe, and others profeſſe naturall Philoſophie. Neither Monaſteries, Innes, nor Hoſpitals erected after their manner are heere wanting: and their market place is very large and faire: their ſtreetes either deſcend or aſcend, which is verie troubleſome to them that haue any buſines in the towne. In that part of the citie next vnto the toppe of the mountaine ſtandeth a ſtrong caſtle, moſt ſumptuouſly and beautifully walled: and there are ſuch notable letters and pictures moſt artificially carued vpon the plaiſter-worke and timber, that they are thought to haue coſt much more then the building of the wall it ſelfe. The citizens were exceeding rich, and vſed with their warlike gallies continually to moleſt the coaſts of Spaine; which was the occaſion of the vtter ouerthrowe of their citie. For *Pedro de Nauarra* was ſent againſt them with a fleete of fowerteene ſailes onely. The citizens being addicted wholly to pleaſure and eaſe, and being terrified with the rumour of warre, bicauſe they were neuer exerciſed therein, were no ſooner aduertiſed of *Pedro de Nauarra* his approch, but al of them togither with their king betooke themſelues to flight, and left their citie abounding with all kinde of riches and wealth, to bee ſpoiled by the Spaniards, ſo that it was eaſily taken, in the yeere of *Mahomet* his Hegeira nine hundred and ſeuenteene. Soone after *Pedro de Nauarra* hauing ſacked the citie, built a ſtrong forte vpon the ſea ſhore, and repaired an other which had lien a long time waſte, furniſhing them both with ſoldiers and munition. And ſixe yeeres after, *Barbaroſſa* the Turke being deſirous to winne this citie from the Chriſtians, and hauing leuied onely a thouſand ſoldiers, tooke the old forte, bicauſe he was fauoured by the inhabitants of all the mountaines adiacent: wherein hauing placed a garriſon, he attempted to winne the other fort alſo: but at his firſt encounter he loſt an hundred of his principall Turkes, & fower hundred of the mountainers that came to aide him; inſomuch that *Barbaroſſa* was enforced to flie vnto the caſtle of Gegel, as is aforeſaid.

The citie of Bugia taken by Pedro de Nauarra.

Of the caſtle of Gegel.

THis ancient caſtle built by the Africans, vpon an high rocke by the Mediterran ſea, is diſtant about threeſcore miles from Bugia. Families it containeth to the number of fiue hundred; and the buildings thereof are very baſe. The inhabitants are of a truſtie and ingenuous diſpoſition, and do moſt of them exerciſe husbandrie: howbeit their fieldes are but barren, and apt onely for barly, flaxe, and hempe. They haue great ſtore of figs and nuts, which they vſe to carrie in certaine barkes vnto Tunis. They haue in deſpight of the kings of Bugia and Tunis continued alwaies free from tribute: for that impregnable mountaine can be ſurpriſed by no ſiege nor encounter of the enimie. At length they yeelded themſelues vnto *Barbaroſſa*, who demaunded none other tribute of them, but onely the tenths of certaine fruits and corne.

Of the towne of Mesila.

MEsila founded by the Romans not far from the Numidian desert, and being distant from Bugia almost an hundred miles, hath stately wals about it, but base houses within. The inhabitants being partly artificers and partly husbandmen, goe very homely apparelled, and are most greeuously oppressed with the continuall exactions of the Arabians, and with the daily molestations of the king of Bugia. My selfe vpon a time trauelling this way, could not finde so much fodder as was sufficient for twelue horses onely.

Of the towne of Stefe.

THis towne also built by the Romans, sixtie miles southward of Bugia, vpon a certaine beautifull plaine, is enuironed with strong and stately walles. It was in times past exceedingly well stored with inhabitants: but since the Mahumetans were Lords thereof, it hath so decaied by the iniuries of the Arabians, who razed to the ground a great part of the wall, that within the whole circuit of this great and ancient towne, there are but an hundred houses at this present remaining.

Of the towne of Necaus.

THis towne built by the Romans neere vnto Numidia, and being distant from the Mediterran sea an hundred and eightie, and from the towne last mentioned eightie miles, is compassed with a strong and ancient wall. By this towne runneth a certaine riuer, on both sides whereof grow the best wal-nuts and figs that are to be found in the whole kingdome of Tunis, being vsually carried to Constantina to be solde, which citie is thence distant an hundred and eightie miles. The fields of this towne are exceeding fruitfull, and the inhabitants are very rich, liberall, and curious in their apparell. Here is an hospitall maintained at the common charges of the towne, to entertaine strangers that passe by. Here is a college also, the students whereof are allowed their diet and apparell. Neither is this towne destitute of a most stately and well-furnished temple. Their women are white, hauing blacke haires and a most delicate skinne, because they frequent the bath-stoues so often. Most of their houses are but of one storie high, yet are they very decent, and haue each one a garden thereto belonging, repleniſhed with damaske-roses, myrtles, cammomill, and other herbes and flowers, and being watred with most pleasant fountaines. In these gardens likewise there are most stately arbours and bowres, the coole shadow whereof in summer-time is most acceptable. And (to be briefe) all things here are so delightfull to the senses, and so alluring, that any man would be loth to depart from hence.

Of

Of the towne of Chollo.

THe great towne of Chollo founded by the Romans, vpon the Mediterran ſea, at the foot of a certaine high mountaine, is enuironed with no walles at all: for the walles were razed to the ground by the Goths: neither did the Mahumetans, when they had got poſſeſſion, build them vp againe. Howbeit this towne is notably well gouerned, and well ſtored with inhabitants, which are all men of a liberall and tractable diſpoſition. They haue continually great traffique with the merchants of Genoa, and doe gather abundance of waxe and hides. Their fieldes vpon the mountaine are exceeding fruitfull, and they haue alwaies ſo defended themſelues againſt the princes of Tunis and Conſtantina, that vntill this preſent they remaine free from tribute. From the iniurie of Conſtantina they are eaſily defended, both in regarde of the difficult mountaines lying in the mid-way, and alſo in reſpect of the great diſtance; for Conſtantina ſtandeth almoſt an hundred and twentie miles off. Neither is there any citie throughout the whole kingdome of Tunis, either for wealth, or ſtrong ſituation, any way comparable vnto this.

Of the towne of Sucaicada.

THis ancient citie built by the Romans alſo vpon the Mediterran ſea, and ſtanding about thirtie fiue miles from Conſtantina, was waſted and almoſt vtterly deſtroied by the Goths: howbeit by reaſon of the hauen, being ſo famous and ſo frequented by the merchants of Genoa, the prince of Conſtantina cauſed certaine faire houſes to be built thereabouts, for the ſaid merchants of Genoa, to repoſe themſelues and their goodes therein: and vpon a mountaine not farre off he built a ſtrong caſtle, for the ſecuritie and defence of the ſaid merchants from all enemies whatſoeuer. From the ſaid hauen to Conſtantina the high way is paued with certaine black ſtones, ſuch as are to be ſeene in ſome places of Italie, being there called *De ſtrade Romane*, which is a manifeſt argument, that Sucaicada was built by the Romans.

Of the citie of Conſtantina.

NO man can denie the Romans to haue beene founders of this citie, that ſhall conſider the great ſtrength, height, and antiquitie of the walles, and how curiouſly they are beſet and adorned with blacke ſtones. This citie ſtandeth vpon the ſouth ſide of an exceeding high mountaine, and is enuironed with ſteepe rocks, vnder which rocks and within the compaſſe whereof runneth the riuer called Sufegmare, ſo that the ſaid deepe riuer with the rocks on either ſide, ſerueth in ſtead of a towne-ditch to Conſtantina. The north part is compaſſed with a wall of great thicknes: and there are two extreme narrow paſſages onely, to enter into the citie, one on the

eaſt

east part, and another on the west. The citie-gates are very large and stately. The citie it selfe containeth aboue eight thousand families. Buildings it hath very sumptuous, as namely, the chiefe temple, two colleges, three or fower monasteries, and other such like. Here euery trade and occupation hath a seuerall place assigned: and the inhabitants are right honest and valiant people. Here is likewise a great companie of merchants, whereof some sell cloth and wooll, others send oile and silke into Numidia, and the residue exchange linnen-cloth and other wares for slaues and dates. Neither are dates so cheape in any region of all Barbarie besides. The kings of Tunis vsually commit the gouernment of Constantina vnto their eldest sonnes: and so he that is now king of Tunis bestowed Constantina vpon his eldest sonne in like sort: who waging warre against the Arabians was slaine in the first battel. Then fel the gouernment of Constantina vnto his second sonne, whose intemperate life was the cause of his sudden and vntimely death. After him succeeded the third and yoongest sonne, who in regarde of his insolent and shameless behauiour, was so hated of all the citizens, that some had determined to kill him: whereof his father hauing intelligence, sent for him, and kept him for certaine yeeres prisoner at Tunis. Afterward he committed the gouernment of Constantina to a certaine Renegado that of a Christian became a Mahumetan: this Renegado he trusted as his owne brother, for he had made former triall of him: who for many yeeres gouerned the place with great tranquillitie. Vpon the north part of the citie standeth a certaine strong castle built at the same time when the citie it selfe was built: which castle was more strongly fortified then before, by one *Elcaied Nabil* the kings lieutenant: and this castle greatly bridled both the citizens, and all the bordering Arabians, whose great captaine it held as prisoner, and released him not, till he had left his three sonnes for hostages. At length the said *Elcaied* grew so hautie, that he coined money, to the great contempt of his king and soueraigne, whom notwithstanding he endeuoured by many giftes and presents to appease. But when men perceiued *Elcaied* to degenerate from his first forme of gouernment, they that before loued him, and had him in high regarde, were presently of another minde, and vtterly forsooke him. So that laying siege vnto a certaine citie of Numidia called Pescara, he perceiued some treason to be attempted against him: and thereupon returning foorthwith to Constantina, he found the citie-gates shut against him: from whence he presently tooke his iourney to the king of Tunis, and was by him cast into prison, and not restored to libertie, till he had paid an hundred thousand duckats. Afterward by the kings aide he was restored to his former gouernment: but when he began to tyrannize ouer some of the chiefe citizens, he againe prouoked the whole citie vnto armes, who besieged foorthwith the castle whereunto he fled, which was such a corrasiue vnto *Elcaied* his minde, that within few daies he died for sorrow. And so the people after they were reconciled to their king, would from thence foorth neuer admit any forren gouernour: wherefore the king of Tunis was (as is aforesaid)

The hard successe of the king of Tunis his three sonnes.

aforesaid) againe constrained to send his owne sonnes thither. The fields belonging to this citie are exceeding fertil. And on either side the riuer which runneth through the plaines, there are most commodious gardens, if they were well husbanded. Also without the citie stand many faire and ancient buildings. About a mile and a halfe from the citie standeth a certaine triumphall arch, like vnto the triumphall arches at Rome, which the grosse common people thinke to haue beene a castle where innumerable diuels remained, which (they say) were expelled by the Mahumetans, when they came first to inhabite Constantina. From the citie to the riuer they descend by certaine staires hewen out of the rocke: and neere vnto the riuer standeth a little house so artificially cut out of the maine rocke, that the roofe, pillers, and walles are all of one continued substance, and here the women of Constantina wash their linnen. Neere vnto the citie likewise there is a certaine bath of hot water dispersing it selfe among the rocks: in this bath are great store of snailes, which the fond women of the citie call Diuels: and when any one falleth into a feuer or any other disease, they suppose the snailes to be the authors thereof. And the onely remedie that they can apply vpon such an occasion is this: first they kill a white hen, putting her into a platter with her feathers on, and then verie solemnly with waxe-candles they carry her to the bathe, and there leaue her: and many good fellowes there are, which so soone as the silly women haue set downe their hens at the bath, wil come secretly thither, and conuey away the hens to their owne kitchins. Somewhat farther from the citie eastward there is a fountaine of extreme cold water, and neere vnto it standeth a certaine building of marble adorned with sundrie Hieroglyphicall pictures or emblemes, such as I haue seene at Rome, and at many other places of Europe. But the common people imagine that it was in times past a Grãmar-schoole, & because both the masters and schollers thereof were most vitious, they were transformed (say they) into marble. The inhabitants twise euerie yeere send great store of wares into Numidia: and because as they trauell, they are in danger of the Arabian theeues, they hire certaine Turkish Harquebusiers for great wages to guard them. The merchants of Constantina trauelling to Tunis pay no tribute at all, but onely at their departure foorth of Constantina for the worth of euerie 100. ducates in merchandise, they allow two ducates and a halfe.

Hot baths.

A fond and senseles superstition.

Of the towne of Mela.

THis towne built by the Romans within twelue miles of Constantina, and enuironed with most strong walles, containeth almost three thousand families: but at this present there are but few buildings by reason of the warres that haue happened. Here are great store of artizans: the most whereof are such weauers as make couerlets. In the market place there is a most cleere fountaine. The citizens are valiant, though they bee of rude behauiour. Here is abundance, not onely of fruits (whereupon some thinke the

name

name of the towne to be deriued) but also of cattle and corne. Vnto this towne the gouernour of Constantina sendeth euery yeere a certaine Iudge, to decide the townesmens controuersies, and to receiue the yeerely tribute: howbeit oftentimes the said Iudge is slaine by the people.

Of the ancient towne of Bona.

THis towne built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, almost 120. miles more to the west was in auncient times called Hippo, where the reuerend father Saint *Augustine* was once Bishop. It was in processe of time subdued by the Gothes, and was afterward surprised and burnt to ashes by *Hutmen* the third patriarke after *Mahumet*. And many yeeres after they built a new town within two miles of the stones that were brought from the ruines of Bona: which new towne they called Beld Elhuneb, that is, the citie of the fruit called Ziziphus or Iuiuba, by reason of the great abundance of that fruit: the which they vse to drie in the sunne, and to keepe till winter. It containeth almost three hundred families, and all the houses and buildings thereof are verie base, saue one onely temple which standeth next the sea. The inhabitants are all of an ingenuous disposition, some of them being merchants, and the residue artizans. Here is great store of linnen-cloath wouen, the greatest part whereof is carried to Numidia. The inhabitants of this towne hauing vpon a time slaine their gouernours, were so bold as to threaten the king of Tunis: and they had without all doubt betrayed the towne vnto the Christians, had not the king of Tunis taken speciall heed thereunto. In this towne are certaine lewd people and most beggerly apparelled, which notwithstanding are highly reuerenced by the citizens. Here are no fountaines, nor yet any water at all, but rainewater onely which is kept in cesterns. On the east side of the towne standeth a strong castle built by the king of Tunis, where the gouernour of the towne appointed by the king hath his aboad. Vnto this towne adioyneth a most large plaine, containing in length fortie, and in bredth fiue and twentie miles: verie commodious it is for corne, and is inhabited by certaine Arabians called Merdez: these Arabians haue great store of cattell and but little money; and they bring good store of butter dayly vnto Bona. Vnto this towne the people of Tunis, of the isle of Gerbi, and of Genoa vse yeerely to resort, and to buy great abundance of corne and butter. Euerie friday they haue neere vnto the towne wals a market, which is well frequented euen till night. Not farre from hence there is a certaine place in the sea, abounding with great store of corall: and because the townesmen know not how to fish for the same, the king of Tunis licenced certaine merchants of Genoa to fish for it: who in regard of the continuall assaults of pirates, because they could not speed of their purpose, they obtained leaue also of the king to build a castle neere vnto the place: but that the townesmen would in no case permit, saying

S. Augustine in times past bishop of Hippo.

Great store of corall.

that the Genoueſes in times paſt tooke their towne by ſuch a wile, and that it was afterward recouered againe by the king of Tunis.

Of the towne of Tefas.

THE towne of Tefas founded by the Africans vpon the ſide of a mountaine, and ſtanding almoſt an hundred and fiftie miles ſouthward of Bona, was in times paſt verie populous, and full of braue buildings, but it hath beene ſince deſtroyed by the Arabians. Afterward being replanted with new inhabitants, and remaining free from war for certaine moneths, it was the ſecond time deſtroyed by the Arabians. Laſt of all (becauſe it was a place commodious for corne) it was inhabited the third time by certaine Africans called Haoara, and that by the ayde of a certaine prince brother vnto him, which had ſlaine *Enaſir* the king of Tunis his ſonne: but now all that remained of this towne was vtterly razed by the king of Tunis.

Of the citie of Tebeſſa.

THis great and ſtrong citie built by the Romans neere vnto Numidia, and being diſtant two hundred miles ſouthward from the Mediterran ſea, is compaſſed with an high wall made of ſuch ſtones, as are to be ſeene vpon the Coloſſo at Rome: neither ſaw I, to my remembrance, any ſuch wals in all Africa or Europe; and yet the houſes and other buildings are verie baſe. Through part of this citie runneth a great riuer: and in the market, and diuers other places ſtand certaine marble pillers, hauing Epigrams and ſentences with Latin letters engrauen vpon them: there are alſo other ſquare pillers of marble couered with roofs. The plaines adiacent albeit verie drie, yet are they moſt fruitfull for corne. Fiue miles from hence grow ſuch abundance of wall-nut-trees, as you would take them to be ſome thicke forreſt. Neere vnto this towne ſtandeth a certaine hill full of mighty caues, wherein the common people ſay, that giants inhabited of olde: but it is moſt euident, that thoſe caues were digged by the Romans at the ſame time, when they built the citie: for certaine it is that the ſtones whereof the citie-walles conſiſt, were taken out of thoſe rockes. The inhabitants are people of a couetous, inhumane, and beaſtly diſpoſition; neither will they vouchſafe to looke vpon a ſtranger: inſomuch that *Eldabag* a famous Poet of the citie of Malaga in Granada, hauing in his trauell this way receiued ſome diſcourteſie, wrote in diſgrace of Tebeſſa certaine ſatyricall verſes, which my ſelfe likewiſe haue thought good here to ſet downe in the diſpraiſe thereof.

Within this place here's nought of any worth,
Saue worthles nuts, which Tebeſſa affourds.
Soft, I miſtake, the marble walles are worth
Your earneſt view, ſo are the Chriſtall-fourds:

But

But hence are baniſht vertues all diuine,
The place is hell, the people woorſe then ſwine.

This *Eldabag* was a moſt learned and elegant Poet in the Arabian toong, and out of meaſure ſatyricall, and bitter in his inuectiues. But to returne to our former purpoſe, theſe Tebeſſians haue alwaies rebelled againſt the king of Tunis, and haue ſlaine all the gouernours that he hath ſent. Wherefore the king that now is, trauelling vpon a time towards Numidia, ſent certaine ambaſſadours into the city, to know how the citizens ſtood affected towards him: vnto whom they (inſtead of *God ſaue the King*) made anſwere: *God ſaue our Citie-walles.* Whereat the king waxing wroth, ſacked the citie forthwith, beheaded and hanged diuers of the inhabitants, and made ſuch hauock, that euer ſince it hath remained deſolate. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 915.

Of the towne called Vrbs.

BY the name of this towne it ſufficiently appeareth, that the Romans were the firſt founders thereof. Situate it is vpon the moſt beautifull plaine of al Africa, which by reaſon of the abundance of fountaines is ſo wel ſtored with corne, that from thence to Tunis (which ſtandeth 190. miles northward of this place) and to other regions adioyning, great plentie of corne is tranſported. In this towne are to bee ſeene ſundrie monuments of the Romans, as namely images of marble, and euerie where vpon the walles are ſentences in Latin letters engrauen: the towne-walles are moſt artificially and ſumptuouſly built. This towne the Gothes, being aſſiſted by the Moores, ſurpriſed, when as it contained the chiefe treaſure and wealth that the Romanes enioyed in all Africa. Afterward it remained for certaine yeeres deſolate, being at length notwithſtanding inhabited a new, yet ſo, that it deſerueth rather the name of a village then of a towne. Not far from this towne runneth a certaine riuer, vpon the which are diuers water-milles; and this riuer taketh his beginning from a little hill but halfe a mile diſtant from the towne. All the inhabitants are either weauers or husbandmen, and are continually moleſted by the king of Tunis. Howbeit if the fertilitie of the ſoyle, the pleaſantnes of the place, and the holeſome diſpoſition of the aire, were as well knowne to the king, as they are to my ſelfe, I thinke verily that he would leaue Tunis, and goe and dwell in this region. The Arabians are well acquainted with the place, for from hence they yeerely tranſport great ſtore of corne vnto their deſerts.

Of the towne of Beggia.

THis towne built by the Romans vpon a mountaine almoſt twentie miles diſtant from the Mediterran ſea, and about eightie miles weſtward of Tunis, ſtandeth right in the way from Tunis to Conſtantina.

But becauſe the name of this towne is no Arabian name, it ſeemeth, that the firſt name hath been oftentimes corrupted and changed. The ancient walles of this towne are as yet ſtanding, and it is a moſt defenſible place, and well furniſhed with all kinde of neceſſaries. It is inhabited with great ſtore of weauers and husbandmen, and the fields thereof are ſo large and fruitfull for all kindes of graine, that the people of the ſame region could not ſufficiently manure them, vnleſſe they were aſſiſted by certaine bordering Arabians: and yet a great part of their fields lieth vntilled: howbeit they ſend continually great ſtore of corne vnto Tunis. The king of Tunis ſurchargeth them with continuall and greeuous exactions, which is the cauſe why their eſtate ſo mightily decaieth.

Of the towne called Hain Sammit.

THis towne was in my time founded by the king of Tunis, being diſtant almoſt thirtie miles from Beggia. It was built (they ſay) of purpoſe, that none of the fields thereabout might lie vntilled. But it hath ſince beene deſtroied by the Arabians, at the commandement of the king of Tunis: and now there remaineth a tower and certaine other buildings onely, whereof ſome haue roofes vpon them and others none.

Of the towne of Casba.

THis towne built by the Romans vpon a large plaine of twelue miles compaſſe, is fower and twentie miles diſtant from Tunis. The towne-wall remaineth ſtrong as yet; but the towne it ſelfe is deſtroied by the Arabians, and the fields lie vntilled, and all by the negligence of the king of Tunis, and of the inhabitants of the ſame region.

Of the caſtle of Choros.

THis caſtle founded not many yeeres paſt by the Africans vpon the riuer of Magrida, and being about ten miles diſtant from Tunis, is enuironed with moſt fruitfull fields. Neere vnto this towne groweth a certaine wood greatly abounding with oliues. At length it was deſtroied by certaine Arabians called *Bem Heli*, which make perpetuall warre againſt the king of Tunis, and liue onely vpon theft and robberie.

Of the towne of Biſerta.

THe ancient towne of Biſerta otherwiſe called Benſart, founded by the Africans vpon the Mediterran ſea, thirtie fiue miles from Tunis, is but of a ſmall bignes, and is inhabited with moſt miſerable people. Neere vnto this towne entreth a certaine creeke or arme of the ſea, which at the firſt be-

ing

ing very narrow, increaseth by little and little into a maruellous bredth. On either side thereof dwell great store of fishers and husbandmen: and westward of the said creeke lieth a most large and fruitfull plaine called Mater, which is greeuously molested by the king of Tunis, and by the Arabians. In this creeke are taken abundance of fishes: and after the moneth of October they catch a certaine fish called by the Africans Giarrafa, which I take to be the same that is at Rome called Laccia: for then by reason of the abundance of raine that falleth, the salt water of the baye becommeth somewhat fresh, wherewith those fishes (they say) are much delighted. Very deepe it is, and affoordeth good fishing till the end of May: but then the fishes begin to decrease, and to be much drier in taste then before, like vnto the fishes taken in the riuer of Fez.

The fish called Giarrafa or Laccia.

Of the great citie of Carthage.

THis famous and ancient citie was built at the first by a certaine people that came out of Syria. But others say that it was founded by a queene. The African chronicler *Ibnu Rachich* is of opinion, that it was built by a certaine people that came from Barca, being expelled thence by the king of Egypt: wherefore I cannot in this place affirme any certaintie as touching the founders thereof: for besides that the African historiographers disagree about this matter, there is none that hath left any writing thereof ancienter then the decay of the Roman empire: when as all the Romans that were found in Africa were expelled by the Goths. But afterward Tripolis of Barbaria and Capis being taken by the Mahumetans, the inhabitants of them both went vnto Carthage, whither the principall Romans and Goths had retired themselues, who endeuoured by all meanes to withstand the Mahumetans: and after many skirmishes the Romans fled to Bona, and the Goths left Carthage for a pray vnto the Mahumetans; so that it remained desolate many yeeres after, till a certaine Mahumetan patriarke called *Elmahdi* brought in new colonies: howbeit he could scarce furnish the twentith part with inhabitants. There are to be seene at this day certaine ruines of the citie-walles, till you come to a deepe and large cesterne. And there remaineth as yet also a certaine conduct which conueieth water to the citie from a mountaine thirtie miles distant, being like vnto the conduct of the great palace at Rome. Neere vnto Carthage likewise are certaine great and ancient buildings, the description whereof is out of my remembrance. On the west and south part of this citie are diuers gardens replenished with all kinde of fruites, which are carried from thence to Tunis in great abundance. The plaines adioining to this citie are exceeding fruitfull, though not very large: for vpon the north part thereof lieth a mountaine, the sea, and the gulfe of Tunis: on the east and south parts it ioyneth to the plaines of Bensart. But *now this citie is fallen into extreme decay & miserie: merchants shops there are not aboue twenty or fiue and twenty at the most: and

*1526

all the houſes of the towne being ſcarce fiue hundred, are moſt baſe and beggerly. In my time here was a ſtately temple and a faire college alſo, but no ſtudents were therein. The towneſmen, though very miſerable, yet are they exceeding proud withall, and ſeeme to pretend a great ſhew of religion. And the greater part of them are either gardiners or husbandmen, and are greeuouſly oppreſſed with the kings daily exactions.

A deſcription of the mightie citie of Tunis.

THis citie is called by the Latines *Tunetum*, and by the Arabians Tunus, which name they thinke to be corrupt, becauſe it ſignifieth nought in their language: but in olde time it was called Tarſis, after the name of a citie in Aſia. At the firſt it was a ſmall towne built by the Africans vpon a certaine lake, about twelue miles diſtant from the Mediterran ſea. And vpon the decay of Carthage Tunis began to increaſe both in buildings and inhabitants. For the inhabitants of Carthage were loth to remaine any longer in their owne towne, fearing leaſt ſome armie would haue beene ſent out of Europe: wherefore they repaired vnto Tunis, and greatly enlarged the buildings thereof. Afterward came thither one *Hucba Vtmen* the fourth Mahumetan patriarke, who perſwaded the citizens, that no armie or garriſon ought to remaine in any ſea-townes; wherefore he built another citie called Cairaoan, being diſtant from the Mediterran ſea thirtie, and from Tunis almoſt an hundred miles: vnto which citie the armie marched from Tunis, and in the roome thereof other people were ſent to inhabite. About an hundred and fiftie yeeres after, Cairaoan being ſacked by the Arabians, the prince therof was expelled, and became gouernour of the kingdome of Bugia: howbeit he left certaine kinſmen of his at Tunis, who gouerned that citie. And ten yeeres after, Bugia was taken by *Ioſeph* the ſonne of *Teſfin*, who ſeeing the humanitie of the foreſaid prince, would not expel him out of his kingdome: but ſo long as it remained to the ſaid prince and his poſteritie, *Ioſeph* cauſed it to be free from all moleſtation. Afterward *Abdul Mumen* king of Maroco hauing recouered Mahdia from the Chriſtians, marched toward Tunis, and got poſſeſſion thereof alſo. And ſo Tunis remained peaceably vnder the dominion of the kings of Maroco, ſo long as the kingdome was gouerned by the ſaid *Abdul*, and his ſonne *Ioſeph*, and their ſucceſſors *Iacob* and *Manſor*. But after the deceaſe of *Manſor*, his ſonne *Mahumet Ennaſir* made war againſt the king of Spaine, by whom being vanquiſhed, he fled to Maroco, and there within few yeeres ended his life. After him ſucceeded his brother *Ioſeph*, who was ſlaine by certaine ſoldiers of the king of Telenſin. And ſo vpon the death of *Mahumet*, and of his brother *Ioſeph*, the Arabians began to inhabite the territorie of Tunis, and to make often ſieges and aſſaults againſt the citie it ſelfe: whereupon the gouernour of Tunis aduertiſed the king of Maroco, that vnleſſe preſent aide were ſent, he muſt be conſtrained

The building of Cairaoan.

Tunis ſubiect vnto Abdul-Mumen and other kings of Maroco.

to

to yeeld Tunis vnto the Arabians. The king therefore sent a certaine valiant captaine, called *Habduluahidi*, and borne in Siuill a citie of* Granada, with a fleete of twentie sailes vnto Tunis, which he found halfe destroied by the Arabians: but so great was his eloquence and wisedome, that he restored all things to their former estate, and receiued the yeerely tribute. After *Habduluahidi* succeeded his sonne *Abu Zachheria*, who in learning and dexteritie of wit, excelled his father. This *Abu* built a castle vpon a certaine high place of the west part of Tunis, which he adorned with faire buildings and with a most beautifull temple. Afterward taking his iourney vnto the kingdome of Tripolis, and returning home by the southerne regions, he gathered tribute in all those places: so that after his decease he left great treasure vnto his sonne. And after *Abu* succeeded his sonne, who grew so insolent, that he would not be subiect to the king of Maroco, because he perceiued his kingdome to decay: at the same time also had the Marin-familie gotten possession of the kingdome of Fez, and so was the familie of *Beni Zeiien* possessed of the kingdomes of Telensin and Granada. And so while all those regions were at mutuall dissension, the dominions of Tunis began mightily to encrease. Insomuch that the king of Tunis marched vnto Telensin, and demanded tribute of the inhabitants. Wherefore the king of Fez, who as then laid siege against Maroco, craued by his ambassadours the king of Tunis his friendship, and with great giftes obtained the same. Then the king of Tunis returning home conquerour from Telensin, was receiued with great triumph, and was saluted king of all Africa, because indeed there was no prince of Africa at the same time comparable vnto him. Wherefore he began to ordaine a roiall court, and to choose Secretaries, counsellers, captaines, and other officers appertaining to a king; after the very same manner that was vsed in the court of Maroco. And from the time of this king euen till our times, the kingdome of Tunis hath so prospered, that now it is accounted the richest kingdome in all Africa. The said kings sonne raigning after his fathers death, enlarged the suburbes of Tunis with most stately buildings. Without the gate called Bed Suvaica he built a streete containing to the number of three hundred families: and he built another streete at the gate called Bed el Manera consisting of more then a thousand families. In both of these streetes dwell great store of artificers, & in the street last mentioned all the Christians of Tunis, which are of the kings garde, haue their aboad. Likewise there is a third streete built at the gate next vnto the sea, called Beb el Bahar, and being but halfe a mile distant from the gulfe of Tunis. Hither doe the Genoueses, Venetians, and all other Christian merchants resort, and here they repose themselues out of the tumult and concourse of the Moores: and this street is of so great bignes, that it containeth three hundred families of Christians and Moores, but the houses are verie low, and of small receit. The families of the citie, togither with them of the suburbs, amount almost to the number of ten thousand. This stately and populous citie hath a peculiar place assigned for each trade and occupation. Heere dwell

* *Or perhaps Andaluzia.*

dwell great ſtore of linnen-weauers,and the linnen that they weaue is exceeding fine,& ſold at a great price ouer al Africa.The women of this towne vſe a ſtrange kinde of ſpinning: for ſtanding vpon an high place or on the vpper part of the houſe,they let downe their ſpindles at a window, or through a hole of the plancher into a lower roume, ſo that the weight of the ſpindle makes the thread verie equall and euen. And here the linnen-drapers haue many ſhops,and are accounted the wealthieſt citizens in all Tunis: here are alſo great ſtore of grocers,apothecaries, taylors, and of all other trades and occupations: butchers here are verie many which ſell mutton for the moſt part,eſpecially in the ſpring,and in ſummer: alſo here are abundance of all kinde of artificers, euerie of which to deſcribe would prooue tedious: the apparell of their merchants,prieſts, and doctors is verie decent. Vpon their heads they weare a Dulipan, which is couered with a great linnen-cloth: the courtiers likewiſe and the ſouldiers weare all of them Dulipans, but not couered with linnen. Rich men here are but few, by reaſon of the exceeding ſcarcitie of all kinde of graine: for a man cannot till a piece of ground, be it neuer ſo neere the citie, in regard of the manifold inuaſions of the Arabians. Corne is brought vnto them from other regions and cities,as namely from Vrbs,from Beggia,and from Bona. Some of the citizens of Tunis haue certaine fields in the ſuburbs walled round about, where they ſowe ſome quantitie of barley and of other corne: howbeit the ſoyle is maruellous dry,and ſtandeth in need of much watring: for which purpoſe euery man hath a pit,whereout with a certaine wheele turned about by a mule or a camel,and through certaine conueyances and paſſages made for the nonce, they water all the vpper part of their ground: now conſider(I pray you)what great crop of corne can be reaped out of ſo little a field, walled round about and watred by ſuch cunning and induſtrie. Bread they make verie excellent, albeit they leaue the bran ſtill among the flower, & they bake their loaues in certaine mortars,ſuch as the Egyptians vſe to beat flaxe in. The merchants and moſt part of the citizens vſe for food a kinde of homely pulſe or pappe called by them Beſis, being made of barley meale in forme of a dumpling, whereupon they powre oyle or the broth of Pome-citrons. And there is a certaine place in the citie where nothing but barley prepared in a readines to make the ſaid pulſe, is to be ſold. They vſe alſo another kinde of foode almoſt as homely as the former: for ſeething a quantitie of meale throughly in water, and afterward braying it in another veſſell with a peſtill, they powre oyle or fleſh-pottage thereunto, and ſo eat it: and this meate they call Bezin: but the richer ſort feede themſelues with more daintie meats. All their milles (except ſuch as ſtand vpon a riuer not far from the citie) are turned about either by the ſtrength of mules,or aſſes. In this citie they haue no fountaines,riuers, nor welles of freſh water: but they all vſe raine-water taken out of ceſterns, ſauing that there is a fountaine in the ſuburbs, from whence certaine porters bring ſalt-water into the citie to ſell, which they thinke to be more holeſome and fit for drinke then raine-water. Other wels

A ſtrange kind of ſpinning.

there

there are that affoorde moſt excellent water, which is reſerued onely for the king & his courtiers. In this citie there is one moſt ſtately temple, furniſhed with ſufficient number of prieſts, and with rich reuenues. Other temples there be alſo, but not endowed with ſo ample reuenues: here are colledges likewiſe and monaſteries built after their maner, al which are maintained vpon the common beneuolence of the citie. There are certaine people in this citie whom a man would take to be diſtraught, which goe bare-headed and bare-footed, carrying ſtones about with them, and theſe are reuerenced by the common people, for men of ſingular holines. Moreouer on the behalfe of one of theſe mad fellowes, called *Sidi el Dahi*; and for the reſidue of his fond ſocietie, the king of Tunis built one of the foreſaid monaſteries, & endowed the ſame with moſt ample reuenues. All the houſes of this citie are indifferently beautifull, being built of excellent ſtones, and adorned with much painting and caruing. They haue verie artificiall pargettings or plaiſter-works, which they beautifie with orient colours: for wood to carue vpon is verie ſcarce at Tunis. The floores of their chambers are paued with certaine ſhining and faire ſtones: and moſt of their houſes are but of one ſtorie high: and almoſt euerie houſe hath two gates or entrances; one towards the ſtreet, and another towards the kitchin and other backe-roumes: between which gates they haue a faire court, where they may walke and conferre with their friends. The bath-ſtoues here are far more commodious then thoſe at Fez, though not ſo large and ſumptuous. In the ſuburbs are many pleaſant gardens which yeeld fruit, albeit not in great abundance, yet verie excellent: pome-citrons, roſes, and other flowers here are great ſtore, eſpecially in that place which they call Bardo, where the king hath built a palace amidſt thoſe beautifull and ſweete gardens. On all ſides of the citie within fower or fiue miles, there growe ſuch plentie of oliues, that the oyle thereof ſufficeth not onely the citie, but is carried alſo in great quantitie into Egypt. The wood of the oliue-trees which they cut downe they vſe to burne and to make char-coales thereof: neither do I thinke any place to be more deſtitute of wood then this. Pouertie conſtraineth ſome of their women to lead an vnchaſt life: they are decently apparelled, and going foorth of the houſe, they weare vailes or maskes before their faces, like vnto the women of Fez: for with one linnen-cloath they couer their foreheads, and ioine thereto another which they call Setfari: but about their heads they lap ſuch fardels of linnen, as they ſeeme comparable to the heads of Giants. Moſt part of their ſubſtance and labour they beſtow vpon perfumes and other ſuch vanities. They haue here a compound called Lhaſis, whereof whoſoeuer eateth but one ounce falleth a laughing, diſporting, and dallying, as if he were halfe drunken; and is by the ſaid confection maruellouſly prouoked vnto luſt.

of

Of the king of Tunis his court, and of the rites and ceremonies there vsed.

SO soone as the king of Tunis hath by inheritance attained to his kingdome, all his nobles, doctors, prieſtes, and iudges, binde themſelues by ſolemne oth vnto him. Immediately after any kings death, his ſonne and heire apparent ſucceedeth in the kingdome: then the chiefe officer of the court (called the Munafid, becauſe he is the kings vice-roy or high deputie) preſenteth himſelfe foorthwith vnto the new king, and giueth vp an account of all things which he did while the olde king liued: and then at the kings appointment euerie of the nobles receiue offices from the Munafid according to their ſeuerall places of dignitie. Another principall officer there is, called the Meſuare, that is, the great commander and gouernour of the warlike forces: who hath authoritie to increaſe or diminiſh the number of ſoldiers, to giue them their pay, to leuie armies, and to conduct the ſame whither he thinketh good. The third officer in dignitie is the Caſtellan, who with his ſoldiers taketh charge of the caſtle, and looketh to the ſauegarde of the kings owne perſon: and he allotteth puniſhments vnto ſuch priſoners as are brought into the ſaid caſtle, as if he were the king himſelfe. The fourth officer is the gouernour of the citie, whoſe dutie is to adminiſter iuſtice in the common wealth, aud to puniſh malefactors. The fift officer is the kings ſecretarie, who hath authoritie to write, and to giue anſwere in the kings name: he may open alſo and read any letters whatſoeuer, except ſuch as are ſent vnto the Caſtellan and gouernour of the citie. The ſixt is the kings chiefe chamberlaine, who is to furniſh the walles with hangings, to appoint vnto euery man his place, and by a meſſenger to aſſemble the kings counſellours, and this man hath great familiaritie with the king, and hath acceſſe to ſpeake with him, as often as he pleaſeth. The ſeuenth in dignitie is the kings treaſurer, who receiueth all cuſtomes, tributes, and yeerely reuenues, and paieth them, with the kings conſent, vnto the Munafid. The eight officer is he that receiueth tribute for merchandize that are brought by land, who taketh cuſtome alſo of forren merchants, which are conſtrained for the value of euery hundred duckats to pay two duckats and a halfe: this cuſtomer hath many ſpies and officers, who hauing intelligence of any merchants arriuall, they bring him foorthwith before their maſter, in whoſe abſence they keepe him ſo long in their cuſtodie, till their ſaid maſter be preſent, and till the merchant hath deliuered all ſuch cuſtome as is due, and then being bound with many othes, he is diſmiſſed. The ninth officer receiueth tribute onely of ſuch wares as are brought by ſea, and dwelleth in a houſe by the hauens ſide. The tenth is the ſteward of the kings houſhold, who is to prouide bread, meate, and other neceſſarie victuals, and to apparell all the kings wiues, eunuches, and the Negro-ſlaues that attend vpon him. He alſo taketh charge of the kings ſonnes and of their nurſes, and allotteth buſines vnto

the

the Christian captiues. These are the chiefe officers vnder the king of Tunis: the residue (least I should seeme tedious to the reader) I haue of purpose omitted to intreate of. The king of Tunis hath fifteene hundred most choise soldiers, the greatest part of whom are Renegadoes or backsliders from the Christian faith: and these haue liberall pay allowed them. They haue a captaine ouer them also, who may increase or diminish their number as he pleaseth. Also there are an hundred and fiftie soldiers being Moores, who haue authoritie to remoue the tents of the kings armie from place to place. There are likewise a certaine number of crossebowes, which attend vpon the king whithersoeuer he rideth: but next of all to the kings person is his garde of Christians, which (as we signified before) dwell in the suburbs. Before the king marcheth a garde of footemen, being all of them Turkish archers, and gunners. Immediately before the king goe his lackies or footemen. One there is that rideth on the one side of the king, carrying his partizan, another on the other side beareth his target, and the third comming behinde him carrieth his crossebowe. Others there are also that attend vpon the king, whom (for breuities sake) we omit here to speake of. These are the principall rites and ceremonies of the ancient kings of Tunis, being much different from them which are vsed by the king that now is. I could here make a large discourse of the kings vices that now raigneth (at whose hands I confesse my selfe to haue receiued great benefits) but that is not my purpose at this present: this one thing I can affirme, that he is maruellous cunning to procure money out of his subiects purses. But he himselfe liueth sometimes in his palace, and sometimes in gardens, in the companie of his concubines, musicians, stage-plaiers, and such like. When he calleth for any musician, he is brought in blindfold or hoodwinked in manner of a hawke. The golden coine of Tunis containeth fower and twenty charats apeece, that is to say, a duckat and one third part of the coine of Europe: there is a kinde of siluer-money coined also being fower square in forme, which waieth sixe charats apeece: and thirtie or two and thirtie of these peeces are equall in value to one peece of their gold coine, and they are called Nasari: the Italians call the gold-coine of Tunis Doble. And thus much concerning the king of Tunis, and the customes of his court. *Doble.*

Of the towne of Neapolis.

THis ancient towne built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea almost twelue miles eastward of Tunis is inhabited by certaine Moores called Nabell. It was in times past very populous, but now there dwell but a few pesants therein, which exercise themselues onely about sowing and reaping of flaxe.

Of

Of the towne of Cammar.

THis towne is very ancient also and neere vnto Carthage, standing eight miles northward of Tunis. The inhabitants being many in number are all of them gardiners, and vse to bring their herbes and fruits to Tunis to be solde. Here also growe great store of sugar-canes, which are brought likewise vnto Tunis: but because they haue not the arte of getting out the sugar, they vse onely after meales to sucke the sweete iuice out of the said canes.

Sugar-Canes.

Of the towne of Marsa.

THis ancient towne standing vpon the Mediterran sea neere the same place where the hauen of Carthage was of olde, remained certaine yeeres desolate, but now it is inhabited by certaine fishers and husbandmen: and here they vse to white linnen-cloth. Not far from hence are certaine castles and palaces, where the king of Tunis ordinarily remaineth in summer-time.

Of the towne of Ariana.

MOreouer this ancient towne was built by the Goths almost eight miles northward of Tunis. It is enuironed with most pleasant and fruitfull gardens, and it hath a strong wall, and containeth many husbandmen. Certaine other little townes there are not far distant from Carthage, some inhabited, and the residue desolate, the names whereof I haue quite forgotten.

Of the towne of Hammamet.

THis towne built by the Mahumetans of late yeeres, and enuironed with a wall of great strength, is distant from Tunis almost fiftie miles. The inhabitants are miserable people, and oppressed with continuall exactions, being the greatest part of them either fishers or colliers.

Of the towne of Heraclia.

THis little and ancient towne was founded by the Romans vpon a certaine mountaine, and was afterward destroied by the Arabians.

Of the towne of Susa.

THis exceeding great and ancient towne was built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran sea, being distant from Tunis about an hundred miles. The plaines adioyning abound with oliues and figs: their fieldes are most fruitfull for barlie, if they could be tilled, but the Arabians often incursions

ſions are the cauſe why they lie waſte. The inhabitants being moſt liberall and courteous people, and great friends vnto ſtrangers, make voiages moſt of them vnto the eaſterne regions and vnto Turkie; and ſome alſo frequent the next townes of Sicilia and Italie. The reſidue of the inhabitants are either weauers, or graziers of cattell, or ſuch as turne wooden veſſels, wherewith they furniſh the whole kingdome of Tunis. When the Mahumetans firſt woon that prouince, this towne was the ſeate of the vice-roy, whoſe palace is as yet remaining. A moſt ſtately towne it is, enuironed with ſtrong walles, and ſituate vpon a moſt beautifull plaine. It was in times paſt well ſtored with inhabitants, and with faire buildings, whereof ſome, together with a goodly temple, are as yet extant. But now it containeth very few people, and but fiue ſhops in all, by reaſon of the kings continuall exactions. I my ſelfe was conſtrained to ſtay in this towne for fower daies, in regarde of the danger of the time.

Of the towne of Monaſter.

THe ancient towne of Monaſter built by the Romans vpon the Mediterran ſea, and diſtant almoſt twelue miles from Suſa, is enuironed with moſt impregnable and ſtately walles, and containeth very faire buildings: but the inhabitants are moſt miſerable and beggerly people, and weare ſhooes made of ſea-ruſhes: moſt of them are either weauers or fiſhers: their fare is barlie bread, and a kinde of foode mingled with oile, which we called before Bezzin, which is vſed in all the townes thereabout: the ſoile will yeeld no other corne but barlie. The territorie adiacent aboundeth with oranges, peares, figs, pomegranates, and oliues, ſauing that it is continually waſted by the inuaſion of the enemie.

Of the towne of Tobulba.

THis towne built alſo by the Romaines vpon the Mediterran ſea, ſtandeth about twelue miles eaſtward of Monaſter. For certaine yeeres it was very populous, and greatly abounded with oliues: but afterwarde it was ſo waſted by the Arabians, that now there are but fewe houſes remaining, which are inhabited by certaine religious men: theſe religious men maintaine a faire hoſpitall for ſtrangers trauelling that way, where they courteouſly entertaine euen the Arabians themſelues.

Of the towne of El Mahdia, otherwiſe called Africa.

EL Mahdia founded in our time by *Mahdi* the firſt patriarke of Cairoan vpon the Mediterran ſea, and fortified with ſtrong wals, towers, and gates, hath a moſt noble hauen belonging thereto. *Mahdi* when hee firſt entred into this region, fained himſelfe in an vnknowne habite to be deſcended of the linage of *Mahumet*, whereby growing into great fauour

of the people, he was by their assistance made prince of Cairaoan, and was called El Mahdi Calisa: afterward trauelling fortie daies iourney westwarde into Numidia to receiue tribute due vnto him, he was taken by the prince of Segelmesse, and put in prison, howbeit the saide prince of Segelmese being presently mooued with compassion toward him, restored him to his former libertie, and was for his good will not long after slaine by him: Afterwarde tyrannizing ouer the people, and perceiuing some to conspire against him, he erected this towne of Mahdia, to the end he might there finde safe refuge when neede required. At length one *Beiezid* a Mahumetan prelate (whom they called the cauallier or knight of the asse, bicause that riding continually vpon an asse he conducted an armie of fortie thousand men) came vnto Cairaoan: but *Mahdi* fledde vnto his new towne, where with thirtie saile of ships sent him by a Mahumetan prince of Cordoua, he so valiantly encountered the enimie, that *Beiezid* and his sonne were both slaine in that battaile: afterward returning to Cairaoan, he grew in league and amitie with the citizens, and so the gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for many yeeres. But an hundred and thirtie yeeres past this * towne was taken by the Christians, and was after recouered by a certaine Mahumetan patriarke of Maroco called *Abdul Mumen*, but nowe it is subiect vnto the king of Tunis, by whom it is continually oppressed with most grieuous exactions. The inhabitants exercise traffike with forraine nations: and they are at so great dissention with the Arabians, that they are scarce permitted to till their grounds. Not many yeeres ago *Pedro de Nauarra* assailing this towne onely with nine ships, was defeated of his purpose, and constrained to returne with great losse of his men. This hapned in the yeere of our Lord 1519.

* *El Mahdia.*

Of the towne of Asfachus.

THis towne was built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, at such time as they waged warre against the Romaines. It is compassed with most high and strong wals, and was in times past very populous, but now it containeth but three or fower hundreth families at the most, and but a fewe shops. Oppressed it is both by the Arabians, and by the king of Tunis. All the inhabitants are either weauers, marriners, or fishermen. They take great store of fishes called by them Spares, which worde signifieth nought in the Arabian and Barbarian, much lesse in the Latine toong. This people liue also vpon barly bread and Bezin: their apparell is base, and some of them traffike in Egypt and Turkie.

Of the great citie of Cairaoan.

THE famous citie of Cairaoan otherwise called Caroen, was founded by *Hucba*, who was sent generall of an armie out of Arabia deserta, by *Hutmen* the thirde Mahumetan Califa. From the Mediterran sea this

citie

citie is distant sixe and thirtie, and from Tunis almost an hundred miles; neither was it built (they say) for any other purpose, but onely that the Arabian armie might securely rest therein with all such spoiles as they woone from the Barbarians, and the Numidians. He enuironed it with most impregnable walles, and built therein a sumptuous temple, supported with stately pillers. The saide *Hucba* after the death of *Hutmen* was ordained prince of Muchauia, and gouerned the same till the time of *Qualid Califa* the sonne of *Habdul Malic*, who as then raigned in Damasco: this *Qualid* sent a certaine captaine called *Muse* the sonne of *Nosair*, with an huge armie vnto Cairaoan: who hauing staied a fewe daies with his armie not farre from Cairaoan, marched westward, sacking and spoiling townes and cities, till he came to the Ocean sea shore, and then he returned towards Cairaoan againe. From whence he sent as his deputie a certaine captaine into Mauritania, who there also conquered many regions and cities. Insomuch that *Muse* being mooued with a iealous emulation, commanded him to staie till himselfe came. His said Deputie therefore called *Tarich* encamped himselfe not far from Andaluzia, whither *Muse* within 4. months came vnto him with an huge armie. From whence both of them with their armies crossing the seas, arriued in Granada, and so marched by lande against the Goths. Against whom *Theodoricus* the king of Goths opposing himselfe in battaile, was miserablie vanquished. Then the foresaide two captaines with all good successe proceeded euen to Castilia, and sacked the citie of Toledo, where amongst much other treasure, they founde many reliques of the saints, and the very same table whereat Christ sate with his blessed Apostles, which being couered with pure gold and adorned with great store of precious stones, was esteemed to be woorth halfe a million of ducates, and this table *Muse* carrying with him as if it had beene all the treasure in Spaine, returned with his armie ouer the sea, and bent his course towarde Cairaoan. And being in the meane space sent for by the letters of *Qualid Califa*, he sailed into Egypt: but arriuing at Alexandria, it was tolde him by one *Hescian*, brother vnto the saide *Califa*, that the *Califa* his brother was fallen into a most dangerous disease: wherefore he wished him not to goe presently vnto Damasco, for feare least if the *Califa* died in the meane season, those rich and sumptuous spoiles should be wasted and dispersed to no ende. But *Muse* little regarding this counsell, proceeded on to Damasco, and presented all his spoiles to the *Califa*, who within fiue daies after deceased. After whom his brother succeeding *Califa*, depriued *Muse* of his dignitie, and substituted one *Iezul* into his roome, whose sonne, brother, and nephewes succeeding, gouerned the citie of Cairaoan, till such time as the familie of *Qualid* was depriued of that dignitie, and one *Elagleb* was appointed lieutenant, who gouerned not the towne as a *Califa*: from that time the Mahumetan *Califas* leauing Damasco, remooued vnto Bagaded, as we find recorded in a certaine Chronicle. After the decease of *Elagleb*, succeeded his sonne, and the gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for an hundred

threescore and ten yeeres, till such time as they were depriued thereof by one *Mahdi Calisa*. But at the same time when *Elagleb* was gouernour, the citie of Cairaoan was so increased both with inhabitants, and buildings, that a towne called Recheda was built next vnto it, where the prince with his nobles vsed to remaine. In his time also the Isle of Sicilia was woone: for *Elagleb* sent thither a certaine captaine called *Halcama*, who built vpon the said Island a towne in stead of a forte, calling it according to his owne name *Halcama*, which name is vsed by the Sicilians euen till this present. Afterward this new towne was besieged by certaine people that came to aide the Sicilians. Whereupon one *Ased* was sent with an armie, & so the Moores forces being augmented, they conquered the residue of Sicilia, by which meanes the dominions of Cairaoan began woonderfully to increase. The citie of Cairaoan standeth vpon a sandie and desert plaine, which beareth no trees, nor yet any corne at all. Corne is brought thither from Susa, from Monaster, and from Mahdia, all which townes are within the space of forty miles. About twelue miles from Cairaoan standeth a certaine mountaine called Guesset, where some of the Romaines buildings are as yet extant: this mountaine aboundeth with springs of water and carobs, which springs runne downe to Cairaoan, where otherwise they shoulde haue no water but such as is kept in cesternes. Without the wals of this citie raine water is to be found in certaine cesternes onely till the beginning of Iune. In sommer time the Arabians vse to resort vnto the plaines adioining vpon this towne, who bring great dearth of corne and water, but exceeding plentie of dates and flesh with them, and that out of Numidia, which region is almost an hundred threescore and ten miles distant. In this citie for certaine yeeres the studie of the Mahumetan lawe mightily flourished, so that heere were the most famous lawyers in all Africa. It was at length destroied, and replanted againe with newe inhabitants, but it coulde neuer attaine vnto the former estate. At this present it is inhabited by none but leather-dressers, who sende their leather vnto the cities of Numidia, and exchange it also for cloth of Europe. Howbeit they are so continually oppressed by the king of Tunis, that now they are brought vnto extreme miserie.

The isle of Sicilie subdued by the gouernour Cairaoan.

Of the citie of Capes.

THis ancient citie built by the Romaines vpon the Mediterran sea, was fortified with most high and stately walles, and with a strong castle. Iust by it runneth a certaine riuer of hot and salt water. It hath continually beene so molested by the Arabians, that the inhabitants abandoning their citie, resorted vnto certaine plaines repleniſhed with great abundance of dates, which by a certaine arte are preserued all the yeere long. Heere is also digged out of the grounde a kinde of fruite about the bignes of a beane, and in taste resembling an almond. This fruite being ordinarie ouer all the kingdome of Tunis, is called by the Arabians Habhaziz.

The fruit called Habhaziz.

The

The inhabitants of the foresaide plaine are blacke people, being all of them either fishers, or husbandmen.

Of the towne called El Hamma.

THis most ancient towne founded also by the Romans, and being distant from Capes almost fifteene miles, is enuironed with most stately and strong walles: and vpon certaine marble stones therein are engrauen diuers monuments of antiquitie. The streets and buildings of this towne are verie base, and the inhabitants miserable, and addicted to robberie. Their fields are barren and vnprofitable, and will bring foorth nought but certaine vnsauorie dates. A mile and a halfe to the south of this towne beginneth a certaine riuer of hot water to spring, which being brought thorough the midst of the citie by certaine chanels is so deepe, that it will reach vp to a mans nauell: howbeit by reason of the extreme heat of the water, there are but few that will enter thereinto. And yet the inhabitants vse it for drinke, hauing set it a cooling almost an whole day. At length this riuer not far from the towne maketh a certaine lake, which is called the lake of lepers: for it is of woonderfull force to heale the disease of leprosie, and to cure leprous sores: wherefore neere vnto it are diuers cottages of lepers, some of whom are restored to their health. The saide water tasteth in a manner like brimstone, so that it will nothing at all quench a mans thirst, whereof I my selfe haue had often triall.

A riuer of hot water.

The lake of lepers.

Of the castle of Machres.

THe castle of Machres was built by the Africans in my time vpon the entrance of the gulfe of Capes, to defend the same region from the inuasion of the enemie. It is almost fiue hundred miles distant from the isle of Gerbi. All the inhabitants are either weauers, shipwrights, or fishermen, and haue traffick & recourse ouer all the foresaid isle. They haue al the same language that the people of the isle of Gerbi vse: but because they want grounds and possessions, al of them, saue the weauers, liue only vpon theft & robbery.

Of the isle of Gerbi or Zerbi, where Iohn Leo *the Author of this Historie was taken by Italian pirates, and carried thence to Rome.*

THis isle being neere vnto the firme land of Africa, and consisting of a plaine and sandie ground, aboundeth exceedingly with dates, vines, oliues, and other fruits, and containeth about eighteen miles in compasse. It hath also certaine farmes and granges, which are so farre distant asunder, that you shall scarce finde two or three in one village. Their ground is drie and barren, which though it be neuer so well tilled, will yeeld but a little barlie. And here corne and flesh is alwaies at an exceeding rate. At the sea shore standeth a strong castle, wherin the gouernour of the whole Island

and his retinue haue their abode. Not farre from hence there is a certaine village, where the Christian, Mauritanian, and Turkish merchants haue their place of residence; in which place there is a great market or faire weekely kept, whither all the merchants of the Island and many Arabians from the maine land with great store of cattle and wooll doe resort. The inhabitants of the Isle bring cloth thither to sell, which they themselues make, and this cloth togither with great store of raisins they vsually transport vnto Tunis, and Alexandria to be solde. Scarce fiftie yeeres sithence this Isle was inuaded and conquered by Christians: but it was immediately recouered by the king of Tunis. And presently after (newe colonies being heere planted) the foresaide castle was reedified; which the kings of Tunis afterwarde enioied. But after the death of king Hutmen the Islanders returned to their former libertie, and presently broke the bridge from the Island to the maine lande, fearing least they shoulde be inuaded by some land-armie. Not long after the said Islanders slaying the king of Tunis his gouernours of the Isle, haue themselues continued gouernours thereof till this present. Out of this Island is gathered the summe of fowerscore thousand Dobles (euery Doble containing an Italian ducate, and one third part) for yeerely tribute, by reason of the great concourse and resort of the merchants of Alexandria, Turkie, and Tunis. But now because they are at continuall dissension and controuersie, their estate is much impaired. In my time *Don Ferdinando* king of Spaine, sent a great armada against this Island, vnder the conduct of the duke of Alua, who not knowing the nature of the same, commanded his soldiers to land a good distance from thence: but the Moores so valiantly defended their Island, that the Spaniards were constrained to giue backe: and so much the greater was their distresse, in that they coulde not finde water sufficient to quench their extreme thirst. Moreouer at the Spaniards arriuall it was a full tide, but when they woulde haue returned on bourd, it was so great an ebbe, that their ships were constrained to put to sea, least they shoulde haue beene cast vpon the sholdes. The shore was drie for almost fower miles togither, so that the Spanish soldiers were put vnto great toile, before they coulde come to the waters side. And the Moores pursued them so eagerly, that they slew and tooke prisoners the greatest part of them, and the residue escaped by shipping into Sicilia. Afterwarde the Emperour *Charles* the fift sent a mightie fleete thither vnder the conduct of a Rhodian knight of the order of Saint *Iohn de Messina*, who so discreetly behaued himselfe in that action, that the Moores compounded to pay fiue thousand Dobles for yeerly tribute, vpon condition of the Emperours league and good will, which yeerely tribute is payde vntill this present.

The armie of don Ferdinando defeated.

Gerbi made tributarie vnto Charles the fift by meanes of a knight of the Rhodes.

Of the towne of Zoara.

THis towne built by the Africans vpon the Mediterran sea, standeth eastward from the Isle of Gerbi almost fiftie miles. The towne wall is weak,

and

and the inhabitants are poore people, being occupied about nothing but making of lime and plaistring, which they sell in the kingdome of Tripolis. Their fields are most barren: and the inhabitants haue continually beene molested by the inuasions of the Christians, especially since the time that they woon Tripolis.

Of the towne of Lepide.

THis ancient towne founded by the Romans, and enuironed with most high and strong walles, hath twise beene sacked by the Mahumetans, and of the stones and ruines thereof was Tripolis afterward built.

Of the olde citie of Tripolis.

OLde Tripolis built also by the Romans, was after woon by the Goths, and lastly by the Mahumetans, in the time of *Califa Homar* the second. Which Mahumetans hauing besieged the gouernour of Tripoli six moneths together, compelled him at length to flee vnto Carthage. The citizens were partly slaine, and partly carried captiue into Egypt and Arabia, as the most famous African Historiographer *Ibnu Rachich* reporteth.

Of the new citie of Tripolis in Barbarie.

AFter the destruction of old Tripolis, there was built another city of that name: which city being inuironed with most high and beautifull wals, but not verie strong, is situate vpon a sandie plaine, which yeeldeth great store of Dates. The houses of this citie are most stately in respect of the houses of Tunis; and heere also euerie trade and occupation hath a seuerall place. Weauers here are many. They haue no wels nor fountaines; but all their water is taken out of cesterns. Corne in this citie is at an exceeding rate; for all the fields of Tripoli are as sandie and barren as the fields of Numidia. The reason whereof is, for that the principall and fatteſt grounds of this region are ouerflowed with the sea. The inhabitants of this region affirme, that the greatest part of their fields northward are swallowed vp by the Mediterran sea, the like wherof is to be seene in the territories of Monaster, Mahdia, Asfacos, Capes, the Isle of Gerbi, and other places more eastward, where the sea for the space of a mile is so shallow, that it will scarce reach vnto a mans nauell. Yea, some are of opinion, that the citie of Tripolis it selfe was situate in times past more to the north, but by reason of the continuall inundations of the sea, it was built and remooued by little and little southward; for proofe whereof there stand as yet ruines of houses drowned in certaine places of the sea. In this citie were many faire temples

Plentie of dates.

ples and colledges built, and an hoſpitall alſo for the maintenance of their owne poore people, and for the entertainment of ſtrangers. Their fare is verie baſe and homely, beeing onely the forenamed Beſis made of barley meale: for that region affoordeth ſo ſmall quantitie euen of barley, that he is accounted a wealthie man that hath a buſhell or two of corne in ſtore. The citizens are moſt of them merchants; for Tripolis ſtandeth neere vnto Numidia and Tunis, neither is there any citie or towne of account between it and Alexandria: neither is it farre diſtant from the Iſles of Sicilia and Malta: and vnto the port of Tripolis Venetian ſhips yeerly reſort, and bring thither great ſtore of merchandize. This citie hath alwaies beene ſubiect vnto the king of Tunis: but when *Abulhaſen* the king of Fez beſieged Tunis, the king of Tunis was conſtrained with his Arabians to flee into the deſerts. Howbeit when *Abulhaſen* was conquered, the king of Tunis returned to his kingdome: but his ſubiects began to oppoſe themſelues againſt him: and ſo that common-wealth was afterward grieuouſly turmoyled with ciuill diſſenſions and warres. Whereof the king of Fez hauing intelligence, marched the fifth yeere of the ſaid ciuill warre with an armie againſt the citie of Tunis, and hauing vanquiſhed the king thereof, and conſtrained him to flee vnto Conſtantina, he ſo ſtraitly beſieged him, that the citizens of Conſtantina ſeeing themſelues not able to withſtād the king of Fez, opened their citie gates to him and to all his armie. Whereupon the king of Tunis was carried captiue vnto Fez, and was afterward kept a while priſoner in the caſtle of Septa. In the meane ſeaſon Tripolis was by a Genoueſe fleete of twentie ſailes ſurpriſed and ſacked, and the inhabitants carried away captiue. Whereof the king of Fez beeing aduertiſed, gaue the Genoueſes fiftie thouſand ducates, vpon condition, that he might enioy the towne in peace. But the Genoueſes hauing ſurrendred the towne, perceiued after their departure, that moſt part of their ducates were counterfait. Afterward the king of Tunis being reſtored vnto his former liberty by *Abuſelim* king of Fez, returned home vnto his kingdome, and ſo the gouernment thereof remained vnto him and his poſteritie, till *Abubar* the ſonne of *Hutmen* togither with his yoong ſonne was ſlaine in the caſtle of Tripolis by a nephew of his, who afterward vſurped the kingdome: but he was ſlaine in a battell which he fought againſt *Habdul Mumen*, who preſently thereupon became Lord of Tripolis. After him ſucceeded his ſonne *Zacharias*, who within a few moneths dyed of the peſtilence. After *Zacharias*, *Mucamen* the ſonne of *Heſen* and coſin to *Zacharias* was choſen king; who beginning to tyrannize ouer the citizens was by them expelled out of his kingdome: and afterward a certaine citizen was aduaunced vnto the royall throne, who gouerned verie modeſtly. But the king which was before expelled ſent an armie of ſouldiers againſt Tripolis, who looſing the field, were all of them put to flight. Afterward the king that began to raigne ſo modeſtly, prooued a verie tyrant, and being murthered by his kinſman, the people made choiſe of a certaine nobleman, leading as then an Hermites life, and

Tripolis taken by a fleete of Genowaies.

and in a manner againſt his will appointed him their gouernour: and ſo the gouernment of the citie of Tripolis remained vnto him and his poſteritie, till ſuch time as king *Ferdinando* ſent Don *Pedro de Nauarra* againſt it: who on the ſudden encountring this citie, carried away many captiues with him. The gouernour of Tripolis and his ſonne in lawe were ſent priſoners vnto Meſſina. Where, after certaine yeeres impriſonment, they were reſtored by the Emperour *Charles* the fift vnto their former libertie, and returned vnto Tripolis, which towne was afterward deſtroyed by the Chriſtians. The caſtle of Tripolis being enuironed with moſt ſtrong walles, begin (as I vnderſtand) to be replanted with new inhabitants. And thus much as concerning the cities of the kingdome of Tunis.

Tripolis ſurprized by Pedro de Nauarra.

Of the mountaines belonging to the ſtate of Bugia.

THe territorie of Bugia is full of ragged, high, and woodie mountaines: the inhabitants being a noble, rich, and liberall people, and poſſeſſing great ſtore of goats, oxen and horſes, haue alwaies continued in libertie, ſince the time that Bugia was ſurpriſed by the Chriſtians. The people of theſe mountaines vſe to haue a blacke croſſe vpon one of their cheekes, according to the ancient cuſtome before mentioned. Their bread is made of barly, and they haue abundance of nuts and figs vpon thoſe mountaines, eſpecially which are neere vnto Zoaoa: in ſome places of theſe mountaines are certaine mines of iron, whereof they make a kinde of coine of halfe a pound weight. They haue alſo another ſort of ſiluer coine weighing fower graines a peece: theſe mountaines yeeld abundance of wine and hempe; but their linnen-cloath that they weaue is exceeding courſe. And theſe mountaines of Bugia extende in length vpon the coaſt of the Mediterran ſea almoſt a hundred and fiftie, and in bredth fortie miles: each mountaine containeth inhabitants of a diuers kinred and generation from others, whom becauſe they liue all after one manner, we will paſſe ouer in ſilence.

Iron-mines.

Of mount Auraz.

THis exceeding high and populous mountaine is inhabited with moſt barbarous people, that are wholy addicted vnto robberie and ſpoile. From Bugia it is diſtant fowerſcore, and from Conſtantina almoſt threeſcore miles. Alſo being ſeparated from other mountaines it extendeth about threeſcore miles in length. Southward it bordereth vpon the Numidian deſerts, and northward vpon the regions of Meſila, Stefe, Nicaus, and Conſtantina. From the very toppe of this mountaine iſſue diuers ſtreames of water, which running downe into the next plaines, increaſe at length into a lake, the water whereof in ſommer time is ſalt. The paſſage vnto this mountaine is very difficult, in regard of certaine cruell Arabians.

Of

Of the mountaine of Conſtantina.

ALl the north and weſt part of the territorie belonging to the citie of Conſtantina is full of high mountaines, which beginning at the borders of Bugia, extend themſelues to the Mediterran ſea, euen as farre as Bona, that is to ſay, almoſt an hundred and thirtie miles. Their fields vpon the plaines are repleniſhed with oliues, figges, and all other kindes of fruites, which are carried in great quantitie vnto the next townes and cities: all the inhabitants for ciuill demeanour excell the citizens of Bugia, and do exerciſe diuers manuarie arts, and weaue great ſtore of linnen cloth. They are at continuall diſſention among themſelues, by reaſon that their women will ſo often change husbands. They are exceeding rich, and free from all tribute: and yet dare they not till their plaines, both for feare of the Arabians, and alſo of the gouernors of the next cities. Euerie weeke vpon ſundry daies heere is a market, greatly frequented with merchants of Conſtantina, & of other places: and whatſoeuer merchant hath no friend nor acquaintãce dwelling vpon the mountaines, is in great hazard to be notablie cozened. Vpon theſe mountaines they haue nether iudges, prieſts, nor yet any learned men: ſo that when any of the inhabitants would write a letter vnto his friend, he muſt trudge vp and downe ſometime twelue, and ſometime fifteene miles to ſeeke a ſcribe. Footemen for the warres they haue almoſt fortie thouſand, and about fower thouſand horſemen. The inhabitants are men of ſuch valour, that if they agreed among themſelues, they woulde ſoone be able to conquer all Africa.

Of the mountaines of Bona.

THe citie of Bona hath on the north part the Mediterran ſea, on the ſouth and weſt parts certaine mountaines adioining almoſt vnto the mountaines of Conſtantina, and on the eaſt ſide it hath moſt fruitfull fieldes and large plaines, whereupon in times paſt were diuers townes and caſtles, built by the Romains; the ruines whereof are now onely remaining, and the names quite forgotten. All theſe regions by reaſon of the Arabians crueltie are ſo deſolate, that they are inhabited but in very fewe places; and there they are conſtrained to keepe out the Arabians by force of armes. The mountaines of Bona extend in length from eaſt to weſt almoſt foreſcore miles, and in bredth about thirtie miles. Heere are great ſtore of fountaines, from whence certaine riuers iſſue, running through the plaines into the Mediterran ſea.

Of the mountaines ſtanding neere vnto Tunis.

THe citie of Tunis ſtanding vpon a plaine hath no mountaines nigh vnto it, but onely on the weſt ſide towards the Mediterran ſea, where

it

it hath a mountaine like vnto that which enuironeth Carthage. Neere vnto Tunis ſtandeth another high and colde mountaine called Zagoan : inhabitants heere are none at all but a fewe that tende the Bee-hiues, and gather ſome quantitie of barly. Vpon the toppe of this mountaine the Romaines built certaine forts, the ruines whereof are yet to be ſeene, hauing epitaphes engrauen vpon them in Latine letters. From this mountaine vnto Carthage, water is conueighed by certaine paſſages vnder the ground.

Of the mountaines of Beni Tefren and Nufuſa.

THeſe high and colde mountaines are diſtant from the deſert, from Gerbi, and from Asfacus almoſt thirtie miles, and yeelde very ſmall ſtore of barly. The inhabitants being valiant, and renouncing the law of Mahumet, do follow the doctrine of the patriarke of Cairaoan in moſt points, neither is there any other nation among the Arabians that obſerue the ſame doctrine. In Tunis and other cities theſe people earne their liuing by moſt baſe occupations, neither dare they openly profeſſe their religion.

Of mount Garian.

THis high and cold mountaine containing in length fortie & in bredth fifteene miles, and being ſeparated from other mountaines by a ſandie deſert, is diſtant from Tripolis almoſt fiftie miles. It yeeldeth great plentie of barly and of dates, which vnleſſe they be ſpent while they are new, will ſoone prooue rotten. Heere are likewiſe abundance of oliues: Wherefore from this mountaine vnto Alexandria and other cities there is much oile conueighed. There is not better ſaffron to be found in any part of the worlde beſides, which in regard of the goodneſſe is ſolde very deere. For yeerely tribute there is gathered out of this mountaine threeſcore thouſand ducates, and as much ſaffron as fifteene mules can carrie. They are continually oppreſſed with the exactions of the Arabians, and of the king of Tunis. They haue certaine baſe villages vpon this mountaine. *Moſt excellent ſaffron.*

Of mount Beni Guarid.

THis mountaine being almoſt an hundred miles diſtant from Tripolis, is inhabited with moſt valiant & ſtout people, which liue at their owne libertie, and are at continual war with the people of the next mountaines, & of the Numidian deſert.

Of the caſtle called Caſr Acmed.

THis caſtle builte vpon the Mediterran ſea by a captaine which came with an armie into Africa, ſtandeth not farre from Tripolis, and was at the laſt laide waſte by the Arabians.

Of

Of the castle of Subeica.

THe castle of Subeica erected about the same time when the Mahumetans came into Africa, was in times past wel furnished with inhabitants, being afterward destroied by the Arabians, and nowe it harboreth a fewe fishers onely.

Of the Castle called Casr Hessin.

THis castle was founded by the Mahumetans vpon the Mediterran sea, and was afterward destroyed by the Arabians.

Here endeth the fifth booke.

IOHN LEO HIS SIXTH BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

Of the village called Gar.

HAuing hitherto intreated of the mountaines, it now remaineth that we say somewhat as touching certaine villages, hamlets, and territories: and afterward we will describe in order the cities of Numidia. And first the village of Gar, situate vpon the Mediterran sea, and abounding with dates, offereth it selfe: the fields thereto belonging are drie and barren, and yet bring they foorth some quantitie of barley for the sustenance of the inhabitants.

Of Garell Gare.

IT is a certaine little territorie or Grange, containing caues of a marvellous depth, whence (they say) the stones were taken wherewith olde Tripolis was built, because it is not far distant from that citie.

Of the village of Sarman.

THis large village standing not farre from old Tripolis, aboundeth with dates, but no corne will grow there.

Of

Of the village called Zauiat Ben Iarbuh.

THis village being ſituate neer vnto the Mediterran ſea, yeeldeth great plentie of dates, but no corne at all, and is inhabited by certaine religious perſons.

Of the village of Zanzor.

THis village alſo ſtanding neere vnto the Mediterran ſea, within twelue miles of Tripolis, is inhabited by ſundrie artificers, and aboundeth with great ſtore of dates, pomegranats, and peaches. The inhabitants haue beene verie miſerable euer ſince Tripolis was taken by the Chriſtians; and yet they traffique with the citizens of Tripolis, and carrie dates thither to ſell.

Of the village of Hamrozo.

IT ſtandeth ſixe miles from Tripolis, and the gardens thereof bring forth great plentie of dates, and of all other kinde of fruits.

Of the plaine of Taiora.

THis plaine ſtanding two miles eaſtward of Tripolis, containeth many granges exceedingly repleniſhed with dates and other fruits. The ſurpriſe of Tripolis was verie profitable for this place, for then many principall citizens fled hither for refuge. The inhabitants being ignorant and rude people, and altogither addicted to theft and robberie, build their cottages with the boughes of palme-trees. Their food is barley bread, and Bezin before deſcribed: all round about are ſubiect vnto the king of Tunis and the Arabians, ſaue thoſe onely that inhabit vpon this plaine.

Of the Prouince of Meſellata.

THis Prouince ſtanding vpon the Mediterran ſea about fiue and thirtie miles from Tripolis, and being fraught with rich villages, caſtles, and inhabitants, aboundeth alſo with great plentie of oliues and dates. The inhabitants being free from all forren authoritie, haue a Captaine among themſelues, which gouerneth their common-wealth, and fighteth their battles againſt the Arabians: and the ſoldiers of this Prouince are about 5000.

Of the Prouince of Meſrata.

THis Prouince being ſituate alſo vpon the Mediterran ſea, about an hundreth miles from Tripolis, hath manie villages both vpon the plaines and mountaines. The inhabitants are rich and pay no tribute at all,

and exercise traffique with the Venetians resorting to this Prouince with their galleies, carrying the Venetian wares to Numidia, and there exchanging the same for slaues, muske, and ciuet, which is brought thither out of Ethiopia.

Of the desert of Barca.

THis desert beginning at the vtmost frontire of Mesrata, and extending eastward as farre as the confines of Alexandria, containeth in length a thousand and three hundreth, and in bredth about 200. miles. It is a rough and vnpleasant place, being almost vtterly destitute of water and corne. Before the Arabians inuaded Africa, this region was void of inhabitants: but now certaine Arabians lead here a miserable and hungrie life, being a great way distant from all places of habitation: neither haue they any corne growing at all. But corne and other necessaries are brought vnto them by sea from Sicilia, which that euerie of them may purchase, they are constrained to lay their sonnes to gage, and then goe rob and rifle trauellers to redeeme them againe. Neuer did you heare of more cruell and bloodie theeues; for after they haue robbed merchants of all their goods and apparell, they powre warme milke downe their throats, hanging them vp by the heeles vpon some tree, and forcing them to cast their gorge, wherein the lewd varlets search diligently for gold, suspecting that the merchants swallowed vp all their crownes before they entred that dangerous desert.

The Arabians of Barca most cruell and bloodie theeues.

Of the citie of Tesset in Numidia.

IN the first Booke of this present discourse we said that Numidia was accounted by the African Cosmographers the basest part of all Africa, and there we alleaged certaine reasons for the same purpose: we signified also in the second Booke, writing of the Prouince of Hea, that certaine cities of Numidia stood neere vnto mount Atlas. Howbeit *Sus, Guzula, Helchemma, and Capes, are within the kingdome of Tunis, albeit some would haue them situate in Numidia. But my selfe following the opinion of *Ptolemey*, suppose Tunis to be a part of Barbarie. Being therefore about to describe all the cities and townes of Numidia, I will first begin with Tesset: which ancient towne built by the Numidians neere vnto the Libyan deserts, and enuironed with walles of sunne-dried bricke, deserueth scarcely the name of a towne; and yet containeth fower hundred families. It is compassed round about with sandie plaines, sauing that neer vnto the towne grow some store of dates, of mill-seed, and of barley, which the miserable townesmen vse for food. They are constrained also to pay large tribute vnto the Arabians inhabiting the next deserts. They exercise traffique in the land of Negroes and in Guzula, insomuch that they spend most of their time in forren regions. They are of a blacke colour, and destitute of all learning. The women indeed teach their yoong children the first rudiments of learning, but before

** Error.*

before they can attaine to any perfection, they are put to labour, and to the plough-tayle. The said women are somewhat whiter then other women: some of them get their liuing by spinning and carding of wooll, and the residue spend their time in idlenes. Such as are accounted richest in this region, possesse but verie few cattell. They till their ground with an horse and a camell, which kinde of plowing is obserued throughout all Numidia.

Of the village of Guaden.

THis village situate vpon the Numidian desert neere vnto Libya, is inhabited by most miserable and grosse people. Here groweth nothing but dates: and the inhabitants are at such enmitie with their neighbours, that it is dangerous for them to go abroad. Howbeit they giue themselues to hunting, and take certaine wilde beasts called Elamth, and ostriches, neither do they eate any other flesh. All their goates they reserue for milke. And these people also are blacke of colour. *The beast called Elamth.*

Of the castles of Ifran.

FOwer castles there are called by this name, built by the Numidians three miles each from other vpon a certaine riuer, which in the heat of sommer is destitute of water. Neere vnto these castles are certaine fields greatly abounding with dates. The inhabitants are verie rich, for they haue traffique with the Portugals at the port of Gart Guessem, whose wares they carrie to Gualata and Tombuto. These castles containe great store of inhabitants, which make certaine brazen vessels to bee solde in the lande of Negros: for they haue copper-mines in sundrie places thereabout. Euery castle hath a weekly market; but corne and flesh are at an extreme rate there. They goe decently apparelled, and haue a faire temple to resort vnto, and a Iudge also that decideth none but ciuill controuersies: for criminall matters they vse to punish with banishment onely. *The port of Gart Guessem.* *Copper-mines.*

Of the castles of Aecha.

THree castles of this name built vpon the Numidian deserts not far from Lybia were in times past well stored with inhabitants, but at length by ciuill wars they were vtterly dispeopled. Afterward (all matters being pacified) there were, by the meanes of a certaine religious man, who gouerned the same people, certaine new colonies planted. Neither haue the poore inhabitants any thing to do, but onely to gather dates.

Of the Prouince of Dara.

THis Prouince beginning at mount Atlas extendeth it selfe southward by the deserts of Lybia almost two hundred and fiftie miles, and the bredth thereof is verie narrow. All the inhabitants dwell vpon a certaine riuer which is called by the name of the Prouince. This riuer sometime so ouerfloweth, that a man would thinke it to be a sea, but in sommer it so diminisheth, that any one may passe ouer it on foote. If so be it ouerfloweth about the beginning of Aprill, it bringeth great plentie vnto the whole region: if not, there followeth great scarcitie of corne. Vpon the banke of this riuer there are sundrie villages and hamlets, and diuers castles also, which are enuironed with walles made of sunne-dried bricke and mortar. All their beames and planchers consist of date-trees, being notwithstanding vnfit for the purpose; for the wood of date-trees is not solid, but flexible and spungie. On either side of the said riuer for the space of fiue or sixe miles, the fields abound exceedingly with dates, which with good keeping will last many yeeres: and as here are diuers kindes of dates, so they are sold at sundry prices: for a bushell of some is woorth a duckat, but others wherewith they feede their horses and camels, are scarce of a quarter so much value. Of date-trees some are male and some are female: the male bring foorth flowers onely, and the female fruit: but the flowers of the female will not open, vnlesse the boughes and flowers of the male be ioined vnto them: And if they be not ioined, the dates will prooue starke naught and containe great stones. The inhabitants of Dara liue vpon barlie and other grosse meate: neither may they eate any bread but onely vpon festiuall daies. Their castles are inhabited by goldsmithes and other artificers, and so are all the regions lying in the way from Tombuto to Fez: in this prouince also there are three or fower proper townes, frequented by merchants and strangers, and containing many shops and temples. But the principall towne called Beni Sabih, and inhabited with most valiant and liberall people, is diuided into two parts, either part hauing a seuerall captaine or gouernour: which gouernours are oftentimes at great dissension, and especially when they moisten their arable grounds, by reason that they are so skanted of water. A merchant they will most courteously entertaine a whole yeere together, and then friendly dismissing him, they will require nought at his hands, but wil accept such liberalitie as he thinkes good to bestow vpon them. The said gouernours so often as they fall a skirmishing, hire the next Arabians to aide them, allowing them daily halfe a duckat for their pay and somtimes more, and giuing them their allowance euery day. In time of peace they trim their harquebuzes, handguns, & other weapons: neither saw I euer (to my remembrance) more cunning harquebuziers then at this place. In this prouince groweth great store of Indico being an herbe like vnto wilde woad, and this herbe they exchange with the merchants of Fez and Tremisen for other

The strange propertie of the palme or date-tree.

Indico.

wares

wares. Corne is very ſcarce among them, and is brought thither from Fez and other regions, neither haue they any great ſtore of goats or horſes, vnto whom in ſtead of prouender they giue dates, and a kinde of herbe alſo which groweth in the kingdome of Naples, and is called by the Neapolitans Farfa. They feede their goates with the nuts or ſtones of their dates beaten to powder, whereby they grow exceeding fat, & yeeld great quantitie of milke. Their owne foode is the fleſh of camels and goates, being vnſauorie and diſpleaſant in taſte. Likewiſe they kill and eate oſtriches, the fleſh whereof taſteth not much vnlike to the fleſh of a dunghill-cocke, ſauing that it is more tough and of a ſtronger ſmell, eſpecially the oſtriches leg, which conſiſteth of ſlimie fleſh. Their women are faire, fat, and courteous: and they keepe diuers ſlaues which are brought out of the land of Negros.

The fleſh of the Oſtrich.

Of the prouince of Segelmeſſe.

THis prouince called Segelmeſſe, according to the name of the principall citie therein contained, beginneth not farre from the towne of Gherſeluin, and ſtretcheth ſouthward by the riuer of Ziz an hundred and twentie miles, euen to the confines of the Libyan deſerts. The ſaid prouince is inhabited by certaine barbarous people of the families of Zeneta, Zanhagia, and Haoara, and was in times paſt ſubiect vnto a certaine prince, which bare rule ouer the ſame prouince onely. Afterward it fell into the poſſeſſion of king *Ioſeph* of the Luntune-family, and then into the hands of one *Muahidin*, and not long after it was enioied by the king of Fez his ſonne. But ſince that time, the prince of this region was ſlaine in a rebellion, and the citie of Segelmeſſe was deſtroied, and till this day remaineth deſolate. Afterward the inhabitants built certaine caſtles, whereof ſome are at libertie, and others are ſubiect to the Arabians.

Of the prouince of Cheneg.

THis region extending it ſelfe by the riuer of Ziz vnto mount Atlas, containeth many caſtles, and bringeth forth great abundance of dates, which dates are but of ſmall value. Their fields are barren and of little circuit, ſaue onely betweene the riuer Ziz and the foote of mount Atlas, where ſome ſtore of barlie vſeth to grow. The inhabitants are ſome of them ſubiect to the Arabians, others to the citie of Gherſeluin, and the reſidue liue at their owne libertie. And vnto theſe the high way leading from Segelmeſſe to Fez is ſubiect, and they exact great tribute of the merchants trauelling the ſame way. Neere vnto the ſaid high way ſtand three caſtles, the firſt whereof being ſituate vpon an exceeding high rocke, ſeemeth to touch the cloudes. Vnder this caſtle there is a certaine houſe where a garde of ſoldiers continually ſtand, who for the load of euery camell that paſſeth by, demand one fourth part of a duckat. The ſecond caſtle being fifteene miles

distant from the first, standeth not vpon an hill but on a plaine, and is farre more stately and rich then the former. The thirde castle called Tammaracroft is situate vpon the common high way about twenty miles southward of the second. There are certaine villages also, and other castles of meaner account. Corne is maruellous scarce among them: but they haue goates great plentie, which in winter they keepe in certaine large caues, as in places of greatest safetie, whereinto they enter by a most narrow passage. Likewise the entrance into this region for the space of fortie miles is so narrow, that two or three armed men onely may withstand mighty forces.

Of the region of Matgara.

THis region beginning southward from the region last described, containeth many castles built vpon the riuer of Ziz, the principall whereof is called Helel, wherein remaineth the gouernour of the whole region being an Arabian by birth. The soldiers of this Arabian gouernour dwell in tents vpon the plaines: and he hath other soldiers attending vpon his owne person also, who will suffer no man to passe but vnder safe conduct, without depriuing him of all his goods. Here are likewise diuers other villages and castles, which not being woorthy the naming I haue of purpose omitted.

Of the territorie of Retel.

RETel bordering vpon the region last described, extendeth also fiftie miles southward along the riuer of Ziz, euen to the confines of Segelmesse. It containeth many castles, and yeeldeth plentie of dates. The inhabitants are subiect vnto the Arabians, being extremely couetous, and so faint harted, that an hundred of them dare scarce oppose themselues against ten Arabians: they till the Arabians ground also as if they were their slaues. The east part of Retel bordereth vpon a certaine desolate mountaine, and the west part vpon a desert and sandie plaine, whereunto the Arabians returning home from the wildernes, do resort.

Of the territorie of Segelmesse.

THis territorie extending it selfe along the riuer of Ziz from north to south almost twenty miles, containeth about three hundred and fiftie castles, besides villages and hamlets: three of which castles are more principall then the rest. The first called Tenegent, and consisting of a thousand and moe families, standeth neere vnto the citie of Segelmesse, and is inhabited with great store of artificers. The second called Tebuhasan, standeth about eight miles to the south of Tenegent, being furnished also with greater numbers of inhabitants, and so frequented with merchants, that there is not in that respect the like place to be found in all the whole region besides.

beſides. The third called Mamun is reſorted vnto by ſundry merchants, both Iewes and Moores. Theſe three caſtles haue three ſeuerall gouernours, who are at great diſſenſion among themſelues. They will oftentimes deſtroy one anothers chanels, whereby their fieldes are watered, which cannot without great coſt be repaired againe. They will ſtow the palme-trees alſo to the very ſtocks: and vnto them a companie of lewd Arabians aſſociate themſelues. They coine both ſiluer and gold-money: but their gold is not very ſpeciall. Their ſiluer coine weigheth fower graines apeece, eightie of which peeces are eſteemed to be woorth one peece of their gold-coine. The Iewes and Arabians pay exceſſiue tribute here. Some of their principall men are exceeding rich, and vſe great traffique vnto the land of Negros: whither they tranſport wares of Barbarie, exchanging the ſame for gold and ſlaues. The greateſt part of them liue vpon dates, except it be in certaine places where ſome corne grow. Here are infinite numbers of ſcorpions, but no flies at all. In ſummer-time this region is extremely hot, and then are the riuers ſo deſtitute of water, that the people are conſtrained to draw ſalt water out of certaine pits. The ſaid territorie containeth in circuit about eightie miles, all which, after the deſtruction of Segelmeſſe, the inhabitants with ſmall coſt walled round about, to the ende they might not be moleſted by continuall inrodes of horſemen. While they liued all at vnitie and concord, they retained their libertie: but ſince they fell to mutuall debate, their wall was razed, and each faction inuited the Arabians to helpe them, vnder whom by little and little they were brought in ſubiection.

Infinit numbers of Scorpions.

Of the towne or citie of Segelmeſſe.

SOme are of opinion that this towne was built by a certaine Romaine captaine, who hauing conducted his troupes foorth of Mauritania, conquered all Numidia, and marching weſtward, built a towne, and called it Sigillummeſſe, bicauſe it ſtoode vpon the borders of Meſſa, and was as it were the ſeale of all his victories, and afterward by a corrupt worde it began to be called Segelmeſſe. The common people togither with one of our African Coſmographers, called *Bicri*, ſuppoſe that this towne was built by *Alexander* the great, for the reliefe of his ſicke and wounded ſoldiers. Which opinion ſeemeth not probable to me: for I coulde neuer read that *Alexander* the great came into any part of theſe regions. This towne was ſituate vpon a plaine neere vnto the riuer of Ziz, and was enuironed with moſt ſtately and high wals, euen as in many places it is to be ſeene at this preſent. When the Mahumetans came firſt into Africa, the inhabitants of this towne were ſubiect vnto the family of Zeneta; which family was at length diſpoſſeſſed of that authority by king *Ioſeph* the ſon of *Teſfin*, of the family of Luntuna. The towne it ſelfe was very gallantly builte, and the inhabitants were rich, and had great traffike vnto the land of Negros. Heere ſtoode ſtately temples and colleges alſo, and great ſtore of conducts, the water whereof was drawen

drawen out of the riuer by wheeles. The aire in this place is moſt temperate and holeſome, ſauing that in winter it aboundeth with ouermuch moiſture, which breedeth ſome diſeaſes. But now ſince the towne was deſtroied, the inhabitants began to plant themſelues in the next caſtles and villages, as we haue before ſignified. I my ſelfe aboade in this region almoſt ſeuen moneths at the foreſaid caſtle of Meniun.

Of the caſtle of Eſſuoaihila.

THis caſtle was built by the Arabians in a certaine deſert place, twelue miles ſouthward of the towne laſt deſcribed; and here they keepe their wares free from the danger of their enimies. Neere vnto this caſtle there is neither garden nor field, nor any other commoditie, but onely certaine blacke ſtones and ſand.

Of the caſtle of Humeledegi.

THis caſtle was built alſo by the Arabians vpon a deſert eighteene miles from Segelmeſſe, like as was the former. Neere vnto it lieth a certaine drie plaine, ſo repleniſhed with ſundrie fruits, that in beholding it a farre off a man would thinke the ground were ſtrewed with pome-citrons.

Of the caſtle of Vmmelhefen.

IT is a forlorne and baſe caſtle, founded by the Arabians alſo fiue and twentie miles from Segelmeſſe vpon a deſert, directly in the way from Segelmeſſe to Dara. It is enuironed with blacke wals, and continually garded by the Arabians. All merchants that paſſe by, pay one fourth part of a ducate for euery camels lode. My ſelfe trauelling this way vpon a time in the companie of fourteene Iewes, and being demaunded how manie there were of vs, we ſaide thirteene, but after I began particularly to reckon, I founde the fowerteenth and the fifteenth man amongſt vs, whom the Arabians woulde haue kept priſoners, had we not affirmed them to be Mahumetans: howbeit not crediting our words, they examined them in the lawe of Mahumet, which when they perceiued them indeed to vnderſtand, they permitted them to depart.

Of the village of Tebelbelt.

THis village ſtanding in the Numidian deſert, two hundred miles from Atlas, and an hundred ſouthward of Segelmeſſe, is ſituate neere vnto three caſtles, well ſtored with inhabitants, and abounding with dates. Water and fleſh is very ſcarce amongſt them. They vſe to hunt and take Oſtriches, and to eate the fleſh of them: and albeit they haue a trade vnto

the

the land of Negros, yet are they most miserable and beggerly people, and subiect to the Arabians.

Of the prouince of Todga.

THis little prouince standing vpon a riuer of the same name, hath great plentie of dates, peaches, grapes, and figs. It containeth fower castles and ten villages, the inhabitants being either husbandmen or lether-dressers. And it standeth westward of Segelmesse about fortie miles.

Of the region of Farcala.

IT standeth also vpon a riuer, and aboundeth with dates and other fruites, but corne is greatly wanting heere. Heere are in this region three castles, and fiue villages. It standeth southward of mount Atlas an hundred, and of Segelmesse almost threescore miles. The poore inhabitants are subiect to the Arabians.

Of the region of Teserin.

THis beautifull region situate vpon a riuer, is distant from Farcala thirtie, and from mount Atlas about threescore miles. Dates it yeeldeth in abundance, and containeth villages to the number of fifteene, and sixe castles, togither with the ruines of two townes, the names whereof I coulde by no meanes enquire. And the worde Teserin in the African language signifieth a towne.

Of the region called Beni Gumi.

THis region adioining vpon the riuer of Ghir, aboundeth greatly with dates. The inhabitants are poore and miserable, and buie horses at Fez, which they sell afterwarde vnto merchants that trauell to the lande of Negros. It containeth eight castles, and fifteene villages, and standeth southeast of Segelmesse about an hundred and fiftie miles.

Of the castles of Mazalig and Abuhinan.

THey are situate in the Numidian desert vpon the riuer of Ghir, almost fiftie miles from Segelmesse. Inhabited they are by certaine beggerly Arabians: neither doth the soile adiacent yeeld any corne at all, and but very fewe dates.

Of

Of the towne of Chasair.

Mines of lead and antimonie.

THis towne standing vpon the desert of Numidia twentie miles from Atlas, hath mines of lead and antimonie neere vnto it, whereby the inhabitants get their liuing; for this place yeeldeth none other commoditie.

Of the region of Beni Besseri.

An iron-mine.

THis little region situate at the foote of mount Atlas, and abounding with all kinde of fruits saue dates, will beare no corne at all. It containeth three castles and a certaine iron-mine, which serueth all the prouince of Segelmesse with iron. Villages heere are but fewe, which are subiect partly to the prince of Dubdu, and partly to the Arabians; and all the inhabitants employ themselues about working in the foresaid iron-mine.

Of the region of Guachde.

THis region standing seuentie miles southward of Segelmesse hath three castles and sundrie villages situate vpon the riuer of Ghir. Dates it yeeldeth great plentie, and but very little corne. The inhabitants exercise traffique in the land of Negros; and are all subiect, and pay tribute to the Arabians.

Of the castles of Fighig.

THe three castles of Fighig stand vpon a certaine desert maruellously abounding with dates. The women of this place weaue a kinde of cloth in forme of a carpet, which is so fine, that a man would take it to be silke, and this cloth they sell at an excessiue rate at Fez, Telensin, and other places of Barbary. The inhabitants being men of an excellent wit, do part of them vse traffique to the land of Negros, and the residue become students at Fez: and so soone as they haue attained to the degree of a doctor, they returne to Numidia, where they are made either priestes or senatours, and prooue most of them men of great wealth and reputation. From Segelmesse the said castles are distant almost an hundred and fiftie miles eastward.

Of the region of Tesebit.

THe region of Tesebit being situate vpon the Numidian desert, two hundred and fiftie miles eastward of Segelmesse, and an hundred miles from mount Atlas, hath fower castles within the precincts thereof, and many villages also, which stand vpon the confines of Lybia, neer vnto the high way that leadeth from Fez and Telensin to the kingdome of Agadez and to the land of Negros. The inhabitants are not very rich, for all their wealth

consisteth

consisteth in dates, and some small quantitie of corne. The men of this place are black, but the women are somewhat fairer, and yet they are of a swart and browne hue.

Of the region of Tegorarin.

THis great and large region of the Numidian desert standing about an hundred and twentie miles eastward of Tesebit, containeth fiftie castles, and aboue an hundred villages, and yeeldeth great plentie of dates. The inhabitants are rich, and haue ordinarie traffique to the land of Negros. Their fields are very apt for corne, and yet by reason of their extreme drouth, they stand in neede of continuall watering and dunging. They allow vnto strangers houses to dwell in, requiring no money for rent but onely their dung, which they keepe most charily: yea they take it in ill part if any stranger easeth himselfe without the doores. Flesh is very scarce among them: for their soile is so drie, that it will scarce nourish any cattell at all: they keepe a few goates indeede for their milks sake: but the flesh that they eate is of camels, which the Arabians bring vnto their markets to sell: they mingle their meate with salt tallow, which is brought into this region from Fez & Tremizen. There were in times past many rich Iewes in this region, who by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan preacher, were at length expelled, and a great part of them slaine by the seditious people; and that in the very same yeere when the Iewes were expelled out of Spaine and Sicily. The inhabitants of this region hauing one onely gouernour of their owne nation, are notwithstanding often subiect to ciuill contentions, and yet they do not molest other nations: howbeit they pay certaine tribute vnto the next Arabians.

Of the region of Meszab.

THis region being situate vpon the Numidian desert, 300. miles eastward from Tegorarin, and 300. miles also from the Mediterran sea, containeth sixe castles, and many villages, the inhabitants being rich, and vsing traffike to the land of Negros. Likewise the Negro-merchants, together with them of Bugia and Ghir make resort vnto this region. Subiect they are and pay tribute vnto the Arabians.

Of the towne of Techort.

THe ancient towne of Techort was built by the Numidians vpon a certaine hill, by the foote whereof runneth a riuer, vpon which riuer standeth a draw-bridge. The wall of this towne was made of free stone and lime, but that part which is next vnto the mountaine hath instead of a wall an impregnable rocke opposite against it: this towne is distant fiue hundred miles southward from the Mediterran sea, and about 300. miles from Tegorarim. Families it containeth to the number of fiue

fiue and twentie hundred: all the houſes are built of ſunne-dried brickes, except their temple which is ſomewhat more ſtately. Heere dwell great ſtore both of gentlemen and artificers: and bicauſe they haue great abundance of dates, and are deſtitute of corne, the merchants of Conſtantina exchange corne with them for their dates. All ſtrangers they fauour exceedingly, and friendly diſmiſſe them without paying of ought. They had rather match their daughters vnto ſtrangers, then to their owne citizens: and for a dowry they giue ſome certaine portion of lande, as it is accuſtomed in ſome places of Europe. So great and ſurpaſſing is their liberalitie, that they will heape many gifts vpon ſtrangers, albeit they are ſure neuer to ſee them againe. At the firſt they were ſubiect to the king of Maroco, afterward to the king of Telenſin, and now to the king of Tunis, vnto whom they pay fiftie thouſand ducats for yeerely tribute, vpon condition that the king himſelfe come perſonally to receiue it. The king of Tunis that now is, demanded a ſecond tribute of them. Many caſtles, and villages, and ſome territories there be alſo, which are all ſubiect vnto the prince of this towne: who collecteth an hundred and thirtie thouſand ducates of yeerely reuenues, and hath alwaies a mightie garriſon of ſoldiers attending vpon him, vnto whom he alloweth very large paie. The gouernour at this preſent called *Habdulla*, is a valiant and liberall yoong prince, and moſt curteous vnto ſtrangers, whereof I my ſelfe conuerſing with him for certaine daies, had good experience.

Of the citie of Guargala.

THis ancient citie founded by the Numidians, and enuironed with ſtrong wals vpon the Numidian deſert, is built very ſumptuouſly, and aboundeth exceedingly with dates. It hath ſome caſtles and a great number of villages belonging thereunto. The inhabitants are rich, bicauſe they are neere vnto the kingdome of Agadez. Heere are diuers merchants of Tunis and Conſtantina, which tranſport wares of Barbarie vnto the lande of Negros. And bicauſe fleſh and corne is very ſcarce among them, they liue vpon the fleſh of Oſtriches and camels. They are all of a blacke colour, and haue blacke ſlaues, and are people of a courteous and liberall diſpoſition, and moſt friendly and bountifull vnto ſtrangers. A gouernour they haue whom they reuerence as if he were a king: which gouernour hath about two thouſand horſemen alwaies attending vpon him, and collecteth almoſt fifteene thouſand ducates for yeerely reuenue.

Of the prouince of Zeb.

ZEb a prouince ſituate alſo vpon the Numidian deſert, beginneth weſtward from Meſila, northward from the mountaines of Bugia, eaſtward from the region of dates ouer againſt Tunis, and ſouthward it bordereth vpon a certaine deſert, ouer which they trauaile from Guargala to Techort.

This

This region is extremely hot, ſandie, and deſtitute both of water and corne: which wants are partly ſupplied by their abundance of dates. It containeth to the number of fiue townes and many villages, all which we purpoſe in order to deſcribe.

Of the towne of Peſcara.

THis ancient towne built by the Romans while they were lords of Mauritania, and afterward deſtroied by the Mahumetans at their firſt enterance into Africa; is now reedified, ſtored with new inhabitants, and enuironed with faire and ſtately wals. And albeit the townesmen are not rich, yet are they louers of ciuilitie. Their ſoile yeeldeth nought but dates. They haue beene gouerned by diuers princes; for they were a while ſubiect vnto the kings of Tunis, and that to the death of king *Hutmen*, after whom ſucceeded a Mahumetan prieſt: neither coulde the kings of Tunis euer ſince that time recouer the dominion of Peſcara. Here are great abundance of ſcorpions, and it is preſent death to be ſtung by them: wherefore all the townesmen in a manner depart into the countrey in ſommer time, where they remaine till the moneth of Nouember. *Deadly ſcorpions.*

Of the citie of Borgi.

ANother towne there is alſo called Borgi, which ſtandeth about fowerteene miles eaſtward of Peſcara. Heere are a great many of artificers, but more husbandmen. And bicauſe water is very ſcarce in this region, and yet their fieldes ſtand in neede of continuall watering, euery man may conueigh water into his field by a certaine ſluce, for the ſpace of an hower or two, according to the bredth or length of his ground; and after one hath done watering his ground, his next neighbour beginneth, which oftentimes breedeth great contention and bloudſhed.

Of the towne of Nefta.

NEfta is the name of the towne it ſelfe, and alſo of the territorie adiacent; which territorie containeth three caſtles, the greateſt whereof ſeemeth by the manner of building to haue beene founded by the Romains. Inhabitants heere are great ſtore, being very ruſticall and vnciuill people. In times paſt they were exceeding rich, for they dwell neere vnto Lybia, in the very way to the land of Negros: howbeit by reaſon of their perpetuall hoſtilitie with the kings of Tunis, the king of Tunis that now is deſtroied their towne; and themſelues he partly ſlue, and partly put to flight. Likewiſe he ſo defaced the wals and other buildings, that now a man woulde eſteeme it to be but a baſe village. Not farre from hence runneth a certaine riuer of hot water, which ſerueth them both to drinke, and to water their fields withall.

Of the towne of Teolacha.

IT was built by the Numidians, and compassed with slender wals, and hath a riuer of hot water also running thereby. The fields adiacent yeeld plentie of dates, but great scarcitie of corne. The miserable inhabitants are oppressed with continual exactions, both by the Arabians, and also by the king of Tunis. Yet are they extremely couetous and proud, and disdainfull vnto strangers.

Of the towne of Deusen.

DEusen a very ancient towne, founded by the Romains in the same place where the kingdome of Bugia ioineth to Numidia, was destroied by the Mahumetans at their first entrance into Africa, bicause of a certaine Romaine captaine, which endured the Saracens siege for a whole yeere togither: the towne being at length taken, this captaine and all the men of the towne were put to the sword, but the women and children were carried away captiue. Howbeit after the towne was sacked, the wall thereof remained entire, by reason it was built of most hard stone, and that a woonderfull thicknes, though in some places it seemeth to be ruined, which (I thinke) might be caused by an earthquake. Not farre from this towne are diuers monuments of antiquitie like vnto sepulchers, wherein are founde sundrie peeces of siluer coine, adorned with certaine letters and hieroglyphicall figures, the interpretation whereof I could neuer finde out.

Of the prouince of Biledulgerio.

FRom the territorie of Pescara this prouince extendeth it selfe vnto the Isle of Gerbi, and one part thereof, in which Cafsa and Teusar are situate, is almost three hundred miles distant from the Mediterran sea. It is an extreme hot and drie place, bringing foorth no corne at all, but great plenty of dates, which bicause they are speciall good, are transported vnto the kingdome of Tunis. Here are diuers townes and cities, which we will describe in their due place.

Of the towne of Teusar.

THis ancient towne built by the Romans vpon the Numidian desert, neere vnto a certaine riuer springing foorth of the southren mountaines, was enuironed with most stately & impregnable wals, and had an ample territorie thereunto belonging; but it was since so destroied by the Mahumetans, that now instead of the woonted sumptuous palaces thereof it containeth nought but base cottages. The inhabitants are exceeding rich both in wares and money, for they haue many faires euerie yeere; whereunto

to resort great numbers of merchants from Numidia and Barbarie. The foresaid riuer diuideth the towne into two parts, one whereof being inhabited by the principall gentlemen and burgo-masters, is called Fatnasa: and in the other called Merdes dwell certaine Arabians, which haue remained there euer since the towne was destroyed by the Mahumetans. They are at continuall ciuill wars among themselues, and will performe but little obedience to the king of Tunis: for which cause he dealeth alwaies most rigorously with him.

Of the towne of Caphsa.

THE ancient towne of Caphsa built also by the Romans, had for certaine yeeres a gouernour of their owne: but afterward being sacked by one *Hucba* a Captaine of *Hutmen Califa*, the walles thereof were razed to the ground; but the castle as yet remaineth, and is of great force; for the wall thereof being fiue and twentie cubits high, and fiue cubits thick, is made of excellent stones, like vnto the stones of *Vespasians* Amphitheatre at Rome. Afterward the towne-walles were reedified, and were destroyed againe by *Mansor*, who hauing slaine the Gouernour of the towne and all the inhabitants, appointed a new Gouernour ouer the same place. Now this towne is verie populous, all the houses thereof, except the temple and a few other buildings, being verie deformed and base, and the streets are paued with blacke stones, like vnto the streets of Naples and Florence. The poore inhabitants are continually oppressed with the exactions of the king of Tunis. In the middest of the towne are certaine square, large, and deepe fountaines walled round about, the water whereof is hot and vnfit to bee drunke, vnlesse it be set an hower or two a cooling. The ayre of this place is verie vnholesome, insomuch that the greatest part of the inhabitants are continually sicke of feuers. People they are of a rude and illiberall disposition, and vnkinde vnto strangers: wherefore they are had in great contempt by all other Africans. Not far from this towne are fields abounding with dates, oliues, and pome-citrons: and the dates and oliues there are the best in all the whole prouince: here is likewise most excellent oyle. The inhabitants make themselues shooes of buckes leather.

Of the castles of Nefzaoa.

THree castles there are of this name being well stored with inhabitants, but verie homely built, and oppressed with the king of Tunis his continuall exactions. And they are distant from the Mediterran sea, about fiftie miles.

Of the region of Teorregu.

THis little territory belonging to the kingdome of Tripolis, & bordering vpon the desert of Barca, containeth three castles of the same name,

which abound greatly with dates, but haue no corne at all. The inhabitants being farre distant from other townes and cities, lead a most miserable life.

Of the territorie of Iasliten.

IT lieth vpon the Mediterran sea, and containeth many villages abounding with dates. The inhabitants becausе they dwell so neere the sea, haue great traffique with the people of Sicilie and Egypt.

Of the region of Gademes.

THis large region hauing many castles & villages therin, standeth southward of the Mediterran sea almost three hundred miles. The inhabitants being rich in dates and all other kinde of merchandise, and trafficking into the land of Negros, pay tribute vnto the Arabians; albeit for a certaine time they were subiect vnto the king of Tunis, and the Prince of Tripolis. Corne and flesh are maruellous scarce here.

Of the region of Fezzen.

THis ample region containing great store of castles and villages, and being inhabited with rich people, and bordering vpon the kingdome of Agadez, the Libyan desert, and the land of Egypt, is distant from Cairo almost threescore daies iourney: neither is there any village in all that desert besides Augela, which standeth in the bounds of Libya. This region of Fezzen hath a peculiar gouernour within it selfe, who bestoweth the reuenues of the whole region according to his owne discretion, and payeth some tribute vnto the next Arabians. Of corne and flesh heere is great scarcitie, so that they are constrained to eate camels flesh onely.

A description of the deserts of Libya, and first of Zanhaga.

HAuing hitherto described all the regions of Numidia, let vs now proceed vnto the descriprion of Libya; which is diuided into fiue parts, as we signified in the beginning of this our discourse. We will therefore begin at the drie and forlorne desert of Zanhaga, which bordereth westward vpon the Ocean sea, and extendeth eastward to the salt-pits of Tegaza, northward it abutteth vpon Sus, Haccha, and Dara, regions of Numidia; and southward it stretcheth to the land of Negros, adioyning it selfe vnto the kingdomes of Gualata and Tombuto. Water is here to be found scarce in an hundred miles trauell, being salt and vnsauorie, and drawen out of deepe wels, especially in the way from Segelmesse to Tombuto. Here are great store of wilde beasts

beasts and creeping things, whereof we will make mention in place conuenient. In this region there is a barren desert called Azaoad, wherein neither water nor any habitations are to be found in the space of an hundred miles; beginning from the well of Azaoad to the well of Araoan, which is distant from Tombuto about 150. miles. Here both for lacke of water and extremitie of heat, great numbers of men and beasts daily perish.

Of the desert inhabited by the people called Zuenziga.

THis desert beginneth westward from Tegaza, extending eastward to the desert of Hair which is inhabited by the people called Targa: northward it bordereth vpon the deserts of Segelmesse, Tebelbelt, and Benigorai; and southward vpon the desert of Ghir, which ioineth vnto the kingdome of Guber. It is a most barren and comfortlesse place: and yet merchants trauell that way from Telensin to Tombuto: howbeit many are found lying dead vpon the same way in regard of extreme thirst. Within this desert there is included another desert called Gogdem, where for the space of nine daies iourney not one drop of water is to be found, vnlesse perhaps some raine falleth: wherefore the merchants vse to carrie their water vpon camels backes.

Of the desert inhabited by the people called Targa.

THis desert beginneth westward vpon the confines of Hair, and extendeth eastward to the desert of Ighidi; northward it bordereth vpon the deserts of Tuath, Tegorarin, and Mezab, and is inclosed southward with a certaine wildernesse neere vnto the kingdome of Agadez. It is a place much more comfortable and pleasant then the two deserts last described; and hath great plentie of water also neere vnto Hair. The ayre is maruellous holesome, and the soyle aboundeth with all kinde of herbes. Not farre from Agadez there is found great store of Manna, which the inhabitants gather in certaine little vessels, carrying it while it is new vnto the market of Agadez: and this Manna being mingled with water they esteeme very daintie and pretious drinke. They put it also into their pottage, and being so taken, it hath a maruellous force of refrigerating or cooling, which is the cause that here are so few diseases, albeit the ayre of Tombuto and Agadez be most vnholsome and corrupt. This desert stretcheth from north to south almost 300. miles.

Great store of Manna.

Of the desert inhabited by the people of Lemta.

THE fourth desert beginning at the territorie of Ighidi and extending to another which is inhabited by the people called Berdoa, bordereth northward vpon the deserts of Techort, Guarghala, and Gademis,

and southward vpon the kingdome of Cano in the land of Negros. It is exceeding drie, and verie dangerous for merchants trauelling to Constantina. For the inhabitants chalenge vnto themselues the signiorie of Guargala: wherefore making continuall warre against the prince of Guargala, they oftentimes spoile the merchants of all their goods; and as many of the people of Guargala as they can catch, they kill without all pitie and compassion.

Of the desert inhabited by the people called Berdoa.

THE fift desert beginning westward from the desert last mentioned, and stretching eastward to the desert of Augela, adioyneth northward vpon the deserts of Fezzen and Barca, and trendeth southward to the desert gf Borno. This place is extremely drie also, neither haue any but the Gademites, which are in league with the people of Berdoa, safe passage through it: for the merchants of Fezzen, so often as they fall into their enimies hands, are depriued of all their goods. The residue of the Libyan desert, that is to say, from Augela to the riuer of Nilus is inhabited by certaine Arabians and Africans commonly called Leuata: and this is the extreme easterly part of the deserts of Libya.

Of the region of Nun.

THis region bordering vpon the Ocean sea, containeth many villages and hamlets, and is inhabited with most beggerly people. It standeth betweene Numidia and Libya, but somewhat neerer vnto Libya. Here groweth neither barley nor any other corne. Some dates here are, but verie vnsauorie. The inhabitants are continually molested by the Arabians inuasions: and some of them traffique in the kingdome of Gualata.

Of the region of Tegaza.

Salt-mines. IN this region is great store of salt digged, beeing whiter then any marble. This salt is taken out of certaine caues or pits, at the entrance whereof stand their cottages that worke in the salt-mines. And these workmen are all strangers, who sell the salt which they dig, vnto certaine merchants that carrie the same vpon camels to the kingdome of Tombuto, where there would otherwise be extreme scarcitie of salt. Neither haue the said diggers of salt any victuals but such as the merchants bring vnto them: for they are distant from all inhabited places, almost twentie daies iourney, insomuch that oftentimes they perish for lacke of foode, whenas the merchants come not in due time vnto them: Moreouer the southeast winde doth so often blind them, that they cannot liue here without great perill. I my selfe continued three daies amongst them, all which time I was constrained to drinke salt-water drawen out of certaine welles not far from the salt-pits.

Of

Of the region of Augela.

AVgela beeing a region of the Libyan desert, and distant fower hundred and fiftie miles from Nilus, containeth three castles, and certaine villages. Dates heere are great plentie, but extreme scarcitie of corne, vnlesse it be brought hither by merchants out of Egypt. Through this region lieth the way by the Libyan desert from Mauritania to Egypt.

Of the towne of Serte.

SErte an ancient towne built (according to the opinion of some) by the Egyptians; of others, by the Romans; and (as some others suppose) by the Africans, was at length destroied by the Mahumetans, albeit *Ibnu Rachich* affirmeth the Romans to haue sacked it. But now there is nought remaining but onely a few ruines of the wall.

Of the region of Berdeoa.

BErdeoa a region situate in the midst of the Libyan desert, and standing almost fiue hundred miles from Nilus, containeth three castles & fiue or six villages, abounding with most excellent dates. And the said three castles were discouered eighteene yeeres agoe by one *Hamar* in manner following: the carouan of merchants wandering out of the direct way, had a certaine blinde man in their companie which was acquainted with all those regions: this blinde guide riding foremost vpon his camell, commanded some sand to be giuen him at euery miles end, by the smell whereof he declared the situation of the place: but when they were come within fortie miles of this region, the blinde man smelling of the sand, affirmed that they were not farre from some places inhabited; which some beleeued not, for they knew that they were distant from Egypt fower hundred and eightie miles, so that they tooke themselues to be neerer vnto Augela. Howbeit within three daies they found the said three castles, the inhabitants whereof woondering at the approch of strangers, and being greatly astonied, presently shut all their gates, and would giue the merchants no water to quench their extreme thirst. But the merchants by maine force entred, and hauing gotten water sufficient, betooke themselues againe to their iournie.

A whole carauan conducted by a blinde guide who lead them by sent onely; as at this present the Carouans of Maroco are conducted ouer the Libyan deserts to Tombuto.

Of

Of the region of Alguechet.

ALguechet also being a region of the Lybian desert, is from Egypt an hundred and twenty miles distant. Here are three castles and many villages abounding with dates. The inhabitants are black, vile, and couetous people, and yet exceeding rich: for they dwell in the mid way betweene Egypt and Gaoga. They haue a gouernour of their owne, notwithstanding they pay tribute vnto the next Arabians.

Here endeth the sixth booke.

IOHN LEO HIS SEVENTH BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

Wherein he intreateth of the land of Negros, and of the confines of Egypt.

OVr ancient Chroniclers of Africa, to wit, *Bichri* and *Meshudi* knew nothing in the land of Negros but onely the regions of Guechet and Cano: for in their time all other places of the land of Negros were vndiscouered. But in the yeere of the Hegeira 380, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan which came into Barbarie, the residue of the said land was found out, being as then inhabited by great numbers of people, which liued a brutish and sauage life, without any king, gouernour, common wealth, or knowledge of husbandrie. Clad they were in skins of beasts, neither had they any peculiar wiues: in the day time they kept their cattell; and when night came they resorted ten or twelue both men and women into one cottage together, vsing hairie skins in stead of beds, and each man choosing his leman which he had most fancy

vnto

vnto. Warre they wage against no other nation, ne yet are desirous to trauell out of their owne countrie. Some of them performe great adoration vnto the sunne rising: others, namely the people of Gualata, worship the fire: and some others, to wit, the inhabitants of Gaoga, approch (after the Egyptians manner) neerer vnto the Christian faith. These Negros were first subiect vnto king *Ioseph* the founder of Maroco, and afterward vnto the fiue nations of Libya; of whom they learned the Mahumetan lawe, and diuers needfull handycrafts: a while after when the merchants of Barbarie began to resort vnto them with merchandize, they learned the Barbarian language also. But the foresaid fiue people or nations of Lybia diuided this land so among themselues, that euery third part of each nation possessed one region. Howbeit the king of Tombuto that now raigneth, called *Abuacre Izchia*, is a Negro by birth: this *Abuacre* after the decease of the former king, who was a Libyan borne, slue all his sonnes, and so vsurped the kingdome. And hauing by warres for the space of fifteene yeeres conquered many large dominions, he then concluded a league with all nations, and went on pilgrimage to Mecca, in which iournie he so consumed his treasure, that he was constrained to borrow great summes of money of other princes. Moreouer the fifteene kingdomes of the land of Negros knowen to vs, are all situate vpon the riuer of Niger, and vpon other riuers which fall thereinto. And all the land of Negros standeth betweene two vast deserts, for on the one side lieth the maine desert betweene Numidia and it, which extendeth it selfe vnto this very land: and the south side thereof adioineth vpon another desert, which stretcheth from thence to the maine Ocean: in which desert are infinite nations vnknowen to vs, both by reason of the huge distance of place, and also in regarde of the diuersitie of languages and religions. They haue no traffique at all with our people, but we haue heard oftentimes of their traffique with the inhabitants of the Ocean sea shore.

The Negros subiect vnto Ioseph king of Maroco.

Abuacre Izchia.

A description of the kingdome of Gualata.

THis region in regarde of others is very small: for it containeth onely three great villages, with certaine granges and fields of dates. From Nun it is distant southward about three hundred, from Tombuto northward fiue hundred, and from the Ocean sea about two hundred miles. In this region the people of Libya, while they were lords of the land of Negros, ordained their chiefe princely seate: and then great store of Barbarie-merchants frequented Gualata: but afterward in the raigne of the mighty and rich prince *Heli*, the said merchants leauing Gualata, began to resort vnto Tombuto and Gago, which was the occasion that the region of Gualata grew extreme beggerly. The language of this region is called Sungai, and the inhabitants are blacke people, and most friendly vnto strangers. In my time this region was conquered by the king of Tombuto, and the prince thereof fled into the deserts,

serts, whereof the king of Tombuto hauing intelligence, and fearing least the prince would returne with all the people of the deserts, graunted him peace, conditionally that he should pay a great yeerely tribute vnto him, and so the said prince hath remained tributarie to the king of Tombuto vntill this present. The people agree in manners and fashions with the inhabitants of the next desert. Here groweth some quantitie of Mil-seed, and great store of a round & white kind of pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Europe; but flesh is extreme scarce among them. Both the men & the women do so couer their heads, that al their conntenance is almost hidden. Here is no forme of a common wealth, nor yet any gouernours or iudges, but the people lead a most miserable life.

This round and white pulse is called Maiz in the west Indies.

A description of the kingdome of Ghinea.

THis kingdome called by the merchants of our nation Gheneoa, by the natural inhabitants thereof Genni, and by the Portugals and other people of Europe Ghinea, standeth in the midst betweene Gualata on the north, Tombuto on the east, and the kingdome of Melli on the south. In length it containeth almost fiue hundred miles, and extendeth two hundred and fiftie miles along the riuer of Niger, and bordereth vpon the Ocean sea in the same place, where Niger falleth into the saide sea. This place exceedingly aboundeth with barlie, rice, cattell, fishes, and cotton: and their cotton they sell vnto the merchants of Barbarie, for cloth of Europe, for brazen vessels, for armour, and other such commodities. Their coine is of gold without any stampe or inscription at all: they haue certaine iron-money also, which they vse about matters of small value, some peeces whereof weigh a pound, some halfe a pound, and some one quarter of a pound. In all this kingdome there is no fruite to be found but onely dates, which are brought hither either out of Gualata or Numidia. Heere is neither towne nor castle, but a certaine great village onely, wherein the prince of Ghinea, together with his priestes, doctors, merchants, and all the principall men of the region inhabite. The walles of their houses are built of chalke, and the roofes are couered with strawe: the inhabitants are clad in blacke or blew cotton, wherewith they couer their heads also: but the priests and doctors of their law go apparelled in white cotton. This region during the three moneths of Iulie, August, and September, is yeerely enuironed with the ouerflowings of Niger in manner of an Island; all which time the merchants of Tombuto conueigh their merchandize hither in certaine Canoas or narrow boats made of one tree, which they rowe all the day long, but at night they binde them to the shore, and lodge themselues vpon the lande. This kingdome was subiect in times past vnto a certaine people of Libya, and became afterward tributarie vnto king *Soni Heli*, after whom succeeded *Soni Heli Izchia*, who kept the prince of this region prisoner at Gago, where togither with a certaine nobleman, he miserably died.

The naturall commodities of Ghinea.

The Prince of Ghinea kept prisoner by Izchia.

Of the kingdome of Melli.

THis region extending it selfe almost three hundred miles along the side of a riuer which falleth into Niger, bordereth northward vpon the region last described, southward vpon certaine deserts and drie mountaines, westward vpon huge woods and forrests stretching to the Ocean sea shore, and eastward vpon the territorie of Gago. In this kingdome there is a large and ample village containing to the number of sixe thousand or mo families, and called Melli, whereof the whole kingdome is so named. And here the king hath his place of residence. The region it selfe yeeldeth great abundance of corne, flesh, and cotton. Heere are many artificers and merchants in all places: and yet the king honorably entertaineth all strangers. The inhabitants are rich, and haue plentie of wares. Heere are great store of temples, priests, and professours, which professours read their lectures onely in the temples, bicause they haue no colleges at all. The people of this region excell all other Negros in witte, ciuilitie, and industry; and were the first that embraced the law of Mahumet, at the same time when the vncle of *Ioseph* the king of Maroco was their prince, and the gouernment remained for a while vnto his posterity: at length *Izchia* subdued the prince of this region, and made him his tributarie, and so oppressed him with greeuous exactions, that he was scarce able to maintaine his family.

The prince of Melli subdued by Izchia.

Of the kingdome of Tombuto.

THis name was in our times (as some thinke) imposed vpon this kingdome from the name of a certain towne so called, which (they say) king *Mense Suleiman* founded in the yeere of the Hegeira 610. and it is situate within twelue miles of a certaine branch of Niger, all the houses whereof are now changed into cottages built of chalke, and couered with thatch. Howbeit there is a most stately temple to be seene, the wals whereof are made of stone and lime; and a princely palace also built by a most excellent workeman of Granada. Here are many shops of artificers, and merchants, and especially of such as weaue linnen and cotton cloth. And hither do the Barbarie-merchants bring cloth of Europe. All the women of this region except maid-seruants go with their faces couered, and sell all necessarie victuals. The inhabitants, & especially strangers there residing, are exceeding rich, insomuch, that the king that *now is, married both his daughters vnto two rich merchants. Here are many wels, containing most sweete water; and so often as the riuer Niger ouerfloweth, they conueigh the water thereof by certaine sluces into the towne. Corne, cattle, milke, and butter this region yeeldeth in great abundance: but salt is verie scarce heere; for it is brought hither by land from Tegaza, which is fiue hundred miles distant. When I my selfe was here, I saw one camels loade of salt sold for 80. ducates.

Tombuto was conquered by the king of Maroco 1589. from whence he hath for yeerly tribute mightie summes of gold.

* 1526.

The king of Tombuto his daughters married vnto two rich merchants.

Great scarcitie of salt in Tombuto, which commoditie might be sup-

plied by our English merchants to their vnspeakable gaine.

ducates. The rich king of Tombuto hath many plates and scepters of gold, some whereof weigh 1300. poundes: and he keepes a magnificent and well furnished court. When he trauelleth any whither he rideth vpon a camell, which is lead by some of his noblemen; and so he doth likewise when hee goeth to warfar, and all his souldiers ride vpon horses. Whosoeuer will speake vnto this king must first fall downe before his feete, & then taking vp earth must sprinkle it vpon his owne head & shoulders: which custom is ordinarily obserued by them that neuer saluted the king before, or come as ambassadors from other princes. He hath alwaies three thousand horsemen, and a great number of footmen that shoot poysoned arrowes, attending vpon him. They haue often skirmishes with those that refuse to pay tribute, and so many as they take, they sell vnto the merchants of Tombuto. Here are verie few horses bred, and the merchants and courtiers keepe certaine little nags which they vse to trauell vpon: but their best horses are brought out of Barbarie. And the king so soone as he heareth that any merchants are come to towne with horses, he commandeth a certaine number to be brought before him, and chusing the best horse for himselfe, he payeth a most liberall price for him. He so deadly hateth all Iewes, that he will not admit any into his citie: and whatsoeuer Barbarie merchants he vnderstandeth to haue any dealings with the Iewes, he presently causeth their goods to be confiscate. Here are great store of doctors, iudges, priests, and other learned men, that are bountifully maintained at the kings cost and charges. And hither are brought diuers manuscripts or written bookes out of Barbarie, which are sold for more money then any other merchandize. The coine of Tombuto is of gold without any stampe or superscription: but in matters of smal value they vse certaine shels brought hither out of the kingdome of Persia, fower hundred of which shels are worth a ducate: and sixe peeces of their golden coine with two third parts weigh an ounce. The inhabitants are people of a gentle and cherefull disposition, and spend a great part of the night in singing and dancing through all the streets of the citie: they keepe great store of men and women-slaues, and their towne is much in danger of fire: at my second being there halfe the town almost was burnt in fiue howers space. Without the suburbs there are no gardens nor orchards at all.

Reuerence vsed before the king of Tombuto.

Poysoned arrowes.

Shels vsed for coine like as in the kingdome of Congo.

Of the towne of Cabra.

THis large towne built without walles in manner of a village, standeth about twelue miles from Tombuto vpon the riuer Niger: and here such merchants as trauel vnto the kingdomes of Ghinea and Melli embarke themselues. Neither are the people or buildings of this towne any whit inferiour to the people and buildings of Tombuto: and hither the Negros resort in great numbers by water. In this towne the king of Tombuto appointeth a iudge to decide all controuersies: for it were tedious to goe thither so oft

oft as need should reqnire. I my selfe am acquainted with *Abu Bacr*, sirnamed *Pargama*, the kings brother, who is blacke in colour, but most beautifull in minde and conditions. Here breed many diseases which exceedingly diminish the people; and that by reason of the fond and loathsome mixture of their meats; for they mingle fish, milke, butter, and flesh altogither. And this is the ordinarie food also in Tombuto.

Of the towne and kingdome of Gago.

THE great towne of Gago being vnwalled also, is distant southward of Tombuto almost fower hundred miles, and enclineth somewhat to the southeast. The houses thereof are but meane, except those wherein the king and his courtiers remaine. Here are exceeding rich merchants: and hither continually resort great store of Negros which buy cloth here brought out of Barbarie and Europe. This towne aboundeth with corne and flesh, but is much destitute of wine, trees, and fruits. Howbeit here is plentie of melons, citrons, and rice: here are many welles also containing most sweete and holesome water. Here is likewise a certaine place where slaues are to be sold, especially vpon such daies as the merchants vse to assemble; and a yoong slaue of fifteene yeeres age is sold for sixe ducates, and so are children sold also. The king of this region hath a certaine priuate palace wherein he maintaineth a great number of concubines and slaues, which are kept by eunuches: and for the guard of his owne person he keepeth a sufficient troupe of horsemen and footmen. Betweene the first gate of the palace and the inner part thereof, there is a place walled round about, wherein the king himselfe decideth all his subiects controuersies: and albeit the king be in this function most diligent, and performeth all things thereto appertayning, yet hath he about him his counsellors & other officers, as namely his secretaries, treasurers, factors, and auditors. It is a woonder to see what plentie of Merchandize is dayly brought hither, and how costly and sumptuous all things be. Horses bought in Europe for ten ducates, are here sold againe for fortie and sometimes for fiftie ducates a piece. There is not any cloth of Europe so course, which will not here be sold for fower ducates an elle, and if it be any thing fine they will giue fifteene ducates for an ell: and an ell of the scarlet of Venice or of Turkie-cloath is here worth thirtie ducates. A sword is here valued at three or fower crownes, and so likewise are spurs, bridles, with other like commodities, and spices also are sold at an high rate: but of al other commodities salt is most extremelie deere. The residue of this kingdome containeth nought but villages and hamlets inhabited by husbandmen and shepherds, who in winter couer their bodies with beasts skins; but in sommer they goe all naked saue their priuie members: and sometimes they weare vpon their feet certaine shooes made of camels leather. They are ignorant and rude people, and you shall scarce finde one learned man in the space of an hundred miles. They are

Rich sale for cloth.

continually burthened with grieuous exactions, so that they haue scarce any thing remaining to liue vpon.

Of the kingdome of Guber.

IT standeth eastward of the kingdome of Gago almost three hundred miles; betweene which two kingdomes lieth a vast desert being much destitute of water, for it is about fortie miles distant from Niger. The kingdome of Guber is enuironed withhigh mountaines, and containeth many villages inhabited by shepherds, and other herdsmen. Abundance of cattell here are both great and small: but of a lower stature then the cattell in other places. Heere are also great store of artificers and linnen weauers: and heere are such shooes made as the ancient Romans were woont to weare, the greatest part whereof be carried to Tombuto and Gago. Likewise heere is abundance of rice, and of certaine other graine and pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Italie. But I thinke it groweth in some places of Spaine. At the inundation of Niger all the fields of this region are ouerflowed, and then the inhabitants cast their seede into the water onely. In this region there is a certaine great village containing almost sixe thousand families, being inhabited with all kinde of merchants, and here was in times past the court of a certaine king, who in my time was slaine by *Izchia* the king of Tombuto, and his sonnes were gelt, and accounted among the number of the kings eunuches. Afterward he sent gouernours hither who mightily oppressed and impouerished the people that were before rich: and most part of the inhabitants were carried captiue and kept for slaues by the said *Izchia*.

Their maner of sowing corne at the inundation of Niger.

The king of Guber slaine by Izchia.

Of the citie and kingdome of Agadez.

THe citie of Agadez standing neere vnto Lybia was not long since walled round about by a certaine king. The inhabitants are all whiter then other Negros: and their houses are stately built after the fashion of Barbarie. The greatest part of the citizens are forren merchants, and the residue be either artificers, or stipendaries to the king. Euery merchant hath a great many of seruants and slaues, who attend vpon them as they trauell from Cano to Borno: for in that iourney they are exceedingly molested by certaine theeues called Zingani, insomuch that they dare not trauell the same way vnlesse they be well appointed: in my time they vsed crossebowes for their defence: when the said merchants be arriued at any towne, they presently employ all their slaues about some busines, to the end they may not liue in idlenes: ten or twelue they keepe to attend vpon themselues and their wares. The king of this citie hath alwaies a notable garde about him, and continueth for the most part at a certaine palace in the midst of the citie. He hath greatest regarde vnto his subiects that inhabite in the deserts and fields: for they will sometime expell their king and choose another:

Zingani.

so

so that he which pleaseth the inhabitants of the desert best is sure to be king of Agadez. The residue of this kingdome lying southward is inhabited by shepherds and herdsmen, who dwell in certaine cottages made of boughes, which cottages they carrie about vpon oxen from place to place. They erect their cottages alwaies in the same field where they determine to feede their cattell; like as the Arabians also doe. Such as bring merchandize out of other places pay large custome to the king: and the king of Tombuto receiueth for yeerely tribute out of this kingdome almost an hundred and fiftie thousand duckats.

Agadez tributarie to the king of Tombuto.

Of the prouince of Cano.

THe great prouince of Cano stãdeth eastward of the riuer Niger almost fiue hundred miles. The greatest part of the inhabitants dwelling in villages are some of them herdsmen and others husbandmen. Heere groweth abundance of corne, of rice, and of cotton. Also here are many deserts and wilde woodie mountaines containing many springs of water. In these woods growe plentie of wilde citrons and limons, which differ not much in taste from the best of all. In the midst of this prouince standeth a towne called by the same name, the walles and houses whereof are built for the most part of a kinde of chalke. The inhabitants are rich merchants and most ciuill people. Their king was in times past of great puissance, and had mighty troupes of horsemen at his command; but he hath since beene constrained to pay tribute vnto the kings of Zegzeg and Casena. Afterwarde *Ischia* the king of Tombuto faining friendship vnto the two foresaid kings trecherously slew them both. And then he waged warre against the king of Cano, whom after a long siege he tooke, and compelled him to marie one of his daughters, restoring him againe to his kingdome, conditionally that he should pay vnto him the third part of all his tribute: and the said king of Tombuto hath some of his courtiers perpetually residing at Cano for the receit thereof.

The kings of Zegzeg, of Casena, and of Cano subdued by Izchia the king of Tombuto.

Of the kingdome of Casena.

CAsena bordering eastward vpon the kingdome last described, is full of mountaines, and drie fields, which yeeld notwithstanding great store of barlie and mill-seed. The inhabitants are all extremely black, hauing great noses and blabber lips. They dwell in most forlorne and base cottages: neither shall you finde any of their villages containing aboue three hundred families. And besides their base estate they are mightily oppressed with famine: a king they had in times past whom the foresaid *Ischia* slew, since whose death they haue all beene tributarie vnto *Ischia*.

Izchia.

Of the kingdome of Zegzeg.

THe southeast part thereof bordereth vpon Cano, and it is distant from Casena almost an hundred and fiftie miles. The inhabitants are rich and haue great traffique vnto other nations. Some part of this kingdome is plaine, and the residue mountainous, but the mountaines are extremely cold, and the plaines intolerably hot. And because they can hardly indure the sharpnes of winter, they kindle great fires in the midst of their houses, laying the coles thereof vnder their high bedsteads, and so betaking themselues to sleepe. Their fields abounding with water, are exceeding fruitfull, & their houses are built like the houses of the kingdom of Casena. They had a king of their owne in times past, who being slaine by *Ischia* (as is aforesaid) they haue euer since beene subiect vnto the said *Ischia*.

Izchia.

Of the region of Zanfara.

THe region of Zanfara bordering eastward vpon Zegzeg is inhabited by most base and rusticall people. Their fields abound with rice, mill, and cotton. The inhabitants are tall in stature and extremely blacke, their visages are broad, and their dispositions most sauage and brutish. Their king also was slaine by *Ischia*, and themselues made tributarie.

The king of Zanfara slaine by Izchia, and the people made tributarie.

Of the towne and kingdome of Guangara.

THis kingdome adioineth southeasterly vpon Zanfara, being very populous, and hauing a king raigning ouer it, which maintaineth a garison of seuen thousand archers, and fiue hundred horsemen, and receiueth yeerely great tributes. In all this kingdome there are none but base villages, one onely excepted, which exceedeth the rest both in largenes and faire building. The inhabitants are very rich, and haue continuall traffique with the nations adioining. Southward thereof lieth a region greatly abounding with gold. But now they can haue no traffique with forren nations, for they are molested on both sides with most cruell enemies. For westward they are oppressed by *Ischia*, and eastward by the king of Borno. When I my selfe was in Borno, king *Abraham* hauing leuied an huge armie, determined to expell the prince of Guangara out of his kingdome, had he not beene hindred by *Homar* the prince of Gaoga, which began to assaile the kingdome of Borno. Wherefore the king of Borno being drawne home into his owne countrie, was enforced to giue ouer the conquest of Guangara. So often as the merchants of Guangara trauell vnto the foresaid region abounding with gold, because the waies are so rough and difficult that their camels cannot goe vpon them, they carrie their wares vpon slaues backes; who being laden with great burthens doe vsually trauell ten or twelue miles a day. Yea some

Gold.

Izchia.

I saw that made two of those iourneies in one day: a woonder it is to see what heauie burthens these poore slaues are charged withall; for besides the merchandize they carrie victuals also for their masters, and for the soldiers that goe to garde them.

Of the kingdome of Borno.

THe large prouince of Borno bordering westward vpon the prouince of Guangara, and from thence extending eastward fiue hundred miles, is distant from the fountaine of Niger almost an hundred and fiftie miles, the south part thereof adioining vnto the desert of Set, and the north part vnto that desert which lieth towards Barca. The situation of this kingdome is very vneeuen, some part thereof being mountainous, and the residue plaine. Vpon the plaines are sundry villages inhabited by rich merchants, and abounding with corne. The king of this region and all his followers dwell in a certaine large village. The mountaines being inhabited by herdesmen and shepherds doe bring foorth mill and other graine altogether vnknowen to vs. The inhabitants in summer goe all naked saue their priuie members which they couer with a peece of leather: but al winter they are clad in skins, and haue beds of skins also. They embrace no religion at all, being neither Christians, Mahumetans, nor Iewes, nor of any other profession, but liuing after a brutish manner, and hauing wiues and children in common: and (as I vnderstood of a certaine merchant that abode a long time among them) they haue no proper names at all, but euery one is nicknamed according to his length, his fatnes, or some other qualitie. They haue a most puissant prince, being lineally descended from the Libyan people called Bardoa. Horsemen he hath in a continuall readines to the number of three thousand, & an huge number of footmen; for al his subiects are so seruiceable and obedient vnto him, that whensoeuer he commandeth them, they wil arme themselues and follow him whither he pleaseth to conduct them. They paye vnto him none other tribute but the tithes of all their corne: neither hath this king any reuenues to maintaine his estate, but onely such spoiles as he getteth from his next enimes by often inuasions and assaults. He is at perpetuall enmitie with a certaine people inhabiting beyond the desert of Seu; who in times past marching with an huge armie of footemen ouer the saide desert, wasted a great part of the kingdome of Borno. VVhereupon the king of Borno sent for the merchants of Barbary, and willed them to bring him great store of horses: for in this countrey they vse to exchange horses for slaues, and to giue fifteene, and sometime twentie slaues for one horse. And by this meanes there were abundance of horses brought: howbeit the merchants were constrained to stay for their slaues till the king returned home conquerour with a great number of captiues, and satisfied his creditors for their horses. And oftentimes it falleth out that the merchants must stay three moneths togither, before the king

The desert of Seu.

Fifteene or twentie slaues exchanged for one horse.

returneth from the warres, but they are all that while maintained at the kings charges. Sometimes he bringeth not home slaues enough to satisfie the merchants: and otherwhiles they are constrained to awaite there a whole yeere togither; for the king maketh inuasions but euery yeere once, & that at one set and appointed time of the yeere. Yea I my selfe met with sundrie merchants heere, who despairing of the kings paiment, bicause they had trusted him an whole yeere, determined neuer to come thither with horses againe. And yet the king seemeth to be marueilous rich; for his spurres, his bridles, platters, dishes, pots, and other vessels wherein his meate and drinke are brought to the table, are all of pure golde: yea, and the chaines of his dogs and hounds are of golde also. Howbeit this king is extreamely couetous, for he had much rather pay his debts in slaues then in gold. In this kingdome are great multitudes of Negros and of other people, the names of whom (bicause I tarried heere but one moneth) I could not well note.

Of the kingdome of Gaoga.

GAoga bordering westward vpon the kingdome of Borno, and extending eastward to the confines of Nubia, adioineth southward vnto a certaine desert situate vpon a crooked and winding part of Nilus, and is enclosed northward with the frontiers of Egypt. It stretcheth from east to west in length fiue hundred miles, and as much in bredth. They haue neither humanitie nor learning among them, but are most rusticall and sauage people, and especially those that inhabite the mountaines, who go all naked saue their priuities: their houses are made of boughes & rafts, and are much subiect to burning, and they haue great abundance of cattel, whereunto they giue diligent attendance. For many yeers they remained in libertie, of which libertie they were depriued by a certaine Negro slaue of the same region. This slaue lying vpon a certaine night with his master that was a wealthie merchant, & considering that he was not far from his natiue countrey, slue his saide master, possessed his goods, and returned home: where hauing bought a certaine number of horses, he began to inuade the people next adioining, and obtained for the most part the victorie: for he conducted a troupe of most valiant & warlike horsmen against his enimies that were but slenderly appointed. And by this means he tooke great numbers of captiues, whom he exchanged for horses that were brought out of Egypt: insomuch that at length (the number of his souldiers increasing) he was accounted of by all men as soueraine K. of Gaoga. After him succeeded his son, being no whit inferiour in valour & high courage vnto his father; who reigned for the space of fortie yeeres. Next him succeeded his brother *Moses*, & after *Moses* his nephew *Homara*, who beareth rule at this present. This *Homara* hath greatly enlarged his dominions, and hath entred league with the Soldan of Cairo, by whom he is often presented with magnificent gifts, which he most bountifully requiteth: also diuers merchants of Egypt, and diuers inhabitants

A Negro-slaue who hauing slaine his Lord grew to great might and authoritie.

inhabitants of Cairo present most pretious and rare things vnto him, and highly commend his surpassing liberalitie. This prince greatly honoureth all learned men, and especially such as are of the linage of Mahumet. I my selfe being in his court, a certaine noble man of Damiata brought him very rich and roiall gifts, as namely, a gallant horse, a Turkish sworde, and a kingly robe, with certaine other particulars that cost about an hundred and fiftie ducates at Cairo: in recompence whereof the king gaue him fiue slaues, fiue camels, fiue hundred ducates of that region, and an hundred elephants teeth of woonderfull bignes.

Of the kingdome of Nubia.

NVbia bordering westward vpon the kingdome last described, and stretching from thence vnto Nilus, is enclosed on the south side with the desert of Goran, and on the north side with the confines of Egypt. Howbeit they cannot passe by water from this kingdome into Egypt: for the riuer of Nilus is in some places no deeper then a man may wade ouer on foote. The principall towne of this kingdome called Dangala is exceeding populous, and containeth to the number of ten thousand families. The wals of their houses consist of a kinde of chalke, and the roofes are couered with strawe. The townesmen are exceeding rich and ciuill people, and haue great traffike with the merchants of Cairo & of Egypt: in other parts of this kingdome you shall finde none but villages and hamlets situate vpon the riuer of Nilus, all the inhabitants whereof are husbandmen. The kingdome of Nubia is most rich in corne and sugar, which notwithstanding they knowe not how to vse. Also in the citie of Dangala there is great plentie of ciuet and Sandall-wood. This region aboundeth with Iuory likewise, bicause heere are so many elephants taken. Heere is also a most strong and deadly poison, one graine whereof being diuided amongst ten persons, will kill them all within lesse then a quarter of an hower: but if one man taketh a graine, he dieth thereof out of hand. An ounce of this poison is solde for an hundred ducates; neither may it be solde to any but to forraine merchants, & whosoeuer buieth it is bound by an oath not to vse it in the kingdome of Nubia. All such as buy of this poison are constrained to pay as much vnto the king, as to the merchant: but if any man selleth poison without the princes knowledge, he is presently put to death. The king of Nubia maintaineth continuall warre, partly against the people of Goran (who being descended of the people called Zingani, inhabite the deserts, and speake a kinde of language that no other nation vnderstandeth) and partly against certaine other people also dwelling vpon the desert which lieth eastward of Nilus, and stretcheth towards the red sea, being not farre from the borders of Suachen. Their language (as I take it) is mixt, for it hath great affinity with the Chaldean toong, with the language of Suachen, and with the language of Ethiopia the higher, where *Prete Gianni* is said to beare

The riuer of Nilus not nauigable betweene Nubia and Egypt.

The rich commodities of Nubia.

Most strong poyson.

Zingani.

Prete Gianni.

Bugiha. beare rule: the people themselues are called Bugiha, and are most base and miserable, and liue onely vpon milke, camels-flesh, and the flesh of such beasts as are taken in those deserts. Sometimes they receiue tribute of the gouernour of Suachen, and sometimes of the gouernors of Dangala. They had once a rich towne situate vpon the red sea called Zibid, whereunto belonged a commodious hauen, being opposite vnto the hauen of Zidem, which is fortie miles distant from Mecca. But an hundred yeeres since it was destroied by the Soldan, bicause the inhabitants receiued certaine wares which should haue beene carried to Mecca, and at the same time the famous port of Zibid was destroied, from whence notwithstanding was gathered a great yeerely tribute. The inhabitants being chased from thence fledde vnto Dangala and Suachin, and at length being ouercome in battaile by the gouernour of Suachin, there were in one day slaine of them aboue fower thousand, and a thousand were carried captiue vnto Suachin, who were massacred by the women and children of the citie. And thus much (friendly reader) as concerning the lande of Negros: the fifteene kingdomes whereof agreeing much in rites and customes, are subiect vnto fower princes onely. Let vs now proceed vnto the description of Egypt.

Here endeth the seuenth booke.

IOHN LEO HIS EIGHT BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* contained therein.

Of Egypt.

THe most noble and famous prouince of Egypt bordering westward vpon the deserts of Barca, Numidia, and Libya; eastward vpon the deserts lying betweene Egypt it selfe and the red sea; and northward vpon the Mediterran sea; is inclosed southward with the land of the foresaid people called Bugiha, and with the riuer of Nilus. It stretcheth in length from the Mediterran sea to the land of the people called Bugiha about fower hundred and fiftie

Egypt 450. miles long.

fiftie miles: but in bredth it is very narrow; so that it containeth nought but a small distance betweene both the banks of Nilus and the barren mountaines bordering vpon the foresaid deserts, being inhabited onely in that place where Nilus is separate from the saide mountaines: albeit towards the Mediterran sea it extendeth it selfe somewhat broader. For Nilus about fower-score miles from the great citie of Cairo is diuided into two branches, one whereof running in his chanell westward, returneth at length into the maine streame from whence he tooke his originall, and hauing passed about threescore miles beyond Cairo, it diuideth it selfe into two other branches, whereof the one runneth to Damiata, and the other to Rosetto. And out of that which trendeth to Damiata issueth another branch, which discharging it selfe into a lake passeth through a certaine gullet or streit into the Mediterran sea, vpon the banke whereof standeth the most ancient citie of Tenesse: and this diuision of Nilus into so many streames and branches causeth Egypt (as I haue beforesaid) to be so narrow. All this prouince is plaine, and is most fruitfull for all kind of graine and pulse. There are most pleasant and greene medowes, and great store of geese and other fowles. The countrey people are of a swart and browne colour: but the citizens are white. Garments they weare which are streite downe to their wastes, and broad beneath, and the sleeues likewise are streight. They couer their heads with a round and high habite called by the Italians a Dulipan. Their shooes are made according to the ancient fashion. In sommer they weare garments of particoloured cotton: but in winter they vse a certaine garment lined with cotton, which they call Chebre: but the chiefe citizens and merchants are apparelled in cloth of Europe. The inhabitants are of an honest, cheereful, and liberall disposition. For their victuals they vse a kinde of newe and extreme salt cheeses, and sowre milke also artificially congealed: which fare albeit they account very daintie, yet cannot strangers digest it, and into euerie dish almost they put sower milke.

A diuision of Egypt.

SInce the Mahumetans were Lords of Egypt, it hath beene diuided into three parts. For the region from Cairo to Rosetto is called the shore of Errif: and from Cairo to the lande of Bugiha it is called Sahid, that is to say, The firme land: but the region adioining vpon that branch of Nilus which runneth towardes Damiata and Tenesse, they call by the name of Bechria or Maremma. All Egypt is exceeding fertile: but the prouince of Sahid excelleth the two other parts for abundance of corne, cattle, fowles, and flaxe: and Maremma aboundeth with cotton and sugar. Howbeit the inhabitants of Marremma and Errif are farre more ciuill then the people of Sahid: bicause those two prouinces lie neerer vnto the sea, and are more frequented by European, Barbarian, and Assirian merchants: but the

the people of Sahid haue no conuerſation with ſtrangers, except it be with a fewe Ethiopians.

Of the ancient pedigree and originall of the Egyptians.

*Gen.10 6. * Meſraim is recorded to be the brother of Chus, and the ſonne of Cham. Chibith.*

THe Egyptians (as *Moſes* writeth) fetch their originall from * *Meſraim* the ſonne of *Chus*, the ſonne of *Cham*, the ſonne of *Noe*; and the Hebrewes call both the countrie and the inhabitants of Egypt by the name of Meſraim. The Arabians call Egypt it ſelfe Meſre, but the inhabitants Chibith. And Chibith (they ſay) was the man, that firſt tooke vpon him the gouernment of this region, and began firſt to builde houſes thereon. Alſo the inhabitants call themſelues by the ſame name: neither are there left any true Egyptians, beſides a fewe Chriſtians, which are at this preſent remaining. The reſidue embracing the Mahumetan religion haue mingled themſelues amongſt the Arabians & the Moores. This kingdome was gouerned many yeeres by the Egyptians themſelues, as namely by the kings that were called *Pharao*, (who by their monuments and admirable buildings, ſeeme to haue beene mightie princes) and alſo by the kings called *Ptolomæi*. Afterward being ſubdued vnto the Romaine Empire, this kingdome ſince the comming of Chriſt was conuerted vnto the Chriſtian religion, vnder the ſaide Romaine gouernment: ſince the decay of which Empire, it fell into the poſſeſſion of the Emperours of Conſtantinople; who being very carefull to maintaine this kingdome, were at length depriued thereof by the Mahumetans, vnder the conduct of *Hamrus* the ſonne of *Haſi*, being appointed captaine generall ouer the Arabian armie of *Homar* the ſecond Califa or Mahumetan patriarke of that name: who permitting all men to haue their owne religion required nought but tribute at their hands. The ſaid captaine built vpon the banke of Nilus a certaine towne called by the Arabians Fuſtato, which word ſignifieth in their language a tabernacle: for when he firſt vndertooke this expedition, he marched through wilde and deſert places voide of inhabitants, ſo that his armie was conſtrained to lye in tents. The common people call this towne Meſre Hatichi, that is to ſay, the auncient citie; which notwithſtanding in compariſon of Cairo may not vnfitly be called the New citie. And as concerning the ſituation of this towne many excellent men both Chriſtians, Iewes, and Mahumetans haue in theſe our times beene deceiued. For they thinke Meſre to be ſituate in the ſame place where king *Pharao* in the time of *Moſes*, and king *Pharao* in the time of *Ioſeph* had their aboade: becauſe they ſuppoſe the towne of *Pharao* to haue ſtood in that part of Africa where Nilus ſtretcheth out one of his armes weſtward towards Africa, and where the Pyramides are as yet to be ſeene: which the holy Scripture alſo ſeemeth to auouch in the booke of Geneſis, where it is ſaid, that the Iewes in *Moſes* time were employed about the building of the towne of Aphthun, which was founded by *Pharao*: namely in

The towne of Pharao.

that

that place where Nilus trendeth towards Africa, being about fiftie miles southward of Cairo, and neere vnto the most westerly arme or branch of Nilus. They alleage also another probabilitie, that the towne of *Pharao* was built in the same place, because that at the verie head or confluence of the branches of Nilus there standeth a building of maruellous antiquitie, called the sepulchre of *Ioseph*, wherein the dead bodie of *Ioseph* lay, till it was by the Iewes transported vnto the sepulchre of their fathers. To be briefe, neither Cairo nor any place neere vnto it, can by any likelyhood chalenge that they were at any time inhabited by the ancient *Pharaos*. But heere it is to be noted, that the nobilitie of the ancient Egyptians dwelt in times past in the region of Sahid beyond Cairo, in the cities of Fium, of Manfichmin, and in other such famous cities. Howbeit after Egypt was conquered by the Romans, the Egyptian nobilitie planted themselues in the region of Errif, vpon the sea shore thereof, namely about the cities of Alexandria, Rosetto, and other famous townes retayning as yet the Latine names. Also when the Roman Empire was translated into Greece, the said nobilitie still inhabited vpon the sea-shore, the Emperors lieutenant residing at Alexandria: but after the Mahumetans got the dominion of Egypt, the foresaide nobilitie retired themselues into the inland, hoping thereby to reape a double commoditie: namely first in that they might be a meanes to pacifie the kingdome on both sides of them, and secondly that they might be free from the inuasions of the Christians, whereof they should haue beene in danger, had they remained any longer vpon the sea coast.

The sepulchre of Ioseph.

Of the qualitie and temperature of the ayre in Egypt.

THE ayre of this countrey is hot and vnholesome: and it raineth here verie seldome or neuer. And raine is the cause of many diseases in Egypt: for in rainie weather some of the Egyptians are subiect vnto dangerous rheumes and feuers; and others vnto a strange kinde of swelling in their priuie members: which swelling the Phisicians impute vnto salt-cheese and beefe, which are the common diet of the Egyptians. In sommer time this countrey is most extremely hot, for a remedie of which heat they build in euerie towne certaine high towers, hauing one doore aloft, and another beneath, right ouer against the houses, through the tops whereof the winde passing downard, doth somewhat coole and refresh the ayre: otherwise in regard of the intollerable heat of the sun it were impossible for any man to liue there. Sometime the pestilence is so hot among them, especially at Cairo, that almost euery day there die twelue thousand persons thereof. But with the French poxe I thinke that no other countrey vnder heauen is so molested, nor that containeth so many people infected therewith. About the beginning of Aprill they reape their corne, and hauing reaped it, they presently thrash the same; neither shall you see one eare of their corne standing till the twentith of May. The inundation or ouerflow of Nilus beginneth about the middest of Iune, increasing

Extreme pestilence.

The French maladie most rife in Egypt.

The increase of Nilus.

sing afterward for the space of fortie daies, and for the space of other fortie daies also decreasing: during which time all the cities and townes of Egypt are like vnto Ilands, which none can come vnto but by boates and barges. At this time also Nilus is verie fit to be sayled vpon with vessels of burthen; some whereof are so big that they will containe sixe thousand bushels of corne, and an hundreth head-cattell: and in these vessels they sayle onely downe the streame: for against the streame it were impossible for them to passe emptie. The Egyptians according to the increase of Nilus doe foresee the plentie or dearth of the yeere following: as we will more at large declare, when we come to speake of the iland of Nilus ouer against the olde citie, where the inundation of Nilus is measured. Neither is it our purpose in this place particularly to describe all the cities of Egypt, because our African writers are of diuers opinions thereabout; for some would haue Egypt to be a part of Africa, but others are of a contrarie minde. Diuers there are that affirme that part of Egypt adioyning vpon the deserts of Barbarie, Numidia, and Libya, to belong vnto Africa. Some others ascribe vnto Africa all those places that border vpon the principall and maine chanel of Nilus: but as for other places, as namely Manf, Fium, Semenud, Damanhore, Berelles, Tenesse, and Damiata, they thinke them not to be situate in Africa: which opinion I my selfe also vpon many and great reasons take to be true. Wherefore my purpose is to describe none other cities but such as stand neere the maine and principall chanell of Nilus.

Of the citie of Bosiri.

THe ancient citie of Bosiri built by the Egyptians vpon the Mediterran sea, and standing twenty miles westward from Alexandria, was in times past enuironed with most strong walles, and adorned with most beautifull and stately buildings. At this present it is compassed with many possessions or grounds bearing dates, whereof no man taketh charge nor reapeth any commoditie: for when Alexandria was woon by the Christians, the inhabitants abandoned this citie, and fled towards the lake called Buchaira.

Of the great citie of Alexandria in Egypt.

THe great citie of Alexandria in Egypt founded by *Alexander* the great, not without the aduise of most famous and skilfull architects, vpon a beautifull point of land stretching into the Mediterran sea, and being distant 40. miles westward of Nilus, was in times past, till it grew subiect vnto the Mahumetans, most sumptuously and strongly built, as diuers and sundry authors beare record. Afterward this citie decaying many yeeres together, was depriued of the ancient renowme and honour, and remained in manner desolate, because no merchants of Greece, nor of any other part of Europe exercised any longer traffique therein,

therein. Howbeit a certaine craftie Mahumetan patriarke made the rude people beleeue, that by the prophecie of *Mahumet* moſt ample indulgences were granted vnto all ſuch as would inhabite the citie or garde it for certaine daies, and would beſtow ſome almes for a publike benefite: by which wilie ſtratagem the citie was in ſhort time filled with forren people, which from all places reſorted thereunto: by whom were built many houſes neere vnto the citie-walles, and many colleges of ſtudents, and diuers monaſteries for the reliefe of pilgrims. The citie it ſelfe is fower ſquare, and hath fower gates to enter in at: one ſtanding on the eaſt ſide towards Nilus, another on the ſouth ſide towards the lake of Buchaira, the third weſtward towards the deſert of Barca, and the fourth towards the Mediterran ſea, and the hauen; whereat ſtand the ſearchers and cuſtomers, which ranſacke ſtrangers euen to their verie ſhirts: for they demaund cuſtome not onely for wares and merchandize, but alſo ſome allowance in the hundred for all kinde of money. Neere vnto the citie-walles there are two other gates alſo, being diuided aſunder by a faire walke, and a moſt impregnable caſtle, which ſtandeth vpon the ſtrand or wharfe of the port commonly called *Marſa el Bargi*, that is to ſay, the port of the caſtle: in which port ride the principall and beſt ſhips, namely ſuch as come from Venice, Genoa, Raguſa, with other ſhips of Europe. For hither reſort the Engliſh, the low Dutch, the Biſcaines, the Portugals, and men of all other nations in Europe for traffiques ſake. Howbeit this port is moſt vſually frequented by the ſhips of Appulia, Sicilia, and of Greece, which are Turkiſh ſhips; all which reſort into this harbour to ſaue themſelues from pirates, and from tempeſtuous weather. Another port there is alſo called *Marſa Eſſil Sela*, that is to ſay, the port of the chaine, wherein the ſhips of Barbarie, namely thoſe of Tunis & of the iſle of Gerbi harbor themſelues. The Chriſtians are conſtrained to pay about the 10. part for all wares that they bring in & carie out, but the Mahumetans pay but the 20. part: and whatſoeuer wares are caried by land to Cairo pay no cuſtom at all. And at this preſent that part of the citie which is next vnto Cairo is the moſt famous and beſt furniſhed with merchandize brought by merchants from al places of the world. The other parts of this city are deſtitute both of ciuilitie & inhabitants: for except one long ſtreet, and that part of the citie next the hauen which is full of merchants ſhops, & inhabited by chriſtians, the reſidue is void and deſolate. Which deſolation happened at that time, when *Lewis* the fourth king of France being reſtored to libertie by the Soldan, the king of Cyprus with a fleet partly of Venetians & partly of Frenchmen ſuddenly aſſailed Alexandria, and with great ſlaughter ſurprized and ſacked the ſame. But the Soldan comming with an huge armie to reſcue Alexandria, ſo diſcouraged the Cyprians, that they burnt downe the houſes thereof and betooke themſelues to flight. Whereupon the Soldan repairing the walles, and building a caſtle neere vnto the hauen, the citie grew by little and little into that eſtate, wherein it ſtandeth at this preſent. In the citie of Alexandria there is a certaine high mount faſhioned like vnto the place

Ancient traffique of the Engliſh vnto Alexandria.

Alexandria ſurpriſed and ſacked by the king of Cyprus.

called Testaccio at Rome, whereon, although it hath no naturall situation, are found diuers earthen vessels of great antiquitie. Vpon the top of the said mount standeth a turret, where a certaine officer is appointed to watch for such ships as direct their course towards the citie, who for euery ship that he giueth notice of vnto the customers, receiueth a certaine fee: but if he chanceth to fall asleepe, or to be out of the way at the arriuall of any ship, whereof he certifieth not the customers, he paieth double for his negligence into the Soldans exchequer. Vnder each house of this citie there is a great vaulted cesterne built vpon mighty pillers and arches: whereinto the water of Nilus at euery inundation is conueied vnder the walles of the citie, by a certaine woonderfull and most artificiall sluce standing without the city it selfe. But these cesternes growing sometime corrupt and fowle, are often in summer the occasion of many diseases and infirmities. This citie standeth in the midst of a sandie desert, and is destitute of gardens and vines, neither is the soile round about it apt to beare corne; so that their corne is brought them from places fortie miles distant. Howbeit neere the foresaid sluce, whereby the water of Nilus is conueied into the citie, are certaine little gardens, the fruits whereof being growen to ripenes are so vnholesome, that they breed feuers and other noisome diseases among the citizens. Sixe miles westward of Alexandria, among certaine ancient buildings, standeth a piller of a woonderfull height and thicknes, which the Arabians call Hemadussaoar, that is to say, the piller of trees. Of this piller there is a fable reported, that *Ptolemey* one of the kings of Alexandria built it vpon an extreme point of land stretching from the hauen, whereby to the end he might defend the citie from the inuasion of forren enemies, and make it inuincible, he placed a certaine steele-glasse vpon the top thereof, by the hidden vertue of which glasse as many ships as passed by while the glasse was vncouered should immediately be set on fire: but the said glasse being broken by the Mahumetans, the secret vertue thereof vanished, and the great piller whereon it stood was remooued out of the place. But this is a most ridiculous narration, and fit for babes to giue credit vnto. At this present there are amongst the ancient inhabitants of Alexandria many Christians called Iacobites, being all of them artizans & merchants: these Iacobites haue a church of their own to resort vnto, wherin the body of S. *Mark* the Euãgelist lay in times past interred, which hath since beene priuily stolne by the Venetians, & carried vnto Venice. And the said Iacobites pay tribute vnto the gouernour of Cairo. Neither is it to be passed ouer in silence, that in the midst of the ruinous monuments of Alexandria there remaineth as yet a certaine little house built in forme of a chappell, and containing a sepulchre much honoured by the Mahumetans, wherein they affirme out of the authoritie of their Alcaron, that the bodie of the high prophet and king (as they terme him) *Alexander* the great lieth buried. And thither resort yeerely great multitudes of pilgrimes from forren nations, to adore and reuerence the said sepulchre, and oftentimes to bestow large almes thereupon. Other things woorthie the noting

The water of Nilus brought by a sluce into Alexandria.

Certaine Christians called Iacobites.

noting I purposely passe ouer, least I should seeme too tedious vnto the reader.

Of the citie of Bochin.

THis ancient and small citie situate in times past vpon the Mediterran sea shore eight miles eastward of Alexandria, lieth at this time vtterly desolate, nought remaining thereof, but certaine ruines of the walles. It is now planted with date-trees, wherewith the poore inhabitants dwelling in base and solitarie cottages sustaine themselues. Neere vnto this citie standeth a towre vpon a certaine dangerous rocke, against which many ships of Syria being driuen in the night, doe suffer shipwracke, because they cannot in the darke finde the right course to the port of Alexandria. Round about this citie there are no fields but sandie deserts euen to the riuer of Nilus.

Of the citie of Rasid called by the Italians Rosetto.

THe citie of Rosetto was built by a slaue of a certaine Mahumetan patriarke and gouernour of Egypt, vpon the easterne banke of Nilus three miles from the Mediterran sea, not farre from the place where Nilus discharged his streames into the said sea. It containeth most beautifull houses and palaces built vpon the shore of Nilus, and a faire market-place, enuironed on all sides with shops of merchants and artizans, with a stately and sumptuous temple also, hauing some gates towards the market-place, and others toward Nilus, and certaine commodious staires to descend into the same riuer. Neere vnto the temple there is a certaine harbour for the safetie of ships and barks of burthen that carrie wares vnto Cairo: for the citie being vnwalled resembleth a village rather then a citie. About this citie stand diuers cottages, wherein they vse to thrash rice with certaine wooden instruments, & to make ready each moneth three thousand bushels thereof. A little farther from this citie there is a place like vnto a village, wherein great store of hackney-mules, and asses are kept for trauellers to ride vpon vnto Alexandria: neither neede the trauellers to guide the saide hackneyes, but to let them run their ordinarie course, for they will goe directly to the same house or inne where they ought to be left: and their pace is so good, that they will from sunne-rising to sunne-set carrie a man fortie miles: they trauell alwaies so neere the sea-shore, that sometimes the waues thereof beat vpon the hackneyes feete. Neere vnto this citie are many fields of dates, and grounds which yeeld aboundance of rice. The inhabitants are of a cheerefull disposition and courteous to strangers, especially to such as loue to spend their time in iollitie and disport. Here is a stately bath-stoue also, hauing fountaines both of cold and hot water belonging thereunto, the like whereof for stately and commodious building is not to be found in all Egypt besides. I my selfe was in this citie when *Selim* the great Turke returned this way from Alexandria, who with his priuate and familiar friends beholding

Iohn Leo was at Rasid the same time when Selim the great Turke passed that way.

holding the ſaid bath-ſtoue, ſeemed to take great delight and contentment therein.

Of the citie called Anthius.

THis citie was built vpon the eaſterne banke of Nilus by the Romans, as many Latin inſcriptions engrauen in marble, and remaining til this preſent do beare ſufficient record. It is a beautifull and well-gouerned citie, and is furniſhed with men of all kinde of trades and occupations. The fields adiacent abound with great plentie of rice, corne, and dates. The inhabitants are of a cheerefull and gentle diſpoſition, and gaine much by rice which they tranſport vnto Cairo.

Of the citie of Barnabal.

THis citie was founded at the ſame time when the Chriſtian religion began to take place in Egypt, vpon the eaſterne banke of Nilus, in a moſt pleaſant and fruitfull place. Here is ſuch abundance of rice, that in the citie there are more then fower hundred houſes for the thraſhing and trimming thereof. But they that impoſe this taske vpon the inhabitants, are men of forren countries, and eſpecially of Barbarie, which are ſo laſciuiouſly and riotouſly giuen, that almoſt all the harlots of Egypt reſort hither vnto them, who ſhaue off their haires to the very bones without any cizzers or raſors.

Of the citie of Thebe.

BY whom this ancient citie of Thebe ſtanding vpon the weſterne banke of Nilus ſhould be built, our African chroniclers are of ſundry opinions. Some affirme it to be built by the Egyptians, ſome by the Romans, and others by the Grecians, becauſe there are as yet to be ſeene moſt ancient monuments, partly in Latine, partly in Greeke, and partly in Egyptian characters. Howbeit at this preſent it containeth but three hundred families in all, being moſt of them very ſtately and ſumptuouſly built. It aboundeth with corne, rice, and ſugar, and with certaine fruits of a moſt excellent taſte called Muſe. It is alſo furniſhed with great ſtore of merchants and artificers: but the moſt part of the inhabitants are husbandmen: and if a man walke the ſtreetes in the day-time he ſhall ſee none but trim and beautifull women. The territorie adiacent aboundeth with date-trees which grow ſo thicke, that a man cannot ſee the citie, till he approcheth nigh vnto the walles. Here grow likewiſe ſtore of grapes, figs, and peaches, which are carried in great plentie vnto Cairo. Without the citie there are many ancient monuments, as namely pillers, inſcriptions, and walles of a great thicknes built of excellent ſtone, and ſuch a number of ruinous places, that this citie ſeemeth in times paſt to haue beene very large.

The fruits called Muſe.

Of

Of the citie of Fuoa.

THis citie being distant about 45. miles southward from Rosetto, was built by the Egyptians on the side of Nilus next vnto Asia. The streetes thereof are narrow, being otherwise a well gouerned and populous citie, and abounding with all necessarie commodities. Heere are likewise very faire shops of merchants and artificers, albeit the inhabitants are much addicted vnto their ease and pleasure. The women of this towne liue in so great libertie, that they may go whither they will all the day-time, returning home at night without any controlement of their husbands. The fieldes adiacent abounde greatly with dates, and neere vnto them there is a certaine plaine which is very apt for sugar and corne: howbeit the sugar canes there bring not foorth perfect sugar, but in steede thereof a certaine kinde of honie like sope, which they vse throughout all Egypt, because there is but little other hony in the whole countrey. *Sugar.*

Of Gezirat Eddeheb, that is to say, the golden Isle.

OVer against the foresaid city the riuer of Nilus maketh an Isle, which being situate on an high place, bringeth forth all kinde of fruitefull trees except Oliues. Vpon this Island are many palaces and beautifull buildings, which cannot be seene through the thicke and shadie woods. The soile of this Island being apt for sugar and rice, is manured by most of the inhabitants, but the residue are imploied about carrying of their merchandize vnto Cairo.

Of the citie of Mechella.

THis citie builte by the Mahumetans in my time vpon the easterne shore of Nilus, and enuironed with a lowe wall, containeth great store of inhabitants, the most part of whom being either weauers or husbandmen, are voide of all curtesie and ciuilitie. They bring vp great store of geese which they sell at Cairo; and their fields bring foorth plentie of corne and flaxe.

Of the citie of Derotte.

WHen Egypt was subiect to the Romaine empire, this towne was built also vpon the easterne banke of Nilus: which as it is very populous, so is it adorned with stately buildings and large streets, hauing merchants shops on either side of them. They haue a most beautifull temple, and the citizens are exceeding rich: for their grounde yeeldeth such abundance of sugar, that they pay yeerely vnto the Soldan an hundred thousande peeces of golde, called in their language Saraffi, for their libertie of making *Great abundance of Sugar.*

and refining thereof. In this citie ſtandeth a certaine great houſe like vnto a caſtle, wherein are their preſſes and caldrons, for the boiling and preparing of their ſugar. Neither did I euer in all my life ſee ſo many workemen emploied about that buſines, whoſe daily wages (as I vnderſtood by a certaine publike officer) amounted to two hundred Saraffi.

Of the citie called Mechellat Chaïs.

THe Mahumetans hauing conquered Egypt, built this citie vpon an high hill ſtanding by the weſterne banke of Nilus. The fields of this citie being high ground, are apt for to plant vines vpon, becauſe the waters of Nilus cannot ouerflow them. This towne affoordeth new grapes vnto Cairo, almoſt for halfe the yeere long: but the inhabitants are vnciuill people, being moſt of them watermen and bargemen.

A deſcription of the huge and admirable citie of Cairo.

CAiro is commonly reputed to be one of the greateſt and moſt famous cities in al the whole world. But leauing the common reports & opinions thereof, I will exactly deſcribe the forme and eſtate wherin it *now ſtandeth. And that I may begin with the Etymology or deriuation of the name, Cairo is an Arabian word, corruptly pronounced by the people of Europe: for the true Arabian worde is El Chahira, which ſignifieth an enforcing or imperious miſtreſſe. This citie built in ancient times by one *Gehoar Chetib* a Dalmatian ſlaue (as I haue before ſignified in the beginning of my diſcourſe) containeth within the wals not aboue eight thouſand families, being inhabited by noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants that ſell wares brought from all other places. The famous temple of Cairo commonly called Gemih Haſhare, that is to ſay, the glorious temple, was built alſo by the foreſaide ſlaue, whom we affirmed to be the founder of the citie, and whoſe ſurname was *Haſhare*, that is to ſay, famous, being giuen him by the Mahumetan patriarke that was his prince. This city ſtandeth vpon a moſt beautifull plaine, neere vnto a certaine mountaine called Mucatun, about two miles diſtant from Nilus, and is enuironed with ſtately wals, and fortified with iron gates: the principall of which gates is called Babe Nanſre, that is, the gate of victory, which ſtandeth eaſtward towards the deſert of the red ſea; and the gate called Beb Zuaila being next vnto the old citie and to Nilus; and alſo Bebel Futuh, that is to ſay, the gate of triumph, ſtanding towards the lake and the fieldes. And albeit Cairo aboundeth euerie where with all kinde of merchants and artificers, yet that is the principall ſtreete of the whole citie which ſtretcheth from the gate of Nanſre to the gate of Zuaila; for in it are builte moſt ſtately and admirable palaces and colleges, and moſt ſumptuous temples, among which is the temple of Gemith Elhechim the third ſchiſmaticall Califa of Cairo. Other temples there are of

*1526.

a

a maruellous bignes, which to deſcribe in particular, I thinke it ſuperfluous. Heere are many bath-ſtoues alſo very artificially built. Next of all is the ſtreete called Beinel Caſrain, containing to the number of threeſcore cooks or victualers ſhops, furniſhed with veſſels of tinne: there are certaine other ſhops alſo, wherein are to be ſolde delicate waters or drinkes made of all kinds of fruits, being for noblemen to drinke of, and theſe waters they keepe moſt charily in fine veſſels, partly of glaſſe, and partly of tinne: next vnto theſe are ſhops where diuers confections of hony & ſugar, vnlike vnto the confections of Europe, are to be ſold: then follow the fruiterers ſhops, who bring outlandiſh fruits out of Syria, to wit, quinces, pomegranates, and other fruits which grow not in Egypt: next vnto them are the ſhops of ſuch as ſell egges, cheeſe, and pancakes fried with oile. And next of all there is a ſtreete of the principall artificers ſhops. Beyond which ſtreete ſtandeth a college built by the Soldan called *Ghauri*, who was ſlaine in a battaile againſt *Selim* the great Turke. And next vnto the college are diuers rankes of drapers ſhops. In the firſt ranke there is moſt excellent outlandiſh linnen cloth to be ſold, as namely fine cloth of cotton brought from Balabach, and cloth called Moſall brought from Ninou of a maruellous bredth and fineneſſe, whereof noblemen and others of account haue ſhirts made them, & ſcarffes to weare vpon their Dulipans. Beſides theſe there are certaine mercers ſhops where the rich ſtuffes of Italy, namely ſilke, damaske, veluet, cloth of golde, and ſuch like are to be bought, vnto which ſtuffes I neuer ſawe anie comparable (to my remembrãce) in Italy, where they vſe to be made. Next vnto the mercers are the woollen drapers which bring cloth out of Europe, as namely from Florence, Venice, Flanders, and other places. Next of all there are chamblets to be ſold: and from thence the way lieth to the gate of Zuaila, at which gate dwell great ſtore of artificers. Neere vnto the ſaide way ſtandeth the famous Burſe called Canel Halili, wherin the Perſian merchants dwell. It is built very ſtately in maner of a kings palace, and is of three ſtories high: beneath it are certaine conuenient roomes whither merchants for the exchange of rich and coſtly wares do reſort: for heere do the principall and moſt wealthie merchants abide; whoſe wares are ſpices, precious ſtones, cloth of India, and ſuch like. Next vnto the Burſe ſtandeth a ſtreete of ſhops where all kinde of perfumes, namely ciuet, muske, amber, and ſuch like are to be ſolde: which commodities are heere in ſo great plentie, that if you aske for twentie pounds of muske they will preſently ſhewe you an hundred. Next followeth the ſtreete of the paper-merchants where you may buie moſt excellent and ſmooth paper: heere alſo are to be ſold iewels and precious ſtones of great value, which the brokers carrie from one ſhop to another. Then come you to the goldſmiths ſtreete being inhabited for the moſt part by Iewes, who deale for riches of great importance. And next vnto the goldſmiths are certaine ſtreetes of vpholſters or brokers, who ſell the apparell and rich furniture of noblemen and other citizens at the ſecond hande; which are not cloakes, coates, napery, or ſuch like, but things of exceeding

Delicate drinks made of all kind of fruits.

Soldan Ghauri.

ceeding price and value: amongſt which I my ſelfe once ſawe a beautifull pauilion embrodered with needle-worke, and beſet with pearles that weighed fortie pounds, which pearles being taken out of it were ſolde for ten thouſand Saraffi. In this citie alſo there is a moſt ſtately hoſpitall builte by *Piperis* the firſt Soldan of the Mamalucks race: the yeerely reuenues whereof amount vnto two hundred thouſand Saraffi. Hither may any impotent or diſeaſed perſons reſort, and be well prouided of phiſitions, and of all things neceſſarie for thoſe that are ſicke, who if they chance to die heere, all their goods are due vnto the hoſpitall.

A ſtately hoſpitall.

Of the ſuburb called Beb Zuaila.

THis great ſuburbe belonging vnto Cairo, and containing about twelue thouſand families, beginneth at the gate of Zuaila, and extendeth weſtward almoſt a mile & a halfe; ſouthward it bordereth vpon the palace of the Soldan, & ſtretcheth northward for the ſpace of a mile vnto the ſuburbe called Beb Elloch. Heere dwell as many noble men and gentlemen almoſt, as within the citie it ſelfe: and the citizens haue ſhops both heere and in the citie, as likewiſe many inhabitants of this ſuburbe maintaine families in the citie alſo. Amongſt all the buildings of this ſuburbe the principall is that ſtately college built by Soldan *Heſen*, being of ſuch a woonderfull height and great ſtrength, that oftentimes the colleges haue preſumed to rebell againſt the Soldan, and therein to fortifie themſelues againſt the whole citie, and to diſcharge ordinance againſt the Soldans caſtle, which is but halfe a croſſe-bowe ſhot diſtant.

Of the ſuburbe called Gemeh Tailon.

THis huge ſuburbe confining eaſtwarde vpon the foreſaid ſuburbe of Beb Zuaila extendeth weſtward to certaine ruinous places neere vnto the olde citie. Before the foundation of Cairo this ſuburbe was erected by one *Tailon*, who was ſubiect vnto the Califa of Bagdet, and gouernour of Egypt, and was a moſt famous and prudent man. This *Tailon* leauing the old citie, inhabited this ſuburbe, and adorned the ſame with a moſt admirable palace, and ſumptuous temple. Heere dwell alſo great ſtore of merchants, and artificers, eſpecially ſuch as are Moores of Barbarie.

Of the ſuburbe called Beb Elloch.

THis large ſuburbe being diſtant from the wals of Cairo about the ſpace of a mile, and containing almoſt three thouſand families, is inhabited by merchants, and artizans of diuers ſorts as well as the former. Vpon a certaine large place of this ſuburbe ſtandeth a great palace and a ſtately college built by a certaine Mammaluck called *Iazbach*, being

counſeller vnto the Soldan of thoſe times; and the place it ſelfe is called after his name Iazbachia. Hither after Mahumetan ſermons and deuotions, the common people of Cairo, togither with the baudes and harlots, do vſually reſort; and many ſtage plaiers alſo, and ſuch as teach camels, aſſes, and dogs, to daunce: which dauncing is a thing very delightfull to behold, and eſpecially that of the aſſe: who hauing frisked and daunced a while, his maſter comes vnto him and tels him with a loude voice, that the Soldan being about to builde ſome great palace, muſt vſe all the aſſes of Cairo to carrie morter, ſtones, and other neceſſarie prouiſion. Then the aſſe falling preſently to the ground, and lying with his heeles vpward, maketh his belly to ſwell, and cloſeth his eies as if he were ſtarke dead. In the meane while his maſter lamenting the misfortune of the aſſe vnto the ſtanders by, earneſtly craueth their friendly aſſiſtance and liberalitie to buie him a newe aſſe. And hauing gathered of each one as much money as he can get; you are much deceiued my maſters (quoth he) that thinke mine aſſe to be dead: for the hungrie iade knowing his maſters neceſſity hath wrought this ſleight, to the end he might get ſome money to buie him prouender. Then turning about to the aſſe, he commandeth him with all ſpeede to ariſe: but the aſſe lyeth ſtarke ſtill, though he command and beate him neuer ſo much: whereupon turning againe to the people, Be it knowen (quoth he) vnto you all, that the Soldan hath publiſhed an edict or proclamation, that to morrow next all the people ſhall go foorth of the citie to beholde a triumph; and that all the honourable and beautifull ladies and gentlewomen ſhall ride vpon the moſt comely aſſes, and ſhall giue them otes to eate, and the chriſtall water of Nilus to drinke. Which words being ſcarce ended, the aſſe ſuddenly ſtarteth from the ground, prancing & leaping for ioy: then his maſter proſecuting ſtill his narration; but (ſaith he) the warden of our ſtreete hath borrowed this goodly aſſe of mine for his deformed and olde wife to ride vpon. At theſe wordes the aſſe, as though hee were indued with humaine reaſon, coucheth his eares, and limpeth with one of his legges, as if it were quite out of ioint. Then ſaith his maſter; What, ſir Iade, are you ſo in loue with faire women? The aſſe nodding his head ſeemeth to ſay, yea. Come on therefore ſirra (quoth his maſter) and let vs ſee among all theſe prettie damoſels, which pleaſeth your fancie beſt. Whereupon the aſſe going about the companie, and eſpying ſome woman more comely and beautiful then the reſt, walketh directly vnto her and toucheth her with his head: and then the beholders laugh and crie out amaine: Lo, the aſſes paramour, the paramour of the aſſe. Whereupon the fellow that ſhewed all this ſport leaping vpon the backe of his aſſe rideth to ſome other place. There is alſo another kinde of charmers or iuglers, which keepe certaine little birdes in cages made after the faſhion of cupboords, which birds will reach vnto any man with their beaks certaine skroules contayning either his good or euill ſucceſſe in time to come. And whoſoeuer deſireth to know his fortune muſt giue the bird an halfepenie: which ſhee taking in her bill carrieth into

These aſſes are ſomewhat like to Banks his curtall, that plaid his prizes all England ouer.

Soothſaying birds.

a little boxe, and then comming foorth againe bringeth the said skroule in her beake. I my selfe had once a skroule of ill fortune giuen me, which although I little regarded, yet had I more vnfortunate successe then was contained therein. Also there are masters of defence playing at all kinde of weapons, and others that sing songs of the battels fought betweene the Arabians and Egyptians, whenas the Arabians conquered Egypt, with diuers others that sing such toyes and ballads vnto the people.

Of the suburb called Bulach

THis large and ancient suburb of Cairo standing two miles distant from the walles of the citie vpon the banke of Nilus, containeth fower thousand families. Vpon the way lying betweene the suburb and this citie, stand diuers houses, and mils turned about by the strength of beasts. In this suburb dwell many artificers and merchants, especially such as sell corne, oyle, and sugar. Moreouer it is full of stately temples, palaces, and colledges: but the faireſt buildings thereof stand along the riuer of Nilus, for from thence there is a most beautifull prospect vpon the riuer, and thither do the vessels and barkes of Nilus resort vnto the common stathe of Cairo being situate in this suburb: at which place you shall see at some times, and especially in the time of harueſt, aboue 1000. barkes. And here the officers appointed to receiue custome for wares brought from Alexandria and Damiata haue their aboad: albeit but little tribute be demaunded for the said wares, becauſe it was payd before at the port of their arriuall: but those wares that come out of the firme land of Egypt allow entire custome.

Of the suburb called Charafa.

THE suburbe of Carafa built in manner of a towne, and standing from mount Muccatim a stones cast, and from the walles of the citie about two miles, containeth almost two thousand houſholds. But at this day the greateſt part thereof lyeth waste and destroyed. Here are many sepulchres built with high and stately vaults and arches, and adorned on the inner side with diuers emblemes and colours, which the fond people adore as the sacred shrines & monuments of saints, spreading the pauement with sumptuous and rich carpets. Hither euerie friday morning resort out of the citie it selfe and the suburbs, great multitudes of people for deuotions sake, who bestow liberall and large almes.

Of the old citie called Misrulhetich.

THis citie being the first that was built in Egypt in the time of the Mahumetans, was founded by *Hamre* captaine generall ouer the forces of *Homar* the second Mahumetan patriarke vpon the banke of Nilus,

resembling

reſembling a ſuburb becauſe it is vnwalled, and containing to the number of fiue thouſand families. It is adorned, eſpecially by the riuer Nilus, with diuers palaces and houſes of noblemen, and alſo with the famous temple of *Hamre* being of an huge bignes, and moſt ſtately built. It is alſo indifferently well prouided of trades-men and artificers. And here ſtandeth the famous ſepulchre of a woman reputed moſt holy by the Mahumetans, and called by them Saint *Naſiſſa*, which was the daughter of one called *Zenulhebidin* being the ſonne of *Huſein*, the ſon of *Heli*, who was conſin-german vnto *Mahumet*. The ſaid *Naſiſſa* ſeeing all of her family to be depriued of the Mahumetan patriarkſhip, left Cufa a citie of *Arabia Felix*, and came and dwelt in this citie; vnto whom, partly becauſe ſhe was of the linage of *Mahumet*, and partly for that ſhe liued an innocent and blameleſſe life, the people after her death aſcribed diuine honours, canonizing her for a Saint. Wherefore the ſchiſmaticall patriarks of her kinred hauing got the vpper hand in Egypt, began to build for *Naſiſſa* a moſt beautifull ſhrine or ſepulchre, which they adorned alſo with ſiluer-lamps, with carpets of ſilke, and ſuch like precious ornaments. So great is the renowne of this *Naſiſſa*, that there commeth no Mahumetan either by ſea or land vnto Cairo, but hee adoreth this ſepulchre, and bringeth his offering thereunto, as likewiſe doe all the Mahumetans inhabiting thereabout: inſomuch that the yeerely oblations and almes offered at this ſepulchre, partly for the reliefe of the poore kinsfolkes of Mahumet, and partly for the maintenance of the prieſts which keepe the ſaide ſepulchre, amount vnto 100000. Saraffi: which prieſts by fained and counterfeit miracles do dayly delude the mindes of the ſimple, to the ende they may the more enflame thir blinde deuotion, and may ſtirre them to greater liberalitie. When *Selim* the great Turke woon the citie of Cairo, his *Ianizaries* rifling this ſepulchre, found there the ſumme of 500000. Saraffi in readie money, beſides the ſiluer lampes, the chaines, and carpets: but *Selim* tooke away a great part of that treaſure from them. Such as write the liues of the Mahumetan ſaints, making very honourable mention of this *Naſiſſa*, ſay that ſhe was deſcended of the noble family of *Heli*, and that ſhe was moſt famous for her vertuous and chaſt life: but the fonde people and the prieſt of that execrable ſepulchre haue deuiſed many fained and ſuperſtitious miracles. In this ſuburbe alſo neere vnto the riuer of Nilus is the cuſtomers office for ſuch wares as are brought out of the Prouince of Sahid. Without the walled citie ſtand the magnificent and ſtately ſepulchres of the Soldans, built with admirable and huge arches. But in my time a certaine Soldan cauſed a walke to be built between two high wals from the gate of the citie to the place of the aforeſaid ſepulchres, and at the endes of both wals cauſed two turrets of an exceeding height to be erected, for marks and directions vnto ſuch merchants as came thither from the port of mount Sinai. About a mile and an halfe from the ſaide ſepulchres in a certaine place called Amalthria there is a garden containing the onely balme-tree, (for in the whole world beſides there is not any other tree that beareth true balme)

Saint Naſiſſa.

The place where balme groweth.

balme) which balme-tree growing in the midſt of a large fountaine, and hauing a ſhort ſtocke or bodie, beareth leaues like vnto vine-leaues, but that they are not ſo long: and this tree (they ſay) would vtterly wither and decay, if the water of the fountaine ſhould chance to be deminiſhed. The garden is enuironed with a ſtrong wall, whereinto no man may enter without the ſpeciall fauour and licence of the gouernor. In the midſt of Nilus, ouer againſt the old citie, ſtandeth the iſle called Michias, that is to ſay, The iſle of meaſure, in which iſle (according to the inundation of Nilus) they haue a kinde of deuiſe inuented by the ancient Egyptians, whereby they moſt certainely foreſee the plentie or ſcarcitie of the yeere following thoroughout all the land of Egypt. This iſland is well inhabited and containeth about 1500. families; vpon the extreme point or ende whereof ſtandeth a moſt beautifull palace built in my remembrance by a Soldan, and a large temple alſo, which is verie pleaſant in regard of the coole ſtreames of Nilus.

The manner of meaſuring the increaſe of Nilus.

Vpon another ſide of the Iſland ſtandeth an houſe alone by it ſelfe, in the midſt whereof there is a foureſquare ceſtern or chanell of eighteene cubits deepe, whereinto the water of Nilus is conueied by a certaine ſluce vnder the ground. And in the midſt of the ceſtern there is erected a certaine piller, which is marked and diuided into ſo many cubits as the ceſterne it ſelfe containeth in depth. And vpon the ſeuenteenth of Iune when Nilus beginneth to ouerflow, the water thereof conueied by the ſaid ſluce into the chanell, increaſeth daily, ſometimes two, and ſometimes three fingers, and ſometimes halfe a cubite in height. Vnto this place there dayly reſort certaine officers appointed by the Senate, who viewing and obſeruing the increaſe of Nilus, declare vnto certaine children how much it hath increaſed, which children wearing yellow ſkarffes vpon their heads, doe publiſh the ſaide increaſe of Nilus in euerie ſtreete of the citie and the ſuburbs, and receiue gifts euerie day of the merchants, artificers, and women ſo long as Nilus increaſeth. The foreſaid deuiſe or experiment of the increaſe of Nilus is this that followeth. If the water reacheth onely to the fifteenth cubit of the foreſaide piller, they hope for a fruitfull yeere following: but if it ſtayeth betweene the twelfth cubit and the fifteenth, then the increaſe of the yeere will prooue but meane: if it reſteth betweene the tenth and twelfth cubits, then is it a ſigne that corne will bee ſolde tenne ducates the buſhell. But if it ariſeth to the eighteenth cubite, there is like to follow great ſcarcitie in regarde of too much moiſture: and if the eighteenth cubite be ſurmounted, all Egypt is in danger to be ſwallowed vp by the inundation of Nilus. The officers therefore declare vnto the children the height of the riuer, and the children publiſh the ſame in all ſtreetes of the citie, charging the people to feare God, and telling them how high Nilus is increaſed. And the people being aſtonied at the woonderfull increaſe of Nilus, wholy exerciſe themſelues in praiers, and giuing of almes. And thus Nilus continueth fortie daies increaſing and fortie daies decreaſing; all which time corne is ſold very deere, becauſe while the innundation laſteth, euery man may ſell

This piller is called by Plinie Niloſcopium.

at

at his owne pleasure: but when the eightith day is once past, the clerke of the market appointeth the price of all victuals, and especially of corne, according as he knoweth by the foresaid experiment, that the high and lowe grounds of Egypt haue receiued either too little, or too much, or conuenient moisture: all which customes and ceremonies being duely performed, there followeth so great a solemnitie, and such a thundering noise of drums and trumpets throughout all Cairo, that a man would suppose the whole citie to be turned vpside downe. And then euery familie hath a barge adorned with rich couerings and carpets, and with torch-light, and furnished with most daintie meates and confections, wherewith they solace themselues. The Soldan also with all his nobles and courtiers resorteth vnto that sluce or conduct, which is called the great conduct, and is compassed round about with a wall, who taking an axe in his hand breaketh the said wall, and so doe his nobles and courtiers likewise: insomuch that the same part of the wall being cast downe, which stopped the passage of the water, the riuer of Nilus is so swiftly and forcibly carried through that conduct and through all other conducts and sluces in the city and the suburbes, that Cairo at that time seemeth to be another Venice; and then may you rowe ouer all places of the land of Egypt. Seuen daies and seuen nights together the foresaide festiuall solemnitie continueth in Cairo; during which space the merchants and artificers of the citie may (according to the custome of the ancient Egyptians) consume & spend in torches, perfumes, confections, musique, & such like iollities, al their gaines that they haue gotten the whole yeere past. Without the citie of Cairo, neere vnto the suburbe of *Beb Zuaila*, standeth the castle of the Soldan vpon the side of the mountaine called Mochattan. This castle is enuironed with high and impregnable walles, and containeth such stately and beautifull palaces, that they can hardly be described. Paued they are with excellent marble, and on the roofes they are gilt and curiously painted, their windowes are adorned with diuers colours, like to the windowes in some places of Europe; and their gates be artificially carued and beautified with gold and azure. Some of these palaces are for the Soldan and his familie; others for the familie of his wife, and the residue for his concubines, his eunuches, and his garde. Likewise the Soldan had one palace to keepe publique feastes in; and another wherein to giue audience vnto forren ambassadours, and to exalt himselfe with great pompe and ceremonies: and another also for the gouernours and officials of his court. But all these are at this present abolished by *Selim* the great Turke.

Of the customes, rites, and fashions of the citizens of Cairo.

THe inhabitants of Cairo are people of a merrie, iocund, and cheerefull disposition, such as will promise much, but performe little. They exercise merchandize and mechanicall artes, and yet trauell they not out of their

owne natiue ſoile. Many ſtudents there are of the lawes, but very few of other liberall artes and ſciences. And albeit their colleges are continually full of ſtudents, yet few of them attaine vnto perfection. The citizens in winter are clad in garments of cloth lined with cotton: in ſummer they weare fine ſhirts; ouer which ſhirts ſome put on linnen garments curiouſly wrought with ſilke, and others weare garments of chamblet, and vpon their heads they carrie great turbants couered with cloth of India. The women goe coſtly attired, adorning their foreheads and necks with frontlets and chaines of pearle, and on their heads they weare a ſharpe and ſlender bonet of a ſpan high, being very pretious and rich. Gownes they weare of woollen cloth with ſtreite ſleeues, being curiouſly embrodered with needle-worke, ouer which they caſt certaine veiles of moſt excellent fine cloth of India. They couer their heads and faces with a kinde of blacke ſcarfe, through which beholding others, they cannot be ſeene themſelues. Vpon their feet they weare fine ſhooes and pantofles, ſomewhat after the Turkiſh faſhion. Theſe women are ſo ambitious & proud, that all of them diſdaine either to ſpin or to play the cookes: wherefore their husbands are conſtrained to buie victuals ready dreſt at the cookes ſhops: for very few, except ſuch as haue a great familie, vſe to prepare and dreſſe their victuals in their owne houſes. Alſo they vouchſafe great libertie vnto their wiues: for the good man being gone to the tauerne or victualling-houſe, his wife tricking vp her ſelfe in coſtly apparell, and being perfumed with ſweet and pretious odours, walketh about the citie to ſolace her ſelfe, and parley with her kinsfolks and friendes. They vſe to ride vpon aſſes more then horſes, which are broken to ſuch a gentle pace, that they goe eaſier then any ambling horſe. Theſe aſſes they couer with moſt coſtly furniture, and let them out vnto women to ride vpon, together with a boy to lead the aſſe, and certaine footmen to run by. In this citie, like as in diuers others, great ſtore of people carrie about ſundrie kindes of victuals to be ſold. Many there are alſo that ſell water, which they carrie vp and downe in certaine leather bags vpon the backs of camels: for the citie (as I ſaid before) is two miles diſtant from Nilus. Others carrie about a more fine and handſome veſſell with a cocke or ſpout of braſſe vpon it, hauing a cup of Myrrhe or chriſtall in their hands, and theſe ſell water for men to drinke, and for euery draught they take a farthing. Others ſell yoong chickens and other fowles by meaſure, which they hatch after a woonderfull and ſtrange manner. They put great numbers of egges into certaine ouens built vpon ſundrie loftes, which ouens being moderately het, will within ſeuen daies conuert all the ſaid egges into chickens. Their meaſures are bottomleſſe, which being put into the basket of the buier, and filled full of chickens, they lift it vp, and ſo let the chickens fall into the basket. Likewiſe ſuch as buie thoſe chickens hauing kept them a few daies, carrie them about to ſell againe. The cookes ſhops ſtand open very late: but the ſhops of other artificers are ſhut vp before ten of the clocke, who then walke abroad for their ſolace and recreation from one ſuburbe to another. The citizens in their

The attire of the women of Cairo.

The libertie of the women of Cairo.

Birds hatched after a ſtrange manner in Egypt.

common

common talke vſe ribald and filthie ſpeeches: and (that I may paſſe ouer the reſt in ſilence) it falleth out oftentimes that the wife will complaine of her husband vnto the iudge, that he doth not his dutie nor contenteth her ſufficiently in the night ſeaſon, whereupon (as it is permitted by the Mahumetan law) the women are diuorced and married vnto other husbands. Among the artizans whoſoeuer is the firſt inuentour of any new and ingenious deuiſe is clad in a garment of cloth of gold, and carried with a noiſe of muſitians after him, as it were in triumph from ſhop to ſhop, hauing ſome money giuen him at euery place. I my ſelfe once ſaw one carried about with ſolemne muſicke and with great pompe and triumph, becauſe he had bound a flea in a chaine, which lay before him on a peece of paper for all men to behold. And if any of them chance to fall out in the ſtreetes, they preſently goe to buffets, and then a great number of people come flocking about them to ſee the conflict, who will not depart thence, till they haue reconciled them. Their moſt vſuall foode is buffles fleſh and great ſtore of pulſe: when they goe to dinner or ſupper, if their familie be little, they lay a ſhort and rounde table-cloth: but if their houſhold be great, they ſpread a large cloth, ſuch as is vſed in the halles of princes. Amongſt the ſundrie ſectes of religion in this citie, there is one ſect of the Moores called Chenefia: and this ſect liueth vpon horſe-fleſh, ſo that their butchers when they can heare of any halting or lame iade, buy him foorthwith, and ſet him vp a fatting, and hauing killed him, the ſaid ſect of Chenefia come and buy vp his fleſh handſmoothe. This ſect is rife alſo among the Turkes, the Mamaluks, and the people of Aſia; and albeit the Turkes might freely vſe the foode beforementioned, yet doe they not inure themſelues thereunto. In Egypt and in the citie of Cairo there are permitted fower ſeuerall ſectes, differing each from other both in canon and ciuill lawes: all which ſects haue their originall from the religion of *Mahumet*. For there were in times paſt fower men of ſingular learning, who by ſubtiltie and ſharpneſſe of wit, founde out a way to make particular deductions out of *Mahumets* generall preceptes. So that each of them would interpret the opinions of *Mahumet* according to their owne fancie, and would euery man apply them to his owne proper ſenſe; and therefore they muſt needes diſagree much betweene themſelues: howbeit growing famous among the common people in regard of their diuers canons & precepts, they were the firſt authors and founders of the ſaide fower ſects: any one of which whatſoeuer Mahumetan profeſſeth, cannot renounce the ſame at his pleaſure and embrace another ſect, vnleſſe he be a man of deepe learning, and knoweth the reaſons and allegations of both parts. Alſo there are in the citie of Cairo fower principall iudges, who giue ſentence onely vpon matters of great importance: vnder which fower are ſubſtituted other inferiour iudges, in euery ſtreete of the citie, which decide petie contentions and brabbles. And if the parties which are at controuerſie chance to bee of diuers ſects, the plaintife may ſummon and conuent the defendant before the iudge of his

The reward of new and ingenious deuiſes.

Fower ſeuerall ſects of the Mahumetan religion permitted in the citie of Cairo.

ſtreete: howbeit the defendant may, if he will, appeale from him vnto the higheſt iudge of all, being placed ouer the fower principall iudges aforeſaid, and being gouernour of the ſect called Eſſafichia; and this high iudge hath authority to diſpenſe withal or to diſanul the decrees of the fower principal, and of all the other inferiour iudges, according as he ſhall ſee cauſe. Whoſoeuer attempteth ought againſt the canons and precepts of his owne religion, is ſeuerely puniſhed by the iudge of the ſame religion. Moreouer, albeit the prieſts of the foreſaid ſects differ very much, both in their formes of Liturgie or praier, and alſo in many other reſpects, yet do they not for that diuerſitie of ceremonies hate one another, neither yet do the common people of ſundrie ſects fal to mutinie & debate: but men indeed of ſingular learning & much reading confer oftentimes togither, & as in priuate each man affirmeth his owne ſect to be the beſt, ſo likewiſe do they confirm their opinions by ſubtile arguments, neither may any man vnder paine of greeuous puniſhment reproch any of the ſaide fower ancient doctors. And in verie deed they all of them follow one and the ſame religion, to wit, that which is preſcribed in the canons of *Haſhari* the principall doctor of the Mahumetans, which canons go for currant ouer all Africa, and moſt part of Aſia, except in the dominions of the great Sophi of Perſia; who bicauſe he reiecteth the ſaide canons, is accounted by other Mahumetans an heretike, and a ſchiſmatike. But how ſuch varietie of opinions proceeded from the fowre doctors aforeſaid, it were tedious and troubleſome to rehearſe: he that is deſirous to knowe more of this matter, let him read my Commentaries which I haue written concerning the lawe and religion of Mahumet, according to the doctrine of *Malich*, who was a man of profound learning, and was borne at Medina Talnabi, where the body of *Mahumet* lieth buried: which doctrine of *Malich* is embraced throughout all Syria, Egypt, and Arabia: wherewith if any man be delighted, let him peruſe my foreſaide Commentaries, and they will ſatisfie him to the full. Vpon malefactors they inflict moſt greeuous and horrible puniſhment, eſpecially vpon ſuch as haue committed any heinous crime in the court. Theeues they condemne to the halter. A murther committed trecherouſly they puniſh in manner following: the executioners aſſiſtants take the malefactor one by the head, and another by the feete, and then comes the chiefe executioner with a two-hand ſword, and cutteth his body in twaine, the one part whereof adioining to the head is put into a fire full of vnſlaked lime: and it is a moſt ſtrange and dreadfull thing to conſider, howe the ſame diſmembred and halfe body will remaine aliue in the fire for the ſpace of a quarter of an hower, ſpeaking and making anſwer vnto the ſtanders by. But rebels or ſeditious perſons they flea aliue, ſtuffing their skins with bran till they reſemble mans ſhape, which being done, they carrie the ſaide ſtuffed skins vpon camels backs through euery ſtreete of the citie, and there publiſh the crime of the partie executed: then which puniſhment I neuer ſawe a more dreadfull, by reaſon that the condemned partie liueth ſo long in torment: but if

An horrible kind of execution.

the

the tormenter once toucheth his nauel with the knife, he presently yeeldeth vp the ghost: which he may not do vntill he be commanded by the magistrate standing by. If any be imprisoned for debt, not hauing wherewithall to satisfie the same, the gouernour of the prison paieth their creditors, and sendeth them, poore wretches, bound in chaines, & accompanied with certaine keepers, daily to begge almes from streete to streete, all which almes redoundeth to the gouernour, and he alloweth the saide prisoners very bare maintenance to liue vpon. Moreouer there go crying vp and downe this citie certaine aged women, who (though that which they say in the streetes cannot be vnderstood) are notwithstanding inioined by their office to circumcise women according to the prescript of Mahumet: which ceremonie is obserued in Egypt and Syria.

The nauel being cut is present death.

Women circumcised.

Of the manner of creating the Soldan, and of the orders, degrees, and offices in his court.

THe dignitie and power of the Soldan was in times past exceeding great; but *Selim* the great Turke in the yeere of Christ (if I be not deceiued) 1517. vtterly abolished the saide dignitie, and changed all the customes and lawes of the Soldan. And bicause it hath beene my hap thrise to trauell into Egypt since the saide woonderfull alteration befell, I suppose it will not be much beside my purpose, if I set downe in this place such particulars as I know to be most certaine true concerning the court of the Soldan. Vnto this high dignitie was woont to be chosen some one of the most noble Mamaluks. These Mamaluks being all Christians at the first, and stolne in their childhoode by the Tartars out of the prouince of Circassia which bordereth vpon the Euxin sea, and being solde at Caffa a towne of Taurica Chersonesus, were brought from thence by certaine merchants vnto the citie of Cairo, and were there bought by the Soldan; who constraining them foorthwith to abiure and renounce their baptisme, caused them to be instructed in the Arabian and Turkish languages, and to be trained vp in militarie discipline, to the end they might ascend from one degree of honour to another, till at last they were aduanced vnto the high dignitie of the Soldan. But this custome whereby it was enacted, that the Soldan shoulde be chosen out of the number of such as were Mamaluks and slaues by their condition, began about 250. yeeres sithens, whenas the family of the valiant *Saladin* (whose name was so terrible vnto Christians) being supported but by a fewe of the kinred, fell to vtter decay and ruine. At the same time when the last king of Ierusalem was determined to sacke the citie of Cairo, which also in regard of the sloth and cowardize of the Mahumetan *Calisa* then raigning ouer it, intended to make it selfe tributary vnto the same king, the iudges and lawyers of the citie with the consent of the *Calisa*, sent for a certaine prince of Asia called *Azedudin*, of the nation of Curdu, (the people whereof liue in tents like the Arabians) which *Azedudin*

John Leo was thrise in Egypt

The Mamaluks.

togither with his ſonne *Saladin*, came with an armie of fiftie thouſand horſemen. And albeit *Saladin* was inferiour in age vnto his father, yet in regard of his redoubted valour, and ſingular knowledge in militarie affaires, they created him generall of the field, and gaue him free libertie to beſtow all the tributes and reuenues of Egypt, as himſelfe ſhoulde thinke expedient. And ſo marching at length againſt the Chriſtians, he got the victorie of them without any bloudſhed, and draue them out of Ieruſalem and out of all Syria. Then *Saladin* returning backe with triumph vnto Cairo, had an intent to vſurpe the gouernment thereof: whereupon hauing ſlaine the Califa his guard (who bare principall ſwaie ouer the Egyptians) he procured the death alſo of the Califa himſelfe, being thus bereft of his guard, with a poiſoned cup, and then foorthwith ſubmitted himſelfe vnto the patronage of the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true & lawful Mahumetan prelate of Cairo. Thus the iuriſdiction of the Califas of Cairo (who had continued lords of that citie by perpetuall ſucceſſion for the ſpace of two hundred and thirty yeeres) ſurceaſed, and returned againe vnto the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true & lawfull gouernour thereof. And ſo the ſchiſmaticall Califas and patriarks being ſuppreſſed, there grew a contention between *Saladin* and the Soldan of Bagdet, & *Saladin* made himſelfe a ſoueraigne of Cairo, bicauſe the ſaide Soldan of Bagdet being in times paſt prince of the prouinces of Mazandran and Euarizin ſituate vpon the riuer of Ganges, and being borne in a certaine countrey of Aſia, laide claime notwithſtanding vnto the dominion of Cairo, and intending to wage warre againſt *Saladine*, he was reſtrained by the Tartars of Coraſan, who made inuaſions and inrodes vpon him. *Saladin* on the other ſide fearing leaſt the Chriſtians in reuenge of the foreſaid iniury would make an expedition into Syria, and conſidering that his forces were partly ſlaine in the former warres, and partly conſumed by peſtilence, except a few which remained for the defence and ſauegard of his kingdome, began to employ himſelfe abour buying of ſlaues that came from Circaſſia, whom the king of Armenia by thoſe daies tooke and ſent vnto Cairo to be ſold: which ſlaues he cauſed to abiure the Chriſtian faith and to be trained vp in feats of warre and in the Turkiſh language, as being the proper language of *Saladin* himſelfe: and ſo the ſaide ſlaues within a while increaſed ſo exceedingly both in valour and number, that they became not onely valiant ſouldiers and skilfull commaunders, but alſo gouernours of the whole kingdome. After the deceaſe of *Saladin*, the dominion remained vnto his family 150. yeeres, and all his ſucceſſours obſerued the cuſtome of buying ſlaues of Circaſſia: but the family of *Saladin* growing at length to decay, the ſlaues by a generall conſent elected one *Piperis* a valiant Mamaluk of their owne companie to be their ſoueraigne Lord and Soldan: which cuſtome they afterward ſo inuiolably kept, that not the *Soldans* owne ſonne nor any other Mamaluk could attaine vnto that high dignitie, vnleſſe firſt he had beene a Chriſtian, and had abiured his faith, and had learned alſo exactly to ſpeake the Circaſſian and Turkiſh languages. Inſomuch

The originall of the Mamaluks.

that

that many Soldans sent their sonnes in their childhood into Circassia, that by learning the language and fashions of the countrey they might prooue in processe of time fit to beare soueraigne authoritie; but by the dissension of the Mamalukes they were alwaies defeated of their purpose. And thus much briefly concerning the gouernment of the Mamalukes, and of their Princes, called euen till this present by a word of their owne mother-toong by the names of Soldans: let vs now speake of the honourable degrees and dignities inferiour to the Soldanship.

Of the principall Peere next vnder the Soldan called Eddaguadare.

THis man being in dignitie second vnto the *Soldan*, and beeing, as it were, his viceroy or lieutenant, had authoritie to place or displace any magistrates or officers; and maintained a family almost as great as the family of the *Soldan* himselfe.

Of the Soldans officer called Amir Cabir.

THis man hauing the third place of honour was Lord generall ouer the Soldans militarie forces; who was by office bound to leauie armies against the forraine enemie, especially against the next Arabians, and to furnish the castles & cities with conuenient garisons: and also had authoritie to dispend the Soldans treasure vpon such necessarie affaires as hee thought good.

Of Nai Bessan.

THE fourth in dignitie after the Soldan called Nai Bessan, beeing the Soldan his lieutenant in Syria, and gathering vp all the tributes of Assiria, bestowed them at his owne discretion, & yet the *Soldan* himselfe was to place garrisons in the castles and forts of those prouinces. This *Nai Bessan* was bound yeerly to pay certaine thousands of Saraffi vnto the *Soldan*.

Of the Ostadar.

THE fift magistrate called the *Ostadar*, was the great master or steward of the palace; whose duetie was to prouide apparell for the *Soldan*, with victuals and other necessaries for his whole family. And vnto this dignitie the *Soldan* vsed to aduance some one of his most ancient, honourable, and vertuous nobles, vnder whose tuition himselfe had in times past beene trained vp.

Of

Of the Amiri Achor.

THE sixt called the *Amiri Achor*, was master of the horse and camels; and distributed them vnto each man in court, according to his degree.

Of the Amiralf.

THE seuenth office was performed by certaine principall Mamalukes, being like vnto the Colonels of Europe: euerie of whom was captaine of a thousand inferiour Mamaluks; and their office was to conduct the Soldans forces against the enemie, & to take charge of his armour.

Of the Amirmia.

THE eight degree of honour was allotted vnto certaine centurions ouer the Mamalukes; who were continually to attend vpon the *Soldan*, either when he road any whither, or when he exercised himselfe in armes.

Of the Chazendare.

THE ninth person was the treasurer, who made an account vnto the *Soldan* of all the tributes and customes of his kingdome, disbursing money for the daily and necessarie expenses of the Soldans household, and laying vp the rest in the Soldans castle.

Of the Amirsileh.

THE tenth called the *Amirsileh* had the armour of the *Soldan* committed to his charge, which being contained in a great armorie was to be scoured, furbushed, and renued at his direction, for which purpose he had sundrie Mamaluks placed vnder him.

Of the Testecana.

THe eleuenth called the *Testecana* was master of the *Soldans* wardrobe, and tooke charge of all such robes and apparell as were deliuered vnto him by the *Ostadar* or high steward of the houshold; which robes he distributed according to the appointment of the *Soldan*; for whomsoeuer the *Soldan* promoted vnto any dignitie, him he apparelled also. All the said garments were of cloth of gold, of veluet, or of silke: and whither soeuer the Testecana went, he was attended vpon by a great number of Mamalukes. Certaine other officers there were also: as namely the Serbedare, whose duetie was to prouide delicate drinke for the *Soldan*, and to haue alwaies in a readines

readines most excellent compound waters tempered both with sugar and with spices. Moreouer there were other officers called *Farrasin, that is, diuers chamberlaines, who furnished the place of the Soldan with rich hangings and carpets, and made prouision also of torches and tapers of waxe mixed with amber, which serued both to shew light, and to yeeld most fragrant and odoriferous smels. Others there were also called Sebabathia, to wit, the footemen of the Soldan: and certaine others called Taburchania, which were the Soldans Halbardiers, who attended vpon his person when he road foorth, or sate in publique audience. Adauia were those that tooke charge of the Soldans carriages whithersoeuer he trauelled: out of which number there was a master-hangman or executioner chosen; and so often as any malefactors were to be punished, all his companions stood by him to learne his bloodie occupation, namely of flaying and skinning men aliue, and of putting them to the torture, to make them confesse their crimes. And Esuha were the Soldans foote-postes that carried letters from Cairo into Syria, and trauelled on foote threescore miles a day, because that betweene Egypt and Syria there is neither mountainous nor mirie way, but a continuall sandie plaine: howbeit such as carried letters of serious & weightie matters road vpon camels.

** There is such an officer in the court of England called, The Maister of the Reuells.*

Of the Soldans militarie forces.

OF soldiers or martiall men the Soldan had fower degrees. The first called Caschia were certaine horsemen, & were most valiant and expert warriours: out of which number the Soldan chose gouernours ouer his cities and castles. Some of these were allowed their stipend in readie money out of the Soldans treasurie, and others out of the tributes of townes and castles. The second called Eseisia were a companie of footmen, bearing no armes but swords only, who likewise had their pay allowed them out of the Soldans treasurie. The third called Charanisa being voluntaries or such as serued gratis, had no other pay but onely their victuals allowed them: but when any Mamaluke deceased that was well prouided for, some one of them supplied his roume. The fourth and last of al called Galeb, were the yoong and new-come Mamaluks, being as yet ignorant of the Turkish and Egyptian languages, and such as had shewed no experiment of their valour.

Of certaine other great officers and magistrates in the Soldans common-wealth.

Of the magistrate called the Nadheasse.

HE was as it were the Soldans chiefe receiuer; for all the tributes and customes of the whole kingdome came through his hands, and were paid from him vnto the treasurer. Also he was customer of Cairo, by which

which office he gained infinite ſummes of mony: neither could any man attaine vnto this office, vnleſſe he firſt paid vnto the Soldan an hundred thouſand Saraffi, which he recouered againe within ſixe moneths following.

Of the Chetebeeſſere.

THis man being the Soldans ſecretarie, and writing letters, and making anſwere on the Soldans behalfe, did (beſides his ſecretariſhip) take notice and account of all the land-tributes in Egypt, and receiued the particular ſummes from the collectors thereof.

Of the Muachih.

THis was a ſecretarie alſo, but inferiour to the former, and yet more truſtie vnto the Soldan. His office was to reuiew the letters and briefes penned by the former, and to examine whether they were agreeable vnto the Soldans minde, and alſo in the name of the Soldan to ſubſcribe vnto them. But the other hath ſo many cunning and expert ſcribes about him, that the Muachih ſeldome cancelleth any of his writings.

Of the Muteſib.

THis mans office was to ſet a price vpon corne and all other victuals; which price partly according to the increaſe of Nilus, and partly alſo according to the reſort of ſhips and other veſſels out of the prouinces of Errif and Sahid he either diminiſhed or inhaunſed, and vpon the offenders impoſed ſuch penalties as the Soldan thought good to appoint. Being at Cairo, I vnderſtood that the ſaid Muteſib got daily by his office about a thouſand Saraffi; hauing his miniſters and ſubſtitutes not onely in Cairo, but in all other cities and places of Egypt.

Of the Amir el Cheggi.

THe office of the Amir el Cheggi being of no leſſe charge, then dignitie, was impoſed by the Soldan vpon one of his moſt ſufficient and wealthie Mamaluks: vnto whom was committed the conduct of the carouan, which went euery yeere from Cairo to Mecca. Which dutie he could not performe without great expences of his owne purſe, for being garded with a companie of Mamalukes, he muſt trauell with maieſticall pompe and coſtly diet, expecting no recompence for his exceeding charges either at the hands of the Soldan, or of the paſſengers which he conducted. Other offices and dignities there are, which I thinke needleſſe to rehearſe.

Of

Of the citie of Geza.

THe citie of Geza being ſituate vpon the banke of Nilus, ouer againſt the old citie before mentioned, and being ſeparated therefrom by the foreſaide Iſland of Nilus, is a very populus and ciuile place, and is adorned with many ſumptuous palaces built by the Mamaluks, whither they vſe to retire themſelues out of the throng and multitude of Cairo. Here are likewiſe great ſtore of artificers and merchants, eſpecially ſuch as buie cattell brought from the mountaines of Barca, the drouers of which cattell being Arabians, do ſell their ware in this citie vnto the merchants and butchers of Cairo, to the end they may auoide the trouble of paſſing ouer the riuer. The temple and other principall buildings of this citie ſtand vpon the ſhore of Nilus. On all ſides of the citie there are gardens and grounds of dates. Such as come hither in the morning from Cairo to buy and ſell, vſe not to returne home againe till the euening. This way they trauell ouer a ſandie deſert vnto the Pyramides, and ſepulchers of the ancient Egyptian kings, in which place they affirme the ſtately citie of Memphis to haue ſtoode in times paſt. And albeit the way thither be very troubleſome in regard of the manifold lakes and pits made by the inundation of Nilus, yet by the direction of a truſtie and expert guide it may eaſily be trauailed.

The pyramides.
The citie of Memphis.

Of the towne of Muhallaca.

THis little towne built vpon the banke of Nilus, by the ancient Egyptians, and ſtanding three miles from the olde citie, hath a moſt beautifull temple ſituate vpon the ſhore of Nilus, and diuers other ſtately buildings therein. It aboundeth with dates and with certaine fruites called Egyptian figs; and the inhabitants vſe the very ſame rites and cuſtoms that are obſerued by the citizens of Cairo.

Egyptian figs.

Of the citie of Chanca.

THe great citie of Chanca ſituate about ſixe miles from Cairo, at the verie entrance of the deſert lying in the way to mount Sinai, is repleniſhed with moſt ſtately houſes, temples, and colleges. All the fields betweene Cairo and this citie abound with great plentie of dates: but from Chanca to mount Sinai, which is an hundred and fortie miles, there are no places of habitation at all. The inhabitants are but of meane wealth: for when any carouan is to paſſe into Syria, hither reſort a company of people from Cairo, to prouide things neceſſarie for their iourney, becauſe the villages adioining yeeld nought but dates. Through this citie lie two maine roade-waies, the one leading to Syria, and the other to Arabia. This citie hath no other water but ſuch as remaineth in certaine chanels after the inundation

inundation of Nilus; which chanels being broken, the water runneth foorth into the plaines, and there maketh a number of ſmall lakes, from whence it is conueighed backe by certaine ſluces into the ceſterns of the citie.

Of the citie of Muhaiſira.

Store of the graine called Seſama.

THis little citie built vpon the riuer of Nilus, 30. miles eaſtward of Cairo, aboundeth greatly with the graine or ſeed called Seſama, and containeth ſundrie milles to grinde oile out of the ſame ſeede. The inhabitants are moſt of them husbandmen, except a fewe that exerciſe trade of merchandiſe.

Of the towne of Beniſuaif.

Moſt excellent hempe.

THis towne being ſituate on the weſt ſide of Nilus, is diſtant from Cairo 120. miles. The plaines adiacent abound exceedingly with flaxe and hempe, which is ſo excellent, that it is carried from thence as farre as Tunis in Barbarie. And this towne furniſheth all Egypt with flaxe, whereof they make very fine and ſtrong cloth. The fields of the ſame are continually worne & diminiſhed, and eſpecially at this preſent, by the inundation of Nilus, for now their date-groundes are halfe conſumed. The inhabitants for the moſt part are emploied about their flaxe. And beyond this towne there are found Crocodiles that will eate mans fleſh, as we will declare in our hiſtorie of liuing creatures.

Crocodiles.

Of the citie of Munia.

VPon the ſame ſide of Nilus ſtandeth the faire citie of Munia, which was built in the time of the Mahumetans by one *Chaſib* a lieutenant and courtier of the Califa of Bagdet, vpon an high place. Here are moſt excellent grapes, and abundance of all kinde of fruite, which albeit they are carried to Cairo, yet can they not come thither freſh and newe, by reaſon that this citie is diſtant from Cairo an hundred and fower-ſcore miles. It is adorned with moſt ſtately temples and other buildings: and here are to be ſeene at this preſent ſundry ruines of the ancient Egyptian buildings. The inhabitants are rich, for they trauaile for their gaine as farre as Gaoga, a kingdome of the land of Negros.

Of the citie of El Fium.

The place where Ioſeph was buried.

THis ancient citie was founded by one of the *Pharaos* vpon a little branch of Nilus, and on a high ground, at the ſame time when the Iſraelites departed out of Egypt, whom the ſaid *Pharao* greatly oppreſſed with making of bricke, and with other ſeruile occupations. In this citie they ſay that *Ioſeph* the ſonne of *Iacob* was buried, and that his bones were

digged

digged vp by *Moſes* and the Iſraelites when they departed. Fruits heere grow great plentie, and eſpecially oliues, which are good to eate, but vnprofitable to make oile of. It is a well gouerned and populous citie, and containeth many artificers eſpecially weauers.

Of the citie of Manſ Loth.

THis great and ancient citie was built by the Egyptians, deſtroied by the Romains, and reedified by the Mahumetans, but not in ſo ſtately manner as it was firſt built. At this preſent there are found certaine huge and high pillers and porches, whereon are verſes engrauen in the Egyptian toong. Neere vnto Nilus ſtand the ruines of a ſtately building, which ſeemeth to haue beene a temple in times paſt, among which ruines the citizens finde ſometimes coine of ſiluer, ſometimes of gold, and ſometimes of lead, hauing on the one ſide hielygraphick notes, and on the other ſide the pictures of ancient kings. The fields adiacent being very fruitefull, are extremely ſcorched by the heate of the ſunne, and much haunted with Crocodiles, which was the occaſion (as ſome thinke) why the Romaines abandoned this citie. The inhabitants are men of indifferent wealth, for they exerciſe traffike in the land of Negros.

Of the citie of Azioth.

THis ancient city founded by the Egyptians vpon the banke of Nilus two hundred and fiftie miles from Cairo, is moſt admirable in regard of the hugenes, and of the varietie of old buildings and of epitaphes engrauen in Egyptian letters; although at this preſent the greateſt part therof lyeth deſolate. When the Mahumetans were firſt Lords of this city it was inhabited by honorable perſonages, and continueth as yet famous in regard of the nobilitie and great wealth of the citizens. There are in this citie almoſt an hundred families of chriſtians, & three or fower churches ſtill remaining: and without the citie ſtandeth a monaſterie containing mo then an hundred monks, who eate neither fleſh nor fiſh, but onely herbes, bread, and oliues. And yet haue they daintie cates without any fatte among them. This monaſterie is very rich, and giueth three daies entertainment to all ſtrangers that reſort thither, for the welcomming of whom they bring vp great ſtore of doues, of chickens, and of ſuch like commodities.

Of the citie of Ichmin.

IChmin being the moſt ancient citie in all Egypt, was built by *Ichmin* the ſon of * *Miſraim*, the ſonne of *Chus*, which was the ſon of * *Hen*, vpon the banke of Nilus next vnto Aſia, and three hundred miles eaſtwarde from Cairo. This citie the Mahumetans, when they firſt began to vſurpe

* *It is otherwiſe read in the x. chap. of Geneſis, verſe 6.*
* *Dubium.*

ouer Egypt, ſo waſted and deſtroied, for certaine cauſes mentioned in hiſtories, that beſides the foundations and rubbiſh they left nought remaining: for, tranſporting the pillers and principall ſtones vnto the other ſide of Nilus, they built thereof the citie called Munſia, euen as we will now declare.

Of the citie of Munſia.

MVnſia therefore, founded on the otherſide of Nilus by the lieutenant of a certaine Califa, hath no ſhew of comelines or beautie, by reaſon that all the ſtreetes are ſo narrow. And in ſommer-time there riſeth ſo much duſt from the ground, that a man can hardly walke the ſtreetes. It aboundeth notwithſtanding with corne and cattell. It was once ſubiect vnto a certaine African prince of Barbarie, whoſe name was *Haoara*, and whoſe predeceſſors were princes and gouernors of Haoara. Which citie (they ſay) was giuen him in regarde of a ſingular benefite which hee did vnto the foreſaide Dalmatian ſlaue that founded Cairo: howbeit I cannot be perſwaded that the gouernment remained ſo long a time vnto that familie. But in our time *Soliman* the ninth Turkiſh emperour depriued them of the ſame gouernment.

Of the monaſterie called Georgia.

THis was in times paſt a famous monaſterie of Chriſtians, called after the name of Saint George, and being ſixe miles diſtant from Munſia. It was inhabited by more then two hundred monkes, who enioying large territories, poſſeſſions and reuenues, ſhewed themſelues curteous and beneficiall vnto ſtrangers; and the ouerplus of their yeerely reuenues was ſent vnto the patriarke of Cairo, who cauſed the ſame to be diſtributed amongſt poore Chriſtians: but about an hundred yeeres ago, all the monks of this monaſterie died of a peſtilence, which ſpred it ſelfe ouer all the land of Egypt. Whereupon the prince of Munſia compaſſed the ſaide monaſterie with a wall, and erected diuers houſes for artificers and merchants to dwell in. And being allured by the pleaſant gardens ſituate amidſt the beautifull hils, he himſelfe went thither to inhabite: but the patriarke of the Iacobites making his mone vnto the Soldan, the Soldan cauſed another monaſterie to be built in the ſame place, where in times paſt the old citie ſtoode; & aſſigned ſo much allowance thereunto, as might maintaine thirty monks.

Of the citie of Chian.

THis little citie of Chian was built in times paſt neere vnto Nilus by the Mahumetans, which notwithſtanding is not nowe inhabited by them but by the chriſtiãs called Iacobites, who employ themſelues either in huſbandrie, or in bringing vp of chickens, geeſe, and doues. There remaine as

yet

yet certaine monasteries of Christians, that giue entertainment to strangers. But Mahumetans (besides the gouernour and his family) there are none at all.

Of the citie of Barbanda.

BArbanda founded by the Egyptians vpon Nilus, about fowerhundred miles from Cairo, was laide so waste by the Romaines, that nothing but the ruines thereof remained, most of which ruines were carried vnto Asna, whereof we will foorthwith intreate. Amongst the saide ruines are to be found many peeces of golde and siluer coine, and sundrie fragments of Smaragds or emralds. *Emralds.*

Of the citie of Cana.

THe ancient citie of Cana built by the Egyptians vpon the banke of Nilus ouer against Barbanda, and enuironed with wals of sunne-dried bricke, is inhabited with people of base condition, applying themselues vnto husbandrie, by which meanes the citie aboundeth with corne. Hither are the merchandise brought against the streame of Nilus, which are sent from Cairo to Mecca: for the distance from hence ouer the wildernes vnto the Red sea, is at least 120. miles, all which way there is no water at all to be founde. And at the hauen of Choffir vpon the shore of the red sea are diuers cottages whereinto the saide merchandises are vnladen. And ouer against Choffir on the side of Asia lieth Iambuh another hauen of the red sea, whereat trauailers going on pilgrimage to see the tombe of Mahumet at Medina, must make their rendezuous or generall meeting. Moreouer Chana furnisheth Medina and Mecca with corne, in which places they suffer great and continuall scarcitie. *Antonio Gallano maketh large mention of this citie.* *The hauen of Choſsir.*

Of the citie of Asna.

ASna in times past was called Siene: which name was afterward changed by the Arabians, in whose language the worde Siene signifieth a filthie or vncleane thing. Wherefore they called it Asna, that is to say, faire and beautifull, bicause it standeth in a pleasant situation vpon the westerne banke of Nilus: which citie though it was brought almost to desolation by the Romaines, yet was it so repaired againe in the Mahumetans time, that the inhabitants grewe exceeding rich, both in corne, cattell, and money: for they transport their commodities partly vp the streame of Nilus, and partly ouer the deserts, into the kingdome of Nubia. Round about this citie there are to be seene diuers huge buildings, and admirable sepulchres, togither with sundrie epitaphes engrauen both in Egyptian and Latine Letters.

Of the citie of Assuan.

THe great, ancient, and populous city of Assuan was built by the Egyptians vpon the riuer of Nilus, about fower-score miles eastward from Asna. The soile adiacent is most apt and fruitefull for corne. And the citizens are exceedingly addicted vnto the trade of merchandise, bicause they dwell so neere vnto the kingdome of Nubia, vpon the confines whereof standeth their citie: beyond which citie Nilus dispersing himselfe ouer the plaines through many small lakes becommeth innauigable. Also the saide citie standeth neere vnto that desert ouer which they trauell vnto the port of Suachen vpon the red sea, and it adioineth likewise vpon the frontiers of Ethiopia. And heere in sommer time the inhabitants are extremely scorched with the heate of the sunne, being of a swart or browne colour, and being mingled with the people of Nubia and Ethiopia. Heere are to be seene also many buildings of the ancient Egyptians, and most high towers, which they call in the language of that countrey Barba. Beyond this place there is neither citie nor habitation of any account, besides a fewe villages of blacke people, whose speech is compounded of the Arabian, Egyptian, and Ethiopian languages. These being subiect vnto the people called *Bugiha, liue in the fields after the Arabian manner, being free from the Soldans iurisdiction, for there his dominions are limited.

Suachen.

** Bugiha are those which in olde time were called Troglodytæ.*

And thus much concerning the principall cities standing along the maine chanel of Nilus: Some wherof I saw, others I entred into, and passed by the residue: but I had most certaine intelligence of them all, either by the inhabitants themselues, or by the mariners which carried me by water from Cairo to Assuan, with whom returning back vnto Chana, I trauelled thence ouer the desert vnto the red sea, ouer which sea I crossed vnto Iambuth, and Ziddem two hauen-townes of Arabia deserta, of which two townes, because they belong vnto Asia, I will not here discourse, least I should seem to transgresse the limits of Africa. But if it shall please god to vouchsafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the regions of Asia which I haue trauelled; to wit Arabia deserta, Arabia felix, Arabia Petræa, the Asian part of Egypt, Armenia, and some part of Tartaria; all which countries I saw and passed through in the time of my youth. Likewise I will set downe my last voiages from Fez to Constantinople, from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence into Italie, in which Iourney I saw diuers and sundry Ilands. All which my trauels I meane (by gods assistance) being returned forth of Europe into mine owne countrie, particularly to describe; decyphering first the regions of Europe and Asia which I haue seen, and thereunto annexing this my discourse of Africa; to the end that I may promote the endeuours of such as are desirous to know the state of forren countries.

The great trauels of Iohn Leo.

IOHN LEO HIS NINTH BOOKE OF the Historie of Africa, and *of the memorable things* therein contained.

Wherein he entreateth of the principall riuers, and of the strange liuing creatures, plants, and minerals of the same countrey.

Of the riuer of Tensist.

THe riuer of *Tensist (that we may begin in Barbarie from the westerne part of Africa) springing foorth of the mountaines of Atlas which are next vnto the citie of Hanimmei, to witte, about the east part of the territorie of Maroco, and continuing his course northwarde ouer the plaines, receiueth many other riuers thereinto, and at Azasi a towne of Duccala dischargeth his streames into the maine Ocean. Into this mightie riuer of Tensist fall two other great riuers, called Siffelmel and Niffis; the one whereof springeth out of Hanteta a mountaine of Maroco; and the other issuing foorth of mount Atlas neere vnto Maroco, and winding it selfe along the plaines of that region, disemboqueth at last into the saide mightie riuer. And albeit the riuer Tensist be for the most part of an exceeding depth, yet may it in diuers places be waded ouer, where the water reacheth vnto the stirrups of an horseman: but a footeman must strippe himselfe naked to passe ouer the same. Neere vnto Maroco there is a bridge of fifteene arches builte by king *Mansor* vpon this riuer: which bridge is accounted one of the most curious buildings in all Africa. Three of the saide arches were demolished by *Abu Dubus* the last king and patriarke of Maroco, to the ende he might hinder the passage of *Iacob* the first Fezsan king of the Marin familie: but this attempt of his was to none effect, as it sufficiently appeered by the successe thereof.

* Or Tenssi.

Of the two riuers called Teſeuhin.

THe two riuers called by this one name, ſpringing each of them, three miles aſunder, out of mount Gugideme, and running through the plaines of Haſcora, exonerate themſelues into the riuer called Lebich. Theſe two riuers (as I haue ſaid) haue one onely name, being either of them (according to the African language) called Teſeut in the ſingular number, and in the plural Teſeuhin, which ſignifieth liſtes or borders.

Of Quadelhabid, that is to ſay, the riuer of ſeruants.

QVadelhabid taking his original among the high and chill mountaines of Atlas, and runniug through certaine narrow and vneeuen valleis, holdeth on his courſe by the confines of Haſcora and Tedle, and then ſtretching northward ouer a certaine plaine, falleth at length into the riuer of Ommirabih. In Maie when the ſnow melteth, this riuer increaſeth to ſome bignes.

Of the riuer of Ommirabih.

THe mightie riuer of Ommirabih iſſuing alſo forth of the lofty mountaines of Atlas where the prouince of Tedle bordereth vpon the kingdome of Fez, paſſeth through certain plaines called Adachſun, and being afterward ſtreitned among the narrow valleis, it runneth vnder a ſtately bridge built by Ibulhaſen the fourth king of the Marin family: from thence trending ſouthward it watereth the plaines ſituate between the regions of Duccala and Temeſne, and laſtly disburdeneth it ſelfe vnder the wals of Azamor into the maine Ocean. About the end of Maye they take great ſtore of fiſhes in this riuer called by the Italians Laſche, wherwith all Azamur being ſufficiently ſtored, they ſalt the ſaid fiſhes and ſend many ſhips ful of them into Portugall.

Of the riuer of Buregrag.

BVregrag ariſing out of one of the mountaines of Atlas, and continuing his courſe by ſundrie vallies, woods, and hils, proceedeth on ouer a certaine plaine, and neere vnto the townes of Sala and Rabat, being the vtmoſt frontiers of the Fezſan kingdome, it falleth into the Ocean ſea. Neither haue the two foreſaid townes any other port or harbour, but within the mouth of the ſaid riuer onely, which is ſo difficult to enter, that vnleſſe the pilote be throughly acquainted with the place, he is in great hazard of running his ſhip vpon the ſhoulds: which ſhoulds ſerue inſtead of bulwarkes to defend either towne from the fleets of the Chriſtians.

Of

Of the riuer of Baht.

THis riuer issuing foorth of mount Atlas, stretcheth northward by the woods and mountaines, and running among certaine litle hils, disperseth it selfe vpon the plaines of the prouince of Azgar, and from thence it falleth into certaine fens, lakes, and moist valleies, where they take great store of eeles, and of the foresaid fishes called Lasche. The inhabitants liue vpon cattell, and fishing, and by reason of the plentie of milke, fish, and butter which they eate, they are much subiect vnto the disease called in Italian Morphia. This riuer may continually be waded ouer, except it be much increased by abundance of raine and melted snowe.

Of the riuer of Subu.

THe riuer of Subu beginneth vpon mount Selilgo, standing in Cheuz, a prouince of the Fezsan kingdome. And it springeth out of a great fountaine in the midst of a vaste and solitarie woode, and runneth by diuers mountaines and hils: from whence extending vpon the plaines, it approcheth within sixe miles of Fez, diuideth in sunder the regions of Habat and Azgar, and at length about Mahmora, a place not farre from Sala, exonerateth it selfe into the Ocean sea. Into this riuer fall diuers others, two of which, namely Guarga and Aodor, spring out of the mountaines of Gumera, and the residue from the mountaines of the territorie of Teza. And although Subu be a large riuer, yet may it in sundry places be waded ouer, except in winter and the spring, when as it cannot be crossed but in certaine dangerous and small boates. The same riuer also which runneth through the citie of Fez called in the language of that countrey, The riuer of perles, entreth into the foresaid riuer of Subu. This riuer of Subu aboundeth exceedingly with fish, and especially with the foresaid fishes called Lasche, which are there of no reckoning. The mouth thereof neere vnto the Ocean sea, being very deepe and broad, is nauigable for ships of great burthen, as the Portugals and Spaniards haue found by often experience: and were not the inhabitants so slothfull, it might vsually and commodiously be sailed vpon: yea, if the corne which is carried by the merchants of Fez ouer land through the region of Azgar, were conueighed by water vp this riuer, it might be solde at Fez for halfe the price.

Of the riuer of Luccus.

LVccus issuing forth of the mountaines of Gumera, and stretching westward ouer the plaines of Habat and Azgar, passeth by the city of Casar Elcabir, and neare vnto Harais a city of Azgar vpon the borders of Habat, dischargeth it selfe into the main-Ocean: in the mouth of this riuer lyeth the hauen of the foresaid city, being very difficult to enter.

Of

Of the riuer of Mulullo.

MVlullo ariſing out of mount Atlas betweene the cities of Teza, and Dubdu, runneth through the deſert and barren plaines of Terreſt and Tafrata, and at length exonerateth it ſelfe into the riuer Muluia.

Of the riuer of Muluua.

* Or Muluia. THe famous riuer of *Muluua taking his originall from that part of Atlas which is ſituate in the region of Cheuz, about fiue and twentie miles from the citie of Gherſeluin, and paſſing ouer diſhabited and drie plaines, as alſo amidſt the deſerts of Angad and of Garet, and by the foote of mount Beni Ieznaten, falleth not farre from the towne of Chaſaſa into the Mediterran ſea. This riuer a man may wade ouer alwaies in ſommer, in the mouth whereof are caught moſt excellent fiſhes.

Of the riuer of Za.

THis riuer ſpringing out of mount Atlas runneth through a certaine plaine of the deſert of Angad, whereas the kingdomes of Fez and of Telenſin confine one vpon an other: which though it be exceeding deepe, yet neuer did I ſee the water thereof thicke or muddie. It aboundeth with fiſhes, but the inhabitants being deſtitute of fit inſtruments, can not take them, neither indeed be the waters conuenient to fiſh vpon, bicauſe they are ſo cleere.

Of the riuer of Tefne.

THe ſmall riuer of Tefne iſſuing foorth of the mountaines bordering vpon Numidia, and continuing a northerly courſe ouer the deſert of Angad, falleth into the Mediterran ſea, about fifteene miles from Telenſin, and it affourdeth nought but a fewe ſmall fiſhes.

Of the riuer Mina.

THis riuer flowing out of certaine mountaines neere vnto Tegdent, paſſeth through the fieldes of the citie of Batha, and thence runneth northerly into the Mediterran ſea.

Of the riuer Selef.

THis great riuer falling from the mountaines of Guanſeris, and deſcending through barren plaines to the confines of the kingdomes of Telenſin and Tenez, ſeparateth Mezagran from Muſtuganin, and then entreth into

into the Mediterran sea: in the mouth of which riuer are caught very excellent fishes of diuers kinds.

Of the riuer Sefsaia.

THis small riuer beginning from mount Atlas, passeth ouer the plaine of Mettegia neere vnto Alger, and not farre from the ancient towne of Temendefust dischargeth it selfe into the Mediterran sea.

Of that which is called The great riuer.

THis riuer ariseth out of the mountaines adioining vpon the region of Zeb, from whence running along, it disemboqueth into the Mediterran sea about three miles from Bugia. It ouerfloweth not but in rainie and snowie weather: neither vse the people of Bugia to fish therein, hauing the sea so neere them.

Of the riuer called Sufgmare.

IT springeth out of the mountaines bordering vpon mount Auras, and passeth on through the barren fields vnto the territorie of the citie Constantina, and gliding along by the borders thereof, it receiueth a small riuer; and so holding a Northerly course it falleth into the Mediterran sea about the same place where it separateth the fields of Chollo from the fieldes of the castle called Iegel.

Of the riuer Iadog.

THis small riuer issuing foorth of the mountaines neere Constantina, and stretching by the same mountaines towards the east, disburdeneth it selfe into the sea not farre from the citie of Bona.

Of the riuer called Guadilbarbar.

IT proceedeth out of certaine mountaines adioining vpon the fieldes of the citie called Vrbs, and gliding by the hils and mountaines, it runneth in such a crooked chanell, that such as trauell from Bona to Tunis, must crosse ouer it without either boates or bridges aboue twentie times. And so at length it falleth into the sea not farre from the forsaken port of Tabraca, and about fifteene miles from the citie of Bege.

Of the riuer of Megerada.

THe mightie riuer of Megerada springing foorth of the mountaines neere vnto the citie Tebessa, vpon the borders of the prouince of Zeb, continueth a northerly course, vntill at a place called Gharel Meleh,

Meleh, fortie miles distant from Tunis it exonerateth it selfe into the Mediterran sea. In rainie weather it so increaseth, that trauellers, bicause there are neither boates nor bridges, are constrained to staie two or three daies by the riuers side till it be decreased, especially within sixe miles of Tunis. And hereby you may see how the Africans of these times degenerate both in wit and courage from the ancient Africans, who made the people of Rome to tremble so often at their valour.

Of the riuer of Capis.

A riuer of hot and salt water.

IT proceedeth a from certaine southerne desert, and passing through sandie plaines, falleth into the sea by a towne of that very name. The water thereof is salt, and so hot, that whosoeuer listeth to drinke of, it must set it a cooling for the space of an hower. Thus much concerning the principall riuers of Barbarie: let vs nowe proceede on to describe the Numidian riuers.

Of the riuers of Numidia; and first of the riuer called Sus.

** Or Guartguessen*

THe great riuer of Sus flowing out of the mountaines of Atlas, that separate the two prouinces of Hea and Sus in sunder, runneth southward among the saide mountaines, stretching into the fields of the foresaid region, and from thence trending westward vnto a place called * Gurtuessen, where it dischargeth it selfe into the maine Ocean. In winter time it mightily ouerfloweth, but in sommer it is verie shallow.

Of the riuer of Darha.

THis riuer taking his originall from mount Atlas about the confines of Hascora, passeth southward to the prouince called Darha: from whence proceeding through the deserts, it is dispersed among certaine fieldes and pastures, where bicause of the abundance of grasse, the Arabians feede their camels. In sommer it is so dried vp, that a man shall not wet his shooes in going ouer it: but it so increaseth in winter, that it cannot be passed ouer in boats. And by extreme heate of the sunne the waters thereof prooue bitter.

Of the riuer of Ziz.

THis riuer springing out of the mountaines of Atlas inhabited by the people called Zanaga, and running along by many other mountaines and by the city of Gherseluin, holdeth on his course through the fields of Cheneg, Metgara, and Reteb, and entreth the territorie of the city Segelmesse: from whence it proceedeth by the desert castle of Sugaihila, and beyond the said castle falleth into a lake amidst the sandie deserts, where

no inhabitants are to be found, whither notwithstanding the Arabian hunters vsually resort, for that they finde great store of game there.

Of the riuer of Ghir.

THe riuer of Ghir issuing also forth of mount Atlas, stretcheth southward by certaine deserts, and then passing through the region of Benigumi, transformeth it selfe likewise into a lake in the very midst of the deserts.

Whereas in the beginning of this my discourse, intreating of the diuision of Africa, I described the riuer called by *Ptolemey* Niger, it would here be superfluous to make any repetition thereof: wherfore let vs now proceede vnto the description of Nilus.

Of the mightie riuer of Nilus.

THE course of this riuer is in very deed most admirable, and the creatures therein contained are exceeding strange, as namely sea-horses, sea-oxen, crocodiles, and other such monstrous and cruel beasts, (as we will afterward declare) which were not so hurtfull either in the ancient times of the Egyptians or of the Romaines, as they are at this present: but they became more dangerous euer since the Mahumetans were lords of Egypt. *Meshudi* in his treatise of the memorable thinges of his time, reporteth that when *Humeth* the sonne of *Thaulon* was lieutenant of Egypt vnder *Gihsare Mutauichil* the Califa of Bagdet, namely in the yeere of the Hegeira 270. there was a certaine leaden image about the bignes of a crocodile found among the ruines of an old Egyptiã temple, which in regard of the Hieroglyphick characters & constellations engrauen theron, serued instead of an inchantmẽt against all crocodiles; but so soone as the saide lieutenant caused it to be broken in peeces, the crocodiles began then to inuade men, and to doe much mischiefe. Howbeit what the reason should be, why the crocodiles betweene Cairo and the Mediterran sea are harmelesse, and those aboue Cairo towards the maine land, should deuoure and kill so many persons, it goeth beyond my skill to determine. But, to returne vnto the description of Nilus, it increaseth (as we haue saide) for the space of fortie daies, beginning from the seuenteenth of Iune; and it continueth iust so long time in decreasing. For whereas in the higher Ethiopia it raineth most abundantly about the beginning of May, the course and inundation of the water is hindred all the moneth of May, & some part of Iune, before it can attaine vnto the plaine countrey of Egypt. Concerning the originall fountaine of this riuer, there are manifold opinions, and all of them vncertaine. Some there are which affirme the same to spring out of the mountaines, called by themselues, The mountaines of the moone; and others say that it beginneth vpon certaine

Sundry opinions concerning Nilus.

plaines

plaines ſituate beneath the foote of the ſaide mountaines, and iſſueth out of ſundrie fountaines, being a great way diſtant one from another. Howbeit the former of theſe two auouch, that Nilus with great violence falleth down from the ſaide mountaines into certaine deepe caues vnder the ground, and commeth foorth againe at the foreſaide fountaines. Both of which opinions are falſe: for neuer did any man as yet ſee where Nilus taketh his originall. The Ethiopian merchants which reſort for traffike vnto the citie of Dancala, affirme that Nilus towards the ſouth is enlarged into ſuch a mightie lake, that no man can perceiue which way the courſe thereof trendeth: and that afterward being diuided into manifold branches running in ſeueral chanels, and ſtretching themſelues eaſt and weſt, it hindereth the paſſage of traueilers, ſo that they cannot compaſſe thoſe intricate windings and turnings. Likewiſe diuers Ethiopians inhabiting vpon the plaines in manner of the Arabians, ſay that many of them traueiling fiue hundred miles ſouthward to ſeeke their camels which were ſtraied away in the heate of their luſt, found Nilus to be in all places alike, that is to ſay, diſperſed into manifolde armes and lakes, and that they diſcouered ſundry deſert and barren mountaines, where the foreſaide *Meſhudi* affirmeth emraulds to be found: which ſeemeth more probable then that which the ſame author affirmeth concerning ſauage men, which wander vp and downe like wilde goates, and feede vpon the graſſe of the deſerts in manner of beaſts. But if I recorded all the fables which our writers report concerning Nilus, I ſhoulde ſeeme ouer tedious vnto the Reader.

Of the ſtrange beaſts and other liuing creatures of Africa.

MY purpoſe is not in this diſcourſe to make a cõplete hiſtory of all the liuing creatures in Africa, but only of ſuch as are either not to be founde in Europe, or ſuch as differ in any reſpect from thoſe that are founde: And heere I intend to deſcribe in order certaine beaſts, fiſhes, and foules, omitting many things reported by *Plinie*, who was doubtleſſe a man of rare and ſingular learning, notwithſtanding by the default and negligence of certaine authors which wrote before him, he erred a little in ſome ſmall matters concerning Africa: howbeit a little blemiſh ought not quite to diſgrace all the beautie of a faire and amiable bodie.

Of the Elephant.

THis wittie beaſt keepeth in the woods, & is found in great numbers in the forreſts of the land of Negros. They vſe to go many in one cõpany; and if they chance to meet with any man, they either ſhun him, or giue place vnto him. But if the Elephant intendeth to hurt any man, he caſteth him on the groũd with his long ſnout or trunk, & neuer ceaſeth trampling

pling vpon him till he be dead. And although it be a mightie and fierce beast, yet are there great store of them caught by the Ethiopian hunters in manner folowing. These hunters being acquainted with the woodes and thickets where they keepe, vse to make among the trees a rounde hedge of strong boughes and rastes, leauing a space open on the one side therof, and likewise a doore standing vpon the plaine grounde which may bee lift vp with ropes, wherewith they can easily stoppe the said open place or passage. The elephant therefore comming to take his rest vnder the shady boughes, entreth the hedge or inclosure, where the hunters by drawing the saide rope and fastening the doore hauing imprisoned him, descend downe from the trees, and kill him with their arrowes, to the end they may get his teeth and make sale of them. But if the elephant chanceth to breake through the hedge, he murthereth as many men as he can finde. In Ethiopia the higher, and India, they haue other deuises to take the elephant, which least I should seeme ouer-tedious, I passe ouer in silence.

The manner of taking elephants in Ethiopia.

Of the beast called Giraffa.

THis beast is so sauage and wilde, that it is a very rare matter to see any of them: for they hide themselues among the deserts and woodes, where no other beasts vse to come; and so soone as one of them espieth a man, it flieth foorthwith, though not very swiftly. It is headed like a camell, eared like an oxe, and footed like a * : neither are any taken by hunters, but while they are very yoong.

* *Here is a word wanting in the originall.*

Of the Camell.

CAmels are gentle and domesticall beasts, and are found in Africa in great numbers, especially in the deserts of Libya, Numidia, and Barbaria. And these the Arabians esteeme to be their principall possessions and riches: so that speaking of the wealth of any of their princes or gouernors, he hath (say they) so many thousand camels, and not so manie thousand ducates. Moreouer the Arabians that possesse camels, liue like lords and potentates in great libertie, bicause they can remaine with their camels in barren deserts, whither no kings nor princes can bring armies to subdue them. These kindes of beasts are to be seene in * all parts of the worlde, to wit, in Asia, Africa, and Europe. And they are vsed in Asia by the Tartars, the Curdians, the Dalemians, and the Turcomans. In Europe the Turkes vse them to carrie burthens vpon, as likewise do all the Arabians in Africa, and the inhabitants of the Lybian deserts; yea kings in their armies vse camels also, to conueigh their victuals and carriages: howbeit the African camels farre excell them of Asia; for trauailing fortie or fiftie daies togither, without any prouender at all, they are vnladen in the euening, and turned loose into the next fieldes, where they feede vpon grasse, brambles, and the boughes of trees; which hardnes the camels of Asia cannot endure

* *In all parts of the world which the author at that time knew.*

The African camels are the best.

dure, but when they set foorth any iourney, they must be well pampered and full of flesh. Experience hath taught, that our camels hauing trauailed laden fiftie daies togither without any prouender; haue so wasted, first the flesh of their bunches, secondly of their bellies, and lastly of their hips, that they haue scarce beene able to carrie the weight of 100. pounds. But the merchants of Asia giue their camels prouender, halfe of them being laden with wares, and the other halfe with prouender, and so their whole carouan of camels goeth foorth and returneth home laden: by which meanes they keepe them in good plight, and reape double gaines by their labour. Contrariwise the African merchants trauailing with merchandise into Ethiopia, bicause they returne emptie, and bring backe with them things of no great weight, so soone as they arriue with their leane and galled camels in Ethiopia, they sell them halfe for nought vnto the inhabitants of the deserts. And they that returne into Barbarie or Numidia, need very fewe camels; namely for themselues to ride vpon, for to carrie their victuals, their money, and other light commodities. Of camels there are three kinds; whereof the first being called Hugiun are grosse, and of a tall stature, and most fit to carrie burthens, but ere fower yeeres end they grow vnprofitable: after which time euery camell but of meane stature will carrie a thousand pounds of Italian weight. When any of the saide camels is to be laden, being beaten vpon his knees and necke with a wande, he kneeleth downe, and when he feeleth his load sufficient, he riseth vp againe. And the Africans vse to gelde their camels which they keepe for the burthen, putting but one male camell among ten femals. The second kinde of camels called Becheti, and hauing a double bunch, are fit both to carrie burthens, and to ride vpon: and these are bred onely in Asia. The thirde kinde called Raguahill, are camels of a slender and low stature, which albeit they are vnfit to carry burthens, yet do they so excell the two other kindes in swiftnes, that in the space of one day they will trauell an hundred miles, and will so continue ouer the deserts for eight or ten daies togither with very little prouender: and these doe the principal Arabians of Numidia and the Moores of Libya vsually ride vpon. When the king of Tombuto is desirous to sende any message of importance vnto the Numidian merchants with great celeritie, his post or messenger riding vpon one of these camels, will runne from Tombuto to Darha or Segelmesse, being nine hundred miles distant, in the space of eight daies at the farthest: but such as trauell must be expert in the way through the deserts, neither will they demaund lesse then fiue hundred ducates for euery iourney. The saide camels about the beginning of the spring inclining to their lust and venerie, do not onely hurt one another, but also will deadly wound such persons as haue done them any iniury in times past, not forgetting light and easie stripes: and whomsoeuer they lay holde on with their teeth, they lift him vp on high, and cast him downe againe, trampling vpon him with their feete, and in this madde moode they continue fortie daies togither. Neither are they so patient of hunger as of thirst; for they will

Three kinds of camels.

Camels of a woonderfull swiftnes, otherwise called Dromedaries.

will abstaine from drinke, without any inconuenience, for fifteene daies together: and if their guides water them once in three daies, they doe them great hurt, for they are not vsually watred but once in fiue or nine daies, or at an vrgent necessitie, once in fifteene daies. Moreouer the saide camels are of a gentle disposition, and are indued as it were with a kinde of humaine reason: for when as betweene Ethiopia and Barbarie they haue a daies iourney to trauell more then their woont, their masters cannot driue them on, being so tired, with whips, but are faine to sing certaine songs vnto them; wherewith being exceedingly delighted, they performe their iourney with such swiftnes, that their saide masters are scarce able to follow them. At my being in Cairo I sawe a camell dance; which arte of dancing howe he learned of his master I will heere in fewe words report. They take a yoong camell, and put him for halfe an hower togither into a place like a bath-stoue prepared for the same purpose, the floore whereof is het with fire: then play they without vpon a drum, whereat the camell not so much in regard of the noise, as of the hot pauement which offendeth his feete, lifteth vp one legge after another in maner of a dance, and hauing beene accustomed vnto this exercise for the space of a yeere or ten moneths, they then present him vnto the publike view of the people, when as hearing the noise of a drum, and remembring the time when he trode vpon the hot floore, he presently falleth a dancing and leaping: and so, vse being turned into a kind of nature, he perpetually obserueth the same custome. I could here report other matters concerning the same beast, which for breuities sake I omit.

The camels great abstinence from drinke.

How the Camels of Cairo learne to dance.

Of the horse of Barbarie.

THis name is giuen vnto the Barbarie horses throughout Italy and all Europe, bicause they come foorth of Barbarie, and are a kinde of horses that are bred in those regions; but they which so thinke are deceiued: for the horses of Barbarie differ not in any respect from other horses: but horses of the same swiftnes & agilitie are in the Arabian toong called throughout all Egypt, Syria, Asia, Arabia Felix, and Deserta, by the name of Arabian horses: and the Historiographers affirme, that this kinde of wilde horses ranging vp and downe the Arabian deserts, and being broken and managed by the Arabians euer since the time of *Ismael*, haue so exceedingly multiplied and increased, that they haue repleniſhed the most part of Africa: which opinion sauoureth of truth, for euen at this present there are great store of wilde horses founde both in the African and Arabian deserts. And I my selfe sawe in the Numidian desert a wilde colte of a white colour, and hauing a curled maine. The most certaine triall of these horses is when they can ouertake the beast called Lant or the Ostrich in a race: which if they be able to performe, they are esteemed woorth a thousand ducats or an hundred camels. Howbeit very fewe of these horses are brought vp in Barbarie, but the Arabians that inhabite the deserts, and the people of Libya bring vp great numbers of them, vsing them not for trauell or warfare, but onely

Horſes fedde with camels milke.

for hunting, neither do they giue them any other meate but the milke of camels, and that twiſe euery day and night, to the end they may keepe them nimble, liuely, and of ſpare fleſh; and in the time of graſſe they ſuffer them to feede in paſtures, but then they ride not vpon them. But thoſe that the princes of Barbarie bring vp, are not of ſuch ſwiftnes, but being fedde with prouender, are more beautifull and comely to the eie; and theſe they vſe vpon an vrgent neceſſitie, when they woulde eſcape the danger of their enimies.

Of the wilde horſe.

THe wilde horſe is one of thoſe beaſts that come ſeldome in ſight. The Arabians of the deſerts take the wilde horſe and eate him, ſaying that the yoonger the horſe be, the ſweeter is his fleſh: but he will hardly be taken either with horſes or dogs. In the waters where this beaſt keepeth they lay certaine ſnares, couering them ouer with ſand, wherein his foote being caught he is intangled and ſlaine.

Of the beaſt called Lant or Dant.

THis beaſt in ſhape reſembleth an oxe, ſauing that he hath ſmaller legs and comelier horns. His haire is white, and his hoofs are as blacke as iet, and he is ſo exceeding ſwift, that no beaſt can ouertake him, but onely the Barbary horſe, as is beforeſaid. He is eaſlier caught in ſommer then in winter, becauſe that in regard of the extreme fretting heat of the ſand his hoofs are then ſtrained and ſet awry, by which meanes his ſwiftnes is abated, like as the ſwiftnes of ſtagges & roe-deer. Of the hide of this beaſt

Targets made of a skin.

are made ſhields and targets of great defence, which will not be pierced but onely with the forcible ſhot of a bullet; but they are ſold at an extreame price.

Of the wilde oxe.

IT reſembleth the tame oxe, ſaue that it is leſſe in ſtature, being of a gray or aſhe-colour, and of great ſwiftnes. It haunteth either the deſerts, or the confines of the deſerts. And the fleſh thereof (they ſay) is very ſauory.

Of the wild aſſe.

THis beaſt alſo being found either in the deſerts or vpon the borders thereof, is of an aſh-colour. In ſwiftnes they are ſurpaſſed onelie by the Barbary horſes, and when they ſee a man, they bray out a loude kicking and wincing with their heeles, and ſtanding ſtone-ſtill, till one approcheth ſo near them, that he may touch them with his hand, & then they betake themſelues to flight. By the Arabians of the deſerts they are caught with ſnares, and other engines. They goe in companies either when they

feede

feede or water themselues. Their flesh is hot and vnsauorie, and hath a wilde tast: but being set a cooling two dayes after it is sodden, it becommeth very sauory and pleasant.

Of the oxen vpon the mountaines of Africa.

ALl the oxen vpon the mountaines of Africa being tame cattell are of so meane a stature, that in comparison of other oxen they seeme to be but heifers of two yeeres old: but the mountainers, vsing them to the plough, say that they are strong and will indure much labour.

Of the beast called Adimmain.

IT is a tame beast, beeing shaped like a ramme, and of the stature of an asse, and hauing long and dangle eares. The Libyans vse these beasts instead of kine, and make of their milke great store of cheese and butter. They haue some wooll, though it be but short. I my selfe vpon a time being merily disposed, road a quarter of a mile vpon the backe of one of these beasts. Very many of them there are in the deserts of Libya, and but few in other places: and it is a rare matter to see one of them in the Numidian fields.

Of the African Ramme.

THere is no difference betweene these rammes of Africa and others, saue onely in their tailes, which are of a great thicknes, being by so much the grosser, by how much they are more fatte, so that some of their tailes waigh tenne, and other twentie pounds a peece, and they become fatte of their owne naturall inclination: but in Egypt there are diuers that feede them fatte with bran and barly, vntill their tailes growe so bigge that they cannot remooue themselues from place to place: insomuch that those which take charge of them are faine to binde little carts vnder their tailes, to the end they may haue strength to walke. I my selfe sawe at a citie in Egypt called Asiot, and standing vpon Nilus, about an hundred and fiftie miles from Cairo, one of the saide rams tailes that weighed fower-score pounds, and others affirmed that they had seene one of those tailes of an hundred and fiftie pounds weight. All the fatte therefore of this beast consisteth in his taile; neither is there any of them to be founde but onely in Tunis and in Egypt.

Of the Lyon.

THe Lyon is a most fierce and cruell beast, being hurtfull vnto all other beasts, and excelling them both in strength, courage, and crueltie, neither is he onely a deuourer of beasts, but of men also. In some places one Lyon will boldly encounter two hundred horsemen. They range without

all feare among the flocks and droues of cattell, and whatsoeuer beast they can lay holde on, they cary it into the next woode vnto their whelpes: yea some Lyons there are (as I haue before said) that will vanquish and kill fiue or sixe horsemen in one companie. Howbeit such Lyons as liue vpon the colde mountaines are not so outragious and cruell: but the hotter the places be where they keepe, the more rauenous and bolde are they, as namely vpon the frontiers of Temesna, and of the kingdome of Fez, in the desert of Angad neere Telensin, and betweene the citie of Bona and Tunis, all which are accounted the most famous and fierce Lyons in all Africa. In the spring, while they are giuen to lust and venerie, they haue most fierce and bloudie conflicts one with an other, eight or twelue Lions following after one Lyonesse. I haue heard many both men and women report, that if a woman chanceth to meete with a Lyon, and sheweth him her priuie parts, he will with crying and roaringe, cast his eies vpon the grounde and so depart. Beleeue it they that list. But this I am well assured of, that whatsoeuer a Lyon getteth in his pawes, though it be a camell, he will carrie it away. I my selfe was twise in great hazard to haue beene deuoured of Lyons, but by the goodnes of God I escaped them.

Of the Leopard.

THese beasts liuing in the woods of Barbarie, will not for all their great strength and crueltie hurt any man, vnlesse it be very seldome, when as they meete with a man in a narrow passage, and cannot shun him, or when they are checked and prouoked vnto furie: for then they will flie vpon a man, laying holde vpon his visage with their talents, and plucking off so much flesh as they can catch, insomuch that sometimes they will crush his braines in peeces. They inuade not any flockes or droues of tame cattell, but are at deadly feude with dogs, whom they will kill and deuoure. The mountainers of the region of Constatina hunt them on horsebacke, stopping all passages, where they might escape. The Leopard ranging vp and downe, and finding euery place so besette with horsemen that he cannot get away, windeth and turneth himselfe on all sides, and so becommeth a fit marke for the hunters to discharge their darts and arrowes vpon. But if the Leopard chanceth to escape, that man that lets him passe, is bounde by an vsuall custome to inuite the residue of the hunters vnto a banquet.

Of the beast called Dabuh.

THis beast called by the Arabians Dabuh, and by the Africans Iesef, in bignes and shape resembleth a woolfe, sauing that his legges and feete are like to the legs and feete of a man. It is not hurtful vnto any other beast, but will rake the carkeises of men out of their graues, and will deuour them, being otherwise an abiect and silly creature. The hunters being acquainted

with

with his denne, come before it singing and playing vpon a drum, by which melodie being allured foorth, his legs are intrapped in a strong rope, and so he is drawne out and slaine.

Of the ciuet-Cat.

THese Cattes are naturally wilde, and are found in the woods of Ethiopia. The merchants taking their yoong whelps or kittes, feede them with milke, branne, and flesh, and keepe them in cages or grates. But their odoriferous excrement (which is nought else but their sweat) they gather twise or thrise euery day in manner following: first they driue them vp and downe the grate with a wande, till they sweate, and then they take the saide sweate from vnder their flankes, their shoulders, their necks, and their tailes: which excrement of sweate is commonly called ciuet. *The manner of gathering ciuet.*

Of the Ape.

OF Apes there are diuers and sundrie kindes, those which haue tailes, being called in the African toong Monne, and those which haue none, Babuini. They are found in the woods of Mauritania, and vpon the mountaines of Bugia and Constantina. They represent the shape of man, not onely in their feete and hands, but also in their visages, and are naturally indued with woonderfull witte and subtiltie. They liue vpon grasse and corne, and go in great companies to feede in the corne fieldes, and one of their companie which standeth centinell or keepeth watch and ward vpon the borders, when he espieth the husbandman comming, he crieth out and giueth as it were an alarme to his fellowes, who euery one of them flee immediately into the next woods, and betake themselues to the trees. The shee apes carrie their whelpes vpon their shoulders, and will leape with them in that sort from one tree to another. Such of them as are taught, will do woonderfull feates, but they are angrie and curst, notwithstanding they will soone be appeased.

Of the Conies of Africa.

THere are great store of wilde Conies in Mauritania, and vpon the mountaines of Gumera; which albeit they are accounted wilde, yet in my opinion they seeme tame, for their flesh differeth neither in taste nor colour from the flesh of tame conies.

Of the strange fishes of Africa, and first of the fish called Ambara.

THe fish called Ambara, being of a monstrous shape and bignes, is neuer seen but when it is cast vp dead vpon the sea-shore: and some of these fishes there are which containe twentie fiue cubites in length.

The

The head of this fiſh is as hard as a ſtone. The inhabitants of the Ocean ſea coaſt affirme that this fiſh caſteth foorth Amber; but whether the ſaid Amber be the ſperma or the excrement therof, they cannot well determine. Howſoeuer it be, the fiſh may in regard of the hugenes be called a whale.

Amber.

Of the ſea-horſe.

THis creature is commonly found in the riuers of Niger and Nilus. In ſhape it reſembleth an horſe, and in ſtature an aſſe, but it is altogether deſtitute of haire. It liueth both in the water and vpon the lande, and ſwimmeth to the ſhore in the night ſeaſon. Barkes and botes laden with wares and ſayling downe the riuer of Niger are greatly endangered by this ſea-horſe, for oftentimes he ouerwhelmeth and ſinketh them.

Of the ſea-oxe.

THe ſea-oxe being couered with an exceeding hard skinne is ſhaped in all reſpects like vnto the land-oxe; ſaue that in bignes it exceedeth not a calfe of ſixe moneths olde. It is found in both the riuers of Niger and of Nilus, and being taken by fiſhers, is kept a long time aliue out of the water. I my ſelfe ſawe one at Cairo led vp and downe by the neck in a chaine, which (they ſay) was taken at the city of Aſna ſtanding vpon the bank of Nilus, about foure hundred miles from Cairo.

Of the Tortoiſe.

THis might be numbred among the land-creatures, becauſe it liueth for the moſt part in the deſerts. In the Libyan deſerts are found verie many as big as a tunne. And Bicri the Coſmographer in his booke of the regions and Iourneis of Africa reporteth, that a certaine man being wery of trauelling, aſcended to his thinking, vpon an high ſtone lying in the deſert, to the end he might free himſelfe from the danger of ſerpents and venemous beaſts; who hauing ſlept ſoundly thereupon all night found himſelfe in the morning remooued three miles from the place where he firſt lay downe, and thereby vnderſtood that it was not a ſtone but a tortoiſe wheron he repoſed himſelfe, which lying ſtill all the day long creepeth for foode in the night-ſeaſon, but ſo ſlowly, that her pace can hardly be perceiued. I my ſelfe haue ſeen ſome of theſe tortoiſes, as big as a barrell, but neuer any ſo huge as the laſt before mentioned. The fleſh of a tortoiſe not aboue ſeuen yeres old being eaten ſeuen daies together is ſaid to be a perfect medicine againſt the leproſie.

A medicine for the leproſie.

Of

Of the Crocodile.

THis cruell and noisome beast commonly frequenteth the riuers of Niger and Nilus, and containeth in length twelue cubites and aboue, the taile thereof being as long as the whole bodie besides, albeit there are but fewe of so huge a bignes. It goeth vpon fower feete like a Lizard, neither is it aboue a cubite and an halfe high. The taile of this beast is full of knots, and the skin thereof is so exceeding hard, that no crossebowe will enter it. Some praie vpon fishes onely, but others vpon beastes and men. Which lurking about the bankes of the riuer, do craftily lay waite for men and beastes that come the same way, about whom suddenly winding their tailes, they draw them into the water, and there deuour them. Howbeit some of them are not so cruell by nature: for if they were, no inhabitants coulde liue neere vnto the riuers of Nilus and Niger. In eating they mooue the vpper iawe onely, their neather iawe being ioined vnto their breast-bone. Not many yeeres sithens, passing vp the riuer of Nilus towards the citie of Cana, standing in the vpper part of Egypt, fower hundred miles from Cairo, on a certaine night whilest wee were in the midst of our iourney, the moone being ouershadowed with clouds, the marriners and passengers all fast a sleepe, and the barke vnder sailes, I my selfe studying by candle-light in my cabben, was called vpon by a deuout olde man in the barke, who bestowed the same night in watching and praier, and saide vnto me, call (I praie you) some of your company, who may helpe me to drawe vppe this peece of woode floting vpon the water, which will serue to morrow for the dressing of our dinner. My selfe sir (quoth I) will come and helpe you, rather then wake any of our company in the dead of the night. Nay (quoth the old man) I will trie whether I be able to drawe it vp alone or no. And so when the barke was neere vnto the woode, as he supposed, holding a rope in his hande to cast into the water, he was sodainly intangled with a crocodiles long taile, and was in a moment drawen vnder the water. Whereupon I making a shoute, all the people in the barke arose, and striking sailes wee staide for the space of an hower, diuers in the meane time leaping into the water to seeke the man, but altogither in vaine: and therefore all of them affirmed that he was caught by a crocodile. As we sailed farther we sawe great numbers of crocodiles vpon the bankes of Islands in the midst of Nilus lie beaking them in the sunne with their iawes wide open, whereinto certaine little birdes about the bignes of a thrush entring, came flying foorth againe presently after. The occasion whereof was tolde me to be this: The crocodiles by reason of their continuall deuouring of beasts and fishes, haue certaine peeces of flesh sticking fast betweene their forked teeth, which flesh being putrified, breedeth a kind of wormes wherewith they are cruelly tormented. Wherefore the saide birds flying about, and seeing the wormes, enter into the crocodiles iawes, to satisfie their hunger therewith. But the crocodile perceiuing

The craft of the Crocodile in taking both men and beasts.

Little birds flying into the crocodiles mouth to picke wormes from betweene their teeth.

perceiuing himselfe freed from the wormes of his teeth, offereth to shut his mouth, and to deuour the little birde that did him so good a turne, but being hindred from his vngratefull attempt by a pricke which groweth vpon the birds head, he is constrained to open his iawes and to let her depart. The shee crocodile laying egges vpon the shore, couereth them with sand; and so soone as the yoong crocodiles are hatched, they crawle into the riuer. Those crocodiles that forsake the riuer and haunt the deserts become venemous; but such as continue in Nilus, are destitute of poison. In Egypt there are many that eate the flesh of the crocodile, and affirme it to be of an excellent taste. His larde or grease is solde very deere at Cairo, and is saide to be very medicinable for olde and cankered woundes. They take the crocodile in manner following; The fishers binding a strong and large rope vnto some tree or poste standing for the nonce vpon the banke of Nilus, fasten vnto the end thereof an iron hooke of a cubite long, and about the thicknes of a mans finger, and vpon the hooke they hang a ramme or a goate, by the bleating noise whereof the crocodile being allured, commeth foorth of the water, and swalloweth vp both the baite and the hooke, wherewithal feeling himselfe inwardly wounded, he strugleth mightily, & beateth the ground, the fishers in the meane time pulling and slacking the rope, till the crocodile falleth down vanquished & dead: then they thrust him in with certaine dartes and iauelins vnder the shoulders and flanks where his skin is most tender, and so make a quicke dispatch of him. His backe is so harde and thicke, that an harquebuse or caliuer will scarce pierce it. Of these beasts I sawe aboue three hundred heads placed vpon the wals of Cana, with their iawes wide open, being of so monstrous and incredible a bignes, that they were sufficient to haue swallowed vp a whole cowe at once, and their teeth were great and sharpe. The Egyptian fishers vse to cut off the heads of crocodiles, and to set them vpon the wals of their cities, and so doe hunters vse the heads of wilde beasts.

The manner of taking the crocodile.

Of the dragon.

IN the caues of Atlas are founde many huge and monstrous dragons, which are heauie, and of a slowe motion, bicause the midst of their body is grosse, but their necks and tailes are slender. They are most venemous creatures, insomuch that whosoeuer is bitten or touched by them, his flesh presently waxeth soft & weake, neither can he by any meanes escape death.

Of the Hydra.

THis serpent being short in proportion of body, and hauing a slender taile and necke, liueth in the Libyan deserts. The poison thereof is most deadly, so that if a man be bitten by this beast, he hath none other remedie, but to cut off the wounded part, before the poison disperseth it selfe into the other members.

Of

Of the creature called Dub.

THis creature liuing also in the deserts, resembleth in shape a Lizzard, sauing that it is somewhat bigger, and containeth in length a cubite, and in bredth fower fingers. It drinketh no water at all, and if a man poure any water into the mouth thereof, it presently dieth. It laieth egges in manner of a tortoise, and is destitute of poison. The Arabians take it in the deserts: and I my selfe cut the throate of one which I tooke, but it bled a very little. Being flaied and rosted, it tasteth somewhat like a frogge. In swiftnes it is comparable to a Lizzard, and being hunted, if it chanceth to thrust the head into an hole, it can by no force be drawne out, except the hole be digged wider by the hunters. Hauing beene slaine three daies together, and then being put to the fire, it stirreth it selfe as if it were newelie dead.

Of the Guaral.

THis beast is like vnto the former, sauing that it is somewhat bigger, and hath poison both in the head and taile, which two parts being cut off, the Arabians will eate it, notwithstanding it be of a deformed shape and vgly colour, in which respects I loathed alwaies to eate the flesh thereof.

Of the Camelion.

THe camelion being of the shape and bignes of a lizzard, is a deformed, crooked, and leane creature, hauing a long and slender tayle like a mouse, and being of a slowe pace. It is nourished by the element of ayer, and the sun-beames, at the rising wherof it gapeth, and turneth it selfe vp and downe. It changeth the colour according to the varietie of places where it commeth, being sometimes black and sometimes greene, as I my selfe haue seen it. It is at great enmity with venemous serpents, for when it seeth any lie sleeping vnder a tree, it presently climeth vp the same tree, and looking downe vpon the serpents head, it voideth out of the mouth as it were, a long threede of spittle, with a round drop like a perle hanging at the end, which drop falling wrong, the camelion changeth his place, till it may light directly vpon the serpents head, by the vertue wherof he presently dyeth. Our African writers haue reported many things concerning the properties and secret qualities of this beast, which at this present I do not wel remember.

How the camelion killeth the serpent.

Of the Ostrich.

SOmewhat we will here say concerning the strange birdes and fowles of Africa, and first of the ostriche, which in shape resembleth a goose, but that the neck and legges are somewhat longer, so that some of them exceede

exceede the length of two cubites. The body of this birde is large, and the winges therof are full of great feathers both white and black, which wings and feathers being vnfitte to fly withall, do helpe the ostriche, with the motion of her traine, to runne a swifte pace. This fowle liueth in dry deserts, and layeth to the number of ten or twelue egges in the sandes, which being about the bignes of great bullets, waigh fifteene pounds a piece; but the ostrich is of so weake a memorie, that shee presently forgetteth the place where her egges were laide. And afterward the same, or some other ostriche-henne finding the said egges by chance, hatcheth and fostereth them as if they were certainly her owne: the chickens are no sooner crept out of the shell, but they prowle vp and downe the deserts for their foode: and before their feathers be growne, they are so swift, that a man shall hardly ouertake them. The ostriche is a silly and deafe creature, feeding vpon any thing which it findeth, be it as hard and vndigestable as yron. The flesh especially of their legges, is of a slymie and strong taste: and yet the Numidians vse it for foode, for they take yong ostriches and set them vp a fatting. The ostriches wander vp and downe the deserts in orderly troupes, so that a far off a man would take them to bee so many horsemen, which illusion hath often dismaied whole carouans. Being in Numidia I my selfe ate of the ostriches flesh, which seemed to haue not altogether an vnsauory taste.

Of the Eagle.

OF eagles there are diuers kindes, according to their naturall properties, the proportion of their bodies, or the diuersitie of their colours: and the greatest kinde of eagles are called in the Arabian toong Nesir. The Africans teach their eagles to pray vpon foxes and woolues; which in their encounter seaze vpon the heads of the saide beasts with their bils, and vpon the backes with their talents, to auoide the danger of biting. But if the beast turne his belly vpwarde, the eagle will not forsake him, till she hath either peckt out his eies, or slaine him. Many of our African writers affirme, that the male eagle oftentimes ingendring with a shee woofe, begetteth a dragon, hauing the beake and wings of a birde, a serpents taile, the feete of a woolfe, and a skin speckled and partie coloured like the skin of a serpent. Neither can it open the eie-lids, and it liueth in caues. This monster albeit my selfe haue not seene, yet the common report ouer all Africa affirmeth that there is such an one.

A strange narration.

Of the foule called Nesir.

THis is the greatest foule in all Africa, and exceedeth a crane in bignes, though the bill, necke, and legs are somewhat shorter. In flying this birde mounteth vp so high into the aire, that it cannot be discerned; but at the sight of a dead carkase it will immediately descend. This birde liueth a

long

long time, and I my selfe haue seene many of them vnfeathered by reason of extreme old age: wherefore hauing cast all their feathers, they returne vnto their nest, as if they were newly hatched, and are there nourished by the yoonger birds of the same kinde. The Italians call it by the name of a Vulture, but I thinke it to be of another kinde. They nestle vpon high rockes, and vpon the tops of wilde and desert mountaines, especially vpon mount Atlas: and they are taken by such as are acquainted with those places.

Of the birde called Bezi, or the hauke.

THis bird called in Latine *Accipiter*, is very common in Africa. But the best African haukes are white, being taken vpon certaine mountaines of the Numidian deserts, and with these haukes they pursue the crane. Of these haukes there are diuers kinds, some being vsed to flie at partriges and quailes, and others at the hare.

Of the Bat.

THese vgly night-birdes are rife all the world ouer: but in certaine caues of Atlas there are many of them founde as bigge and bigger then doues, especially in their winges: which albeit my selfe neuer sawe, yet haue I heard of them by diuers persons.

Of the parrat or poppiniay.

THese parrats are commonly founde in the woods of Ethiopia: but the better sort of them, and such as will imitate mans voice more perfectly, are the greene ones. Parrats there are as big as a doue, of diuers colours, some red, some blacke, and some ash-coloured, which albeit they cannot so fitly expresse mans speech, yet haue they most sweete and shrill voices.

Of the locustes.

OF locustes there are sometimes seene such monstrous swarmes in Africa, that in flying they intercept the sunne-beames like a thicke cloude. They deuoure trees, leaues, fruites, and all greene things growing out of the earth. At their departure they leaue egges behinde them, whereof other yoong locusts breede, which in the places where they are left, will eate and consume al things euen to the very barke of trees, procuring thereby extreme dearth of corne, especially in Mauritania. Howbeit the inhabitants of Arabia deserta, and of Libya, esteeme the comming of these locusts as a fortunate boading: for, seething or drying them in the sun, they bruise them to powder, and so eate them.

And nowe let thus much suffice to haue spoken of the African beastes,

foules, fiſhes, ſerpents, &c. which are either not to be found in Europe, or ſuch as differ from creatures of the ſame kinde there. Wherefore hauing once briefly intreated in the chapters following of certaine minerals, trees, and fruits of Africa, I purpoſe then to conclude this my preſent diſcourſe.

Whereas mine author *Iohn Leo* intreateth but briefly of theſe locuſtes, which God vſeth as a moſt ſharp ſcourge between times to diſciple all the nations of Africa; I thought it not vnmeete to adde two other relations or teſtimonies of the ſame argument: the one being reuerend in regard of the authors antiquitie; and the other credible and to be accepted, for that the reporter himſelfe was a moſt diligent and faithfull eie-witnes of the ſame.

The firſt teſtimonie, taken out of the 11. chap. of the fift booke of *Paulus Oroſius contra Paganos.*

Of an huge and pernicious companie of Locuſts in Africa, which after they had waſted the countrey, being drowned in the ſea, and caſt vp dead on the ſhore, bred a moſt woonderfull peſtilence both of man and beaſt.

IN the conſulſhip of *Marcus Plautius Hypſæus,* and *Marcus Fuluius Flaccus*, Africa ſcarce breathing from bloudie warres, an horrible and extraordinarie deſtruction enſued. For whereas now throughout all Africa, infinite multitudes of locuſtes were gathered togither, & had not only quite deuoured the corne on the grounde, and conſumed the herbes with part of their rootes, and the leaues and tender boughes of the trees, but had gnawne alſo the bitter barke, and drie woode; being with a violent and ſudden winde hoiſed aloft in mightie ſwarmes, and carried a long time in the aire, they were at length drowned in the African ſea. Whoſe lothſome and putrified carcaſes being by the waues of the ſea caſt vp in huge heapes farre and wide along the ſhore, bred an incredible ſtinking & infectious ſmell: whereupon followed ſo general a peſtilence of al liuing creatures, that the corrupt dead bodies of foules, cattell, and wilde beaſts diſſolued by the contagion of the aire, augmented the furie of the plague. But how great and extraordinarie a death of men there was, I cannot but tremble to report: for in Numidia, where *Micipſa* was then king, died fowerſcore thouſand perſons; and vpon the ſea-coaſt next adioining to Carthage and Vtica, aboue two hundred thouſand are ſaide to haue periſhed. Yea in the citie of Vtica it ſelfe were by this meanes ſwept from the face of the earth thirtie thouſand braue ſoldiers,

which

which were appointed to be the garrison for all Africa. And the destruction was so sudaine and violent, as they report, that out of one gate of Vtica, in one and the same day, were carried aboue fifteene hundred dead corpes of those lustie yoong gallants. So that by the grace and fauour of almightie God(through whose mercy,and in confidence of whom, I doe speake these things) I may boldly affirme; that albeit sometime in our daies the locusts in diuers parts, and vsually,doe some domage which is tolerable: yet neuer befell there in the time of the Christians so insupportable a mischiefe, as that this scourge of locusts, which being aliue are by no meanes sufferable, should after their death proue farre more pernicious: and which also liuing, the fruits of the earth would haue beene quite deuoured; it had beene much better they had neuer died,to the plague and destruction of all earthly creatures. Hitherto *Paulus Orosius*.

The second testimonie taken out of the 32. and 33. chapters of the Ethiopian historie of *Francis Aluarez*, which for the satisfaction of euerie Reader, I haue put downe with all particularities and circumstances.

Of the great multitude of Locusts, and the infinite domage that they procure in the dominions of Prete Ianni, *Chap.* 32.

IN this quarter and throughout all the dominion of *Prete Ianni*, there is an horrible and great plague, to wit an innumerable companie of Locustes, which eate and consume the corne,and trees of fruite; and so great is the number of these creatures,as it is not credible, for with the multitude of them the earth is couered,and the aire so ouerspred, as one may hardlie discerne the sunne: and further I affirme, that it is a thing most strange to him who hath not seene it; and if the domage they performe were generall through all the prouinces and kingdomes of *Prete Ianni*, his people woulde die with famine,neither coulde men possiblie there inhabite: But one yeere they destroy one prouince, and the next yeere another prouince: as if for example, they waste the kingdome of Portugall or Castile this yeere, an other yeere they are in the quarters of Lenteio,an other in Estremadura, an other in Beira, or betweene the riuer Dorus and Minius, an other on the mountaines, an other in old Castilia, Aragon or Andaluzia, and otherwhiles in two or three of these prouinces at once; and whersoeuer they come,the earth is more wasted and destroied by them, then if it had beene all ouer consumed with a fire. These locusts are as bigge as the greatest graf-

hoppers,hauing yellow wings. Their comming into the countrie is knowne a day before: not for that we can see them,but we know it by the sunne,who is yellow of colour, this being a signe that they draw neere to the countrie, as also the earth looketh yellowe, by reason of the light which reflecteth from their wings: whereupon the people in a manner become presentlie halfe dead,saying, we are vndone,for the Ambati, that is to say,the locustes are come. And I can not forbeare to set downe that which I sawe three sundrie times,and first in Barua, where we had now beene for the space of three yeeres, and heere we often heard it saide, that such a countrey and such a realme was destroied by the Locusts: and being in this prouince we sawe the sunne and the vpper part of the earth looke all yellow, the people being in a manner halfe dead for sorrow: But the day following it was an incredible thing to see the number of these creatures that came, which to our iudgement couered fower and twentie miles of lande, as afterward we were enformed. When this scourge and plague was come, the priestes of that place came and sought me out, requesting me to giue them some remedie for the driuing of them away,and I answered,that I could tel them nothing, but only that they shoulde deuoutly pray vnto God, that he woulde driue them out of the countrie. And so I went to the Ambassadour,and told him, that it would be very good to goe on procession, beseeching God that hee woulde deliuer the countrie, who peraduenture in his great mercie might heare vs. This liked the Ambassadour very well: and the day following we gathered togither the people of the land, with all the priests, and taking the consecrated stone,and the crosse,according to their custome, all we Portugals sung the Letanie, and appointed those of the land, that they should lift vp their voices aloud as we did,saying in their language *Zio marina Christos*, which is as much to say, as Lord God haue mercy vpon vs: and with this manner of inuocation we went ouer a peece of grounde, where there were fieldes of wheate, for the space of a mile, euen to a little hill: and heere I caused many of these locustes to be taken, pronouncing ouer them a certaine coniuration, which I had about me in writing, hauing made it that night,requesting, admonishing, and excommunicating them, enioining them within the space of three howers to depart towards the sea,or the lande of the Moores,or the desert mountaines,and to let the Christians alone:and they not performing this, I summoned and charged the birdes of heauen, the beasts of the earth,and all sorts of tempests, to scatter,destroy,and eate vp their bodies: and to this effect I tooke a quantitie of locusts, making this admonition to them present,in the behalfe likewise of them absent, and so giuing them libertie, I suffered them to depart. It pleased God to heare vs sinners,for in our returne home, they came so thicke vpon our backes, as it seemed that they woulde haue broken our heads,or shoulders, so hard they strooke against vs,as if we had beene beaten with stones and cudgels, and in this sort they went towards the sea: The men, women, and children remaining at home,were gotten vpon the tops,or tarrasses of their houses,giuing

A strange exorcisme.

God

God thankes that the locusts were going away, some afore, and others followed. In the meane while towardes the sea, there arose a great cloude with thunder, which met them full in the teeth, and continued for the space of three howers with much raine, and tempest, that filled all the riuers, and when the raine ceased, it was a fearefull thing to behold the dead Locustes, which were more then two * yardes in height vpon the bankes of the riuers, and in some riuers there were mightie heapes of them, so that the morning following there was not one of them found aliue vpon the earth. The people of the places adioining hearing this, came in great numbers to enquire how this matter was effected; many of the inhabitants said, these Portugals be holy men, and by the power of their God, they haue killed and driuen away the locusts: others saide, especially the priests and friers of those places neere about, that we were witches, and by power of enchantments had driuen away the saide creatures, and that for this cause we feared neither lions, nor any other wilde beast: Three daies after this effect, there came vnto vs a Xuum, that is, a captaine of a place called Coiberia, with men, priests, and friers, to request vs, that we woulde for the loue of God helpe them, saying that they were in a manner destroied by the locustes; and that place was a daies iourney off towards the sea. They came to vs about euening, and at the same instant, I and fower other Portugals departed awaie with them, we went all night, and came thither an hower within daie, where we found, that all those of the countrey, with many of the other places adioining were assembled togither, for they were also molested by the locusts. And assoone as we were come, we went our processiõn rounde about the land, which was seated vpon an high hill, from whence we might discerne manie countries and places all yellow by reason of the multitude of locusts. Such inuocatious and ceremonies being ended, as we performed in the other place, we went to dinner, & the men that were borderers, requested vs to goe with them, promising vs great rewardes: It pleased god, that as soon as we had dined, we saw all the earth so cleared that there was not soe much as one locust to be seene: The people seeing this and not being satisfied with the fauour and grace receiued, they requested vs to goe and blesse their possessions, for they were yet afraid least the locusts would returne; and so wee departed.

* Or fathomes.

Of the dommage we sawe done in another prouince by the Locustes, in two sundrie places. Chap. 33.

AN other time also we sawe the Locustes, being in a towne called Abuguna: *Prete Ianni* sent vs to this towne which is in the kingdome of Angote, and distant from Barua, where we continued, thirtie daies iourney, to the ende that there we might be furnished with victuals: Being come thither, I went with the ambassadour *Zagazabo*, who came into Portugall,

and fiue Genoueſes, towards a certain towne & a moũtaine called Aguoan, & we trauailed fiue daies through places all deſert & deſtroied, which places were ſowen with Maiz, hauing ſtalkes as great as thoſe props which we vſe about our vines, and we might ſee them all broken and troden vnderfoote, as if there had beene a tempeſt, and this had the locuſts done. Their wheate, barley, and Taffo da guza were ſo eaten, as it ſeemed they neuer had beene either tilled or ſowne. The trees were without leaues, and their barkes all gnawne & eaten, and there was not ſo much as a ſpire of graſſe, for they had deuoured euery thing; and if we had not beene aduiſed, and foreſeene the ſame (for when we departed, we laded our mules with victuals) we and our beaſtes had died togither for hunger. The countrey was couered all ouer with wingleſſe locuſtes; and they ſaide, that thoſe were the ſeede of them, which had deuoured all, and that when they had gotten wings, they would go ſeeke out the reſt, the number of theſe was ſo great, as I am loath to report, bicauſe I ſhoulde not perhaps be credited: but this I may well affirme, that I ſawe men, women, and children, ſit as it were amazed amongſt theſe locuſts, and I ſaide vnto them, why ſit you thus halfe dead, and doe not kill theſe creatures, and ſo reuenge your ſelues of the wrong, that their fathers and mothers haue done you, or at leaſt that thoſe which you kill may be able to doe you no more harme? They anſwered, taht they had not the hart, to withſtand the ſcourge of God which hee had ſent vpon them for their ſins: And all the people of this place departed hence, ſo that we found the waies full of men and women on foot, with their children in their armes, and vpon their heads, going into other countries, where they might finde victuall, and it was great pittie to behold them. We being in the ſaide prouince of Abuguna, in a place called Aquate, there came ſuch ſwarmes of locuſtes as were innumerable: which one day began to fall vpon the grounde about nine of the clocke in the morning, and ceaſed not while night; where they lighted, there they ſtaide, and then the next day in the morning went away: ſo that at three of the clocke in the afternoone there was not one of them to be ſeene, and in this ſhort time they left the trees vtterly deſtitute of leaues. On the ſame day and hower there came an other ſquadron, and theſe left neither tree nor bough vngnawen and eaten, and thus did they for fiue daies one after an other: they ſaid that thoſe were yoong ones which went to ſeeke their fathers, and they did the like, as thoſe we ſawe without wings: the ſpace that theſe locuſtes tooke vp, was nine miles, for which circuit there remained neither barke nor leaues vpon the trees, & the countrey looked not as though it had bin burnt, but as though it had ſnowed thereupon, and this was by reaſon of the whitenes of the trees which were pilled bare by the Locuſtes, and the earth was all ſwept cleane: It was Gods will that the harueſt was alreadie in: wee coulde not vnderſtande which way they afterwards went, bicauſe they came from the ſea warde, out of the kingdome of Daucali, which belongeth to the Moores, who are continually in warre, as alſo we coulde by no meanes knowe

the

the ende of their iourney or course. Thus much out of *Francis Aluarez.*

Of the minerals: And first of minerall salt.

THe greater part of Africa hath none other salt but such as is digged out of quarries & mines, after the maner of marble or free stone, being of a white, red, and graie colour. Barbarie aboundeth with salt, and Numidia is indifferently furnished therewith: but the lande of Negros, and especially the inner part of Ethiopia, is so destitute thereof, that a pound of salt is there solde for halfe a ducate. And the people of the saide regions vse not to set salt vpon their tables; but holding a crum of salte in hands, they licke the same at euery morsell of meate which they put in their mouthes. In certaine lakes of Barbarie all the sommer time there is faire and white salt congealed or kerned, as namely in diuers places neere vnto the citie of Fez.

Of the minerall called Antimonie.

THis minerall growing in many places of Africa in the lead-mines is separated from the lead by the helpe of brimstone. Great plentie of this minerall is digged out of the bottome of mount Atlas, especially where Numidia bordereth vpon the kingdome of Fez. Brimstone likewise is digged in great abundance out of other places of Africa.

Of Euphorbium.

EVphorbium is the iuice or gumme of a certaine herbe growing like the head of a wilde thistle, betweene the branches wherof grow certain fruits as big in compasse as a greene cucumber; after which shape or likenes it beareth certain little graines or seedes; and some of the said fruits are an elle long, and some are longer. They grow not out of the branches of the herbe but spring out of the firme ground, and out of one flag you shall see sometimes 20. and somtimes 30. of them issue foorth. The people of the same region, when the said fruits are once ripe, do prick them with their kniues, and out of the holes proceedeth a liquor or iuice much like vnto milke, which by little and little, groweth thick and slimy. And so being growen thick, they take it off with their kniues, putting it in bladders & drying it. And the plant or herb it selfe is full of sharp prickles.

Of Pitch.

OF pitch there are two kindes, the one being naturall, and taken out of certaine stones, which are in fountaines; the water wherof retaineth the vnsauorie smell and taste of the same; and the other being artificial,

al, and proceeding out of the iuniper or pine-tree: and this artificiall pitch I saw made vpon mount Atlas in manner following. They make a deepe and round furnace with an hole in the bottome, through which hole the pitch may fall downe into an hollow place within the ground being made in form of a little vessel: and putting into the said furnace the boughes of the foresaid trees broken into small pieces, they close vp the mouth of the furnace, and make a fire vnder it, by the heate wherof the pitch distilleth forth of the wood through the bottome of the furnace into the foresaide hollow place: and so it is taken vp and put in bladders or bagges.

Of the fruite called Maus or Musa.

THis fruite growing vpon a smal tree which beareth large and broade leaues of a cubite long, hath a most excellent and delicate taste, and springeth forth about the bignes of a small cucumber. The Mahumetan doctours affirme, that this was the fruite which God forbad our first parents to eat in Paradise, which when they had eaten they couered their nakednes with leaues of the same fruit, as being of all other leaues most meete for that purpose. They grow in great abundance at Sela a towne of the kingdome of Fez; but in farre greater plenty in the land of Egypt, and especially at Damiata.

Of Cassia.

THe trees bearing Cassia are of great thicknes, hauing leaues like vnto the mulberie-tree. They bear a broad and white blossome, and are so laden with fruits, that they are constrained to gather great store before they be ripe, least the tree should breake with ouermuch waight. And this kinde of tree groweth onely in Egypt.

Of the fruit called Terfez.

TErfez is to be called rather by the name of a root then of a fruit, and is like vnto a mushrom or toad-stoole, but that it is somewhat bigger. It is enclosed with a white rinde and groweth in hot and sandy places. Where it lyeth, it may easilie be perceiued by the swelling and opening of the ground. Some of them are as bigge as a walnut, and others as a limon. The phisicians, which call it Camha, affirme it to be a refrigeratiue or cooling fruit. It groweth in great plenty vpon the Numidian deserts, and the Arabians take as great delight in eating of the same as in eating of sugar. This fruit being stued vpon the coles, and afterward made cleane, and sodden in fat broath they esteeme for great dainties. Also the Arabians seeth it in water and milk, and so eat it. It groweth likewise plentifullie in the sandes neare vnto the towne of Sela. Of the date or palme-tree, because we haue sufficiently spoken in our description of Segelmesse in Numidia, we will here in this place say nothing at all.

Of

Of the Egyptian figg called by the Egyptians themſelues Giumeiz.

THe tree of this figg reſembleth other fig-trees both in outward forme and in leaues, but it is of an exceeding height: neither doth the fruit grow among the leaues, or vpon the ends of the twigs, but out of the very body of the tree, where no leaues at all grow. Theſe figs taſt like vnto other figes, but they haue a thicker skin and are of a tawnie colour.

Of the tree called Ettalche.

IT is an high and a thornie tree, hauing ſuch leaues as the iuniper hath, and bearing a gum like vnto maſtick, wherwith the African apothecaries vſe to mingle and adulterate their maſtick, becauſe it hath the ſame colour and yealdeth ſome ſmell alſo. There are found likewiſe ſuch trees in the Numidian and Lybian deſerts and in the land of Negros: but the trees of Numidia being cut in the midſt, conſiſt of white wood like vnto the trees beforenamed, and the Lybian trees of a browne or tawnie wood, but the trees of the land of Negros are extreame black within. And that black pith or hart of this tree, wherof muſical inſtruments are made, is called by the Italians Sangu. That wood which is of the browne or tawnie colour is vſed by the African phiſicians for the curing of the French poxe, wherupon it is commonly called by the name of pock-wood.

Of the root called Tauzarghente.

THis root growing in the weſterne part of Africa vpon the Ocean ſea ſhore, yeeldeth a fragrant and odoriferous ſmel. And the merchants of Mauritania carry the ſame into the land of Negros, where the people vſe it for a moſt excellent perfume, and yet they neither burne it nor put any fire at all thereto: for being kept onely in an houſe, it yeeldeth a naturall ſent of it ſelfe. In Mauritania they ſell a bunche of theſe rootes for halfe a ducate, which being carried to the land of Negros is ſold again for eightie or one hundred ducates and ſometimes for more.

Of the roote called Addad.

THe herbe therof is bitter, and the root it ſelfe is ſo venemous, that one drop of the water diſtilled therout, will kill a man within the ſpace of an hower, which is commonly knowen euen to the women of Africa.

Of

Of the root called Surnag.

THis roote growing also vpon the westerne part of mount Atlas, is said to be verie comfortable and preseruatiue vnto the priuie parts of man, & being drunk in an electuarie, to stir vp venereal lust, &c. Neither must I here omit that which the inhabitants of mount Atlas do commonly report, that many of those damosels which keepe cattel vpon the said mountaines haue lost their virginity by none other occasion, but by making water vpon the said roote: vnto whom I would in merriment answere, that I beleeued all which experience had taught concerning the secret vertue of the same roote. Yea they affirmed moreouer, that some of their maidens were so infected with this roote, that they were not only deflowred of their virginitie, but had also their whole bodies puffed vp and swolne.

THese are the things memorable and woorthie of knowledge, seene and obserued by me *Iohn Leo*, throughout al Africa, which countrey I haue in * all places traueiled quite ouer: wherein whatsoeuer I sawe woorthy the obseruation, I presently committed to writing: and those things which I sawe not, I procured to be at large declared vnto me by most credible and substantiall persons, which were themselues eie-witnesses of the same: and so hauing gotten a fitte oportunitie, I thought good to reduce these my trauels and studies into this one volume.

* *That is, in Barbarie, Numidia, Libya, the lande of Negros, and Egypt.*

Written at Rome in the yeere of Christ 1526. and vpon the tenth of March.

Heere endeth the description of Africa written by *Iohn Leo*, borne in Granada, and brought vp in Barbarie.

A

A briefe relation concerning the dominions, reuenues, forces, and maner of gouernment of ſundry the greateſt princes either inhabiting within the bounds of Africa, or at leaſt poſſeſſing ſome parts thereof, tranſlated, for the moſt part, out of Italian.

AFricke hath euer beene the leaſt knowen and haunted parte in the world, chiefly by reaſon of the ſituation thereof vnder the torride Zone; which the ancients thought to be vnhabitable. Whoſe opinion, although in very deede it is not true, bicauſe we knowe that betweene the two Tropickes there are moſt fruitefull countries, as namely Abaſſia, and the kingdomes of Angola, & Congo, with all India, new Spaine, and Braſile; yet neither is it altogither falſe: For no part of the world hath greater deſerts, nor vaſter wildernes, then this of Africa. Theſe deſerts, which extend themſelues from the Atlanticke Ocean euen vnto the borders of Egypt, for more then a thouſand miles, and runne out ſometimes two hundred, and otherwhiles 300. miles in bredth, diuide Africke into two parts: whereof the ſoutherly part was neuer throughly knowne to the people of Europe, as alſo Atlas, which diuideth Numidia from Africa the leſſe, is ſome impediment to the ſame: And towards the eaſt it ſeemeth that nature alſo ment to conceale the ſame, by thoſe deſerts that lye bewixt the Red ſea and the lande of Egypt. In the firſt times after the floud we finde mention very often made of the kingdomes of Egypt, and Ethiopia: and as for Ethiopia the notice we had thereof, was but obſcure and confuſed: But Egypt, by reaſon of the commodious ſituation thereof betweene the Mediterran, and the Red ſeas, hath alwaies beene renowmed and famous: yea king *Seſoſtris* that Egyptian monarch enlarged his empire from the Atlantick Ocean, euen to the Euxine ſea: Afterwards the kings of Numidia, & Mauritania, & the Carthaginians flouriſhed in thoſe prouinces which are bounded by the Mediterran ſea. In our times, wherein all Africke hath beene and is daily enuironed, there is ſufficient knowledge had of the Marine parts thereof, but for the inland prouinces there is not ſo much knowne as might be, rather through want of writers then for default of diſcouerie & trade. Now therfore leauing thoſe parts of Africa which are poſſeſſed by the Turke and the king of Spaine, to a briefe

briefe narration in the laſt place, we haue reduced al the reſidue of our relations to three princes: that is, to *Prete Ianni*, the *Monomotapa*, and the *Xeriffo*, who is king of Maroco and Fez; for the reſt referring you to *Iohn Leo*, and the diſcourſe prefixed before him: the *Xeriffo* raigneth betweene Atlas and the Atlanticke Ocean; *Prete Ianni* about the center of Africke: and the *Monomotapa* hath his Empire towards the Sinus Barbaricus, or the Barbarian gulphe.

The Empire of Prete Ianni. or Preſter Iohn.

THe Empire of *Prete Ianni* anſwereth not certainly in effect, (although it be very large) vnto the fame and opinion which the common ſort, and moſt writers haue of it: For latelieſt of any other *Horatio Malugucci* in a certaine diſcourſe of his, touching the greatnes of ſtates at this day, would needes haue his dominion to be greater then any other princes, but the king of Spaine. I confeſſe indeede, that in times paſt his ſtate had moſt ample and large confines, as may be iudged by the multitude of kingdomes, with which he adorneth and ſetteth foorth his ſtile; for he entitleth himſelfe king of Goiame, a kingdome ſeated beyond Nilus, and of Vangue, and Damut ſituate beyond Zaire; and yet it is at this day euidently knowne, that his Empire ſcarcely reacheth vnto Nilus: yea and *Iohn Barros* writeth, that the Abaſſins haue little notice of that riuer, by reaſon of the mountaines lying betweene them and it. The hart or center of his ſtate, is the lake Barcena: for on the eaſt it extendeth from Suaquen, as farre as the entrance of the Red ſea, for the ſpace of an hundred and two and twentie leagues: howbeit betwixt the Red ſea and it, there thwarteth a long ranke of mountaines, inhabited by the Moores, who alſo commaund the ſea-coaſt. On the weſt it hath another ridge of mountaines along the channell of Nilus, enhabited by the Gentiles, who pay tribute vnto the *Prete*. On the north it confineth with an imaginarie line drawne from Suaquen to the furtheſt part of the iſle of Meroe, which is an hundred and fiue and twentie leagues long: From hence it maketh as it were a bow, but not very crooked, towards the ſouth, euen to the kingdome of Adel (from the mountaines whereof ſpringeth that riuer which *Ptolemey* calleth Raptus, and placeth to the ſouth of Melinde) for the ſpace of two hundred and thirtie leagues; all which diſtance is bordered vpon by the Gentiles: from whence it turneth and endeth eaſtward at the kingdome of Adel, whoſe head citie is Arar, in the northerly latitude of nine degrees: So that this whole empire, little more or leſſe, amounteth to ſixe hundred threeſcore and twelue leagues in circuite: The countrie (which is diſtinguiſhed with ample plaines, pleaſant hils, and high mountaines, moſt of them manurable, and well inhabited) bringeth foorth barley and myll (for it aboundeth not greatly with other ſortes of graine) and likewiſe Taffo da guza, another good and durable ſeede: But

there

there is mill, and Zaburro (which we call the graine of India, or Ginnie wheate) great plenty, with al sorts of our pulse, and some also vnknowen to ys. Some of them weare clothes of cotton: but the greater part are clad in sheeps skinnes, and those which are more honourable, in the skins of Lyons, Tigres, and Ounces. They haue all kindes of our domesticall creatures, as hennes, geese, and such like, as also abundance of kine, and wild swine, harts, goates, hares, but no conies, besides panthers, lyons, Ounces, and elephants. To conclude, there cannot be a countrie more apt then this, for the generation and increase of all plants and creatures. True it is, that it hath little helpe or furtherance by the industrie of the inhabitants, because they are of a sloathfull dul nature, and capacitie. They haue flaxe, and yet can make no cloath, sugar canes, and know not the arte of getting the sugar thereout; yron, and haue no vse thereof, but take all smithes to be negromancers: They haue riuers, and waters, and know not how to better their possessions by them. They conceaue not greatly of hunting or fishing: whereupon the fieldes are full of birdes and wild beastes, and the riuers and lakes, of fish. An other reason of their slacknes and negligence, is the euill intreatie of the communaltie by those of the mightier sort: for the poore seeing euery thing taken from them that they haue, sow no more, then verie necessity vrgeth them vnto. Their speech also is without any rule or prescription, and to write a letter, requireth a great assembly of men, and many dayes to deliberate thereon. The nobles, cittizens, and peasants liue distinctly and apart, and any of these may purchase nobility by some famous, or worthie act. The first borne inherite all things.

There is not in all the countrie a castel, or fortified place, for they thinke, as the Spartanes did, that a country should be mayntained and defended by force of armes, and not with rampires of earth or stone. They dwell for the most part dispersed in townes and villages. Their trade of marchandise is performed by exchanging one thing for an other, supplying the ouerplus of their prises with wheat or salt: pepper, incense, myrrhe, & salt, they sell for the waight in gold. In their bargaines they vse gold also, but by waight, siluer is not ordinary among them. Their greatest city is the Princes court, which is neuer firme and resident in one place, but remoueth here & there, and remaineth in the open fieldes vnder tentes. This courte comprehendeth ten, or more miles in compasse.

His Gouernment.

Prete Ianni his gouernment is very absolute, for he holdeth his subiects in most base seruitude, and no lesse the noble and great, then those of meaner qualitie and condition, intreating them rather like slaues, then subiects: and the better to doe this, he maintaineth him selfe amongst them in the reputation of a sacred and diuine person. Al men bow at the name of the Prince, and touch the earth with their hand: they reuerence the tent where-

in he lyeth, and that when he is abſent alſo. The *Pretes* in times paſt were wonte to be ſeene of the people but onely once in three yeeres ſpace, and afterwardes they ſhewed themſelues thrice in a yeere, that is on Chriſtmas, and Eaſter daye, as alſo on holy Rood day in September. *Panuſius* who now raigneth, albeit he is growen more familiar then his predeceſſors, yet when any commiſſion commeth from him, the partie to whom it is directed heareth the wordes thereof naked, from the girdle vpward, neither putteth he on his apparrell, but when the king permitteth him. The people though they bind it with an oath, yet do they ſeldome ſpeake truth, but when they ſweare by the kinges life, who giueth and taketh away, what great ſignioríe ſoeuer it pleaſeth him, neither may he, from whom it is taken, ſo much as ſhew him ſelfe agreeued therewith. Except the giuing of holy orders and the adminiſtration of the ſacraments, he diſpoſeth as well of the religious as of the laye ſort, and of their goodes.

On the way he rideth, enuironed with high and long red curtaynes, which compaſſe him on euery ſide. He weareth vſually vpon his head, a crowne halfe gold, halfe ſiluer, and a croſſe of ſiluer in his hand: his face is couered with a peece of blew taffata, which he lifteth vp, or letteth downe, more or leſſe, according as he fauoreth them that he treateth withall: and ſometimes he only ſheweth the end of his foot, which he putteth forth from vnder the ſaid curtaines. They that carrie and returne ambaſſages, come not to his curtaine, but with long time, diuers ceremonies, and ſundry obſeruations. None hath ſlaues but himſelfe, to whome euery yeere his ſubiects come to do homage. This prince (as the Abaſſins report) deſcendeth from a ſonne of *Salomon*, & the Queen of *Saba*, called *Meilech*: they receiued the faith vnder Queene *Candaces*, in whoſe time the familie of Gaſpar began to raigne and flouriſh in Ethiopia, and from him after thirteene generations came *Iohn* called the holie. This man about the time of *Conſtantinus* the Emperor, becauſe he had no children, leauing the kingdome to his brother *Caius* eldeſt ſonne, inueſted *Baltaſar*, and *Melchior*, younger brothers, one in the kingdome of Fatigar, and the other in Giomedi: whereupon the royall blood grew to be deuided into three families, namely that of Baltaſar, that of Gaſpar, and the third of Melchior, ordayning that the Empire aboue all others ſhould be giuen by election to ſome one of the foreſaid families, ſoe it were not to the eldeſt borne. For theſe firſt borne there were particular kingdomes appointed. And to auoide ſcandale and tumult, hee decreed that the Emperours brothers with his neereſt kindred ſhould be encloſed as in a ſtrong caſtell, within* mount Amara; where he would alſo haue the Emperours ſonnes to be put, who cannot ſucceed in the Empire, nor haue any State at all, for which cauſe the Emperour ordinarily marrieth not.

** Of this mountaine read in the diſcourſe before the beginning of Leo.*

of

His forces both in reuenues and people.

HE hath two kindes of reuenues, for one consisteth in the fruits of his possessions, which he causeth to be manured by his slaues, and oxen. These slaues multiplie continuallie, for they marrie among themselues and their sonnes remaine in the condition of their progenitors. An other great reuenue cõmeth of his tributes, which are brought vnto him, from all those that hold dominion vnder him. And of these, some giue horses, some oxen, some gold, some cotton, and others other thinges. It is thought he hath great treasure as well of cloaths and iewels, as of gold, and also that he hath treasuries and large magazins of the same riches, so that writing once to the king of Portugal, he offered to giue for the maintenance of war against the Infidels, an hundred thousand drams of gold, with infinite store of men and victuall. They say, that he putteth ordinarilie euerie yeere into the castel of Amara, the value of three millions of ducates. It is true, that before the dayes of King Alexander they layde not vp so much golde, because they knew not how to purifie it: but rather iewels and wedges of gold. Also his commings-in may be said to bee of three sorts: for some he raiseth as it were, out of his crowne-landes: another part he leuieth of the people, that pay him so much for an house, and the tenth of all those mines that are digged by others then by himselfe: and a third reuenue he draweth from his tributarie princes and gouernours: and these giue him the entire reuenues of one of their cities, so as he choose not that citie wherein they make their residence. But though his wealth and reuenues be great, yet are his people of little worth, as well because he holdeth them in the estimation of slaues, by meanes whereof they want that generositie of minde, which maketh men ready to take vp armes, & to be couragious in dãgers: as also it seemeth they haue euer their handes bound with that awefull reuerence which they beare towards their Prince, and the feare they haue of him: and further, in that they haue no armes of defence but bad headpeeces, halfe sculles, and coats of maile, carried thither by the Portugals. Hereunto may be added his want of fortresses: for neither hauing strong places whither to retire, nor armes to defend themselues; they and their townes remaine as a pray to the enemie; their offensiue armes being vnfeathered arrowes, and some darts. They haue a lent of fiftie daies continuance, which through the great abstinence, wherein they passe all that time, doth so weaken and afflict them, that neither for those daies, nor many other following, they haue the strength to stirre abroad: whereupon the Moores attend this opportunitie, and assaile them with great aduantage. *Francis Aluares* writeth, that *Prete Ianni* can bring into the field, an hundred thousand men: neuertheless in time of neede it hath beene seene, that he could make nothing so many. He hath a militarie religion, or order of knighthood, vnder the protection of Saint *Anthonie*, whereunto euerie noble man must ordaine one of euerie three

three male children, but not the eldeſt. And out of theſe are conſtituted twelue thouſand knights or gentlemen for the kings guarde. The ende of this order is, to defend the confines of the empire, and to make head againſt the enimies of the faith.

Princes confining vpon the Prete Ianni.

THis Prince, as farre as we can certainly vnderſtand, confineth eſpecially with three other mightie princes: one is the king of Borno; another the great Turke; and the third the king of Adel. The king of Borno ruleth ouer that countrey which extendeth from Guangara towards the eaſt, about fiue hundred miles, betweene the deſerts of Seu, and Barca, being of an vneeuen ſituation, bicauſe it is partly mountainous, and partly plaine. In the plaines there dwelleth a very ciuill people in populous and much frequented villages, by reaſon of the abundance of graine, as alſo there is ſome concourſe of merchants thither. On the mountaines, ſhepheardes of great and ſmal beaſts do inhabite, and their chiefe ſuſtenance is mill: They lead a brutiſh life, without religion, with their wiues and children in common: They vſe no other proper names, but thoſe which are taken from the qualitie or forme of mens perſons: the lame, the ſquint eied, the long, the ſtuttering. This king of Borno is moſt mightie in men, vpon whom he laieth no other impoſition but the tenth of their fruits; their profeſſion is to robbe and ſteale from their neighbours, and to make them ſlaues: in exchange of whom, they haue of the merchants of Barbarie, horſes. He hath vnder him many kingdomes, and people, partly white, and partly blacke. He moleſteth the Abaſſines exceedingly with theftes, leadeth away their cattell, robbeth their mines, & maketh their men ſlaues. They fight on horſe-backe after the Gynnet faſhion, they vſe lances with two heads, & darts & arrowes: they aſſaile a countrey ſometimes in one part, and otherwhiles in another, ſuddenly: but theſe may rather be termed theeues and robbers then right enimies.

The Turke confineth with Abaſſia on the eaſt; as likewiſe the king of Adel, who hemmeth it in betweene the eaſt and the ſouth. They diſturbe the *Prete* exceedingly, reſtraining the limites of his Empire, and bringing his countrey into great miſerie: For the Turkes beſides the putting of a great part of Barnagaſſo, to ſacke and ſpoile; (vpon which they entred the yeere of our Lord, 1558.) although they were driuen out againe, haue further taken all that from the *Prete* which he poſſeſſed on the ſea coaſt: eſpeciallie the portes and townes of Suaquen and Ercoco: In which two places, the mountaines lying betwixt Abaſſia and the red ſea, doe open, and make a paſſage for conueiance of victual, and trafficke, betweene the Abaſſins, and the Arabians: And it is not long, ſince the Lord *Barnagaſſo* was conſtrained to accord with the Turke, and to buie the peace of his countrie

with

with the tribute of a thousand ounces of gold by the yeere. Also the King of *Adel* procureth hym no lesse molestation: This man confineth with the kingdome of Fatigar, and extendeth his dominion euen to the Red sea, where he hath Assum, Salir, Meth, Barbora, Pidar, and Zeila. At Barbora manie shippes of Aden, and Cambaia arriue with their marchandize for exchange; from whence they receiue much flesh, honie, wax, and victuals for Aden; and gold, Iuorie, and other thinges for Cambaia. A greater quantitie of victuall is carried from Zeila, because there is aboundance of waxe, and honie, with corne and diuers fruites, which are laden for Aden, and for Arabia, and beastes also, as namely sheepe, with tayles wayghing more then fiue and twentie poundes, with their heads and necks all blacke, but the rest of them is white: as also certaine other all white with tayles a fathome long, and writhen like a vine branche, hauing thropples vnder their throtes like bulles. There be also certaine kine with branched hornes like to wild hartes, being blacke in colour and some others red, with one onely horne vpon their foreheads of an handfull and an halfe long, turning backward. The chiefe city of this kingdome is Arar eight and thirtie leagues from Zeila towards the South east. This king being a Mahumetan by a perpetuall profession of making war against the christians of Abassia, who are the subiects of the *Prete*, hath obteined of those Barbarians the surname of Holy: He stayeth his oportunitie while the Abassins be weakened, and brought downe with that long and hard fast of fiftie daies, when they can scarcely go about their domesticall affaires; and then he entreth into the countrey, sacketh the townes, leadeth the people away into seruitude, and doth a thousand iniuries vnto them. The Abassin slaues are of great valew out of their owne countrey: whereupon the bordering, and other Princes both farre and neere esteeme them much, and many of them by meanes of their industrie in seruice, of slaues haue become captaines and great Commanders, in Arabia, Cambaia, Bengala, and Sumatra: Bicause the Mahumetan princes of the east, being all tirants ouer kingdomes vsurped from the Gentiles, for securitie of their state, put no trust in their owne subiects: but arme themselues with a multitude of strange slaues, to whom they commit their persons, and the gouernment of their kingdome. And among all other slaues the Abassines beare away the bell, aswell for fidelitie, as for sound and good complexion. And bicause the king of Adel, with the multitude of these Abassin slaues, which he taketh in the townes and territories of *Prete Ianni*, filleth all Egypt, and Arabia (in exchange of whom he hath armour, munition, and soldiers, both from the Turke, and the Arabian Princes) in the yeere of our Lord 1550. *Claudius* king of Abassia, being after this sort sorely oppressed by *Gradaamed* king of Adel, who now for the space of fowerteene yeeres had with continuall incursions greeuously molested, and disturbed him, enforcing him to leaue his confines, and to retire into the hart of his empire, demaunded aide of *Stephano Gama*, the Indian Viceroy of *Iohn* the third king of Portugale, who was then with a good

fleete vpon The red sea. Whereupon he sent him fower hundred Portugals, with a good quantitie of armes, and small shot, vnder the gouernment of *Christopher da Gama* his brother. With these men by the benefit of shot, he ouerthrew the enimie in two battailes; but in the third, the king of Adel hauing receiued a thousand Turkish harquebuziers from the gouernour of Zebit, with ten peeces of artillerie, the Abassins were put to flight, and discomfited, and their captaine taken prisoner, and put to death. But the king of Adel afterwards sending backe the said Turkes, he and his people were sodainly assailed, neere the riuer of Zeila, and mount Saual, by king *Claudius* with threescore thousand foote, and fiue hundred Abassin horse, togither with those Portugales, who remained of the former ouerthrow, one of whom wounded *Gradamed* dangerously. But in the moneth of March, the yeere of our Lord 1559. king *Claudius* being set vpon againe by the *Malacai* Mores, he was slaine in the battaile: and the enimie-king acknowledging so great a victorie from the handes of God, triumphed vpon an asse.

Adamas brother vnto king *Claudius* succeeded him, against whom (for he was halfe a Mahumetan) the best part of the Abassine nobilitie rebelled, and he was defeated by the Barnagasso in the yeere 1562. who hauing thus for a while disturbed the affaires of Ethiopia, it seemed that they were at length asswaged, & reestablished vnder *Alexander*, by the aide of the Portugals, who haue carried thither armes as well of offence, as defence, and stirred vp the mindes and courages of the Abassines, by their example, to warre; For all those that remained of the discomfiture giuen to *Christopher Gama*, and diuers others which came thither afterwards, and do daily there arriue and staie, do marrie wiues, and haue children; and *Alexander* permitted them to elect a iudge, who might execute iustice among them: So that they haue, and do daily bring into Abassia, the manner of warfare in Europe, with our vse of armes, and the manner of fortifying passages and places of importance. Afterwards certaine Florentines went into those countries, partly vpon pleasure, and partly for affaires of merchandize. For *Francesco di Medici* great Duke of Florence, had some commerce with the Abassines. The *Prete* therefore giues entertainment, and maketh much of the Frankes, (for so do they call the people of Europe) and hardly giueth them license to depart out of his kingdome. Besides these the *Prete Ianni* hath diuers other enimies, amongst whom is the king of Dancali, to whom the towne and port of Vela vpon the red sea pertaineth; he confineth with Balgada. The Moores also vexe him greatly, which inhabite the prouince, called Dobas, deuided into fowerteene Signiories; for though they be within the confines of *Prete Ianni* his empire, yet notwithstanding for the most part they rebell from him: they haue a lawe, that none of them may marrie, before he first giue testimoniall that he hath slaine twelue Christians.

of

Of the Emperour of Monomotapa.

CONcerning the state of this mightie Emperour, and of his neighbour of Mohenemugi, and of the limits of both their dominions, as likewise of the Amazones and Giacchi the chiefe strength of their militarie forces, and other memorable matters; to auoide tedious repetitions, I referre the reader to the discourse going before the booke: saue onely that I will heere annexe a briefe testimony out of Osorius lib 4 de reb gest. Eman. which may adde some small light vnto the treatise before mentioned.

But (saith he) in this part of Ethiopia lying beyond the cape of good hope which is bounded by the south Ocean, there is a most ample kingdome called Benomotapa, whereunto before such time as the Portugals discouered those parts, all the kinges vpon that coast were most obediently subiect. It aboundeth with gold beyond all credite: which is taken euen out of their riuers and lakes. Yea many kings there are which pay yeerely tribute of gold vnto this king of Benomotapa. The people worship no Idols, but acknowledge one God the creatour of heauen and earth. In habite and apparell they are not much vnlike to other Ethiopians. They worship their king with woonderfull superstition. This king in his scutcheon or coate of armes hath two signes of maiestie. One is a certaine little spade with a handle of iuorie. The other are two small dartes. By the spade he exhorteth his subiects to husbandrie, that they may not through sloth and negligence let the earth lie vntilled, and so for want be constrained to play the theeues. The one of his darts betokeneth, that he will be a seuere punisher of malefactors; & the other, that he will by valour & force of armes resist all forren inuasions. The sonnes of his tributarie kings are trained vp in his court; both to the end that by this education they may learne loialtie and loue towards him their soueraigne, and also that they may remaine as pledges to keepe their fathers in awe and due obedience. He is continually guarded with a mightie armie; notwithstanding he be conioined in most firme league with all his neighbour-princes. For by this meanes he supposeth that warre cannot procure him any danger at all, knowing right well that oftentimes in the midst of peace it is readie to disturbe the securitie of Princes. Euery yeere this king sendeth certaine of his courtiers and seruants to bestow in his name newe fire vpon all the princes and kings within his dominions, that from them it may be distributed vnto others also. Which is done in manner following. The messenger being come to the house of any prince, his fire is immediately quenched. Then is there a new fire kindled by the messenger: and foorthwith all the neighbours resort thither to fetch of the said new fire for their houses. Which whosoeuer refuseth to performe, is helde as a traiterous rebell, and receiueth such punishment as is liable to high treason; yea if need be, an armie is leuied to apprehend him, to the end that being taken, he may be put to such torments as are correspondent to his disloialtie. Hitherto *Osorius*.

Benomotapa most rich in gold.

The kings armes.

A discreet course.

A yeerely superstitious custome of distributing fire from the king to his tributarie princes.

Of

The Xeriffo, commonly called The king of Maroco Sus, and Fez.

AMong all the princes of Africa, I ſuppoſe that there is not anie one, who in richnes of ſtate, or greatnes of power, may be preferred before the Xeriffo: In that his dominion, which comprehendeth all that part of Mauritania, called by the Romaines Tingitana, extendeth it ſelfe north & ſouth from Capo Boiador, euen to Tanger, and eaſt and weſt from the Atlanticke Ocean, as farre as the riuer Muluia, and ſomewhat further alſo, in which ſpace is comprehended the faireſt, fruitfulleſt, beſt inhabited, and moſt ciuill part of all Africk, and among other the ſtates, the moſt famous kingdomes of Maroco and Fez. With the particular deſcription whereof, and of all the prouinces, cities, townes, riuers, mountaines, &c. therein contained, the Reader may ſatisfie himſelfe to the full in the ſecond and third bookes of the hiſtorie of *Iohn Leo* before ſet downe.

Theſe kingdomes beſides their natural fertilitie, are very traffickable; for though the king of Fez hath no hauen of importance vpon the Mediterranean ſea, neuertheleſſe the Engliſh, French, and other nations traffick much to his ports vpon the Ocean, eſpecially to *Larache, Santa Cruz, Cabo de Guer, and in other places perteining partly to the kingdome of Fez, and partly to Maroco; and they bring thither copper, and braſſe, with armes and diuers commodities of Europe, for which among other things they returne ſugar.

* *Deſcribed by Leo in his fifth booke vnder the name of Lharais.*

But becauſe theſe kingdomes of Maroco and Fez, and diuers other Signiories, and Principalities, at firſt ſeparate and deuided, were vnited not long ſithence vnder one Prince, who is called *the Xeriffo, it will not be much from our purpoſe (becauſe among the accidents of our times, I think there is not any one, more notable or wonderfull then this) to ſet downe here how the matter paſſed.

* *Or Miramomin.*

The maner how the Xeriffos aſpired to the kingdomes of Maroco, Sus, and Fez.

About the yeere of our Lord 1508 a certaine Alchaide borne in Tigumedet a towne of Dara, whoſe name was *Mahumet Benametto*, and who cauſed himſelfe to be called *Xeriffo*, being a ſubtile man, and of a minde no leſſe ambitious, then learned in thoſe ſciences, whereunto the Mahumetans are moſt addicted, began to grow famous in the townes of Numidia. This man vaunting himſelfe to be deſcended of *Mahumets* progenie, was poſſeſſed with an imagination (truſting in the deuiſion of the States of Affricke, wherein then the Portugals bore great ſway) of taking into his owne hands all *Mauritania Tingitana. For performance of this, he firſt ſent his three ſonnes, *Abdel*, *Abnet*, and *Mahumet*, in pilgrimage to Mecca and Medina, there to viſit & do reuerence to the ſepulchre of their Seductor *Mahumet*. The yoong men performed this voyage with ſo great fame and reputation of ſanctitie and religion (if theſe words may be vſed, in declaring of ſuch an impietie

* *Or the kingdomes of Maroco, and Fez.*

impietie) that in their returne, the people came out to meete them, kiſſed their garments, and reuerenced them as ſaints. They fayning themſelues to be rauiſhed into deepe contemplation, went vp and downe the ſtreetes ſighing, and crying out in words interrupted with lamentation & yerning: Alá, Alá; and they liued of nothing but almes. Their father hauing taken them home with great mirth and ioy: but yet not minding to ſuffer this ſudden applauſe & credit, which they had obtayned by ſuch a pilgrimage, to freeze and wax cold; he ſent two of them which were * *Amet* and *Mahumet* to Fez; where being courteouſly receiued by the king, one of them became a Reader in the Amodoraccia, a moſt famous colledge of that citie, and the the yoongeſt was made tutor to the ſame kings yoong ſonnes. Theſe two ſeeing themſelues ſo entirely beloued of the king, and in ſo great fauour with the people, being aduiſed by their father, and taking occaſion vpon the damage which the Arabians & Moores did to thoſe of their owne law & ſect, vnder the enſignes of the Portugals, in whoſe paie they ſerued. They demaunded leaue of the king to diſplay a banner againſt the Chriſtians, putting him in hope, (as indeed it fell out) that they would eaſily draw thoſe Moores vnto him, who were followers of the crowne of Portugall, and by this meanes ſecure the prouinces of Sus, Hea, Ducala, Maroco, with others moleſted, & euilly entreated by the Portugals. This requeſt was contradicted by *Mullei Nazer*, brother to the king: for (ſaid he) if theſe men, vnder pretence of holines, and defence of their law, ſhall haue ſome proſperous proceedings with armes in hand, it will not afterwards be in thy power (O king) to bridle or bring them downe: for armes make men couragious, & by victories they prooue inſolent, & the rout of ambitious people are alwaies deſirous of innouation. But the king who had a great opinion of their ſanctitie, making ſmall account of the reaſons his brother alleaged vnto him, gaue them a banner, and drumſlade, and twentie horſe to accompanie them, with letters of recommendation to the Arabians, the princes, and the cities of Barbarie. With theſe beginnings many people running headlong after their fame, they ouercame Ducala, and the countrey of * Saphia, and went forward euen as farre as Cabo de Guer, (which places then were ſubiect to the Portugals) and finding themſelues ſtrong, both in retinue and credite, they demanded of the people (who at that time liued for the moſt part freely, and came in to none, but ſuch as they liked of themſelues) that ſeeing they now tooke vp armes, for the Mahumetane law againſt the Chriſtians, they ſhould aide them with their tenthes due vnto God: the which were preſently yeelded vnto them by the people of Dara, and ſo they ſeazed by little and little vpon Tarodant (where their father was made gouernour) and likewiſe of Sus, Hea, Ducala, and other places adioining. They firſt planted themſelues in Tedneſt, and then in Teſarote, and in a conflict ouerthrew *Lopes Barriga*, a famous captaine amongſt the Portugals: but ſo they loſt their owne elder brother therein. And afterwards by faire words entring into the citie of Maroco, they poiſoned the king, and in his ſtead made

* *Or Abnet.*

* *Or Azaphi.*

made *Amet Xeriffo* to be proclaimed king of Maroco. In the meane while the Arabians of Ducala,& Xarquia came to hand blowes with those of Garbia, each partie holding themselues in the *Xeriffoes* fauour; but the *Xeriffos* perceiuing the skirmish to grow hot, and that many both of the one and of the other party went to wrack,turned their armes against them both,and enriched themselues with their spoiles. In former times they vsed to send vnto the king of Fez the fift of all those booties which they got; but after this victory,making no reckoning of their said custom,they presented him only with six horses,and six camels,& those but silly ones:wherat being mooued, he sent to demand of them the fift part of their spoiles, and the tribute that the king of Maroco paied him,threatning otherwise warre vpon them. But in the meane while,this man dying, *Amet* his sonne,who was scholler to the yoonger *Xeriffo*, was not onely content, but further confirmed *Amet* in the Signiorie of Maroco,so that in some small matter he would acknowledge the kings of Fez for soueraigne Princes ouer that citie. But on the other side the *Xeriffi*,whose reputation and power daily encreased,when the time of paying tribute came, sent to certifie this yoong king, that being lawfull successors to *Mahumet*, they were not bound to paie tribute to any, and that they had more right to Affrica then he: so that if he would haue them his friends,so it were; otherwise if he ment to diuert them from this their warre against the Christians, they should not want courage nor power to defend themselues. Wherewith the Fessan king being offended, proclaimed warre against them, and went himselfe in person to the siege of Maroco: but at the very first he was driuen to dislodge: and afterwards returning with eighteene thousand horse, amongst whom were two thousand harquebuziers,or bowmen, he was vanquished by the *Xeriffi*, who had no more but seuen thousand horse, and twelue hundred harquebuziers which were placed on the way at the passage of a riuer. By meanes of this victorie the *Xeriffi* shooke off the tribute of that countrie, and passing ouer Atlas, they tooke Tafilete,an important citie: and partly by faire meanes, partly by force, they brought diuers people of Numidia to their obedience, as also those of the mountaines. In the yeere of our Lord 1536. the yoonger *Xeriffo* who was now called king of Sus, hauing gathered togither a mightie armie, and much artillerie, taken in part from the king of Fez, and partly cast by the French Renegados,he went to the enterprise of Cabo de Guer, a very important fortification, held then by the Portugals, which was built and fortified first at the charge of *Lopes Sequeira*: and afterward, knowing their opportunitie from the king *Don Emanuel*, there was fought on both sides a most terrible battell. In the end, fire taking hold on the munition, and vpon this the souldiers being daunted that defended the fortresse, the *Xeriffo* entred thereinto, tooke the towne,and made the greatest part of the garrison his prisoners. By this victorie the *Xeriffi* brought in a manner all Atlas and the kingdome of Maroco to their obedience, & those Arabians who serued the crowne of Portugall. Whereupon king *Iohn* the third,

Artillerie cast by French Renegados.

seeing

seeing that his expences farre exceeded the reuenues which came in, of his owne accord gaue ouer Safia, Azamor, Arzilla, and Alcazar, holds which he had on the coast of Mauritania.

This prosperitie was an occasion of grieuous discord betwixt the Brothers: the issue whereof was, that the younger hauing in two battels subdued the elder (whereof the second was in the yeere of our Lord 1554) and taken him prisoner, he banished him to Tafilet: and afterwards turning his armes against the king of Fez, after hauing taken him once prisoner, and then releasing him, he yet the second time (because he brake promise) got him into his handes againe, depriued him of his estate, and in the end caused both him and his sonnes to be slaine; and by meanes of his owne sonnes he also tooke Tremizen.

In the meane while *Sal Araes* viceroy of Algier fearing the Xeriffos prosperous successe, gathered together a great army, with which he first recouered Tremizen, & afterwards defeating the Xeriffo, conquered Fez, and gaue the gouernment thereof to *Buasson* Prince of Veles: but this man ioyning battaile with the Xeriffo, lost at one instant both his citie and kingdome. In the ende *Mahumet* going to Tarodant was vpon the way slaine in his pauilion, by the treason of some Turkes, suborned thereunto by the viceroy of *Algier*, of whom one *Assen* was the chiefe: who together with his companions went into Tarodant, and there made hauock of the kinges treasures: But in their returne home, they were all, but fiue, slaine by the people, in the yeere 1559: and *Mullei Abdala* the *Xeriffos* sonne, was proclaimed and saluted king.

Let thus much suffice to haue bin spoken of the *Xeriffo*: whose proceedinges appeare much like to those of *Ismael* the sophie of Persia. Both of them procured followers by bloud and the cloake of religion: both of them subdued in short time many countries: both of them grew great by the ruine of their neighbours both of them receiued greeuous checkes by the Turkes, and lost a part of their states: for *Selym* tooke from *Ismael*, Cacamit and diuers other cities of Diarbena: And the viceroy of Algier did driue the *Xeriffo* out of Tremizen, and his other quarters: And euen as *Selim* won Tauris, the head citie of Persia, and afterwardes gaue it ouer: so *Sal Araes* tooke Fez the head citie of Mauritania, and then after abandoned the same.

The Xeriffo his reuenues, or commings in.

THe *Xeriffo* is absolute Lord of all his subiects goods, yea and of their persons also. For though he charge them with neuer so burdensome tributes, and impositions; yet dare they not so much as open their mouthes: He receiueth from his tributarie vassals, the tenthes, and first fruits of their corne and cattell. True it is, that for the first fruits he taketh no more but one for twentie, and the whole being aboue twentie, he demandeth no more

more then two, though it amount to an hundred. For euery dayes tilth of grounde he hath a ducate and a quarter, and so much likewise for euerie house; as also, he hath after the same rate of euerie person aboue fifteene yeers old, male, or female; and when need requireth, a greater summe: and to the end that the people may the more cheerefullie pay that which is imposed vpon them, he alwaies demaundeth halfe as much more as he is to receiue. Most true it is, that on the mountaines there inhabite certaine fierce and vntamed people, who by reason of the steep, craggie, and inexpugnable situation of their countrie cannot be forced to tributes; that which is gotten of them, is the tenth of their corne and fruits, onely that they may be permitted to haue recourse into the plaines. Besides these reuenues, the king hath the towles and customes of Fez, and of other cities: For at the entring of their goods, the naturall citizen payeth two in the hundred, and the stranger ten.

Caruuen the principall Mahumetan temple in Fez, being a mile and an halfe about. Read Leo, lib. 3.

He hath further, the reuenues of milles, and many other thinges, the summe whereof is very great: for the milles yeelde him little lesse then halfe a royall of plate, for euerie Hanega of corne that is ground in Fez, where, (as they say) there are aboue foure hũdred mils. The moschea of Caruuen had foure score thousand ducates of rent: the colledges and hospitals of Fez had also many thousands. Al which the king hath at this present. And further he is heire to all the Alcaydes, and them that haue pension of him, and at their deaths he possesseth their horses, armour, garments, and al their goodes. Howbeit if the deceased leaue any sonnes apt for the seruice of the warres, he granteth them their fathers prouision; but if they be but young, he bringeth vp the male children to yeeres of seruice, and the daughters, till they be married. And therefore, that he may haue some interest in the goods of rich men, he bestoweth vpon them some gouernment, or charge, with prouision. Wherefore for feare of confiscation after death, euery one coueteth to hyde his wealth, or to remoue far from the court, and the kings sight. For which cause the citie of Fez commeth far short of hir ancient glorie. Besides, his reuenues haue beene augmented of late yeeres by mightie sums of gold, which he fetcheth from Tombuto and Gago in the lande of Negros; which gold (according to the report of some) may yeerely amount to three millions of ducates.

His Forces.

THe *Xeriffo* hath not any Fortresses of great importance, but only vpon the sea-coast, as Cabo de Guer, Larache, and Tetuan: for as the Turks and Persians do, so he placeth the strength of his state in armed men: but especially in horse. And for this cause he standeth not much vpon his artillerie; although hee hath very great store (which his predecessors tooke from the Portugals and others) in Fez, Maroco, Tarodant, and in the foresaide portes; causing also more to bee cast, when neede requireth; for he wanteth

wanteth not maſters of Europe in this Science. He hath an houſe of munition in Maroco, where they make ordinarily ſix and fortie quintals of powder euery moneth; as likewiſe alſo caliuers and ſteele-bowes. In the yeere of our Lord 1569. a fire tooke hold on theſe houſes with ſuch furie, that a great part of the citie was deſtroied therewith. But for the *Xeriffoes* forces, they are of two ſorts: the firſt is of two thouſand ſeuen hundred horſe, and two thouſand harquibuziers, which he hath partly in Fez, but moſt in Maroco (where he is reſident) being as it were of his daily guard. The ſecond is of a roiall ſquadron of ſixe thouſand gentlemen, being all of noble parentage, and of great account. Theſe men are mounted vpon excellent horſes, with furniture and armes, for varietie of colour moſt beautifull, and for riches of ornament beyonde meaſure eſtimable: for euery thing about them ſhineth with gold, ſiluer, pearle, iewels, and whatſoeuer elſe may pleaſe the eie, or ſatisfie the curioſitie of beholders. Theſe men, beſides prouiſion of corne, oile, butter, and fleſh, for themſelues, their wiues, children, and ſeruants, receiue further in wages, from ſeuentie to an hundred ounces of ſiluer a man. The third ſort of forces which he hath, conſiſteth of his * Timariotti: for the *Xeriffo* granteth to all his ſons, and brothers, and other perſons of account or authoritie among the people of Africke, or to the princes of the Arabians, the benefite of great Lordſhips & tenures for ſuſtentation of his Cauallarie: and the Alchaides themſelues till the fields, and afterwardes reape rice, oile, barly, butter, ſheepe, hens, and monie, and diſtribute the ſame monethly to the ſouldiers; according to the ſeuerall qualitie of their perſons. They alſo giue them cloth, linnen, and ſilke to apparell themſelues, armes of offence, and defence, and horſes, with which they ſerue in the warres, and if they die or be killed, they allow them other. A thing which was alſo vſed in Rome, towards them that ſerued on publike horſes. Euerie one of theſe leaders contendeth to bring his people into the fielde well ordred, for armes, apparell, and horſes: beſides this, they haue betweene fower and twentie and thirtie ounces of ſiluer wages euery yeere. His fourth militarie forces, are the Arabians, who liue continually in their Auari, (for ſo they call their habitations, each one of them conſiſting of an hundred, or two hundred pauilions) gouerned by diuers Alchaides, to the end they may be readie in time of need. Theſe ſerue on horſe-backe, but they are rather to be accounted theeues, then true ſoldiers. His fift kinde of forces militarie, are ſomewhat like vnto the trained ſoldiers of Chriſtian princes; and among theſe, the inhabitants of cities and villages of the kingdome, and of the mountaines are enrolled. It is true, that the king makes but little account of them, & very ſeldome puts armes into their hands, for feare of inſurrections and rebellions, except in the warres againſt the Chriſtians, for then he cannot conueniently forbid them: For it being written in their law, that if a Moore kil a Chriſtian, or is ſlaine by him, he goeth directly into Paradiſe, (a diabolicall inuention) men, women, and thoſe of euery age and degree, run to the warres hand ouer head, that at leaſt they may there be ſlaine; and

** These are a militarie order, like vnto them which hold land with vs vnder the tenure of knights ſeruice.*

by this meanes (according to their fooliſh opinion) gaine heauen. No leſſe zeale, to our confuſion, may we perceiue in the Turks eſpecially for defence of their ſect: for one would thinke they went to a marriage, and not to the warre, ſcarcely being able with patience to attend their prefixed time of going thither. They repute them holy and happie, that die with armes in hand againſt their enimies; as on the contrarie, thoſe men vnhappie, and of little woorth, that die at home, amidſt the lamentation of children, and outcries of women.

By the things aboue ſet downe, we may eaſily comprehend, what numbers of men the *Xeriffo* can bring into the field: but yet we may learne better by experience. For *Mullei Abdala* in the yeere 1562. beſieged Mazagan with two hundred thouſand men, choaking the ditch with a mountaine of earth, and beating downe the walles thereof with his Artillerie: but for all this, he was enforced by the valour of the Portugals, and the damage which he receiued by their mines, to giue ouer his ſiege. Beſides, this Prince can not continue a great war, aboue two, or three moneths: and the reaſon hereof is, becauſe his forces liuing on that prouiſion which he hath daylie comming in, as well for ſuſtenance as for aparrell, and not being able to haue all this conducted thither, where the war requireth, it followeth of neceſſitie, that in ſhort time they muſt needs returne home for their maintenance of life: and further it is an euident thing, that no man can protract a war at length, except he be rich in treaſure. *Molucco* who ouerthrew *Sebaſtian* king of Portugal, had in pay vnder his enſignes fortie thouſand horſe, and eight thouſand foote beſides Arabians and aduenturers: But it is thought, he could haue brought into the field, ſeuentie thouſand horſe, and more foot then he did.

Of the dominions and fortreſſes which the king of Spaine hath vpon the Iſles and maine landes of Africa, and of the great quantity of treaſure and other commodities which are brought from thence.

BEſides Oran, Merſalquibir, Melilla and Pennon which the king of Spaine poſſeſſeth within the ſtreights; as likewiſe, çeuta, Tanger, and Arzil, which by the title of Portugal he holdeth very neere the ſtreights of Gibraltar; and Mazagan in like ſort without the ſtreights mouth, twentie miles to the ſouthward of Arzil: he hath along the coaſt of Affrick, from Cape de Guer, to that of Guardafu, two ſorts of ſtates: for ſome are immediately vnder him; and others are as it were his adherents. The Ilands of Madera, Puerto Santo, the Canaries, the Iſles of Arguin, of Cabo Verde, the iſle Del Principe, with that of Sant Thomas, and others neere adioining, are immediately vnder his dominion. Theſe iſlands are maintained with their owne victuall, and prouiſion, and yet they haue alſo ſome out of Europe, as in like manner they ſend ſome thither: eſpecially ſugars and fruits,

wherewith

wherewith the isle of Madera woonderfully aboundeth, as also with wine. And the iland of Sant Thomas likewise hath great abundance of sugars. These States haue no incumbrance, but by the English and French men of warre, * which for all that go not beyond Cape Verde. At the ilands of Arguin, and at Sant George de la Mina, the Portugals haue planted factories in forme of fortresses, by meanes of which, they trade with the bordering people of Guinie and Libya, and get into their hands the gold of Mandinga, and other places neere about. Among the adherent Princes, the richest and most honorable, is the king of Congo, in that his kingdome is one of the most flourishing, and plentifull countries in all Ethiopia. The Portugals haue there two Colonies, one in the citie of S. Saluador, and an other in the island Loanda. They haue diuers rich commodities from this kingdome, but the most important is euery yeere about 5000. slaues, which they transport from thence, and sell them at good round prizes in all the isles and maine lands of the west Indies: and for the head of euerie slaue so taken vp, there is a good taxe paid to the crowne of Portugall. From this kingdome one might easily go to the countrie of *Prete Ianni*, for it is not thought to be very farre off: and it doth so abound with Elephants, victuall, and all other necessarie things, as would bring singular ease and commodity to such an enterprise. Vpon the kingdome of Congo confineth Angola, with whose prince of late yeeres *Paulo Dias* a Portugall captaine made war: And the principall occasion of this warre are certaine mines of siluer, in the mountaines of Cabambe, no whit inferior to those of Potossi; but by so much are they better, as fine siluer goeth beyond that which is base, and course. And out of doubt, if the Portugals had esteemed so well of things neere at hand, as they did of those farther off and remote, and had thither bent their forces wherewith they passed Capo de buena esperança, and went to India, Malaca, and the Malucoes; they had more easily, and with lesse charge found greater wealth for there are no countries in the world: richer in gold and siluer, then the kingdomes of Mandinga, Ethiopia, Congo, Angola, Butua, Toroa, Maticuo, Boro, Quiticui, Monomotapa, Cafati, and Mohenemugi. But humane auarice esteemeth more of an other mans, then his owne, and things remote appeere greater then those neere at hand. Betweene Cabo de buena esperança, and Cape Guardafu, the Portugals haue the fortresses of Sena Cephala and Mozambique. And by these they continue masters of the trade with the bordering nations, all which abound in gold and iuorie. By these fortresses they haue speciall commoditie, for their nauigation to the Indies; bicause their fleetes sometimes winter, and otherwhiles victuall, and refresh themselues there. In these parts the king of Melinde is their greatest friend, and those of Quiola, and other neighbour-islands, are their tributaries. The Portugals want nothing but men. For besides other islands, which they leaue in a manner abandoned, there is that of Saint Laurence, one of the greatest in all the world (being a thousand two hundred miles long, and fower hundred and fower-score broad)

* *Mine author heere much mistaketh the matter.*

the which, though it be not well tilled, yet for the goodnes of the soile it is apt and fit to be manured, nature hauing distinguished it with riuers, harbours, & most commodious baies. These States belonging to the crowne of Portugall, feare no other but such sea-forces, as may be brought thither by the Turkes. But the daily going to and fro of the Portugall fleetes, which coast along vp and downe those seas, altogither secureth them. In the yeere 1589. they tooke neere vnto Mombaza, fower gallies, and a galliot, belonging to the Turkes, who were so bold as to come euen thither.

The dominions of the great Turke in Africa.

THe great Turk possesseth in Africa all the sea-coast from Velez de Gumera, or (as some hold opinion) from the riuer Muluia, which is the easterne limite of the kingdome of Fez, euen to the Arabian gulfe or Red sea, except some few places (as namely Mersalcabir, Melilla, Oran, and Pennon) which the king of Spaine holdeth. In which space before mentioned are situate sundrie of the most famous cities and kingdomes in all Barbarie; that is to say, Tremizen, Alger, Tenez, Bugia, Constantina, Tunis, Tripolis, and all the countrey of Egypt, from Alexandria to the citie of Asna, called of old Siene, togither with some part of Arabia Troglodytica, from the towne of Suez to that of Suachen. Also in Africa the grand Signor hath fiue viceroies, called by the names of Beglerbegs or Bassas, namely at Alger, Tunis, Tripolis, at Missir for all Egypt, and at Suacher for those places which are chalenged by the great Turke in the dominions of *Prete Ianni*. Finally, in this part at Suez in the bottome of the Arabian gulfe, is one of his fower principall Arsenals, or places for the building, repairing, docking, and harbouring of his warlike gallies, which may lie heere vnder couert, to the number of fiue and twentie bottomes.

A ſummarie diſcourſe of the manifold Religions profeſſed in Africa: and firſt of the Gentiles.

AFrica containeth fower ſorts of people different in religion: that is to ſay, Gentiles, Iewes, Mahumetans, and Chriſtians. The Gentiles extend themſelues along the ſhoare of the Ocean, in a manner from Cabo Blanco, or the white Cape, euen to the northren borders of Congo; as likewiſe, from the ſoutherly bounds of the ſame kingdome, euen to Capo de buena Eſperança; & from thence, to that De los Corrientes: and within the land they ſpred out from the Ethiopick Ocean, euen vnto Nilus, and beyond Nilus alſo from the Ethiopick, to the Arabian ſea. Theſe Gentiles are of diuers ſorts, for ſome of them haue no light of God, or religion, neither are they gouerned by any rule or law. Wherupon the Arabians call them Cafri, that is to ſay, lawleſſe, or without law. They haue but fewe habitations, and they liue for the moſt part in caues of mountaines, or in woods, wherein they finde ſome harbour from winde and raine. The ciuileſt among them, who haue ſome vnderſtanding and light of diuinitie and religion, obey the Monomotapa, whoſe dominion extendeth with a great circuite, from the confines of Matama, to the riuer Cuama: but the nobleſt part thereof is comprehended betweene the mightie riuer of Magnice or Spirito Sancto, and that of Cuama, for the ſpace of ſixe hundred leagues. They haue no idols, and beleeue in one only God, called by them Mozimo. Little differing from theſe we may eſteeme the ſubiects of Mohenemugi. But among all the Cafri, the people called Agag or Giacchi, are reputed moſt brutiſh, inhabiting in woods and dens, and being deuourers of mans fleſh. They dwell vpon the left banke of Nilus, betweene the firſt and ſecond lake. The Anzichi alſo haue a ſhambles of mans fleſh, as we haue of the fleſh of oxen. They eate their enimies whom they take in war; they ſell their ſlaues to butchers, if they can light on no greater priſe: and they inhabit from the riuer Zaire, euen to the deſerts of Nubia. Some others of them are rather addicted to witchcraft, then to idolatrie: conſidering that in a man, the feare of a ſuperior power is ſo naturall, that though he adore nothing vnder the name and title of a God, yet doth he reuerence and feare ſome ſuperioritie, although he know not what it is. Such are the Biafreſi, and their neighbours, all of them being addicted in ſuch ſort to witchcraft, as that they vaunt, that by force of enchantment, they can not onely charme, and make men die, much more moleſt and bring

bring them to hard point: but further, raiſe windes and raine, and make the skie to thunder and lighten, and that they can deſtroy all herbes and plants, and make the flockes and heards of cattell to fall downe dead. Whereupon they reuerence more the diuell then any thing elſe: ſacrificing vnto him of their beaſts and fruits of the earth, yea their owne bloud alſo, and their children. Such are likewiſe the prieſts of Angola, whom they call Ganghe. Theſe make profeſſion that they haue in their hands dearth and abundance; faire weather and foule; life and death. For which cauſe it can not be expreſſed, in what veneration they are held among thoſe Barbarians. In the yeere 1587. a Portugall captaine being in a part of Angola with his ſouldiers, a Ganga was requeſted by the people, to refreſh the fields, which were drie and withered, with ſome quantitie of water. He needed no great intreatie, but going forth with diuers little bels, in preſence of the Portugals, he ſpent halfe an hower in fetching ſundry gambols & skips, & vttering diuers ſuperſtitious murmurings: and behold, a cloud aroſe in the aire, with lightning and thunder. The Portugals grew amazed; but all the Barbarians with great ioy admired and extolled vnto heauen, their Ganga, who now gaue out intolerable brags, not knowing what hung ouer his head: For the windes outragiouſly blowing, the skie thundring after a dreadfull manner, in ſtead of the raine by him promiſed, there fell a thunderbolt, which like a ſword cut his head cleane from his ſhoulders. Some other idolaters not looking much aloft, worſhip earthly things: ſuch were the people of Congo before their conuerſion, and are at this day thoſe, that haue not yet receiued the Goſpell. For theſe men worſhip certaine dragons with wings, and they fooliſhly nouriſh them in their houſes, with the delicateſt meates that they haue. They worſhip alſo ſerpents of horrible ſhape, goats, tygers, and other creatures, and the more they feare and reuerence them, by how much the more deformed and monſtrous they are. Amongſt the number of their gods alſo, they reckon bats, owles, owlets, trees, and herbes, with their figures in wood and ſtone: and they do not onely worſhip theſe beaſts liuing, but euen their very skins when they are dead, being filled with ſtraw, or ſome other matter: and the manner of their idolatrie is, to bow downe before the foreſaid things, to caſt themſelues groueling vpon the earth, to couer their faces with duſt, and to offer vnto them of their beſt ſubſtance. Some lifting vp their mindes a little higher, worſhip ſtarres, ſuch be the people of Guinie, and their neighbours, who are enclined to the worſhip of the ſunne, the greateſt part of them: and they hold opinion, that the ſoules of thoſe dead that liued well, mount vp into heauen, and there dwell perpetually neere vnto the ſunne. Neither want there amongſt theſe, certaine others ſo ſuperſtitious, as they worſhip for God the firſt thing they meete withall, comming out of their houſes. They alſo hold their kings in the account & eſtimation of Gods, whom they ſuppoſe to be deſcended from heauen, & their kings, to maintaine themſelues in ſuch high reputation, are ſerued with woonderfull ceremonies, neither will they be ſeene but very ſeldome.

Of

Of the Iewes.

THe Iewes who haue bene diſperſed by god throughout the whole world, to confirme vs in the holie faith, entered into Ethiopia in the Queene of *Sabas* daies, in companie of a ſon that *Salomon* had by her, to the number (as the Abaſſins affirme) of twelue thouſand, and there multiplied their generation exceedingly. In that they not onely filled Abaſſia, but ſpred themſelues likewiſe all ouer the neighbour prouinces. So that at this day alſo the Abaſſins affirme, that vpon Nilus towards the weſt, there inhabiteth a moſt populous nation of the Iewiſh ſtock, vnder a mightie K. And ſome of our moderne Coſmographers ſet downe a prouince in thoſe quarters, which they call The land of the Hebrewes, placed as it were vnder the equinoctiall, in certaine vnknowne mountaines, betweene the confines of Abaſſia, and Congo. And likewiſe on the north part of the kingdome of Goiame, and the ſoutherly quarter of the kingdome of Gorham, there are certaine mountaines, peopled with Iewes, who there maintaine themſelues free, and abſolute, through the inacceſſible ſituations of the ſame. For in truth by this means, the inhabitants of the mountaines (ſpeaking generally) are the moſt ancient, and freeſt people: in that the ſtrong ſituation of their natiue ſoile ſecureth them, from the incurſions of forraine nations, and the violence of their neighbours. Such are the Scottes in Britaine, and the Biſkaines in Spaine. But to return againe to our purpoſe: the Anzichi, who extend from the bankes of the riuer Zaire, euen to the confines of Nubia, vſe circumciſion, as alſo diuers other bordering people do, a thing that muſt neceſſarilie haue been brought in by the Iewes, & yet remayning ſtil in vſe, after the annihilation of the Moſaicall law amongſt them. Some alſo think, that the people called Cafri or Cafates at this day, who are gentiles, draw their originall from the Iewes, but being enuironed on euery ſide by Idolaters, they haue by little and little ſwarued from the law of Moſes: and ſo are become, as it were, inſenſibly, Idolaters. On the other ſide, the Iewes being woonderfully increaſed in Spaine, paſſed one after an other into Affricke and Mauritania, and diſperſed themſelues euen to the confines of Numidia, eſpeciallie by meanes of traffick, and the profeſſion of goldſmithes, the which being vtterly forbidden the Mahumetans, is altogether practiſed amongſt them by the Iewes, as are likewiſe diuers other mechanicall crafts, but principallie that of black ſmithes. A thing which notablie appeareth in mount Seſſaua in the kingdome of Maroco, and in mount Anteta. It is ſaid that Eitdeuet, a towne in the kingdome of Maroco, was inhabited by the Iewes, of the ſtock (as they affirme) of *Dauid*, who notwithſtanding by little and little are growne Mahumetans. The Iewes encreaſed afterwards in Affrick, when firſt *Ferdinando* king of Spaine called The catholicke, and after him *Emanuell* king of Portugal, put them forth of their dominions: For then many went ouer into the kingdomes of Fez and Maroco, and brought in thither

thither the artes and professions of Europe vnknowne before to those Barbarians. In Bedis, Teza, Elmedina, Tessa, and in Segelmesse euery place is full of them. They passe also by way of traffick euen to Tombuto, although *Iohn Leo* writeth how that king was so greatly their enemie, that he confiscated the goods of those that traded with them. It importeth me not to speake of Egypt, because it hath euer beene, as well by reason of the neernes of Palestina, as for the commodity of traffick, whereunto they are much enclined, as it were, their second countrie. Here in great number, and in a manner in all the cities and townes thereof, they exercise mechanicall arts, and vse traffick and merchandize, as also take vpon them the receit of taxes and customes: but aboue all other places, in Alexandria and Cairo, where they amount to the number of fiue and twentie thousand, and the ciuiller sort among them do vsually speake the Castilian toung.

Thus much may suffice to haue bin spoken concerning the Iewes. It now remaineth, that we come to intreat of the Mahumetans of Africa. Concerning whom, before we make any particular relation, it will not be amisse; for the readers more perfect instruction, to speake somewhat in generall: as namely of the sinister proceedings of their first seducer Mahumet; of the variety and propagation of their damned sects ouer the east and south parts of the world; of the fower principall nations which are the mainteiners and vpholders of this diabolicall religion; and of sundry other particulars most worthie the obseruation.

Of Mahumet, and of his accursed religion in generall.

Mahumet his father, was a certaine prophane Idolater called *Abdalá*, of the stock of *Ismael*, and his mother was one **Hennina* a Iew, both of them being of very humble, and poore condition. He was borne in the yeere of our Lord 562. and was endowed with a graue countenance and a quick wit. Being growne to mans estate, the Scenite Arabians, accustomed to rob, and runne all ouer the countrie, tooke him prisoner, and sold him to a Persian merchant, who discerning him to be apt, and subtile about busines, affected and held him in such account, that after his death his mistresse remaining a widow, scorned not to take him for her husband. Being therefore inriched by this meanes, with goods and credit, he raised vp his minde to greater matters. The times then answered very fitly for one that woulde disturbe or worke any innouation. For the Arabians vpon some euill entreatie were malecontented with the Emperour *Heraclius*. The heresies of *Arrius* and *Nestorius*, had in a miserable sort shaken and annoied the church of God. The Iewes, though they wanted power, yet amounted they to a great number. The Saracens preuailed mightily, both in number and force. And the Romaine Empire was full of slaues. *Mahumet* therefore taking hold on this opportunitie, framed a law, wherein all of them should haue some part, or prerogatiue. In this, two Apostata Iewes, and two heretikes,

* *Or Emina.*

heretikes, assisted him: of which, one was *Iohn*, being a scholler of *Nestorius* schoole; and the other *Sergius*, of the sect of *Arrius*. Whereupon the principall intention of this cursed law was wholie aimed against the diuinitie of our Sauiour Iesus Christ, wickedly oppugned by the Iewes and Arrians. He perswaded this law, first by giuing his wife to vnderstand, and his neighbours by her meanes, and by little and little others also, that he conuersed with the angell *Gabriell*, vnto whose brightnes he ascribed the falling sicknes, which many times prostrated him vpon the earth: dilating and amplifying the same in like sort, by permitting all that which was plausible to sense and the flesh; as also by offering libertie to all slaues that would come to him, and receiue his law. Wherefore being prosecuted hard by the masters of those fugitiue slaues led away by him, he fledde to Medina Talnabi, and there remained some time. From this flight the Mahumetans fetch the originall of their Hegeira. But questionlesse there was nothing that furthered more the enlargement of the Mahumetan sect, then prosperitie in armes, and the multitude of victories; whereby *Mahumet* ouerthrew the Persians, became lord of Arabia, and draue the Romaines out of Syria. And his successors afterwards extended their empire from Euphrates to the Atlantick Ocean, and from the riuer Niger to the Pirenei mountaines, and beyond. They occupied Sicilia, assailed Italy, and with continuall prosperitie, as it were, for three hundred yeeres, either subdued, or encumbred, both the east & west. But to returne to *Mahumet* his law, it embraceth circumcision, & maketh a difference between meats pure, & vnpure, partly to allure the Iewes. It denieth the Diuinitie of Christ, to reconcile the Arrians, who were then most mightie; it foisteth in many friuolous fables, that it might fit the Gentiles: & looseth the bridle to the flesh, which is a thing acceptable to the greatest part of men. Whereupon *Auicen* (though he were a Mahumetan) writeth thus of such a law: *Lex nostra* (saith he) *quam dedit Mahumeth, &c.* that is to say, *Our Law, which* Mahumet *gaue vs, regardeth the disposition of felicitie or miserie, according to the body. But there is another promise, which concerneth the minde, or the soule: which wise Diuines had a farre greater desire to apprehend, then that of the body, which though it be giuen vnto them, yet respect they it not, nor hold it in any estimation, in comparison of that felicitie which is a coniunction with truth.*

Mahumet being dead, * *Allé, Abubequer, Omar*, and *Odoman* his kinsemen, each of them pretending to be his true successor, wrote distinctly euerie one by himselfe. Vpon which there did arise fower seuerall sects. *Allé* was head of the sect Imemia, being followed by the Persians, Indians, and many Arabians, and Gelbines of Africa. *Abubequer* gaue foundation to the sect Melchia, embraced generally by the Arabians, Saracens, and Africans. *Omar* was author of the Anefia, which is on foote among the Turks in Syria, and in that part of Africk which is called Zahará. *Odman* left behim the Banefia, or Xefaia, as we may terme it, which wanteth not followers among the foresaid nations. Of these fower sects, in processe of time, haue

* *Or Haly.*

growen sixtie eight other verie famous, besides some of lesse renowme and fame. Among the many Mahumetan sects, there are the Morabites, who lead their liues for the most part in Hermitages, and make profession of Morall Philosophie, with certaine principles differing from the Alcoran. One of these was that Morabite, which certaine yeeres past, shewing *Mahumet* his name imprinted in his brest (being done with Aqua Fortis, as I suppose, or some such thing) raised vp a great number of Arabians in Africk, and laide siege to Tripolis; where being betraied by his captaine, he remained the Turkes prisoner, who sent his skin to the grand Signor. This man being in prison, said to an Italian slaue, his familiar, who went to visite him; I greeue at nothing but you Christians, who haue abandoned me. In that the knights of Malta onely sent him small succour, of powder and shot. These Morabites affirme, (to declare some of their fooleries) that when *Allé* fought, he killed ten thousand Christians with one blow of a sworde, and that this sword was an hundred cubits long. Then there is the fooliſh, and brutish sect of *Cobtini*. One of these shewed himselfe not many yeeres sithence in the market places and quarters of Algier, mounted on a reed, with a bridle and raines of leather, giuing the multitude to vnderstand, that vpon that horse in one night, he rid an hundred leagues; and he was for this greatly honored and reuerenced.

In tract of time, there grew amongst the Mahumetans, through the vanitie of their law, and the incredible variety and difference of opinions, great disorders: For their sect being not onely wicked, and treacherous (as we haue declared) but also grosse and fooliſh, those that made profession thereof to defend and maintaine it, were enforced to make a thousand interpretations and constructions, far sometimes from reason, and otherwhiles from the expresse words of *Mahumet* him selfe. The *Califas* endeuoured mightily to reforme this; but their prouisions of greatest importance were two. For first, *Moauia* (this man florished about the yeere of our Lord 770) called an assembly of learned and iudiciall men, to establish that which in their sect should be beleeued, and to this end he caused all the bookes of Mahumet, and his successors, to be gathered together. But they not agreeing amongst themselues, he chose out of them, sixe of the most learned, and shutting them within an house, with the said writings, he commaunded them, that euery one should make choise of that, which seemed best vnto him. These men reduced the Mahumetan doctrine into sixe books, setting downe the pennaltie of losse of life, to them that should otherwise speake, or write of the law. But because the Arabians gaue their mindes to Philosophie, in the vniuersities of Bagdet, Fez, Maroco, and Cordoua (and being of piercing and subtile wits) they could not but looke into the fopperies of their sect. There was added vnto this another prouiso, which was a statute, that forbad them the studie of Philosophie: by meanes of which statute, their Vniuersities before most flourishing, haue within these fower hundred yeeres daily declined. At this day the sects of *Mahumetan* impietie are distinguished

more

more through the might and power of those nations that follow them, then of themselues: and the principall nations are fower, that is to say, Arabians, Persians, Tartars, and Turks. The Arabians are most superstitious, and zealous. The Persians stand more vpon reason and nature: The Tartars hold much gentilisme and simplicitie: and the Turkes (especially in Europe) are most of them Libertines, and Martialistes.

The Arabians, as they that esteeme it for great glorie, that *Mahumet* was of their nation, and buried in Mecca (or as others thinke in Medina Talnabi) haue laboured with all arte, and yet procure to spread their sect ouer the whole world. In India they first preuailed with preaching, and afterwards with armes. Considering that seuen hundred yeeres sithence (king *Perimal* reigning in Malabar) they began there to sow this cockle: and to bring the Gentiles more easily within their net, they tooke (and at this daie take) their daughters to wife, a matter greatly esteemed of them, by reason of these mens wealth. By this policie and the traffike of spices, which yeelded them infinite profite, they quickly set foote, and fastned it in India. They built townes, and planted colonies, and the first place, where they grew to a bodie, was Calicut, which of a small thing, by their concourse and traffike, became a mightie citie. They drew king *Perimal* to their sect, who at their perswasion resolued to go and end his daies at Mecca; and for that purpose he put himselfe onward on the voiage, with certaine ships laden with pepper and other precious commodities: but a terrible tempest met him in the midst of his course, and drowned him in the sea. They inhabite in Malabar where two sorts of Arabians or Moores (as we may terme them) haue more exceedingly increased and preuailed, then in any other part of the Indies: one is of strangers that arriue there by reason of the traffike of Arabia, Cambaia, and Persia: and the other be those that dayly are borne of a Moorish father, and a mother Gentile, or both of father and mother Moores, and these (who are called Nateani, and differ from the other people, in person, customes, and habit) make as it were a fourth part of the inhabitants of that countrey. From Malabar, they went to the Maldiue, and Zeilan. Here they began to take vpon them the managing of the customs and impositions of cities and townes; and by making them greater then in times past, they attained to the grace and fauour of the Princes and Lords, together with great reputation and authority, yea preeminence and superiority ouer the common people: and fauouring those who embraced their sect, daylie preached and diuulged by the Papassi; but holding their hands heauie ouer such as shewed themselues repugnant, they incredibly aduanced mahumetisme. Afterwards perceiuing themselues strong and mightie, both in richesse, and followers, they seazed on the townes and cities. So that at this day, they commaund a good part of the Maldiuæ, and the ports of the most noble iland of Zeilan, except that of Columbo where the Portugals haue a fortresse. By like stratagem are they become masters of the west part of Sumatra, within little more then these two hundred yeeres, first preuailing by

trade

trade, and commerce, then by marriage and affinitie, and last of all by armes. From hence going forwarde, they haue taken into their hands the greatest part of the ports of that large Archipelago of the Luçones, Malucos, Iauas, &c. They are Lords of the citie of Sunda, in the greater Iaua, they enioy the greatest part of the Ilands of Banda, and Maluco; they raigne in Burneo, & Gilolo. They came once as far as Luçon, a most noble Iland, and one of the Philippinas, & had planted therein three colonies. On the other side, they conquered vpon the firme land, first the rich kingdome of Cambaia, & there established their sect, as they did the like, in all the places adioining; from hence they went to Bengala, and became Lords thereof. They cut off by little and little, from the crowne of Siam, the state of Malaca, (which the Portugals holde at this day) as likewise those of Ior, and Pam; and more then two hundred leagues along the coast. Finallie they are entred into the most ample kingdome of China, and haue built Moscheas in the same; and if the Portugals in India and the Malucos, and afterwards the Spaniards in the Philippinas had not met them on the way, and with the gospell and armes, interrupted their course, they would at this instant haue possessed infinite kingdomes of the east: yea in this they are so industrious and bould, to our confusion, that euen the Arabian mariners, that go in the Portugall ships will tarrie behind in the Gentile-townes, there to publish their sect; and in the yeere 1555. one of these men had passed euen as far as Iapon, for this purpose; so that if the Portugals had not remedied it in due time, he would peraduenture haue wrought there some alteration.

The Persian nation, as touching their sect, a little before our time, haue beene made renowmed among those barbarous people, by the valor and armes of *Ismael*, called the Sophi. This man accounting himselfe to be of the race and blood of Alle, brought his owne sect into credit and reputation, and waged warre against those borderers, who would not accept of it. He wore a redde Turbant, with twelue points or corners, in memoriall of the twelue sonnes of *Ocen*, the sonne of *Alle*, willing that all his followers should weare the like; and many people came in vnto him, and in a maner all those nations which inhabite betweene the riuers Euphrates and Abianus, and between the Caspian sea & the Persian gulphe. *Tammas* his sonne sent the said twelue-cornered Turbant to the Mahumetan Princes of Malabar and Decan, perswading them to receiue it with his sect, and bestowing the title of a king, on whomesoeuer would accept of it, but no others receiued it, saue Nizzamaluco. It is a common voice and opinion, that the greatest part of the Mahumetans of Syria and the lesser Asia follow and affect inwardly the sect of Allé, and of the Persians; the which the Turkes perceiuing in the vproare of Techelle, made a mightie slaughter of them, carrying the kinsemen of the slaine, and those suspected, out of Asia into Europe.

G. B. B Rel. vn. part. 1. lib. 2. dell' Asia.

But now let vs passe to the Tartars. These (*as otherwhiles we declared) descended of the ten tribes of Israel, being transported by the order and commission of *Salmanazar*, king of the Assirians, beyond India, into the land

of Arſareth. Here degenerating into rude and barbarous cuſtomes, and forgetting in a greate part, or altogether, the Moyſaicall ceremonies, they hardly reteined circumciſion. They came out of this their baniſhment, in the yeere of our Lord 1200. and in a ſmall time, with the ruine of infinite nations, made themſelues terrible to all the eaſt, and no leſſe to the north. Pope Innocent the fourth, being amazed at the horrible ſtorme, that hung ouer the head of Chriſtendome (for they had ſpread themſelues like locuſts euen to the bankes of Danubius) ſent from the councell of Lyons, Fryer *Aſcellino*, of the order of Dominicus, with other Fryers, to the great CAN in the yeere 1246. to exhort him to embrace the name and faith of Chriſt; or at leaſt to let the Chriſtians alone in peace. Of baptiſme he accepted not, but promiſed a league with the Chriſtians, for fiue yeeres. Others notwithſtanding will needes haue it, that he was conuerted, and that taking vp armes in fauour of the Chriſtians, he cauſed Muſtaceno the Califa of Baldach, to dy with famine, amidſt the treaſures heaped vp by him. But afterwards either hee, or his ſucceſſor, together with his people, denying their Chriſtianity, became Mahumetans in religion. And ſithence that time, the Tartarian name and fame growing obſcure, that of the Turkes began to flouriſh. The Tartars *Petegorski* notwithſtanding vpon the mountaines of Cumania, remained firme in the Chriſtian faith, but yet corrupted with the errors of the Greekes and Moſcouites. The Colmugi neere the Caſpian ſea, continued in Paganiſme, who are termed Capigliati, becauſe they ſhaue not off their hayres, as the other Tartars do. The Kirgeſſi alſo be Idolaters, as otherwhiles we declared. The other Tartars that are come on this ſide of Imaus, haue all, from one to an other, embraced Mahumetiſme. And amongſt others the Zagatai, who through the emulation they haue with the Perſians (vpon whome they border and contend for Empire) as concerning ſect, follow the opinion of the Turkes, as alſo the Mogores their deſcendents, who in theſe our dayes haue enlarged their Empire, betweene mount Caucaſus and the Ocean, and between Ganges, and Indus. But the Tartars of Cataya, reſident beyond Imaus, and vpon the deſert called Lop, remaine generallie in Idolatry, although there continue many Chriſtians amongſt them, of the ſect of Neſtorius, neither want there ſome Mahumetans.

With this frier Aſcelline was ſent Iohannes de Plano Carpini, whoſe voiage is put downe in the firſt volume of the Engliſh voiages.

Now let vs come to the Turkes, who in largenes of Empire, are ſuperior to the other ſects. Of theſe, part inhabite in Aſia, part in Europe. Thoſe of Aſia incline much to the opinion of the Perſians, and eſpecially they that inhabite in Natolia, and the borders. But thoſe of Europe are generally leſſe ſuperſtitious then the Aſians, and by reaſon of their daily conuerſation with Chriſtians, they haue a deeper opinion and conceit of Chriſt then the others, yea, and many of them hold him for God, and Redeemer. And it is not long ſithence there were diuers put to death in Conſtantinople with ſpeciall conſtancie on their part: and it was thought that many of the grand Signors court held the ſame opinion. The Turkes, eſpecially thoſe of Europe, are of two ſorts: for ſome are naturall Turkes, others acceſſorie, or accidentall.

cidentall. Naturall I terme them, that are borne of Turkish parents: and them I call accidentall, who leauing our sacred faith, or the Moysaicall law, become Mahumetans: the which the Christians performe by circumcising themselues, and the Iewes by lifting vp a finger. Now the Christians become Turkes, partly vpon some extreme & violent passion. *Cherseogli* (who afterwards was great with *Bazaieth*) turned Turke to bee reuenged of his father, who tooke from him his wife, amidst the solemnitie of the marriage. Or Olouchali. *Vluccialí* denied the faith to be reuēged of a slaue, his companion in the gallie, who called him scald pate. Some abiure the faith to release themselues of torments and cruelties; others for hope of honors and temporall greatnes: and of these two sorts there are a great number in Constantinople, being thought to be Christians in hart: and yet through slothfulnes, or first to gather togither more wealth, or expecting opportunitie to carrie with them, their wiues and children, or for feare of being discouered in their departure and voiage, or else through sensualitie, and for that they would not be depriued of the licentiousnes and libertie of the life they lead, resolue not to performe that they are bound vnto; deferring thus from moneth to moneth, & from yeere to yeere, to leaue this Babylon & sinke of sin. But the greatest part of Renegados become Mahumetans without perceiuing it. In that the grand Signor sendeth euery fower yeers, more or lesse, according as need requireth, to take through his states of Europe, of euery three christian male children one, at the discretion of his Commissaries, by way of tribute, and they take them from the age of ten, to the yeeres of seuenteene. These being brought to Constantinople, are without other ceremonies circumcised, and part of them are sent into Natolia and Caramania to learne the toong, religion, and fashions of the Turkes: and part are emploied about the seruice of the Seraglios, or palaces of Constantinople, Pera, and Andrinople. Heere liuing among the Turkes, farre from their parents, separate from all conuersation with the faithfull, and depriued of all spirituall aide and helpe, without perceiuing it, they are made Turkes. The author of this, the most diabolicall institution that euer was made, was a certaine Turkish saint, called *Abeuirás*, in the daies of *Amurath* the second: and in the beginning the number was but three thousand, and afterwards they exceeded not twelue thousand, vntill the time of *Amurath* the third, who increased them to the number of fower and twentie thousand. But returning to their education: after some time they are called home againe to the Seraglios of the Zamoglans (for so are they termed, till they be enrolled among the Ianissaries) to remaine there vnder their heads and gouernours: and in short time they become Ianissaries, or Spahies, and either they go to the warre, or are bestowed in some garrison, or else are resident in the court of the Turke. They are called The sonnes of the grand Signor: they liue with great license and libertie: they do whatsoeuer pleaseth themselues: neither can they be iudged by any but the Agaes: during their liues they are seldōtimes punished, and yet when it is done, it is with great secrecie: in buying they

make

make their owne prizes. These snares are strong enough to procure, that they neuer care for returning any more to the bosome of the church. But that which is woorst of all: euery new Prince bestoweth on them a great larges, and augmenteth their pay, at the Christians charge. They also kill and robbe whomsoeuer they please, especially the Christians throughout the whole countrie, or in marching to the warre, and the Christians dare not so much as in a word finde themselues agreeued: whereupon there groweth in them such a scorne and contempt of the Christian name, that they remaine strangers to it. That which I haue said of yoong male children taken from out their mothers bosomes, who without perceiuing it become Mahumetanes, happeth in like manner vnto them, whom the pirates by sea, or soldiers by land make slaues, presenting them to the grand Signor. Besides the foresaid deuises, the Turkes further spread abroad their sect with all kind of vantage and furtherance. For they abase and bring to extreme miserie the Christians and Moores their subiects, not permitting them to ride, nor beare any kinde of armes, nor to exercise any maner of iustice, or gouernment. They make it lawfull to take Christian women that are not married. If the wife of a Christian turneth Turke, and marrieth herselfe with a Turke, their law permitteth, that the Christian husband by turning Turke may take her againe. They forbid the Christians to repaire their ruinate Churches, and suffer them in no wise to reedifie them fallen downe, without great bribes; and so the Christians through pouertie let them come to ruine: by meanes whereof the publike worship of God faileth, and in progresse of time also, the very Christian faith and beleefe. In Asia they will not permit the Greekes the vse of their language, but onely in sacred administrations, to the end that togither with their language, they may also loose and forget their Christian fashions and customes. The Spahi being Lords for terme of life, of infinite villages, take such young men into their seruitude, as best pleaseth them; who in processe of time, by cõuersation with their maisters, and the fauours they hope after, and by the wicked fashions and customes which they learne, as also through the sinnes and vices, wherein they are drowned, do become Turkes. And the Greekes children, after the example of their companions, being thus fauoured and made much of, incline in such a sort vnto this euill, that vpon euery light occasion, they threaten their fathers and mothers to turne Turkes. Further it is forbidden the Mahumetanes to make restitution of any place, once taken with armes, and wherein they haue built a Moschea. To conclude, they vse all manner of circumstances, by meane of which they may amplifie or enlarge their dominion and sect.

Of the Mahumetans of Africa in particular.

THe Mahumetan impietie hath ſpred it ſelfe throughout Africa beyond meaſure: this peſtilence entred into Egypt in the yeere of our Lord 637. by the armes of *Omar*. From whence a captaine of *Odoman* firſt paſſed into Africa in the yeere 650. with fower-ſcore thouſand fighting men, who there defeated *Gregorius Patritius*. But they perpetually caſt out of Africk the Romaines with the people of Abſimacus, and *Leontius* the emperour, in the yeere 699. and wholie impatronized themſelues of Barbarie. They pierced into Numidia & Libya in the yeere 710. and ouerthrew the Azanaghi, and the people of Gualata, Oden, and Tombuto. The yeere afterwards 973. hauing paſſed Gambea, they infected the Negroes, and the firſt that drunke of their poiſon were thoſe of Melli. In the yeere 1067. *Iaiaia* the ſonne of *Abubequer* entred into the lower Ethiopia, and by little and little ſubuerted thoſe people which confine vpon the deſerts of Libya and Egypt, piercing euen to Nubia & Guinea. The Arabiãs haue augmẽted their ſect in Africk, firſt with force of armes, by baniſhing of the naturall inhabitants, the which they might well do, by reaſon of their infinite multitude: and of them, that verſe of *Dauid* may well be vnderſtood: *In circuitu impij ambulant: ſecundum altitudinem tuam, multiplicaſti filios hominum, &c.* The wicked walke round about; according to thy greatnes, thou haſt multiplied the ſonnes of men. Where they could not come, nor giue no blow with armes; there they haue ingraffed themſelues, by preaching and traffike. The hereſie of *Arrius* furthered their enterprize, wherewith the Vandales and Gothes being then inhabiters of Africa were infected. To further their deſignments they brought in the Arabicke language and letters. They founded Vniuerſities and Studies, both for riches of reuenew, and magnificence of building moſt noble, eſpecially in Maroco, and Fez. But there is nothing that hath greatlier furthered the progreſſion of the Mahumetan ſect, then perpetuitie of victorie, & the greatnes of conqueſts, firſt of the Califas in the eaſt, & afterwards of the Miramolines in Affrick: In that the greateſt part of men, yea, and in a manner all, except ſuch as haue faſtned their confidence vpon the croſſe of Chriſt, and ſetled their hope in eternity, follow that which beſt agreeth with ſenſe, and meaſure the grace of God by worldly proſperitie. And yet Chriſt (as *Iuſtinus* the Philoſopher, and glorious martyr teſtifieth) promiſed no earthly reward to good works. Carnal men therefore perceiuing the empire of the Califas and Mahumetans continually to encreaſe in the eaſt and weſt, taking into their hands both ſea and land, (for this their felicitie in armes continued three hundred yeeres, wherein they conquered all that which lieth betweene the riuer Abianus and the Atlantike Ocean, and ſubdued Spaine, Sicilia, and a part of Italie and France) and iudging that temporall proſperitie and victories were the effects and fruits, or at leaſt the

arguments

arguments and signes of the grace and fauour of God, they easily fell into Apostasie, whereunto the impietie of *Arrius* and other heretikes opened the way, who for long tract of time estranging themselues more and more from the Euangelicall truth, fell in the end into Atheisme: as we see hath fallen out in the course of some moderne enormities. But to returne from whence we haue digressed; in progresse of time there grew great differences betweene the Mahumetans: for their sect being no lesse sottish and foolish, then wicked and perfidious, the mainteiners of it were driuen to fetch reasons farre off for defence of the same. But the Arabians not contented in Africa to haue subiugated with armes, and with false doctrine to haue pestered Barbarie, Numidia, Libya, and the countrey of Negroes, they further on the other side assailed the lower Ethiopia, both by sea and land. By lande entred thereinto in the yeere 1067. *Faiaia* the sonne of *Abubequer*, and by meanes of certaine Alsachi, he dispersed that pestilence into Nubia, and the neighbour prouinces. On the other side passing the Red sea, they first tooke knowledge of the coast of Ethiopia, euen to Cabo de los corrientes, by their continuall traffike thither: and afterwards being encouraged by the weakenes of the naturall inhabitants, they erected the kingdomes of Magadazo, Melinde, Mombazza, Quiloa, Mozambique, and seazed on some ports of the island of Saint Laurence: and gathering force by little and little, they enlarged their empire within the land, and established therein the kingdomes of Dangali and Adel. So that on the one side they haue spred their sect, from the Red sea to the Atlantike Ocean, and from the Mediterran sea to the riuer Niger, and farther: and on the other, haue taken into their hands all the easterne coast of Africk, from Suez to Cape Guardafú, and from this, euen to that De los corrientes, and the adioining islands. In which places though the people be not altogither Mahumetans, yet haue the Mahumetans the weapons & dominion in their hands; the which how much it importeth for the bringing in of sects, we may easily conceiue. To conclude, they haue often assailed the *Prete Ianni*; sometimes the Turkes, who haue taken from him the ports of the Red sea; and otherwhiles the Moores, vnder the conduct of the king of Adel, who hath, and doth molest them greatly, leading into captiuitie a great number of Abassins, where they become for the most part Mahumetans.

Of the Christians of Africa.

NOw that we haue declared the miseries and darknes of Affrick, it remaineth that we set downe that little light of true religion which there is; the which I can not passe ouer, without exceeding glorie to the Portugall nation. In that they with inestimable charge, and infinite trauaile, haue first sought to open the way to Ethiopia, and to bring the great Negus of Abassia, called by vs *Prete Ianni*, to the vnion of the christian church of Europe, performing whatsoeuer, after this, for the conuersion of

the princes of Guinia and Meleghette to the faith, and yet more happily of the king of Congo and the Princes of Angola; and likewise with diuers colonies sent to the ilands of the Atlantick Ocean, they haue no lesse aduãced the honor of their owne nation, then the propagating of the christian faith. And finally, passing beyond Cabo de buena esperança, they haue resisted the Mahumetan sect, which had now extended it selfe on the backside of Africa, as far as Cabo de los corrientes.

Of the Christians in Egypt.

THe Christians of Egypt are partly strangers, partlie home-borne in the country; strangers come thither in regarde of traffick which there flourisheth aboue measure, especiallie in the cities of Alexandria and Cairo; by reason that this kingdome being most commodiously situate betweene the Red and Mediterran seas, vniteth the west parts of the world with the east, by meane of an infinite traffick; and therefore is it as it were a ladder, whereby the wealth of India and of the Eoan Ocean, passeth into the lesser Asia, into Africke, and Europe. Whereupon not onely the Venetians, Florentines, and Ragusians come thither in great numbers; but also the French, and English. The naturall Christians of Egypt, remaining after the spoiles and hauock of the Barbarians and the crueltie of the Saracens, Mamalucks, and Turkes, exceed not the number of fiftie thousand persons, and these dwell dispersed here and there, but principallie in the cities of Cairo, Messia, Monfalatto, Bucco, and Elchiasa, all placed vpon the bankes of Nilus. There are also many in the prouince of Minia, in which quarter appeare diuers monasteries. But among the monasteries of Egypt those of Saint *Anthonie*, Saint *Paul*, and Saint *Macarius* are the principal. The first lieth in Troglodytica right ouer against Sait vpon a hill, where Saint *Anthony* was said to be beaten by diuels: the second is seated not far from this, in the middest of a desert: the third standeth in the wildernes, to the west of Bulac. This is the monasterie which in some histories is called Nitria, as I thinke, bicause in that quarter the waters of Nilus, being thickned by the heate of the sun in low places, are conuerted into salt and niter. Georgia stood vpon Nilus, six miles from the city of Munsia, a rich and magnificent Conuent, so called after the name of Saint *George*. There were in the same more then two hundred monkes, to the notable benefite and ease of pilgrimes & strangers, who were there curteously lodged. But they dying all of the plague, (about some hundred and fiftie yeeres sithence,) the place was abandoned.

Now to deliuer somewhat concerning the estates of these Christians: They are called by some *Cofti, and by others, Christians from the girdle vpward: for albeit they be baptized, as we are, yet do they circumcise themselues like to the Iewes: so as a man may say, their Christianitie comes no lower then the girdle-stead. But that which is woorse, they haue for these sand yeeres followed the heresie of *Eutiches*, which alloweth but of one nature in Christ: by which heresie they also separate and dismember themselues

** Or Coptitæ.*

ſelues, from the vnion of the Church of Europe. The occaſion of this ſeparation and ſchiſme, was the Epheſine councell, aſſembled by *Dioſcorus* in defence of *Eutiches*, who was now condemned in the Calcedon counſell by ſixe hundred and thirtie fathers congregated togither, by the authoritie of *Leo* the firſt. For the Cofti fearing, that to attribute two natures vnto Chriſt, might be all one, as if they had aſſigned him two hypoſtaſes or perſons, to auoid the hereſie of the Neſtorians, they became Eutichians. They ſay their diuine ſeruice in the Chaldean toong, oftentimes repeating Alleluia. They read the Goſpell firſt in Chaldean, and then in Arabick. When the prieſt ſaieth *Pax vobis*, the yoongeſt amongſt them laieth his hand vpon all the people that are preſent. After conſecration, they giue a ſimple peece of bread to the ſtanders by: a ceremonie vſed alſo in Greece. They exerciſe their function in the church of Saint Marke amidſt the ruines of Alexandria, and in that of Suez, vpon the red ſea: they obey the Patriarke of Alexandria, and affirme themſelues to be of the faith of *Preſte Ianni*. In our daies two Popes haue attempted to reduce them to the vnion of the Romiſh church; *Pius* the fourth, and *Gregorie* the thirteenth. *Pius* the fourth in the yeere 1563. ſent two Ieſuit-prieſts for this purpoſe to Cairo; who ſtaied there almoſt a yeere, but to no purpoſe, and with great danger of life: for one of them was appointed to the fire, from which he eſcaped by meanes of a merchant; who with eight hundred crownes pacified the Turkes, and cauſed the prieſt ſodainly to flie away. But Pope *Gregorie* entred into this enterpriſe with more hope: for *Paulo Mariani* a famous Chriſtian merchant, was at the ſame time in Cairo, who for his wiſedome, magnificence, knowledge of toongs, and long practiſe in the affaires of the world, ioined with woonderfull eloquence, and preſence of bodie, was in great eſteeme and reputation, not onely among the Chriſtians, but alſo with the Turkes, who equally loued him for his liberality, and honored him for his valour. This man had conference with the Patriarke of Alexandria about the reconciling of his people to the Romiſh church: whereunto the Patriarke not ſhewing himſelfe difficult, or hard to be entreated, was contented to call by his letters into thoſe parts, two prieſts of the ſame order, who were then with the Maronites in mouut Libanus. In the meane while the Pope, who was aduertiſed of al this buſines, taking the matter quickly in hand, wrote vnto the two prieſts, appointing one of them to go directlie to Cairo; and the other to returne back to Rome. Wherefore in the yeere 1582 in the moneth of October one of the ſaid prieſts arriuing at Cairo, was courteouſlie receiued by Mariani, and afterwards conducted to the Patriarke, who alſo made ſhew of great ioy and conſolation. One might likewiſe perceiue a reaſonable diſpoſition in others who had any authority among the Cofti. He aduertiſed the Pope of all; who ſent a certaine other prieſt, with one breefe to the Patriarke, and an other to the Ieſuites, wherein he exhorted them to go forward, and to bring the vnion, whereof ſo aſſured hope was conceiued, to good effect. The Patriarke receiued the breefe

with

with great reuerence he kiſſed it, and according to their cuſtome, laide it vpon his head, and afterwards demanded what it comprehended: the which with great feeling, and contentment hauing vnderſtood, within fewe daies he inſtituted a Synod of ſome biſhops, and certaine other principall perſons of the nation. Heere the ſaid prieſts hauing declared vnto them vpon how little ground they, who at the firſt receiued the faith from Saint *Marke*, were ſequeſtred from the weſtern church by the authoritie of one heretike, tooke much paines afterward in making them capable of the difference that is betweene a nature and an Hypoſtaſis or perſon, to their exceeding great admiration, bicauſe they were in a manner deſtitute of all learning. For the Patriarke euen from his youth had led his life in the monaſterie of Saint Macarius, farre not onely from the ſtudies of learning, but alſo from the conuerſation of men, neither appeered there any greater knowledge in the biſhops. They had ſcarcely any booke of the ancient fathers, and yet thoſe they had, were all duſtie, and eaten with mothes: That whereof they made chiefeſt account, was an old volume, being torne and rent, which they called *The confeſsion of the Fathers*, full of diuers dreames and fables, whereof notwithſtanding, and of ſome other Arabicke bookes, the prieſts made ſpeciall good vſe, for the conuincing of them in their errors. Alſo hauing framed a *compendium* of moſt neceſſarie doctrine, they cauſed diuers copies of the ſame to be drawne, and gaue them to the learned of the Cofti, to be conſidered of, who wondring at the ſtrangenes of the things propounded vnto them, and not knowing how to anſwer the arguments of the prieſtes, demaunded time to ſearch their owne writings, and to ſee what opinion their predeceſſors had held as concerning that point. In the meane while, they came often to the prieſts, and inquired of them the doctrine and forme of ſpeech vſed in the Romiſh church. Whereupon they ſhewed them how greatly the ſame church had euer deteſted hereſies: and how ſeuerely it had condemned the impietie of *Neſtorius*, and contrariwiſe highly eſteemed the authoritie of *Cyrillus Alexandrinus*, and the decrees of the firſt Epheſine Councell. Neither (bicauſe it confeſſeth two natures in Chriſt, ioined in one perſon without confuſion) doth it therefore inferre two hypoſtaſis or perſons. In that a nature and a perſon are not the ſelfe ſame things. The which may cleerely be vnderſtoode by the deepe myſterie of the holy Trinitie, wherein we acknowledge one nature, and three Hypoſtaſis or perſons. We auer therfore that there are two natures in Chriſt, one diuine, which he hath eternally from his Father, the other humane, which he tooke temporally from the immaculate wombe of his mother; both of them ioined in one hypoſtaſis or perſon. By theſe and other like demonſtrations, they cleered the vnderſtandings, and confirmed the mindes of the Cofti. Howbeit, all this notwithſtanding, the Synod being againe aſſembled (wherein were preſent, the Patriarke, fiue biſhops, diuers abbots of monaſteries, and thirtie other principall perſons) they plainly anſwered the prieſts that they had turned ouer their Annales & writings, & were reſolued

in

in no wise to depart from the doctrine and faith of their predecessors. This vnlooked-for answer, though it greatly troubled and displeased the priests, yet were they determined still to continue, and to proceed further in the enterprise. Whereupon declaring vnto them againe, how farre they were by *Dioscorus* meanes estranged from the doctrine taught in the Nicen, Constantinopolitan, and first Ephesine councels, grounded on the authoritie of holy Scripture, and the ancient Fathers: and that to disallow of two natures in Christ, was no other but to denie, that he was neither true God nor man, (a matter abhominable, not only to their eares, but euen to their very vnderstādings) they preuailed so much, as that the matter was yet deferred off to an other moneth. Being therefore congregated the third time, it seemed that God himselfe furthered this affaire more then vsually: for first with common consent they abrogated the law of circumcision, and withall after a disputation of sixe howers continuance, it was decreed, that as concerning the truth of this point, the priests were to be beleeued, that there were two natures in Christ, and that the Cofti though they auoided the name and title of two natures, yet denied they not, but that Christ was true man, and true God. Onely they were warie of the two natures, for feare of falling by litle & litle into two hypostases. Thus this busines being brought to so good a passe, was by the ambition and obstinacie of one man vtterly crossed and hindred. This was the Vicar or Suffragan to the Patriarke, who aspiring himselfe to the Patriarkship, and seeing that if he followed this vnion begun with the Romaine church, he could not attaine to that dignitie, but by the Popes authoritie, (which he altogither misdoubted) he first made the decree of two natures to be deferred, commanding afterwards that none should subscribe thereunto, and finally caused the Patriarke wholie to giue ouer this busines, and to retire himselfe into the wildernes; whereas he continued for certaine months. Afterwards the priests vnderstanding where he was, wrot vnto him a letter, signifying therein, what a special desire they had to see him, and what domage the retiring of himselfe would procure to the sillie sheepe recommended vnto him by God, if he ratified not fully those things which were decreed vpon in the last assemblie. He curteously answered, making shew, that he would returne, when he had visited his dioces, and in the meane while they should expect him at Cairo. But while he thought vpon returne, his owne death interrupted him. The Cofti haue a law, or custome, that betweene the death of one Patriarke and the creation of an other, there must be in a maner an whole yeeres space, for so long it is requisite, say they, that the church should bewaile the death of her spouse. Whereupon the priests, not to loose so much time, determined to go home into Italy, to acquaint the Pope with the successe of all things, and afterwards (neede so requiring) to returne. The Cofti vnderstanding thus much, writ letters to the Pope, wherin they partly thanked him for the care he had of them; & partly lamented, that their recōciliation with the Romish church was not fully confirmed and finished. While the priests were about

to

to depart on Saint Mathewes day in the morning, there came a route of armed Turkes to their lodging. Theſe layde hands ſuddenly on two prieſts, and another companion of theirs, and on three Fryers of the order of Saint Francis, lodged in the ſame houſe. No man knew the reaſon of this hurly burly; but for as much as could be learned, all this grew through the enuie of a Frenchman. This man aſpiring to the degree of Conſull or Gouernor ouer his nation, which *Mariani* had obtayned, maliciouſly gaue the Baſſa of Cairo to vnderſtād, that *Mariani* ſuborned the people againſt the grād Signor, & that he had order from the K. of Spaine to leuie Chriſtian men. And that to this end he kept in his houſe certaine prieſts, who practiſed in this behalf with *Mariani* for the king. There was nothing that more preiudiced the prieſts, then the Cofties letters, which bred a vehement ſuſpition in the Turkes, that ſuch an vnion might be concluded with the Roman Church, as might worke ſome extraordinarie innouation. They were therefore caſt into a filthie and ſtinking priſon. The Venetian Conſull aſſayed firſt by word of mouth, and after by ſuite and ſupplication, to aſſwage the furie and anger of the Baſſa; Howbeit he receiued ſuch bitter and nipping anſweres, that he himſelfe was alſo afraid. But nothing preuaileth further with the Turkes then money. For it ſeemeth that with this onely their ſauage furie is mitigated, and their fiercenes appeaſed. Fiue thouſand crownes therefore were diſburſed for the prieſts libertie, wherein the Cofti ſhewed themſelues verie friendly, the richeſt of them offering one after another to lend money without any intereſt for the ſame. But this matter coſt *Mariani* more then ten thouſand crownes; and beſides that, he was depriued of his degree of Conſulſhip. The prieſts being thus freed out of priſon, and obſeruing how things went, returned one after another backe to Rome.

A relation touching the state of Christian Religion in the dominions of Prete Ianni, taken out of an oration of *Matthew Dresserus*, professour of the Greeke and Latine toongs, and of Histories, in the Vniuersitie of Lipsia.

Who hauing first made a generall exordium to his auditorie, proceedeth at length to the peculiar handling of the foresaid argument, in manner following.

NOndum (saith hee) *vnius seculi ætas exacta est* &c. The space of one hundred yeeres is not as yet fullie expired, since the fame of the Ethiopians religion came first vnto our eares. Which, because it is in many points agreeable vnto Christian veritie, and carrieth an honest shew of pietie therewith, is to be esteemed as a matter most worthie of our knowledge. Of this therefore, so far forth as the short time of an oration will permit, I purpose to intreate; to the end it may appeare, both where, and what manner of Christian church that of Ethiopia is, and what were the first beginnings thereof.

This Ethiopian, not vnfitly called *The southerne church, is situate in Africa far south, namely vnder the Torrid Zone, betweene the Tropique of Cancer and the Equinoctial; some part thereof also stretching beyond the Equinoctial, towards the Tropique of Capricorne. Two summers they haue euery yeere, yea in a manner, one continual summer: so that at the very same time in some fields they sowe, and in others they reape. Somewhere also they haue euery moneth ripe, some kinde of earthlie fruits or other, especiallie pulse. The people are skorched with the heate of the sun, and they are black, and go naked: saue onely that some couer their priuities with cloth of cotton or of silke. The countrie is very great, and containeth well nie twentie kingdomes; *so that it is almost as large as Europe, or as all Christendome in these parts. At the beginning indeed it had not aboue two kingdomes; but in processe of time it was mightily enlarged by the conquest of countries adiacent. For it is enuironed on all sides by vnbeleeuing gentiles and Mahumetans, who are most deadlie enimies to the Christian religion; with whome the emperour of Ethiopia is at continuall wars, endeuouring by all possible meanes to reclaime them from their heathenish Idolatry to the faith of Iesus Christ. It is reported that certaine bordering *Mores beare such implacable hatred against these Christians, that none of them may marry, before he bringeth testimony, that he hath slaine twelue of them.

The Emperour of Ethiopia is not called (as some imagine) Presbiter or priest;

* *As the church in all the hither parts of Europe hath beene called the western, and that of Greece and Asia, the easterne church.*

* *Whatsoeuer Dresserus thinketh; yet diuers other authors of good note do hold the dominions of Prete Ianni to be nothing so large.*

* *These Mores are called Dobas.*

prieſt; but Pretious *Iohn*. For in the Ethiopian toung he is termed Belul Gian, and in the Chaldean, Encoe Gian, both which additions ſignifie pretious or high; ſo that in a maner he commeth neer vnto the titles of our princes, who are called Illuſtres, Excelſi, Sereniſſimi, &c. to ſignifie, that they are exalted and aduanced aboue other people. And this is a common name to all the chriſtian kings of Ethiopia; as *Pharao* was to the Egyptian kings, and *Auguſtus*, to the Roman emperours. Neither is this Pretious *Iohn* a prieſt by profeſſion, but a ciuil magiſtrate; nor is he armed ſo much with religion and lawes, as with military forces.

Howbeit he calleth himſelfe The piller of faith; becauſe he is the maintainer of the Chriſtian faith, not onely enioining his owne ſubiects to the obſeruation thereof; but (what in him lyeth) enforcing his enemies alſo to embrace it.

In times paſt Ethiopia was gouerned by Queenes onely. Whereupon we reade in the hiſtory of the old teſtament, that the Queene of the ſouth came to King *Salomon* from Saba, to heare his admirable wiſedome, about the yeere of the world 2954. The name of this Queen (as the Ethiopians report) was *Maqueda*, who from the head-city of Ethiopia called Saba (which like an Iſle, is enuironed on all ſides by the riuer Nilus) trauelled by Egypt and the Red ſea to Ieruſalem. And ſhe brought vnto *Salomon* an hundred & twenty talents of gold, which amount to 720000. golden ducates of Hungarie, that is, ſeuen tunnes of gold, and 20000 Hungarian ducates beſides. This mightie ſum of gold, with other things of great value, ſhe preſented vnto *Salomon*, who likewiſe requited her with moſt princely giftes. She contended with him alſo in propounding of ſage queſtions, & obſcure riddles. Amongſt other matters (as it is reported by *Cedrenus*) ſhe brought before him certaine damoſels, and yoong men in maides attire, asking the king, how he could diſcerne one ſexe from another. He anſwered, that he would finde them out by the waſhing of their faces. And foorthwith he commanded all their faces to be waſhed, and they which waſhed themſelues ſtrongly, were found to be males; but the reſidue by their tender waſhing bewraied themſelues to be damoſels.

The Ethiopian kings ſuppoſe, that they are deſcended from the linage of *Dauid*, and from the family of *Salomon*. And therefore they vſe to terme themſelues the ſonnes of *Dauid*, and of *Salomon*, and of the holy patriarkes alſo, as being ſprung from their progenie. For Queene *Maqueda* (ſay they) had a ſonne by *Salomon*, whome they named *Meilech*. But afterward he was called *Dauid*. This *Meilech* (as they report) being growen to twentie yeeres of age, was ſent backe by his mother vnto his father and inſtructor *Salomon*, that he might learne of him, wiſedome and vnderſtanding. Which ſo ſoone as the ſaid *Meilech* or *Dauid* had attained: by the permiſſion of *Salomon*, taking with him many prieſts and nobles, out of all the twelue tribes, he returned to his kingdome of Ethiopia, and tooke vpon him the gouernment thereof. As likewiſe he carried home with him the law of God, and the rite

of

of circumcision.

These were the beginnings of the Iewish religion in Ethiopia. And it is reported, that euen till this present none are admitted into any ministry or canonship in the court, but such as are descended of their race that came first out of Iury. By these therfore the doctrine of God in Ethiopia was first planted, which afterward tooke such deepe root, as it hath since remained to all succeeding ages. For the Ethiopians did both retaine the bookes of the Prophets, and trauailed also to Ierusalem, that they might there worship the true God reuealed in the kingdome of Israel. Which manifestly appeereth out of the Historie of the Ethiopian Eunuch, whose name was *Indich*, which was a principall gouernour vnder Queene *Candaces*, properly called *Iudith*. For he about the tenth yeere after the death and resurrection of our blessed Sauiour, trauailed for the space of two hundred and fortie miles, to Ierusalem. Where hauing performed due worship vnto God, returning homeward, as he sate in his chariot, he read the prophet *Esaias*. And by the commandement of the holy Spirit, *Philip* one of Christ his disciples was sent vnto him. And when they were both come to the citie Bethzur, three miles distant from Ierusalem; the Eunuch at the foote of a mountaine espied a certaine water, wherein he was baptized by *Philip*. And being returned into Ethiopia, this Eunuch baptized the Queene, and a great part of her family and people. From which time the Ethiopians began to be Christians, who since that haue continually professed the Christian faith. *Acts of the Apost. cap. 8. verse 26.*

They beleeue also that *Philip* sent into Ethiopia a disciple of his called *Lycanon*, who (as they suppose) ordained the verie forme of religion which they now holde.

Now these beginnings aswel of the Iewish as the christian religion among the Ethiopians being thus declared: we are next to intreat of the doctrine & religion it selfe, togither with the rites & ceremonies vsed at this present in the Ethiopicke church, so far foorth as we can gather out of the ambassages which haue bin performed from these parts thither, & backe againe. Besides which there is no historie nor discourse of any worth to be found, which entreateth of the religion, maners, and customes of the Ethiopians. So as it is a matter very strange, that for so many hundred yeeres togither, Ethiopia was so barred from our knowledge, that we had not so much as any report thereof. Vntill about the yeere of our Lord 1440. certaine ambassadours sent from thence to Pope *Eugenius*, returned backe with his letters, and Papall benediction to their king. Which letters are most charily kept among the records of this Ethiopian king, and are preserued for perpetuall monuments.

From which time also, as though Ethiopia had beene againe quite debarred from the knowledge and conuersation of our men, there were not any Europeans that went into Ethiopia, nor any Ethiopians that came into Europe, till the yeere of our Lord 1486. what time *Iohn* the second king of Portugall sent *Pedro de Couilham*, and *Alonço de Paiua*, to search out

Ethiopia. This *Pedro* was a man very learned, eloquent, skilfull in ſundrie languages, painfull in his endeuors, fortunate in his attempts, and moſt deſirous to finde out new countries and people both by ſea and land. He therefore in the yeere aboue mentioned, togither with his companion *Alonço de Paiua*, (who died in the voiage) trauailed firſt to Alexandria and Cairo in Egypt: from whence in the companie of certaine Mores of Fez and Tremizen, he proceeded on to El Tor, an hauen towne vpon the Arabian ſhore of the Red ſea, and thence to Aden, ſituate without the entrance of the Arabian gulfe. Where hauing embarqued himſelfe in a ſhip of Mores, he trauailed to Calicut, Goa, and other places of the eaſt Indies; and being fully informed of the ſtate of the Spiceries, he croſſed ouer the maine Ocean to çofala, ſailed thence to Ormuz, and then returned backe to Cairo. From whence (hauing diſpatched letters vnto his king) in the company of *Rabbi Ioſeph* a Iew, he made a ſecond voiage to Ormuz; and in his returne he tooke his iourney towards Ethiopia, the Emperour whereof at that time, was called *Alexander*. Vnto whom when he had deliuered a letter and a mappe of the world ſent from king *Iohn*, he was moſt kindly entertained, and rewarded with many rich gifts. And albeit he moſt earneſtly deſired to returne into his owne countrey, yet could he neuer obtaine leaue; but had wealth, honour, and a wife of a noble family beſtowed vpon him, to aſſwage his deſire of returning home. Wherefore in the yeere 1526. which was fortie yeeres after his departure out of Portugall, hee was left, by *Rodrigo de Lima* the Portugall ambaſſadour, ſtill remaining in the court of *Prete Ianni*.

Matthew the firſt ambaſſador ſent from Aethiopia to Portugall.

In all this meane while ſundry Portugals came out of India to the court of the *Prete*, not ſo much to viſite and ſalute him, as to declare the good will and kinde affection of their king towards him. Whereupon Queene *Helena*, which was then protectreſſe of the Ethiopian or Abaſſin empire, to requite the king of Portugal with like friendſhip, ſent vnto him in the company of the foreſaid Portugals an ambaſſador or meſſenger of hers, called *Matthew*, who was a merchant borne in Armenia, being a man skilfull in ſundry languages and in many other matters. This *Matthew* ſhee not onely furniſhed with letters requiſite for ſuch an ambaſſage; but enioined him alſo to declare by word of mouth vnto the king of Portugal the principall heads of their doctrine or beleefe, together with their rites and cuſtomes, and the preſent ſtate of the whole church of Ethiopia. Moreouer ſhee preſented him with a little croſſe made (as they ſuppoſe) of a piece of that very croſſe, whereon our ſauiour Chriſt was crucified; with many other tokens and pledges of mutuall chriſtian amity. Thus *Matthew* being diſmiſſed, tooke his iourney to the eaſt Indies; from whence he was conducted by ſea into Portugal; where arriuing in the yeere 1513, he did his meſſage, according to Queene *Helenas* directions, vnto the king *Don Emanuel*.

The king taking wonderfull delight at this meſſage, and at theſe guiftes which were ſent him from a Chriſtian prince ſo far remote, not long after

prepared

prepared a new*ambassage, with letters, and presents of exceeding value; in which ambassage the pietie and vertue of *Francis Aluarez* a Portugal priest extraordinarily appeered. For he remaining sixe whole yeeres in the court and countrie of Ethiopia, tooke there most diligent notice of all matters worthie the obseruation. And he had often and familiar conference not onely with the emperour himselfe, but also with the patriarke, concerning the whole state of their religion, and of matters ecclesiasticall; as also he was a most curious obseruer of all their rites and ceremonies. Who in the yeere of Christ 1526. being dismissed by *Prete Ianni*, was accompanied into Portugall by another Ethiopian or Abassin ambassadour called *Zagazabo*, and brought letters also to Pope *Clement* the seuenth, with a golden crosse of a pound weight. It seemeth likewise that the said ambassadour of *Prete Ianni* was a very honest, vpright, and godly man, who by reason of their continuall warres was detained in Portugall till the yeere of our Lord 1539.

**This ambassage was at the first vndertaken by Odoardo Galuano: who dying at the isle of Camaran in the Red sea, it was performed by Rodrigo de Lima.*

Zagazabo the second ambassador sent from Ethiopia to Portugall.

The letters of *Prete Ianni* to the Pope, were by *Francis Aluarez* deliuered at Bononia, in the yeere of Christ 1533. Where in the presence of *Charles* the Emperour, and before a mightie assembly of people, they were read and approoued with great ioy and acclamation. Both which letters, as well to the Pope as to the king *Don Emanuel*, were full of Christian pietie and loue: wherein first that mightie Emperour (though therein he was deceiued) with singular reuerence and dutie, submitted himselfe vnto the Pope of Rome, as to the head of all the church; offering by the said *Francis* most humble obedience, after the manner of other Christian princes. As likewise he profered vnto them both, the offices of beneuolence, charity, and true friendship; intending to ioine a firme league of amitie with them, and signifying that his dominions were free and open to all Christians, that would by sea or land frequent the same. Also he plainly seemed to detest the mutuall discords of Christians, exhorting them to bandy their forces against the Mahumetans, and promising his roiall assistance, and most earnest endeuour, for the vanquishing of Christs enimies, and their conuersion to the truth. Lastly he required, that men of learning, and of skill in the holy Scriptures, as likewise diligent Printers, and all sorts of artificers might be sent him, to be emploied in the seruice of his church and common wealth. Signifying that he would not violently detaine any man in his dominions, but would dismisse him into his owne countrey, with honour, and liberall rewards. And that he might testifie his louing and kind affection to the king of Portugall, by a most woorthie monument, he sent him the crowne off his owne head, as the present of a dutifull sonne to his most deere father.

Wherefore by this most admirable diligence and industrie of the Portugals, Ethiopia in these last times hath beene discouered and made knowne vnto vs. Neither is there any thing in the Ethiopians religion so hidden and vnreuealed, which hath not either beene found out by *Francis Aluarez*, or most largely declared by *Zagazabo* the Ethiopian ambassadour. Out of the

relations therefore of these two woorthy authors, as out of a fountaine, we will deriue the whole substance of our speech.

The ground of the Ethiopicke religion is the profession of one true God, and of his sonne Iesus Christ, which of all Christians is the peculiar and proper marke, whereby onely they are to be named Christians. Concerning this maine point the Ethiopians faith stands most firme and entire: for they togither with vs do confesse and adore one God and three persons of the deitie, God the father, God the sonne begotten of his father from euerlasting, who for vs men was incarnate, died, and rose againe; and God the holy Ghost proceeding from the father and the sonne. In this article they follow the holy creed of the Apostles, and the Nicene creed. Saue that they hold that Christ descended into hell for his owne soule, and for the soule of *Adam*, which he receiued of the virgine *Marie*. For this opinion they do most stedfastly embrace; saying that it came by most ancient tradition from Christ himselfe to his Apostles.

The old testament they so conioine with the new, as they allow and receiue both Iewish & Christian ceremonies. Vpon the eight day after their birth, *they circumcise all children both male and female. And vnlesse sicknes vrgeth them to make the more haste, they defer the baptisme of their male children till they be fortie, and of their females, til they be eightie daies old. Circumcision (they say) they receiued from Queene *Maqueda*, which went to heare the wisedome of *Salomon*: and baptisme from Saint *Philip*, and from the Eunuch which *Philip* baptized. Yet do they stedfastly hold, that not by circumcision, but by faith in Iesus Christ they attaine vnto true felicitie. Their baptisme they renue euerie yeere: for vpon the day of the three Sages, otherwise called Epiphanie, whereon Christ was baptised in Iordan, they meet in great assemblies, and enter naked into the water; where the priest layeth his hand vpon them, dippeth them thrise, and pronounceth the words of baptisme, saying, I baptise thee in the name of the father, the sonne, and the holy ghost; adding thereto the signe of the crosse. This custome receiued from their predecessors they doe most carefully obserue, not thereby to abase or extenuate their first baptisme; but that euerie yeere they may receiue a new absolution from their sinnes. Also vnto their infants vpon the verie day of their baptisme, they giue the bodie of our Lord, vnder a small morsell of bread. But such as are growen to yeeres of discretion before they come vnto the Lords holy supper, do make confession and receiue absolution of all their sinnes from the priest. Then doe they all betimes in the morning both clergie and laytie receiue the whole sacrament of the bodie and true blood of Iesus Christ in their churches. Which being receiued, they may not vnder paine of grieuous punishment, so much as once spit, till the going downe of the sunne.

* *Whereas the Iewes circumcised the males onely.*

Popish confirmation and vnction, they neither esteeme for sacraments nor vse them. The Pope of Rome, either in regard of errour and ignorance, or to win his fauour, they acknowledge to be head of the church, and doe

pretend

pretend a kinde of obedience to the sea of Rome. Albeit that the Pope, before the Portugals discouerie of the east Indies could neuer communicate any assistance vnto them, * nor yet since that time, by reason of the huge distance almost of fifteene thousand miles. For so many miles the ambassadour, which was sent out of Portugall to Ethiopia, said that he had trauailed. [*It is nothing so long a iourney through Egypt, Troglodytica, and Barnagasso, but that the way through those countries is stopped by the tyranny of the Turkes.*] Howbeit Queene *Helena*, and after her king *Dauid*, seeme onely to haue sought and desired some coniunction with the Roman church, and the Christians of Europe: to the end that with their powers and forces vnited, they might assaile and vanquish the Mahumetans, being most deadly enimies to the Christian name.

* *Yet in the time of Pope Paule the 4. were sent certaine priests with a new created Patriarke, and two Bishops: who notwithstanding when they went seriously about to bring in the Romish religion, and the supremacie of the Pope, were crossed by the Emperour in all their proceedings.*

Moreouer these Ethiopick Christians do vse to fast vpon certaine daies of the weeke till sun set: as namely vpon Wednesdaies, to renue the sadde memorie of the Iewes councell, wherein they decreed to crucifie our Redeemer: and vpon Fridaies, that they may with thankfull mindes acknowledge his most bitter passion and death. Likewise the day of Good Fridaie, whereon our blessed Sauiour was nailed to the crosse, they celebrate with great deuotion, especially towards the euening. Vnto these they adde a Lent of fortie daies, wherein they liue onely by bread and water. The feasts both of Christ, of the virgine *Marie*, and of certaine Saints, they keepe holie: vpon which daies meeting in their churches three houres after sunne-rising, they read the bookes of the Prophets, and emploie themselues in holy exercises. They sanctifie the Sabaoth in imitation of the Iewes: and keepe holy the Lords day according to the apostles institution. On both these daies they worship God by performing things holie, and eschuing matters prophane. Into their churches they may not come but barefoote onely; neither is it there lawfull for any man to walke vp and downe, nor to talke of worldly affaires, nor to spit, nor cough.

The chiefe vse of the law (they say) is to shew vs our sinnes: neither do they thinke any man liuing able to performe the same, but onely Iesus Christ who fulfilled it on our behalfe. The Saints they loue indeed and reuerence, but doe not pray vnto them. Vnto the blessed virgine *Marie* the mother of Christ, they ascribe great honour, but neither do they adore her, nor craue assistance at her hands. They haue euery day one masse onely, and that a short one, in stead of a sacrifice: but gaines thereby they make none at all. Neither do they eleuate or holde vp the sacrament of the supper, as the masse-priests do: nor applie the same to redeeme dead mens soules from the paines of purgatorie. Howbeit, that there is a place of purgatorie, they do not denie. Wherefore their dead are buried with crosses and supplications, and especially with the rehearsall of the beginning of Saint *Iohns* Gospell. Then the day following they offer almes for them, and vpon certaine daies after they adde funerall-banquets; supposing that vpon Sabaoths and the Lords daies, they which died godly, are freed from all

torments in Purgatorie, and at length, hauing receiued the full measure of chastisement for their sinnes, that then they go into eternall rest. For the effecting whereof, they do not thinke any indulgences of their patriarke, but onely the meere mercy and grace of God to be auaileable.

Mariage is no lesse permitted to their clergie and priests, then to their laie-people: yet so, that his first wife being dead, a priest cannot marry another without the Patriarkes dispensation. Whosoeuer keepeth a concubine is debarred from all sacred administrations. And whatsoeuer bishop or clergie-man is found to haue a bastard, he is vtterly depriued of holy orders, and of all his benefices and spirituall dignities. Mariages are often solemnized without the church, a bed being placed before the house of the bride and the bridegroome. Then come three priests, who going thrise about the bridegromes bed, sing with a loud voice Halleluiah, and other things. This done, they cut one locke of haire from the bridegroomes head, and another from the head of the bride, which they wash in wine made of hony; and then putting vpon either of their heads the others lock, they sprinkle them with a kinde of holy-water, and so depart. Which being performed, the mariage-feast beginneth, and holdeth on till the night be far spent. At length the bride and bridegroom are brought vnto their owne house, out of which neither of them may go forth for the space of an whole moneth after.

In some places they are maried in the church by the patriarke himselfe. Where the mariage-bed standing in manner aforesaid, the patriarke with sweet incense and crosses walketh thrise about it, and then turning himselfe towards them, he layeth his hand vpon the bridegroomes head, saying: *Do that which god hath commanded in his gospel, and thinke now that you are not two but one flesh.* Hauing spoken these words, he administreth the communion vnto them, and blesseth them. Polygamie, or many wiues at once, are permitted by the emperour and ciuill magistrate vnto the Ethiopians: but in their churches there is no place at all for such as haue more wiues then one. Neither may any such persons presume to enter into their churches, but are held as excommunicate, and are not receiued into the congregation, before hauing put away all the residue of their wiues, they betake themselues to one onely.

Diuorcements they vse very commonlie, and often vpon light occasions except onely the priests, who may by no meanes depart from their wiues. Whereby it appeareth, that their priests approue not that inconstancie in a matter of so great moment. The best remedy which they haue to preuent this mischiefe, is at the daye of mariage to alotte some great penalty vpon that person which shall first forsake the other. Amongst them likewise, according to the law of Moses, brothers vse to marry their brothers wiues, to raise vp seede vnto them. Howbeit this abuse of marriage is not practised by all, but onely by the mightier sort. For the country-people and those of poorer condition, being euery one contented with his owne wife, do so painefully employ themselues about their labour, and the getting of their liuing,

liuing, that they are free from those violent passions of lust.

Infants that die before baptisme they name halfe christians, because, being sanctified onely by the faith of Christian parents, they are not as yet by baptisme throughly engraffed into the church. From meates, which the law of Moses accounted vncleane, they also do abstaine. The heresies of Arius, Macedonius, and Nestorius, they reiect and condemne.

The whole church of Ethiopia is gouerned by a patriark called in the Ethiopick language *Abuna*, which signifieth, A Father. This patriark of theirs is first solemnely created at Ieruasem by the voices of those monkes which keepe the sepulchre of our Lord. Afterward hee is confirmed, and sent into Ethiopia by the patriarke of Alexandria. The emperour *Prete Ianni*, so often as there is need of a new patriark, sendeth an ambassage with many gifts to Ierusalem, and requireth a patriark from thence. Which patriarke, together with a monke of the order of Saint *Antony* the Hermite, being come into Ethiopia, is, according to an ancient custome, receiued with the generall consent, congratulation, applause, and reioycing of all degrees and estates of people. To this high function is singled out some one man of singular piety, grauity, learning, and of more ancient yeeres then the rest. His speciall duties are to giue holy orders, to administer church-discipline, and to excommunicate contumaces or obstinate offenders, which are for their stubbornnes famished to death. But the authoritie of giuing Bishopricks and spirituall benefices, the Emperour reserueth to himselfe. In Ethiopia there are infinit numbers of priests, and of monkes. *Francis Aluarez* saw at one time ordained by the Patriarke two thousand three hundred fiftie sixe priests. And the like manner of ordaining or instalment they haue euerie yeere twise. It seemeth that those which are chosen into that order, are men destitute of learning and liberall artes. Vnto their priesthood none is admitted before he be full thirtie yeeres of age. It falleth out likewise, that during the vacation of the Patriarkship, the church hath great want of priests. Which vacation is oftentimes prolonged by reason of the continuall wars betweene the Christians and the bordering Mahumetans, and Gentiles: whereby all passage from Ethiopia to the monks of Ierusalem is quite cut off. Hence proceedeth great desolation in that church. But with monks all places in this Abassin empire do mightily swarme. These do not onely confine themselues in monasteries, wherof here are great numbers, but also take vpon them offices in the court, and intangle themselues in militarie affaires, and in buying and selling of merchandize. Neither are there anie kinde of people in those easterne parts more conuersant in trade of merchandize then priests and monkes. So that the old said sawe is most truelie verified:

What ere the world doth put in vre,
The Monke will intermeddle, sure.

It is likewise to be noted, that the priests, monkes, and other ministers of the Ethiopian church, are not maintained by tithes and almes as they are in Europe.

Europe. They haue onelie certaine fieldes and gardens, which muſt be manured by the monkes and clergie themſelues. To beg ought of the common people they are in no wiſe permitted, vnleſſe perhaps ſome man will of his owne accorde beſtowe ſomewhat in their churches for the exequies of the dead, or for ſome other ſacred vſes.

Theſe Ethiopians haue a certaine booke, which they ſuppoſe to haue beene written by all the Apoſtles when they were aſſembled at Ieruſalem. This booke in their language they call Manda and Abetilis: and do beleeue that all thinges therein contained are to be holden for goſpel. In it, amongſt other matters, are contained certaine penal ſtatutes; as for example. If a prieſt be conuicted of Adultery, Man-ſlaughter, Robberie, or periurie, he is to receiue like puniſhment with other malefactors. Likewiſe, that aſwell eccleſiaſticall, as ſecular perſons, are to abſtaine from comming to church for the ſpace of fower and twentie howers after carnall copulation. Some lawes alſo there are, concerning the purification of women after their moneths, and their child-birth: which, bicauſe we can make but little vſe of them, I do heere paſſe ouer in ſilence. One thing there is in this booke very well prouided, namely, that twiſe euery yeere there be a Synod aſſembled in the church of Chriſt, for the handling and diſcuſſing of all matters eccleſiaſticall.

Theſe are the principall points of the religion, faith, and ceremonies of the Ethiopicke church vnder *Preſte Ianni*, which hitherto haue come to our knowledge. A good part whereof is agreeable vnto the ſcriptures of the old and new teſtament. And ſuch in very deed they are, as repreſent vnto vs the acknowledgement of one true God, and the faith and worſhip of our onely Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt. But as neuer any church vpon earth was quite voide of blemiſh: ſo neither is this of Ethiopia free from all ſtaines of errour. Which notwithſtanding may ſeeme the leſſe ſtrange, bicauſe in Ethiopia there are no ſchooles nor Seminaries of liberall artes, ſaue only, that the prieſts themſelues (according to their ſimple skill) traine vp their ſonnes vnto ſuch learning, as may in time make them capable of prieſthood. Neither was there euer any man yet, that reformed their errors. *Francis Aluarez* reporteth, that the Patriarke of this Ethiopick church, in a certaine priuate conference, did grieuouſly complaine of all ſuch errours as were there maintained, and was moſt earneſtly deſirous of a reformation. Which deſire of his, as it is moſt holy & cõmendable; ſo is it by al chriſtiãs to be approoued. God almightie grant, that the Ethiopians may one daie attaine to the accompliſhment of this his compaſſionate well-wiſhing, and may haue a happie reformation of their church. For this to deſire and praie for, is farre more conuenient and Chriſtian-like, then to diſgrace them with reprochfull words, and to bereaue them of the name of Chriſtians. Which harde and vnchriſtian meaſure, *Zagazabo* the Ethiopian ambaſſadour, reporteth with griefe, that he found among the Popiſh prieſts of Portugall; by whom he was quite reſtrained from the vſe and communion of the holie

ſupper,

ſupper, as if he had beene a meere Gentile, or Anathema.

It is indeed an errour, or rather a great infirmitie, that they do as yet retaine and vſe ſome of the Iewiſh ceremonies. But we are wholie to impute it to their ignorance of Chriſtian liberty. And wheras they permit mariage to their prieſts, it is neither repugnant to the ſacred word of God, nor to the inſtitution of the Apoſtles. Wherefore it ought not to be diſallowed of any Chriſtians. Vnleſſe they will preferre the decrees of the Pope before the commandement of God, eſtabliſhed by Chriſt and his apoſtles. Wherby it may plainly appeere how impiouſly and ſauagely the Prieſts of Portugall dealt, in that eſpecially for this cauſe they ſo ſharpely inneied againſt the Ethiopick ambaſſadour, and ſo vnciuilly entreated him.

Their yeerely renewing of baptiſme, was at the firſt brought in by errour, and ſince by ancient vſe and tradition, hath growen authenticall. For in very deed ſo great is the force of antiquitie and cuſtome, that where they once take roote, they can hardly be remooued. And it is a woonder that the Ethiopians do ſo often repeat baptiſme, when as they cannot be circumciſed any more then once. But in regard of all theſe defects, what can we better deuiſe to do, then in our daily praiers to wiſh them mindes better informed, and the puritie and integritie of faith, which is agreeable vnto gods worde? The Ethiopians conceiued exceeding ioy at the firſt arriuall of the Portugals in their countrie: hoping that their mutuall acquaintance and familiaritie, would breed a ſimilitude and coniunction, as well of their religions, as of their affections and mindes. But I am verily afraid, leaſt the reprochfull and ſterne carriage of the Popiſh prieſts and monkes towards the Ethiopick ambaſſadours before mentioned, hath more then euer in times paſt eſtranged the mindes of that nation from the Chriſtians of Europe.

Howbeit the ſingular care and induſtrie of thoſe two renowmed Princes, *Iohn* the ſecond, and *Emanuel*, kings of Portugall, is moſt highly to be extolled and celebrated, who by infinit charges emploied vpon their nauigations to The eaſt Indies, and to theſe parts; haue opened a way for the European Chriſtians, to the ſoutherne church of Ethiopia; and for the Ethiopians to this weſterne church of Europe. Which had not theſe two woorthie Princes brought to effect, we ſhould not ſo much as haue knowne the name of a Chriſtian church in Ethiopia. For thither by the way of Arabia and Egypt, in regard of the Arabians and Mahumetans moſt deadly enmitie to the Chriſtian faith, it is ſo dangerous and difficult to trauell, as it ſeemeth to be quite barred and ſhut vp. Vnleſſe therefore ouer the Atlantike Ethiopick, and Indian ſeas the Portugals had thither found a paſſage by nauigation; it had almoſt beene impoſſible for any ambaſſadours or other perſons, to haue come out of Ethiopia into theſe weſterne parts. Thus farre *Matthew Dreſſerus.*

Of

An ambaſſage ſent from Pope *Paule* the fourth *to* Claudius *the Emperour of Abaſsia or the higher* Ethiopia, for planting of the religion and ceremonies of the *church of Rome in his dominions; which ambaſſage tooke none effect at all.*

IN the yeere 1555 *Iohn* the third king of Portugal, determined to leaue no meanes vnattempted for the abſolute reconciliation of *Prete Ianni* vnto the church of Rome. For though *Dauids* ambaſſador had performed obedience to Pope *Clement* the ſeuenth on his emperours behalfe; yet doubted the king of Portugal (as true it was) that for want of ſpeedie proſecution, thoſe forward beginnings would proue but altogether fruitleſſe; in that for all this, they ſtill embraced the hereſies of Dioſcorus and Eutiches, and depended on the authoritie of the Patriark of Alexandria, receiuing their Abuna from him, who is the ſole arbitrator of all their matters eccleſiaſticall, the adminiſtrer of their ſacraments, the giuer of orders ouer all Ethiopia, maſter of their ceremonies, and Inſtructer of their faith. Whereupon he ſuppoſed, that he could not do any thing more profitable, or neceſſarie, then to ſend thither a Patriark appointed at Rome, who might exerciſe ſpirituall authority ouer them, as alſo with him ſome prieſts, of ſingular integrity and learning, who with their ſermons, diſputations, & diſcourſes both publike and priuate, might reduce thoſe people from their errors and hereſies to the trueth, and might confirme and ſtrengthen them in the ſame. And vnto this, it ſeemed a wide gate was already open; becauſe not many yeeres before, *Claudius* the emperour of Ethiopia receiued great ſuccours from the Portugals, againſt Graadamet king of Zeila, who had brought him to an hard point; and in a letter written from him to *Stephen Gama*, he called *Chriſtopher Gama* his brother, who died in this war, by the reuerend name of a Martyr. The king of Portugal therefore hauing imparted this his reſolution, firſt with Pope *Iulius* the third, and then with *Paul* the fourth, it was by them concluded to ſend into Ethiopia thirteene prieſts, men of principall eſtimation and account aboue others of their qualitie. *Iohn Nunnes* Barretto was made Patriark, and there were ioyned vnto him two aſſiſting Biſhops, *Melchior Carnero*, and *Andrea Oiuedo*, vnder title of the Biſhops of Nicea, and Hierapolis. King *Iohn* ſet forth this ambaſſage, not onely with whatſoeuer the voiage it ſelfe neceſſarily required, but further with all royall preparation, and rich preſents for *Prete Ianni*. Neuertheleſſe, the better to lay open an entrance for the Patriarke, there was by the kings appointment ſent before from the city of Goa, Iago Dias, and with him

Gonſalue

Gonsaluo Rodrigo, into Ethiopia, to discouer the minde of the Neguz, and the disposition of his people. These two being admitted to the presence of that Prince, shewed him the letters of king *Iohn*, wherein he congratulated with him, on the behalfe of all Christians; for that following the example of his grandfather, and father, he had embraced the Christian faith, and vnion. Whereat *Claudius* was amazed, as at a thing neuer before thought of. And it being demaunded, why he had written to the king of Portugal to that effect, he excused himselfe by the writer, and interpreter of his letter: adding thereunto, that though hee esteemed that king as his very good brother, yet was he neuer minded to swerue one iot from the faith of his predecessors. *Roderigo* for all this, was no whit daunted, but wrought all meanes to bring *Claudius* to his opinion. But the greatest difficultie against this his busie enterprise, was the ignorance of the emperour and the princes of Ethiopia in all the generall Councels, and ancient Histories. Afterwards perceiuing that the Neguz did not willingly admit him to audience, he wrote and diuulged a booke in the Chaldean toong; wherein confuting the opinions of the the Abassins, he laboured mightily to aduance the authoritie of the Romaine church. Which booke raised so great a tumult, that the emperour, to auoide woorse inconueniences which were likely to ensue, was faine quickly to suppresse it. *Iago Dias* perceiuing that he did but loose time, & the terme of his returne approching, tooke his leaue of the Neguz. And hauing made knowne in Goa, how matters stood, it was not thought requisite that the Patriarke should expose his owne person, togither with the reputation of the Romaine church, vnto so great hazard. But rather, not wholy to abandon the enterprise, they determined to send thither *Andrew Ouiedo*, (newe elect bishop of Hierapolis) with two or three assistants, who with greater authoritie might debate of that which *Roderigo* alreadie had so vnfruitfully treated of. *Ouiedo* most willingly vndertaking this attempt, put himselfe on the voiage, with father *Emanuel Fernandez*, and some fewe others. When he was come into Abassia, he stood in more need of patience then disputation. For king *Claudius* within a fewe moneths after, being vanquished and slaine, *Adamas* his brother succeeded, who was a great enimie to the sea of Rome. This man drew *Ouiedo* and his assistants, to the warres with him, and intreated them most barbarously, as also those Abassins whom they had conuerted. He likewise was afterwards ouerthrowne in battaile by the Turkes, who stripped *Ouiedo* and his companions of all things that they had. Whereupon they grew into such pouertie and miserie, as (all helpe failing them) they were enforced to get their liuing with the plough and spade, till they all died one after another. This Ethiopian Christianitie is brought at this day to an hard point, by the inuasions of the Turkes and Mores, as is before declared. Notwithstanding their religious men affirme, that they haue propheses of the comming of a Christian nation to their Ports from farre countries, with whom they shall go to the destruction of the Mores: and these they hold to bee Portugals. They haue farther, certaine

The Emperour of Ethiopia wil by no meanes admit the supremacie and religion of the Romish church.

Adamas a new Emperour of Ethiopia.

taine presagements of Saint *Sinoda*, who was an Egyptian Hermite, of the ruine of Meca, the recouerie of the holy sepulcher, and the taking of Egypt and Cairo, by the Abassins, vnited with the Latines.

Of the Christians of the isle of Socotera.

VIcinitie of place and conformitie of customes inuite me to crosse the sea, and to visite the Christians of Socotera. This island is sixtie miles long, and fiue and twentie in bredth. It is situate ouer against the Red sea. The people thereof receiued the faith from Saint *Thomas* the Apostle: for they affirme, that heere he suffred shipwracke, and that of the broken and battered ship he built a church, which is as yet extant. They imitate for the most part the rites, customes, and fashions of the Abassins, but with great ignorance and errour: for being separated from all commerce with the Christians of these parts, they remaine depriued of that spirituall helpe, which the westerne church by communication might impart vnto them. They retaine circumcision, and some other Moisaicall ceremonies. Also they pray for the dead, and obserue ordinarie fasts: hauing prefixed howers for praier, and bearing great reuerence to their religion, in honour whereof, they build chappels, wherein assembling togither, with an high and loude voice, they make supplications and praiers in the Hebrew toong. But their farre distance (as I said) from these parts of Christendome, the sterilitie of the island, and the pouertie of the people, are occasions that the little light of truth which they haue, is in a manner quite eclipsed by multitudes of errors. Vnto other things may be added the tyrannie of the king of Fartac a Mahumetan, who subdued them about the yeere of our Lord 1482. and partly by dominion, partly by affinitie and kinred, and partly also by conuersation, brought in amongst them the deadly poison of *Mahumet*. From this seruitude they were deliuered by *Tristan d'Acunna*, one of the king of Portugals captaines; sixe and twentie yeeres after they fell into the same. And for their better securitie, he repaired the fortresse, leauing therein a Portugall garrison. But bicause the charges farre surmounted any benefite that came of the island, not long after the said fortresse was ruinated, and the island abandoned by the Portugals. *Iohn* the third king of Portugall had a great desire to assist and free them from the tyrannie of the Turkes: whereunto after the taking of Aden they were subiect. But for feare of prouoking the great Turke, or giuing him occasion to disturbe and molest those seas with his fleetes, as also for the dispatching of other affaires he had in hand, he neuer went about that enterprise.

Fartac a countrey of Arabia Felix; the king whereof subdued the isle of Zocotera, 1482.

Of

Of the Christians of Nubia.

FRancis *Aluarez* in his Aethiopicke relation, writeth, that he being at the court of *Prete Ianni*, there arriued certaine ambassadors frō Nubia, to make sute vnto that prince, for some priests, and ministers of the Gospell and sacraments, by whom they might be instructed in the Christian faith. But *Prete Ianni* answered them, that he had not enough for his owne countrey: whereupon they returned home very discōtent, so that hauing no helpe from the Christians, & on the other side being daily sollicited by the Mahumetans, vpon whom they border on many sides, it is thought, that at this present, they remaine in a manner without any religion at all. Notwithstanding at this day, there are more then an hundred and fiftie churches standing, with diuers other notes and signes of Christianitie. Their language partaketh much with the Egyptian, and no lesse with the Chaldean and Arabick.

Of the Christians in the kingdome of Congo.

HItherto we haue described that little, which remaineth of the ancient Christianity of Africk. It now resteth, that we giue some notice of that, which hath beene brought in of late. Congo is a kingdome about the bignes of France, situate (as is before said) beyond the equinoctiall betweene Cabo da Catherina, and Bahia das vacas. It was conuerted to Christian religion, by the meanes of *Don Iohn* the second king of Portugal, in manner following. *Don Diego Cano* a captaine of that king, by his commission coasting along Africa, after a great nauigation, arriued at length in the great riuer of Zaire; and attempting to saile vp into it, he discouered along the banks thereof many townes, where he found much more affability in the inhabitants, then in those of other countries which before he had discouered. And that he might be able to giue the more faithfull aduertisement thereof to his king, his hart moued him to go to the court of that kingdome. Whither being come, and courteously brought to the kings presence, he shewed them the vanity of their Idolatry, & the high reuerence of christian faith. And he found in that Prince so good a disposition, as returning into Portugal, besides an ambassador he was permitted to carry with him certaine youths of noble parentage, to the end they might learne the Christian doctrine, and be well instructed therein; and being baptized also, might afterwards be sent back with Portugall priests to preache the gospel, and to plant the Christian faith in that kingdome. These youthes remained in Portugal two yeeres, and were there liberally entertained, and with all diligence instructed in matters of religion, and were at length with great solemnity baptized. When they came to riper yeeres, king *Iohn* sent them backe againe into their owne countrey, with an honorable ambassage,

in whose company went for teachers and instructers of that nation three Dominick-Fryers, reputed for men of exquisit learning and holy life. Being arriued in Congo, they first cõuerted *Mani-Sogno* the kings vncle, with one of his sonnes. After that ensued the baptisme of the king and Queene; for which cause in short time, there was a goodly Church erected, vnder the name and title of *Santa Cruz*. And in the meane while there were infinit Idols burnt. The king was called *Iohn*, the Queene *Leonora*, and his eldest sonne *Alonso*. This *Alonso* was a singular good man, who not being satisfied in his owne conuersion, laboured also with a kind of Apostolicall zeale for the conuersion of his subiects. But let no man thinke, that the planting of religion can euer passe without some labour and trouble. These Dominick-Fryers, besides the intemperature of the aire and vnusuall heat, which consumed them, were also euilly entreated by the *Moci-Congi. For although they shewed themselues docible, and tractable enough, while they were instructed onely about ceremonies, and diuine mysteries, (because they thought, that the higher those matters were aboue humaine capacity, the more they sorted and were agreable to the maiestie of God) neuertheless when they began to entreate seriously of Temperance, continence, restitution of other mens goods, forgiuing of iniuries, and other heades of Christian pietie, they found not onely great hinderance and difficultie, but euen plaine resistance and opposition. The king himselfe, who had from the beginning shewed notable zeale, was now somewhat cooled; who because he was loth to abandon his soothsaiers and fortune-tellers, but aboue all, the multitude of his concubines (this being a generall difficultie among the Barbarians) would by no meanes giue eare vnto the Preachers. Also the women (who were now reiected one after another) not enduring so suddenly to be banished from their husbandes, brought the court and roiall citie of Saint Saluador into a great vproare. *Paulo Aquitino* second sonne to the king, put tow to this fire, who would by no meanes be baptized; for which cause there grew great enmity betwixt him and *Alonso* his elder brother, who with all his power furthered the proceedings, and maintained the grouth of the Christian religion. During these troubles, the old king died, and the two brothers fought a battell, which had this successe; that *Alonso* the * true heire, with sixe and thirtie soldiers, calling vpon the name of Iesus, discomfited the huge armie of his heathenish brother, who was himselfe also taken aliue, and died prisoner in this his rebellion. God fauoured *Alonso* in this warre, with manifest miracles. For first they affirme, that being readie to enter into battaile, he saw a light so cleere and resplendent, that he and his companie which beheld it, remained for a good while with their eies declined, and their mindes so full and repleniished with ioy and a kind of tender affection, that cannot easily be expressed. And then lifting vp their eies vnto heauen, they sawe fiue shining swords, which the king tooke afterwards for his armes, and his successors vse the same at this day.

Hauing obteined this victorie, he assembled all his nobles, and streightly enioined

*So are the inhabitants of Congo called.

*So called by Osorius lib. 3. de Reb. Gest. Eman. But by Phil. Pigafetta. lib. 2. Cap. 2. Mani-Pango.

*Osorius de Reb. Gest. Eman. lib. 3.

enioined them to bring all the idols of his countrey to an appointed place, and so vpon an high hill, he caused them all to be burned. This *Alonso* raigned prosperously for fiftie yeeres togither, in which space he exceedingly furthered by authoritie and example, as also by preaching and doctrine, the new-planted Christianitie. Neither did *Don Emanuell* the King of Portugall giue ouer this enterprise: for he sent from thence to Congo, twelue of those Fryers which the Portugals call Azzurri, of whom Fryer *Iohn Mariano* was head: with architects and smiths for the building and seruice of Churches, and with rich furniture for the same. After king *Alonso*, succeeded *Don Pedro* his sonne: in whose time there was a Bishop appointed ouer the isle of Saint Thomas, who had also committed vnto him the administration of Congo. Where, at the citie of Saint Saluador, was instituted a colledge of eight and twentie Canons in the Church of Santa Cruz. The second bishop was of the bloud roiall of Congo, who trauailed to Rome, and died in his returne homeward. *Don Francisco* succeeded *Don Pedro*, who continued but a small space: & *Don Diego* his neere kinsman was after his decease aduanced to the crowne. In whose time *Iohn* the third king of Portugall, vnderstanding that neither the king himselfe cared greatly for religion, and that the merchants and priests of Europe furthered not, but rather with their bad life scandalized the people new conuerted, he sent thither fower Iesuits, to renew and reestablish matters of religion. These men arriuing first at the isle of Saint Thomas, and then at Congo, were courteously receiued by the king: and presently going about the busines they came for, one of them tooke vpon him to teach sixe hundred yoong children, the principles of christian religion: and the other dispersed themselues ouer the whole countrie to preach. But all of them, one after another, falling into tedious and long diseases, they were enforced to returne into Europe. At this time there was appointed ouer Congo a third bishop of the Portugall nation, who through the contumacie of the Canons and clergie, found trouble enough. In the meane while *Don Diego* dying, there arose great tumults touching the succession, by meanes whereof, all the Portugals in a manner, that were in Saint Saluador (except priests) were slaine. In the end, *Henrie* brother to *Don Diego* obteined the crowne, and after him (for he quicklie died in the warres of the Anzichi) *Don Aluaro* his son in law. This man reconciled vnto himselfe the Portugall nation, caused all the religious and lay sort dispersed heere and there, throughout the kingdome, to be gathered togither, and wrote for his discharge to the king, and to the Bishop of Saint Thomas. The bishop hauing perused the letters, passed himselfe into Congo: and giuing some order for the discipline of the clergie, he returned to Saint Thomas, where hee ended his daies. It so fell out, that what for the absence, and what for the want of Bishoppes, the progression of religion was much hindred. For one *Don Francisco*, a man for bloud and wealth of no small authoritie, began freely to say, that it was a vaine thing to cleaue to one wife onely, and afterwardes in the end, he fell altogither

* *Called by Philippo Pigafetto Bullamatare.*

altogither from the faith, and was an occasion that the king grew woonderfully cold. They affirme, that this *Francisco* dying, and being buried in the church of Santa Cruz, the diuels vncouered a part of that churches roofe, and with terrible noise drew his dead carcase out of the tombe, and carried it quite away: a matter that made the king exceedingly amazed: but yet another accident that ensued withall, strooke him neerer to the hart: For the Giacchi leauing their owne habitations, entred like Locusts into the kingdome of Congo, and comming to battaile against *Don Aluaro* the king, put him to flight: who not being secure in the head citie, abandoned his kingdome, and togither with the Portugall priests, and his owne princes, retired himselfe vnto an island of the riuer Zaire, called The isle of horses. Thus seeing himselfe brought to such extremitie (for besides the losse of his kingdome, his people died of famine and miserie, and for maintenance of life sold themselues one to another, and to the Portugals also at a base price) for reparation of his state and religion, he had recourse to *Don Sebastian* king of Portugall, and obteined of him sixe hundred soldiers, by whose valour he draue his enimies out of the kingdome, and within a yeere and an halfe, reestablished himselfe in his throne. In his time *Antonio di Glioua* a Spaniard, was made bishop of Saint Thomas, who after much molestation procured him by the captaine of that island, went at length into Congo, with two friers and fower priests, and ordered matters reasonablie well. In the meane while *Don Aluaro* died, and his sonne of the same name succeeded him, who failed not to sollicite, both *Don Sebastian* and *Don Henrie* kings of Portugall, and the king of Spaine also, that they would send him some competent number of preachers and ecclesiasticall persons for the augmentation of the Christian faith in his kingdome: and amidst these determinations he died, and a sonne of his called also *Don Aluaro* succeeded him.

Concerning these Giacchi, otherwise called Agag, read the discourse of Mohenemugi before the beginning of Iohn Leo.

During these tumults, certaine other Portugall Priests went into Congo, labouring to prune that vine which had beene long time giuen ouer, and forsaken. These men haue built them an house in the island of Loanda, where do remaine sixe or seauen of their companie, that are readie to goe sometimes hither, and sometimes thither, as neede requireth. In the yeere of our Lord 1587. king Aluaro, (who bicause hee was not borne of lawfull matrimonie, was but little esteemed by his people) would needes haue one of these priests about him, by whose meanes and authoritie he came to reputation and credite. And God himselfe fauoured his proceedings: for meeting a sister of his by the fathers side, and one of her brothers, with a great armie in the fielde, he gaue him battaile, and bore himselfe therein with such valour, as he did not onely ouerthrow the forces of his enime but further slew the ring-leader and generall thereof, and in the place where he was slaine, he would needs build a church to the honour of Christianitie. And the more by his owne example to mooue others, himselfe was the very first man that put hand to this worke: and likewise with

edicts

edicts and fauourable proclamations, he furthered and doth still aduance the preaching of the Gospell, and the propagation of religion.

Who so is desirous to be more fully instructed concerning the Christianitie of this kingdome, let him read the third and eight bookes of *Osorius de Reb. gest. Eman.* & the second booke of *Philippo Pigafetta* his story of Congo, most properly and decently translated by the iudicious master ABRAHAM HARTWELL.

Of the Christian religion in the kingdome of Angola.

THose Portugal priests that remaine in the Iland Loanda, as aboue we declared, bend themselues more to the conuersion of Angola, then of Congo. The reason is (as I suppose) because the enterprise is new, and more neerely concerneth the Portugals, who there make war vnder the conduct of *Paulo Diaz*, to get possession of the mountaines of Cabambe which abound with rich mines of very fine siluer. It seemeth that god hath fauoured the amplification of his holy name in those parts with some myraculous victories. For first in the yeere 1582, a fewe Portugals in an excursion that they made, put to flight an innumerable companie of the Angolans. And by this victory, they brought in a manner the halfe of that kingdome into their handes: and many Princes and nobles of the land vpon this, were moued to request and make suit to be baptized. Among whom was *Songa* prince of Banza, the kinges Father in law, whose brother and children were baptized already. *Tondella* also, the second person of Angola was conuerted: many Idols were throwne to the ground, and insteede thereof they erected crosses, and built some churches. And within this little while all the Prouince of Corimba is in a manner conuerted. Also in the yeere 1584, an hundred and fiftie Portugals, together with such succors as were conducted by *Paule* Prince of Angola, who was not long before conuerted; discomfited more then a million of Ethiopians. In an other place we declared the readie meanes and oportunities that the Princes of Ethiopia and of India haue, to assemble and bring togither such infinite armies. They say, that certaine Ethiopians being demaunded by a Portugal, how it came to passe that so great a multitude turned their backes to so few men: they answered, that the Portugals strength did it not, which with a blast they would haue confounded, but a woman of incomparable beawty, apparelled in shining light and brightnes, and an old man that kept her company with a flaming sword in his hand, who went aloft in the ayre before the Portugals, and ouerthrew the squadrons of the Angolans, putting them to flight and destruction. In the yeere 1588, were conuerted *Don Paulo* Prince of Mocumba, and with him a thousand persons more.

The Christian religion of Monomotapa.

IN the dominions of the Monomotapa, the light of the faith being with incredible eaſe kindled, was alſo as ſuddenly extinguiſhed by the deuiſes of the Mahumetans. For ſome Portugals going to the court of that monarche, and giuing himſelfe, with ſome of his Princes and vaſſals, a taſte of the goſpel, were an occaſion afterwards that *Gonſaluo de Sylua*, a man no leſſe famous for the integrity of his life, then for his bloud and parentage, went ouer thither from Goa in the yeere 1570. This man arriuing with a proſperous voiage, in the kingdome of Inambane, conuerted and baptized the king, his wife, children, and ſiſter, with his Barons and nobility, and the greateſt part of his people. Through whoſe perſwaſion *Gonſaluo* left his companions, proſecuting his voiage towards the Monomotapa, onely with ſixe Portugals. Thus hauing paſſed Mozambique, and the mouth of the riuer Mafuta, and of Colimane, they came to Mengoaxano king of Quiloa, where they were courteouſly receiued & entertained. And though they had licence in this place to preach the goſpell, yet would not *Gonſaluo* here ſtay, iudging that vpon the cõuerſion of the Monomotapa, that of the neighbor kings would follow without delaie. Embarking themſelues therefore vpon the riuer Cuama, they ſailed along the coaſt of Africa eight daies, till they came to Sena, a very populous village: where *Gonſaluo* baptized about fiue hundred ſlaues, belonging to the Portugal merchants, and prepared for the receiuing of the goſpel the king of Inamor, one of the Monomotapaes vaſſals. In the ende *Antonio Caiado* a Portugall gentleman came from the court, to guide *Gonſaluo* towardes the ſame place. Whither being in ſhort time come, he was preſently viſited on the emperours behalfe, and bountifullie preſented with a great ſumme of gold, and many oxen. But he returning back theſe preſents, gaue the Monomotapa to vnderſtand, that he ſhould know of *Caiado*, what he deſired. The emperour was aſtoniſhed at this his magnanimity, & receiued him afterwards with the greateſt honor, that could poſſibly be deuiſed. And cauſing him to ſit vpon the ſame carpet, whereon alſo his owne mother ſate, he preſently demaunded how many women, how much ground, and how many oxen (thinges mightily eſteemed of in thoſe countries) he would haue. *Gonſaluo* anſwered, that he would haue no other thing but himſelfe. Whereupon the emperour turning to *Caiado* (who was their interpreter) ſaid; that ſurely it could not be otherwiſe, but that he, who made ſo little account of thinges ſo highly valued by others, was no ordinary man; and ſo with much courteſie he ſent him back to his lodging.

Not long time after, the emperour let *Gonſaluo* to vnderſtand, that he and his mother were reſolued to become Chriſtians, and that therefore he ſhould come to baptize them. But he to inſtruct them better in the faith,

deferred

deferred it off for some daies. Finally fiue and twentie daies after his arriuall, with vnspeakeable solemnity and preparation, he gaue the water of baptisme to the king, and to his mother. He was called *Sebastian*, and shee *Maria*. And presently after, about three hundred of the principall in this emperours court were baptized. *Gonsaluo* for his wonderfull abstinence, charity, wisedome, and for many other his singular vertues was so reuerenced and esteemed by those people, as if he had come downe from heauen among them. Now as matters proceeded thus prosperously, and with so desireable successe, behold, an horrible tempest arose which drowned the ship. There were in the court fower Mahumetans most deere vnto the king. These men finding out some occasion, suggested vnto him, that *Gonsaluo* was a Magician, who by witchcraftes and inchantments could turne kingdomes topsie turuie: and that he was come to prie into his estate, and to stir vp his people to rebellion, and so by this meanes to bring his kingdome vnder subiection to the Portugals. With these and such like suggestions they brought the king (who was but a young man) to determine the death of *Gonsaluo*. The effect whereof was, that after long praier, reposing himselfe a little; he was by eight of the kings seruants slaine, and his body throwne into the riuer Mensigine. Neere vnto the same place, were with like violence put to death, fiftie new-conuerted Christians. This rage and furie being ouer, the king was aduertised by the Principall of his kingdome, and then by the Portugals, of the excesse and outrage he had therein committed. He excused himselfe the best he could, causing those Mahumetans to be slaine, who had seduced him; and he sought out some others also who lay hid, to put them to death. Whereupon it seemed that by the death of father *Gonsaluo*, the conuersion of this great king, and of his empire, should haue bin furthered, and no whit hindered, if the Portugals would rather haue preuailed by the word of God, then by force of armes. The which I say, because insteed of sending new preachers into those countries, to preserue that which was alreadie gotten, and to make new conuersions, they resolued to reuenge themselues by warre. There departed therefore out of Portugall a good fleete, with a great number of noble Portugals therein, conducted by *Francisco Barretto*. At the fame of this warre, mooued against him, the Monomotapa full of feare, sent to demaund peace of *Barretto*. But he aspiring to the infinite mines of gold in that kingdome, contemned all conditions offered him. The effect of this enterprise was, that this armie which was so terrible to a mightie Monarke, was in fewe daies consumed by the intemperature of the aire, which is there insupportable to the people of Europe.

of

Of the fortresses and colonies maintained by *the Spaniards and Portugals vpon the maine of* Africa: by meanes whereof the Christian religion hath there *some small footing. VVhich albeit in other respects they* haue beene mentioned before, yet heere also in this *one regard, it seemeth not from our purpose briefely to remember them.*

TO the propagation of Christianity, those fortresses & colonies woonderfully helpe, which the Castilians, but much more the Portugals, haue planted on the coast of Africa. For they serue very fitly either to conuert infidels vpon diuers occasions, or by getting an habite of their languages and customes, to make a more easie way to their conuersion. For those who are not sufficient to preach, serue for interpreters to the preachers. And thus God hath oftentimes beene well serued, and with excellent fruit and effect, by the indeuour of some soldiers. On the coast of Africa vpon the Mediterran sea, the Spaniards haue Oran, Mersalchibir, Melilla, &c. and the Portugals, Tanger, and çeuta, and without the streights of Gibraltar, Arzilla, and Mazagan; and in Ethiopia, Saint George de la mina. They haue also a setled habitation in the citie of Saint Saluador, the Metropolitan of the kingdome of Congo, and in Cumbiba, a countrie of Angola. Beyond the cape de Buena esperança, they hold the fortresses, and colonies of Sena, Cefala, and Mozambiche. Heere besides their secular clergie, is a conuent of Dominicans, who indeuour themselues to instruct the Portugals, and the Pagans also which there inhabite, and do trafficke thither.

Of the Islands of the Atlanticke Ocean, where the Spaniards and Portugals haue planted religion.

THe Christian name is also augmented, and doth still increase in the Atlantick Ocean, by meanes of the colonies conducted thither, partly by the Spaniards and partly by the Portugals. The Spaniards vndertooke the enterprize of the Canaries, in the yeere of our Lord 1405. vsing therein the assistance of *Iohn Betancort*, a French gentleman, who subdued Lançarota, & Fuerteuentura. They were taken againe certaine yeeres after, and were first subdued by force of armes, & afterwards by the establishment of religion: so that at this present, all the inhabitants are Christians. Also the Portugals haue assaied to inhabite certaine other islands of that Ocean, & especially Madera, which was discouered in the yeere 1420. This at the first was all ouer a thicke and mightie wood: but now it is one of the best

beſt manured iſlands that is knowne. There is in the ſame, the citie of Funcial, being the ſeate of a biſhop. Puerto ſanto, which is fortie miles diſtant from Madera, was found out in the yeere 1428. and this alſo began preſently to be inhabited. The iſles of Arguin, being ſixe or ſeauen, and all but little ones, came to the knowledge of the Portugals in the yeere 1443. Heere the king hath a fortreſſe for the traffike of thoſe countries. The iſlands of Cabo Verde were diſcouered in the yeere 1440. by *Antonio di Nolli* a Genoway, or (as others affirme) in the yeere 1455. by *Aloizius Cadamoſto*. Theſe be nine in number: the principall of them is Sant Iago, being ſeuentie miles in length: where the Portugals haue a towne ſituate vpon a moſt pleaſant riuer, called Ribera grande, which conſiſteth at the leaſt of fiue hundred families. The iſle of Saint Thomas being ſomewhat greater then Madera, was the laſt iſland diſcouered by the Portugals, before they doubled the cape De buena Eſperança. They haue heere a colonie called Pouaſaon, with a biſhop, who is alſo the biſhop of Congo, and it conteineth ſeuen hundred families. Vnder the gouernment of Saint Thomas are the neighbour iſlands of Fernando Pó, and that del Principe, which are as it were boroughs belonging to the ſame. The iſland Loanda, though it be vnder the king of Congo, yet is a great part thereof inhabited by the Portugals. For heere is the famous port of * Mazagan, whither the ſhips of Portugall and Braſile do reſort. Heete the fleetes are harboured, and the ſoldiers refreſhed, and heere they haue their hoſpitall. As alſo heere the Portugall prieſts (who indeuour the conuerſion of the naturall inhabitants) haue a place of reſidence.

* *Not Mazagan vpon the coaſt of Barbarie.*

Of the Negros.

MOſt of the Iſlands inhabited by the Portugals, eſpecially thoſe of Saint Thomas and Madera, beſides the Portugals themſelues, containe a great multitude of Negro-ſlaues, brought thither out of Congo and Angola, who till the earth, water the ſugar-canes, and ſerue both in the cities, and in the countrie. Theſe are for the moſt part gentiles, but they are daily conuerted rather through continual conuerſation, then any other helpe that they haue; and it is a matter likelie, that in proceſſe of ſome few yeeres, they will all become Chriſtians. There is no greater hinderance to their conuerſion, then the auarice of their maſters, who, to hold them in the more ſubiection, are not willing that they ſhould become Chriſtians.

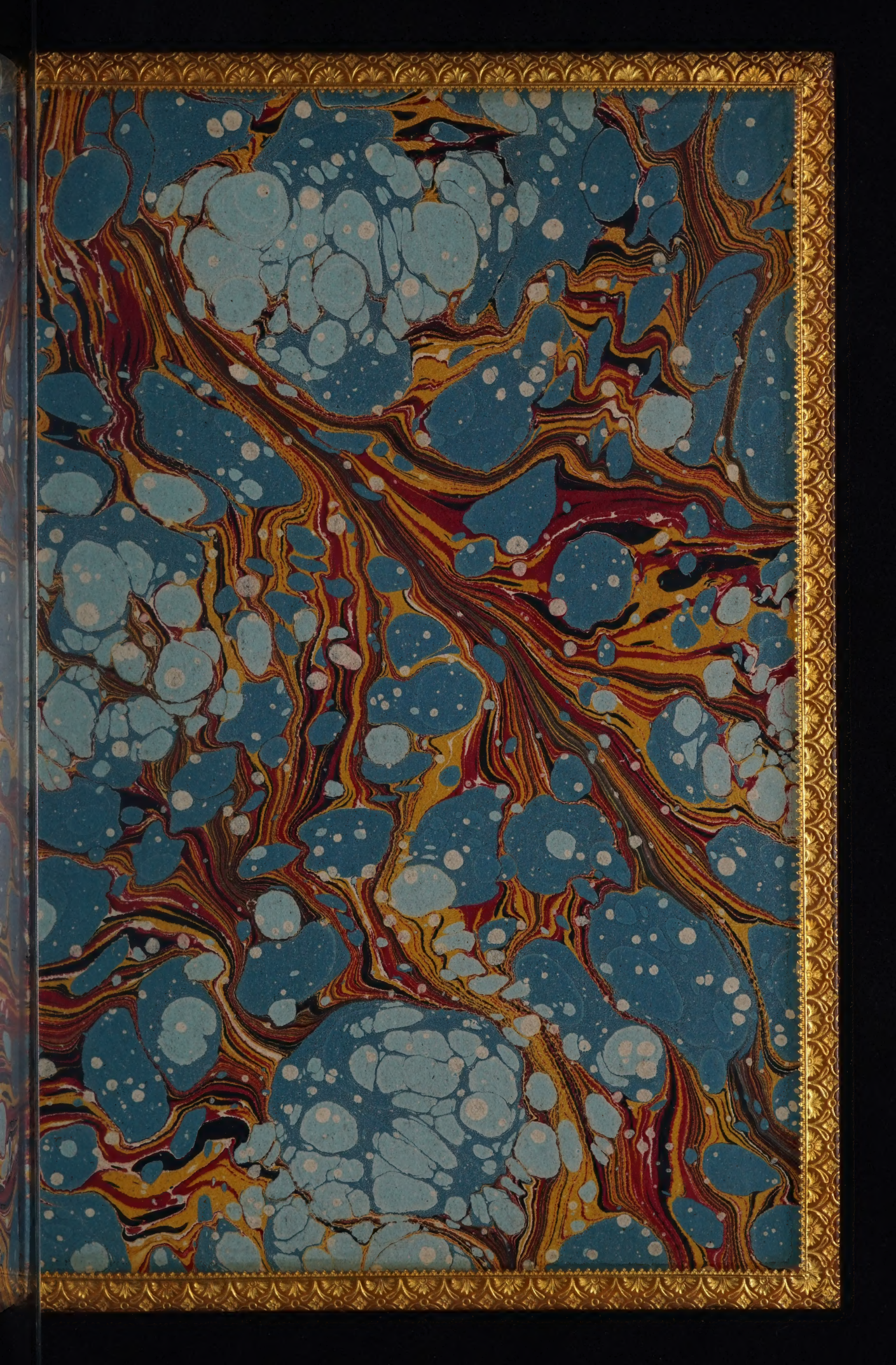
Of thoſe poore diſtreſſed European Chriſtians in Africa, who are holden as ſlaues vnto the Turkes and Mores.

BVt the beſt and moſt ſincere chriſtianity in all Africa, is that of thoſe poore chriſtians, who are fettered by the feet with chaines, being ſlaues to the Arabians & Turkes. For beſides them that haue remained there euer

euer since the daies of Barbaroſſa and other Turkiſh captaines (which were brought into the mediterran ſeas by the French) as alſo ſince the great loſſe at Gerbi, and the battell of Alcazar wherein *Don Sebaſtian* the king of Portugal was ouerthrowne: there paſſeth not a yeere, but the rouers and pirates of thoſe parts, without graunting any league or reſpite to the Northren ſhore of the Mediterran ſea, take great numbers of Chriſtians from off the coaſts of Spaine, Sardinia, Corſica, Sicilia, yea euen from the very mouth of Tyber. It is generallie thought, that the number of ſlaues, which are in Alger amount to eighteene thouſand. In Tunis, Bona, and Biſerta there are great multitudes: but many more in Fez, and Maroco; as likewiſe in Mequenez and Tarodant, and in diuers other cities of thoſe kingdomes. The eſtate ſurely of theſe diſtreſſed people is moſt woorthie of compaſſion, not ſo much for the miſerie wherein they lead their liues, as for the danger whereto their ſoules are ſubiect. They paſſe the day in continuall trauaile, and the greateſt part of the night without repoſe or quiet, vnder inſupportable burdens, and cruell ſtripes. Beaſts among vs labour not more, nor are more ſlauiſhly intreated. Yea, albeit vnder thoſe brutiſh Barbarians, they endure all that toile, which beaſts do heere with vs: yet are they neither ſo well fed, nor ſo carefully looked vnto, as our beaſts commonly are. They weare out the whole day in the ſunne, raine, and winde, in continuall labour, ſometimes carrying burdens, ſometimes digging or ploughing the fields, and otherwhiles in turning of hand-milles, feeding of beaſts, or in performance of other labours: being bound to bring in ſo much euery day to their maſters, and they themſelues to liue of the reſt, which many times is nothing at all, or (if it were poſſible) leſſe then nothing. They haue alwaies the chaine at their neckes and feete, being naked winter and ſommer, and therefore are ſometimes ſcorched with heate, and otherwhiles frozen with cold. They muſt not faile in any iotte of their duties, and yet though they do not, it can not be expreſſed with what cruelties they are tormented. They vſe for the chaſtizing & torture of their bodies, chaines of iron, dried ſinewes of oxen, but-hoops ſteeped in water, boiling oile, melted tallow, & ſcalding hot lard. The houſes of thoſe Barbarians reſound againe, with the blowes that are giuen theſe miſerable men, on the feete and bellie: and the priſons are filled with hideous lamentations and yellings. Their companions haire at this noiſe ſtandes an end, and their very blood freezeth within them, by conſidering how neere themſelues are to the like outrages. They paſſe the nights in priſons, or in ſome caues of the earth, being hampered and yoaked together like brute beaſts. Heere the vapor and dampe choaketh them, and the vncleannes and filth of their lodging conſumeth them (as ruſt doth iron) euen aliue. But though the labours of their bodies be ſo grieuous, yet thoſe of their minds are much more intolerable, for (beſides that they want ſuch as might feed them with the word of God, & with the ſacramentes, and might teach them how to liue and die well, ſo as they remaine like plants without moiſture) it can not be expreſſed, with what forcible temptations their faith

is continuallie assailed. For not onelie the desire to come foorth of these vnspeakeable miseries, doth tempt them; but the commodities and delights also wherein they see others to liue, that haue damnablie renounced their Christianity. The persecutors of the primitiue church, to induce the Martyrs to denie Christ and to sacrifice to their idols, tried them first with torments, and then with ease and delights, which they propounded vnto them, if they would become as themselues. For to those, who in the middest of winter were throwne into frozen lakes, there were cõtrariwise appointed soft and delicate beds, with a fier kindled hard by, and a thousand other restoratiues and comforts; to the end they might be doublie tempted, both by the rigor of the cold which benummed them, and by the sweetnes of thinges comfortable and nourishing, which allured them. The Christian slaues are at this day no lesse tormented; for on the one side, they are afflicted with beggerie, nakednes, hunger, famine, blowes, reproches, and tortures, without any hope in a manner euer to come out thereof: and on the other side they see them that haue reneged our holy faith for Mahumets superstition, to liue in all worldly prosperitie and delight, to abound with wealth, to flourish in honour, to gouerne cities, to conduct armies, and to enioy most ample libertie. But amidst all these so great miseries, they haue a double comfort. The one is of priests, who togither with themselues were taken captiue. These men sometimes administring the sacraments, & other whiles deliuering the word of God in the best manner that they can, are some helpe and assistance to others, being for this greatly reuerenced and respected amongst them. The other is of the religious in generall, who contend and labour for their freedome. Wherein Spaine deserueth most high commendation. For there be two most honorable orders, whose exercise it is, to mooue and sollicite for the freedome of captiues. The one is called La orden de la merced, and it flourisheth most in Aragon; and the other (which is farre greater), is named Del Resgate or of raunsome or redemption, the which although it largely extendeth ouer all France, yet at this day aboue all other places, it is most rife in Castilia. From whence some of them haue gone into Sicilie, to the kingdome of Naples, and to Rome: and haue there begun to lay foundations of their conuents. These two religious orders gather euery yeere mightie summes of money, wherewith they make speedie redemption of the forsaid captiues. They send their Agents to Fez, and to Alger, who managing this affaire, with no lesse diligence, then loialtie, redeeme first all the religious, and priests, and after them those of the yoonger sort, first the king of Spaines subiects, and then others. They alwaies leaue one religious man in Alger, and another in Fez, who informe themselues of the state & qualitie of the slaues, with their necessitie, to make the better way for their libertie the yeere following The king of Spaine (whom it most concerneth) furthereth this so charitable a worke, with a bountifull and liberall hand. For ordinarily he giueth as much more, as the foresaid orders haue gathered and collected by way of almes.

For

For this is so good an enterprise, that by the ancient canons no other is so much fauoured and allowed of. Yea S. *Ambrose* and other holy men haue pawned, for the deliuerie of Christian captiues, the chalices and siluer vessels of their churches. And Saint *Paulinus* for the same end and purpose, solde his owne selfe. For all other actions of charitie are some spirituall, and others corporall, but this in a very eminent degree is both spirituall and corporall togither. For among corporall miseries the seruitude of infidels is most grieuous, & among spirituall calamities the danger of apostasie is of all others the greatest: but those slaues so redeemed, are set free both from the one and from the other. Whereupon there are very few borne in Spain, who dying, leaue not some almes behinde them, for the ransoming of slaues. The fathers of redemption haue gone also many times to Constantinople: where in the yeere 1583. by the order of Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth, they redeemed fiue hundred persons. The brotherhood also of the Confalone in Rome, labour verie diligently in this point, who in *Sixtus Quintus* time, redeemed a great number of captiues. Of whom many also, vrged partly by the hardnes of seruitude, & partly by the sweetenes of libertie, free themselues, either by that which they gaine ouer & aboue their masters due, or by their good demeanour, or else by flight. And they flie awaie, sometimes by repairing speedily to such fortresses as the king of Spaine hath in Africke and in Barbarie: and otherwhiles they seaze on some shipping, or on the selfe same galleies wherein they are chained. Many also retire themselues to the Princes of Brisch, &c. who willingly receiue and arme them, vsing their assistance in the warre which they continually make with the Turkes of Alger.

FINIS.